

THE
EXPERIENC'D FARRIER,
OR
Farring Compleated.

CONTAINING

Every thing that belongs to a Compleat
HORSEMAN, GROOM, FARRIER OR
HORSELEACH.

WITH

The Office of the Breeder, Keeper, Rider,
Feeder, Buyer and Farrier: Shewing the Marks
of Beauty, Goodness, Faults and Imperfections of
Horses; with the best Method of Buying, Dieting,
Shooing, and otherwise Managing of Horses for all
Uses.

ALSO,

Plain Directions in the Knowledge of all Distempers
and Accidents incident to Horses, &c. With the best
Receipts and Methods used in their Cure, never
published before.

In Two PARTS, Physical and Chyrurgical.

By E. R. Gent.

The Fourth EDITION.

a. 3619.

L O N D O N,

Printed for G. CONYERS, J. and B. SPRINT, and T. BALLARD;
and sold by EDWARD SYMON over against the Royal Exchange in
Gresham, M. DCC. XX.

70



43h



TO THE READER.



YOU would say, That * this Book, tho new, is no otherwise than old, by reason that a great part thereof are Collections, and therefore the less to be regarded. Let me ask you one Question, Is the Honey the worse, because the Bee sucks it out of many Flowers? or, Is the Spider's Web the more to be valued, because extracted out of her own Bowels? Let not this be any prejudice to this Book, but peruse it without Partiality, and with the Judgment of a Farrier: and you shall then find, That these old Collections are become new, because they are new digested and modelized, and put into a better Form and Method than ever any before printed: For let me tell you, there was never any thing in this Nature ever printed before, but there was something or other wanting to make it a more compleat Book of Farring; but in this you shall find nothing wanting, either to the perfecting a Cure of all Diseases of a Horse, either inward or outward, or to the making a Man a compleat Horseman. Besides these old Collections, you shall find a great many new Additions.

* Nil dictum
quod non pri-
us dictum.

First, An Alphabetical Table of most of the Principal Medicines both Simple and Compound belonging to
A 2 Farring,

TO the READER.

Farring, with their *Virtues* in curing the several *Diseases* incident to *Horses*. A Table so very useful, that 'tis much to be wondred at, that amongst so many Excellent Books of Farring as are Extant in the World, there should be nothing of this kind ever before annexed to them.

Secondly, You have a large Table of the Nature, Temperature and *Virtues* of most *Simples*, set down Alphabetically.

Thirdly, You have an Account of many Hundreds more of *Simples*, placed in order one after another for the Cure of all inward and outward *Diseases*; with an Advertisement touching the Usefulness of them.

Fourthly, You have the Gathering, Drying and Preserving of *Simples* and their Juices.

Fifthly, You have the Method of making Syrops, Decoctions, Oils, Ointments, Plasters, Charges, Poultices, Balls, &c.

Sixthly, You have hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

Seventhly, You have cold Medicaments appropriate to the same Use.

Eighthly, You have the Properties of purging Medicaments.

Ninthly, You have the Properties of altering Medicaments.

Tenthly, You have a Table of the *Diseases* of a Horse, either inward or outward, set down Alphabetically, shewing you where they do grow in any part of the Body, how you may know them, and what were the Causes that bred them.

Eleventhly and Lastly, You have five infallible Cures never yet put to Press before, viz. For the Glanders, Farcin, Staling of Blood, Scratches, and making the brittlest Hoof that is so tough, that it will carry a Shoe passing well. With many other things contained in this Book, which are not here inserted.

By E. R. Gent.

T H E

Errat. In the Title-page of the Second Part, dele the three last lines.



T H E
Experienc'd Farrier.

P A R T I.



HERE is no Man who is a Lover of Horses, but would be glad to be acquainted with such Methods to preserve them sound when they are so, as well as to recover them from any Indisposition or Disaster that may at any time befall them. You have in the following Sheets not only my own, but the Experiences of the most knowing Men that have made it their Study and Business, with the greatest Success in the right Management of Horses, under all the various Accidents and Indispositions that they are subject to, with the best Medicines, both old and of long experience, as well as those more modern Discoveries made by the greatest Men in our days; and you will find them all wrote in the plainest Methods, that all Persons may be capable not only of making them up, but of applying them with usual Success. That Man who hath been so successful as to find out an infallible Cure for any Distemper in a
B
Horse,

Horse, does render himself more famous and useful to Posterity, than he who treats his Reader with unprofitable Speculations in a pompous manner; for such Discourses do more puzzle and confound the Ignorant, than instruct them in those things which are truly useful and beneficial to be known. I have therefore avoided, throughout this Work, every thing that may seem difficult and puzzling, and have given you in as plain a manner as I could, the various Remedies, the best Methods of Composition, and most exact Doses that have been used with the greatest Success: and I dare venture to affirm, that he who shall observe those Methods and Rules that are laid down in this Book, will seldom, if ever, fail in his Expectations. Let me only give you this Caution, that if one Medicine should fail, you would not fling it by as naught, but try another; for there are different Constitutions in Horses as well as there are amongst Men, and that Medicine that will not cure a Distemper in one Horse, will cure the same Distemper in another Horse, of a different Constitution; which daily Experience convinces us of. I shall without any further Introduction proceed to inform you of the first Step to Knowledge in Horsemanship, and that is the Office of the Breeder; but first I shall begin with describing the Shapes of a Horse.



The Shapes of a Horse.

HE must have the Eyes and Joints of an *Ox*, the Strength of a *Mule*, the Foot of the same, the Hoofs and Thighs of an *Ass*, the Throat and Neck of a *Wolf*, the Ear and Tail of a *Fox*, the Breast and Hair of a *Woman*, the Boldness of a *Lion*, the sharp and quick Sight of a *Serpent*, the Pace of a *Cat*, the Lightness and Nimbleness of a *Hare*, a high *Pace*, a deliberate *Trot*, a pleasant *Gallop*, a swift *Running*, a rebounding *Leap* and *Present*, and be quick in hand.

The Colours of a Horse in Verse.

*If you desire a Horse thee long to serve,
Take a Brown-bay, and him with Care preserve:
The Grey's not ill, but he is prized far
That is Coal-black, and blazed with a Star.*

Observations.

3

*If for thyself or Friend thou wilt procure
A Horse, let him White-Lyard be, he'll long endure.*

The Shapes of a Horse, another way.

He ought to have three of an *Ox*, which is a fair and full *Eye*, a large *Neck*, and to be strong and short-jointed.

Three of a *Fox*, which is to have a comely and short *Trot*, small and long *Ears*, and a bushy *Tail*.

Three of a *Hart*, which is to have lean and dry *Legs*, to be well-risen before, and a lean *Head*.

Three of a *Woman*, which is to have a fair and large *Breast*, to have a beautiful and full *Hair*, and gentle to his *Rider* and *Keeper*.

A Proverb amongst Husbandmen.

If you have a Foal with four white Feet, keep him not a day;

If you have a Foal with three white Feet, make him soon away:

If you have a Foal with two white Feet, give him to thy Friend;

If you have a Foal with one white Foot, keep him to his life's end.

These things are good to strew in a Horse's Provender.

Turmerick, white Lilly-Roots chop'd small, and dry'd; the Powder of Anniseeds, Liquorice, Fenugreek, Bay-berries, Brimstone, Allum, Hemp-seed, Elicampane, or the Roots of Polypodium of the Oak, or Savin, Marshmallows, Rue, Hyssop, Horehound, Coltsfoot. If you give him the Herbs green, you must chop them small; if dry, beat them to powder: which Simples will keep him sound and in perfect health; for their Virtues are to purify the Blood, prevent Obstructions, open and resolve the Liver, cool the Blood, keep and preserve the whole Structure of the Body in sound and perfect health.

These things you are always to have in a readiness by you.

Fenugreek a Pound, Liquorice half a Pound, Bay-berries a quarter of a Pound, London-Treacle one Pound, Anniseeds a quarter of a Pound, Cumminseeds a quarter of a Pound, Grains a quarter of a Pound, Turmerick a quarter of a Pound, Long-Pepper two Ounces, Elicampane half a Pound, Allum half a Pound, Brimstone half a Pound, green Copperas half a Pound, Savin three Handfuls, Chopt-Hair a Handful.

These things repeated over again, with their Virtues declared.

Fenugreek, Liquorice, Bay-berries, London-Treacle, Anniseeds, Cumminseeds, Grains, Long Pepper, Elicampane, all good for Colds.

Turmerick, good to purge the Blood, and to cure the Yellows.

Brimstone, Elicampane, Allum, Savin, chopt Hair, good for the Worms.

Throw these things among his Provender.

If you are ask'd what Fault your Horse hath, if you know him to be sound, you may answer him in this manner :

He hath neither Splint, Spavin, nor Wind-gall, Scratches, Crepances, nor Rats-tails, Mules nor kibed Heels, Sellander nor Mallender, Curb, Ring-bone, Quitter-bone, Hough-bonny, Sit-fast, Ambury, Vives; but good Eyes and good Thighs. Or if you can affirm him further to be sound, you may say he hath neither Farcin, foundred Foot, broken Wind, moulted Grease, nor running Glaunders.



Of the Office of the Breeder.

The best Manner of Breeding.

YOU are not to breed in fenny moorish Pastures, nor in Lands too fertile nor too barren, the golden Number is the best Temper: yet to incline a little to Hardness, is better than much Rankness; the one breeds Health, and the other Diseases. Let the Situation be a little hilly, and in some places stony and rocky; for they are very good for Colts to play on, and helpeth their Wind, and knitteth their Joints, and hardeneth and maketh tough their Hoofs: and no matter how rough and uncertain it is, for it will make them the more sure-footed. As much Ground as will keep a milch Cow, will keep a milch Mare.

Change of Grounds.

You are to have three sorts of Grounds, one to foal in, another to summer in, and a third to winter in: The first to be without danger; the second not to be without shelter of Bushes, or Under-Woods, to defend from Storms and
Tem-

The Office of the Breeder;

5

Tempests; and the third is, to have good Hovels, Sheds, Barns, or Back-stables, wherein may be stored Winter-Provision. You are likewise to accommodate your Grounds with Partitions, to put each Cattel by themselves, as your young and old, Race or Breeding Mares by themselves, your Weanlings by themselves, your Fillies by themselves, and your stoned Colts by themselves; or else your Breed will come to nothing, and you may run the hazard both of your Cost and Pains.

Choice of Stallions.

You are to be careful, that neither your Stallion nor Mare have any of these Defects, *viz.* Neither Moon-Eyes, watry Eyes, or blood-shotten Eyes, neither Splint, nor Spavin, nor Curb, &c. nor any natural Imperfection; for the Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents. I shall advise you, that you chuse the best and ablest, the highest-spirited, the fairest-colour'd, and the finest-shaped, whether it be *Neapolitan, Turk, Spaniard, Barbary, English, Dutch, Polander, French, or German*; and that you would inform yourself of all natural Defects in the Stallion, (for it is impossible to find out absolute Perfection) and to amend them in the Mare; and what is amiss in the Mare, to see it repaired in the Horse.

The Age of Stallions and Mares.

A Stallion ought not to be younger than four Years when he covereth a Mare, and he will beget Colts from that Age to twenty. And a Mare may bring forth from three years old to thirteen. When she is four Years, she will nourish her Colt best; but after she is ten Years she is not good, for commonly an old Mare-Colt will be heavy in Labour.

Observations upon Covering.

Let your Mare be covered from the end of the first Quarter to the Full of the Moon, or at the Full; for those Colts will be stronger, and hardier of Nature.

After the Change.

It is not good for Mares to be covered after the Change, for those Colts will be tender and nice.

The Wain.

Mark the Wain in that time the Mare was covered, the same time of the Moon she will foal.

Burning.

If your Mare hath been covered, and the Colt knit within her, if another Horse covers her, he burns her.

Of Spaying a Mare-Colt.

If a Mare-Colt be spayed nine days after it is foaled, she will prove (as some say) fair, gallant and well.

Of Gelding of Colts.

Horses will be better shaped, and in less danger of Gelding, if they be gelt at nine or fifteen days old, if the Stones appear, or so soon as you find them fall down into the Cod.

The Time of Gelding is when the Moon is in the Wain, the Sign in *Aries* or *Virgo*; the Time of the Year is early in the Spring or Fall.

What time a Mare is to take Horse.

If your Mare be cover'd on St. *Lucy's* Day, which is the thirteenth of *December*, then she will foal about St. *Thomas's* Day, the same Month in the Year following.

How long time a Mare goes.

During the time of her going with Foal, from the day of her Covering unto the day of her Foaling, is commonly twelve Months and ten Days, unless it be a young Mare upon her first Colt, which may come sooner.

How to order her before she is covered.

You are to take her into the House about six Weeks before she is cover'd, and feed her well with good Hay and Oats, well sifted, to the end she may have Strength and Seed to perform the Office of Generation. But if you would have her certainly conceive, then take Blood from both sides of her Neck, and let her bleed nigh a quart of either Vein, which you must do five or six days before you have her covered. If you desire to have a Horse-Colt of your Mare, then let her be covered when one of the first masculine Signs do reign, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, or *Leo*. But if she be covered when one of the feminine Signs be predominate, as *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, or *Pisces*; then be confident it will be a Mare: for it is so certain, that it seldom or never fails, especially if the Wind be either West or North, but West is best.

The

The Manner of Covering her.

You are to bring her out into some broad place, and tie her to a Post; then bring out some Stone Jade to dally with her, to provoke her to Appetite; then let the Stallion be led out by two Men, and let him leap her, and let him do it in the Morning fasting: and when the Horse is dismounting, throw a Pail-full of cold Water upon her Shape, which by reason of the Coldness will make her shrink in, and truss up her Body, and will make her retain her Seed the better: then take away the Stallion, and let her be put out of the hearing of the Horse, and let her neither eat nor drink in four or five hours after, and give her a Mash and white Water. If she stands to her Covering, you may know it by this; if she keeps a good Stomach, and does not neigh at the sight of a Horse, or if she does not piss often, or open and shut her Shape often; or that if her Belly, four days after her Covering, be more gant, and her Hair more sleek and close to her Skin, &c.

How many Mares for one Horse.

If you cover abroad, one Horse will serve twelve Mares; if you expect no other Service from him; but if you keep him in the Stable, where he hath extraordinary keeping, he will serve fifteen.

How to order a Mare after Covering to her Foaling.

Keep her with the same Diet as before Covering, for three Weeks or a Month after, lest the Seed be empai'd before it be formed in the Womb; and let her be kept sweet and clean without any Exercise, during three Weeks or a Month, and to keep her in the House till Mid-May, and not to turn her out before Mid-May, and with her Feet well pared, and a thin Pair of Shoes upon them; and take her in again the latter end of September, if not before, and keep her to the end of her Foaling: and let her be loose in the Stable with good store of Straw with her, that so the Foal may fall the softer, for a Mare does usually foal standing.

How to help her if she cannot foal.

If she cannot foal, hold her Nostrils so that she cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a Walnut of Madder, and dissolve it in a Pint of old Ale,

and being warm, give it the Mare: if both fail, take the help of some understanding Farrier. If she cannot void her Secundine, then boil two or three Handfuls of Fennel in running Water, and take half a pint of it with as much Sack, or for want thereof, a pint of Strong-Beer or Ale, with a fourth part of Sallet Oil; mix them together, and give it her lukewarm into her Nostrils, and hold them close for a good space: or for want thereof, give her good green Wheat or Rye, (but Rye is the best) and they are as effectual. Let her not eat her clean, for that is very unwholesom, and will dry up her Milk.

To order her after Foaling.

When she hath foaled, and licked her Foal, milk and stroke her before the Colt doth suck, which will not only cause her to bring down her Milk, but make it to multiply, and keep it that it doth not clot; which may cause her to become dry: which if there be cause, boil as much Milk as you can get from her, with the Leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and bathe the Udder with it warm till it be broken, and the Knobs and Knots dissolved. Let her Water after Foaling be white Water, which is Bran put into her Water, and give her sweet Mash; and a Month after her Foaling give her a Mash, and put into it some Brimstone or Savin, which will be a great Preservation to the Colt. And then if she be moderately laboured at Plough, or Harrow, the Mare and Colt will be the better, provided she be kept from raw Meats while she remaineth in the Stable, which will both increase her Milk, and cause her Colt to thrive the better; and that you suffer not the Colt to suck when she is hot, lest thereby you surfeit the Colt.

How long Foals are to run with their Dam.

Let them run with their Dams a full Year at least, but if they be choice Foals, then two Years; for the loss of the use of the Mare will be no loss, in comparison of the benefit you will receive by the Foal. But if you want Accommodations, wean at seven Months, but be sure to keep them well; for what they lose the first Year, they will hardly gain in three following. And at the weaning give them Savin and Butter for divers Mornings together, or else the Worm and Gargil will hazard to destroy them; besides, have an Eye to the Strangle, for it is apt to essay them, and if not taken in time, it will destroy them. The first

first Winter spare neither Hay nor Corn, that is, Oats in the Chaff, or in the Sheaf, or give him any Offal that comes from any Grain whatsoever.

The Time of Foaling look'd upon to be very improper, because in the Winter Season.

The Time of Foaling, as I have said before, I would have in *December* or *January*, which most hold to be a very improper time, the Weather being cold, and but little Grass, for which reason of necessity she must be housed, and fed with hard Meat, which will dry up her Milk, and so starve the Foal. But to satisfy this Scruple, I must tell you, that Experience is the best Master; for certainly the Winter-Season must needs be the best both for the Mare and Foal, being kept in a warm House; and as for her Milk, she will have great plenty, being fed well, and that more nourishing than that got at Grass, which will make him more lusty, and of greater Bone and Stature, and cleaner-limb'd, and more neatly jointed and hoof'd, and in better liking than that Colt foaled in *May* or *June*, or any of the hotter Months: for tho Grass doth yield great plenty of Milk, yet it is not so nourishing, because it is very thin and watry, therefore it will not yield so substantial Nourishment as the Winter-Food, if it be good; for tho the quantity of Milk is not so great, yet it is of greater goodness. And besides, the pinching Cold, Rains and Floods in Winter, will so nip the poor Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such desperate manner, that the wanting her former plenty of Food and dry Lodging, her Milk will decay when the Colt hath most need of it, by which means they must needs both fall into extreme Poverty. And over and above all this, by his running abroad with the Mare, he becometh so savage and wild, that if any Infirmary seize upon him, his own Unruliness being so great, the Cure may be difficult, for infinite are the number that have perished in this kind.

When Mares are fit to take Horse.

Observe their chafing and galloping up and down Morning and Evening, and their throwing up of their Noses, and lifting up of their Tails, riding on one another's backs, often pissing, or opening of their Shapes, and closing of them again, which are Signs of Lust.

To know the true Shape, Spirit, and Height of a Foal.

The same Shape that it carries at a Month old, he will carry at six Years old, if he be not abused in after-keeping; and as the good Shape, so the Defects also.

From the Shin-bone.

A large Shin-bone, that is long from the Knee to the Pastern in a Foal, shews a tall Horse.

From the Space between his Knee and Withers.

Look what Space he has between his Knees and Withers, double that will be his Height when he is a compleat Horse.

From their Spirits to know their Goodness.

If they are stirring Spirits, free from Affrights, wanton of Disposition, and very active in leaping and running, and striving for Mastery, they prove generally good mettled Horses, the contrary Jades.

From his Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be strong, deep, tough, smooth, upright standing and hollow, he cannot be evil; for they are the Foundation of his Building, and lend Fortitude from all the rest. Therefore the *Barbary* Horse is well known by his Hoofs, for there is no Horse hath naturally so good a Hoof as he.

Weaning of Foals.

Wean your ordinary Foals at the end of seven Months, your better at a year or two, and let them not be within the hearing of one another, and keep them very high the second Year; but the third and fourth put them to hard Grazing.

Taming of Colts.

You are to make them familiar to you from the first Weaning, and so Winter after Winter (in the House) use them to familiar Actions, as rubbing, clawing, haltering, leading to water, taking up of his Feet, knocking his Hoofs, and the like.

The Time to break Colts.

The best Time to break Colts to the Saddle, is at three
Years

Years old, and the advantage, or four at the utmost. But he that hath the patience to stay to see his Horse full five, shall be sure to have him of longer continuance, and less subject to Disease or Infirmary, and on that (but by Death) will hardly come to the knowledge of tiring.

Coiling of the Stud, or making of Election.

I advise you by no means to make too early Coiling; for some Horses will shew their best Shape at two and three Years old, and lose it at four, others not till five, nay six, but then keep it ever. Some will do their best days work at six or seven Years old, others not till eight or nine: but be the time when it will, let him preserve for his own use the best. Those that be defective, I mean such as bring incurable Deformities, gross Sorrances, as Spavins, Ring-bones, imperfect Eyes, or the like, make away with them.

Barren Mares.

If you find any of your Mares grow into Barrenness, away with them; for tho I could prescribe you Remedies, yet they are not worthy of your use.

General Observations concerning Mares.

In length and height a Mare groweth till she be five, and a Horse till he be six Years old.

Covering.

When a Mare is past two Years old, she may be covered, but the best time is after four Years old.

Bringing of Foals.

Common Mares may bring Foals every Year, but let your best bring but every second Year, especially if they bring Horse-Colts.

To make a Mare sink Foal.

To make a Mare sink her Foal, is to give her down her Throat with a Horn some Water, with three Grig-Eels, which will make her sink with a great deal of safety.

To make her stand to Horse.

To make a Mare stand to Horse the better, is to let her stand by him two or three days before he cover her.

Stallion for Trotters.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either *Neapolitan Courser*, or *Arabian*, *Turk*, or *Barbary*; and for Amblers, either the *Spanish Jennet* or the *Irish Hobby*.

Mares to Horse.

Put your Mares to Horse, from the middle of *March* till the middle of *May*, or middle of *June*, the Moon having newly changed.

To put your Horse into an empty House.

It is good to put the Horse and the Mare for three or four Nights together into an empty House, and take him away in the Morning, and feed him well, and feed your Mare sparingly, but especially give her but little Water.

Chasing the Mares.

At the end of six Months chase not the Mares, for then they are a quickning, and may easily be made to cast their Foals.

The Wall-Eye.

The Wall-Eye of a Horse or Mare doth never see perfectly, especially when the Snow is upon the ground.

Choice of Mares.

For your Choice of Mares, you ought to respect their Shapes and Mettles, that they be beautifully fore-handed, and that they be of a mean Stature, large and broad, and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat broader and taller; and temper their Natures thus: Put unto the hot Horse the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horse.

If you will elect a Horse for Service and Warlike Employment, then these are best.

The *Neapolitan*, the *Sardinian*, the *Courser*, the *Almain*, the *French*, the *Jennet*, or the *Turky*: Or if any of these bastardized in themselves, with a fair well-shaped and mettled *English Mare*.

For Swiftnefs.

If you will elect for Swiftnefs, then the *Arabian*, the *Barbary*, which is a Horse of *Africa*; the *Spanish*, the *Grecian*, which

The Office of the Breeder.

13

which is the *Turkey Horse*: or any of these bastardized in themselves with our *English Mares*.

For Travel.

If you will chuse for long Travel and Service, then the *English*, the *Hungarian*, the *Swedeland*, the *Poland*, the *Irish*.

For Draught.

If you will chuse for Draught and Service, then the *Flanders*, the *Friesland*, or any of the *Netherlands*, either bastardized in themselves, or with our *English Races*; and these are excellent for Coach, for Cart, for Pack, or any Burden. If you will chuse for Ease, then the *Irish*.

To know whether your Mares be with Foal, or not.

If you pour a Spoonful of cold Vinegar or Water into her Ear, if she shake only her Head, it is a sign she is with Foal; but if she shake her Head, Body and all, then it is a sign she is not with Foal: or if she scowers, her Coat grows smooth and shining, and that she grows fat, it is a sign that she holds.

To make the Mare conceive Male Foals.

To make your Mare conceive Male Foals, is to keep your Stallion proud, and your Mare poor; that his Lust mastering hers, he may only be predominant and chief in the Action.



Of the Office of the Keeper.

Of the Horse in general, his Choice for every several Use, his Ordering, Diet, and best Preservation for Health, both in Travel and in Rest.

Of the Nature of Horses in general.

HE is valiant, strong and nimble, and above all other Beasts most apt and able to endure the extremest Labours; the moist Quality of his Composition being such, that neither extreme Heat doth dry up his Strength, nor the Violence of Cold freeze the warm Temper of his moving Spirits;

Spirits ; for he withstandeth all Defects of Sickneſs with an uncontrouled Conſtancy. He is moſt gentle and loving to Man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an Impreſſion is fixed in his Brain. He is watchful above all other Beaſts, and will endure his Labour with the moſt empty Stomach. He is naturally given to much Cleanlineſs : he is of an excellent Scent, and therefore not ſo much as to offend any Man with his evil Savours.

Your Choice of a Horſe for the Wars.

Chuſe him of a tall Stature, with a comely Head and out-ſwelling Forehead, a large ſparkling Eye, the White thereof covered with the Eye-brows, a ſmall thin Ear, ſhort and pricking ; if it be long, well carried, and ever moving, a deep Neck, a large Creſt, broad Breſt, bending Ribs, broad and ſtrait Chine, round and full Buttocks, a Tail high and broad, neither too thick nor too thin, a full ſwelling Thigh, a broad, flat, and lean Leg, ſhort-paſtern'd, ſtrong-jointed.

Colours of a Horſe.

The beſt Colours are Brown-Bay, Dapple-gray, Roan, Bright-Bay, Black, with a white near Foot behind, white Fore-Foot before, white Star, Cheſnut or Sorrel, with any of thoſe Marks, or Dun with a black Liſt.

Horſes for a Prince's Seat.

If you will chuſe a Horſe for a Prince's Seat, or for any Supreme Magiſtrate, or any great Lady ; then chuſe the fineſt Shape, that is nimble, with an eaſy Pace, and gentle to get up, familiar and quiet in the company of other Horſes, and let his Colour be Milk-white, with red Frains or without, or elſe Dapple-grey, with a white Mane, and white Tail.

Horſes for Travel.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Travel, chuſe him for Strength, viz. His Joints ſtrong, his Paſternes ſhort and ſtreight without bending in his going, hollow and tough Hoofs ; let him be of a temperate Nature, neither too furious, nor too dull.

Hunting Horſes.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Hunting, let his Shape be generally

rally strong, and well knit together, making equal Proportions; for as unequal Shapes shew Weakness, so equal Shapes shew Strength and Durance. Your unequal Shapes are a great Head and little Neck, a big Body and a thin Buttock, a large Limb to a little Foot, &c. Let him have a large and lean Head, wide Nostrils, open Chauld, a big Wheafand, and the Windpipe streight.

Running Horses.

If you chuse him for Running, let him have all the finest Shapes that may be. Let him be nimble, quick and fiery, apt to fly with the least Motion; long Shapes are sufferable, or though they shew Weakness, yet they assure sudden Speed.

Coach-Horses.

If you chuse him for the Coach, which is called the swift Draught, let his Shape be tall, broad and well furnish'd, not gross with much Flesh, but with the highness of his Bones; let him have a strong Neck, a broad Breast, a large Chine, sound clean Limbs, and tough Hoofs. And for this purpose your large *English* Geldings are best, your *Flemish* Mares next, and your strong Stone-Horses tolerable.

Pack-Horses.

If you chuse a Horse for Portage, that is, for the Pack or Hampers; let him have a strong Body and Limbs, but not tall, with a broad Back, Out-Ribs, full Shoulders and thick Withers, for if it be thin in that part, you shall hardly keep his Back from galling; and besure he take a large stride, for he that taketh the largest stride goes at the most ease, and rides his Ground the fastest.

Cart or Plough.

Lastly, if you will chuse a Horse for Cart or Plough, which is the slow Draught, chuse him that is of an ordinary height; for Horses in the Cart unequally sorted never draw at ease, but the tall hang up the low Horses. Let him be big, large-bodied and strong-limb'd, by Nature rather inclin'd to crave the Whip, than to draw more than is needful. And for this purpose, Mares are most profitable, if you have cheap keeping for them, for they will not only do your work, but bring you yearly Increase: be sure you take them well-forehanded, that is, good Head, Neck, Breast and Shoulders; for the rest, it is not so regardful, only let her
+ Body

Body be large, for the more room a Foal hath in her Dam's Belly, the fairer are his Members. And be sure you never put your Draught-Beasts to the Saddle, for that alters their Pace, and hurts them in their Labour.

How to order these several Horses: And first of the Horse for the Wars.

During his time of teaching, which is out of the Wars, you shall keep him high; let his Food be good Hay and Oats, or two parts Oats, and one part Beans or Pease, well dried and hard; half a Peck at a Morning, Noon, and at Evening, is sufficient. In his days of rest, dress him betwixt five and six in the Morning, and water him at seven or eight in the Afternoon. Dress him between three and four, and water him about four or five, and give him Provender always after Watering; litter him at eight, and give Food for all night. The night before he is ridden, about nine at night take away his Hay, and at four of the clock in the Morning give him a Handful or two of Oats, which being eaten, turn him upon the Snaffle, rub him all over with dry Cloths, then saddle him and make him fit for his Exercise; and when you have done with him, bring him into the Stable all sweaty, as he is, and rub him all over with dry Wisps: then take off his Saddle, and after you have rubbed him all over with dry Cloths, put on his Housing-Cloth; then put on the Saddle again, and girt it, and walk him about gently till he be cold; then set him up, and after two or three hours fasting, put him to his Meat: then in the Afternoon, curb, rub and dress him, and water him, and order him as aforesaid.

Ordering a Horse for a Prince, or great Lady's Seat.

You must order him in the time of his Rest like unto the Horse for Service; and in his time of Labour like the travelling Horse, only you are to keep him more choicely: I mean, in a beautiful manner, his Coat lying smooth and shining; if he come in sweating into the Stable, after you have rubbed him down, take off the Sweat with a Sword-Blade, whose Edge is rebated.

Ordering of Travelling Horses at home and abroad.

Feed him with good Hay in the Winter, and good Grass in the Summer. Let his Provender be good dry Oats, Beans, Pease or Bread, according to his Stomach; in the
time

time of Rest, half a Peck at a Watering is sufficient, in the time of Labour as much as he will eat with a good Stomach.

Of Watering in the Morning.

When you travel him, water two hours before you ride, then rub, dress, and lustily feed; then bridle up, and let him stand an hour before you take his back.

Of Feeding betimes.

In your Travel feed your Horse betimes for all night, that ther by he may the sooner take his rest.

Moderate Travelling.

Travel moderately in the Morning, till his Wind be rack'd, and his Limbs warmed, then after do as your Affairs require. Be sure at night to water your Horse two miles before you come to your Journey's end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inn the better. Walk not, nor wash not at all; the one doth beget Colds, the other Foundrings in the Feet or Body: but set him up warm, well stopt, and well rubbed, with clean Litter. Give no Meat whilst the outwards Parts of your Horse are hot or wet with Sweat, as the Ear-roots, the Flank, the Neck, or under his Chaps; but being dry, rub and feed him according to the Goodness of his Stomach.

To get a Stomach.

Change of Food begetteth a Stomach, so doth the washing the Tongue or Nostrils with Vinegar, Wine and Salt, or warm Urine.

Not to stop the Horse's Feet with Cow-dung till they be cold.

Stop not your Horse's Feet with Cow-dung till he be sufficiently cold, and that the Blood and Humours which were dispersed, be settled into their proper places.

Look to his Back, Girts and Shoes.

Look well to his Back, that the Saddle hurt not; to the Girts, that they gall not; and to his Shoes, that they be large, fast and easy.

Not to eat nor drink when he is hot.

Let him neither eat nor drink when he is hot, nor presently after his Travel.

To labour him moderately, when the Weather is either extreme hot or cold.

Labour him moderately when the Weather is either extreme hot, or extreme cold, that so you may avoid extreme Heats or sudden Colds.

Not to travel him too late.

Travel him not too late, that your own Eye may see him well dried, and well fed, before you take your own rest.

The Saddle not to be presently taken off.

Take not the Saddle from your Horse's Back suddenly.

Horse-bread very good Food.

Horse-bread which is made of clean Pease, Beans or Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

River-water is not so good as Standing water.

Let your Horse's Meat and Drink be exceeding sweet and clean: Standing-water is better than River-water, for that is too piercing.

Swine and Pullen is naught to be nigh a Stable.

Let him lie clean and dry, keep your Stable sweet, let no Swine lie near it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let the Light of your Stable be towards the South and North.

Let the Light of your Stable be ever towards the South and North; yet so as the North-windows may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure.

To be tied with two Reins.

Let him be tied with two Reins.

To ride him on stony Ways.

Ride him often on stony Ways, that he may the better feel his Feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Wheat-Straw, and Oat-Straw, best for Litter.

Let his Bed be of Wheat-straw above his Knees, the Barley-straw is the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eat it, which is unwholesom; Wheat-straw, though it be hard to lie upon, yet it is wholesom to eat: and as for Oat-straw, it is the best in the superlative, for it is not only wholesom to eat, but soft to lie upon.

Of

Of Dressing your Horse.

Curry or dress your Horse twice a day, that is, before Water; and when he is curried, rub him well with your Hand, and with a Rubber: His Head should be rubbed with a wet Cloth, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloth, otherwise he would be scabby between his Legs. You should wet his Fore-top, his Mane and his Tail with a wet Mane-Comb; and ever where the Horse's Hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Of the Stable.

Let the Plaunchers of your Stable lie even and level, that your Horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder Feet.

A Mud-wall is naught to be nigh a Horse.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your Horse's reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholesome.

Chopt Straw is good to strew amongst his Provender.

Give your Horse plenty of Garbage (which is chopt Wheat-straw) both with his Provender and without, for it is a mighty Cleanser of a Horse's Body.

Bottles of Hay to be ty'd hard.

Let your Hay-Bottles be very little, and ty'd very hard, for so your Horse shall eat with a better Stomach, and make least waste.

To sprinkle the Hay with Water is good, and to strew Fenugreek amongst his Provender.

To sprinkle Water upon your Hay is most wholesom, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as sovereign; the first is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Exercise good.

Let your Horse have daily Exercise, for that begets a good Stomach to his-Meat.

Grass is good once a year, to cleanse the Blood and cool the Body.

Purge your Horse once a year with Grass, or green Blades of Corn call'd Forage, for fifteen days together; yet before
C 2 you

you purge him, in any case let him blood : and whilst he is in purging, let him have no Provender.

A Horse good store of Blood after Travel.

A Horse after Travel hath ever more Blood than any Beast whatsoever, therefore it is good to take blood from him, to prevent the Yellows, or other Diseases that may follow.

What you are to do in case of Necessity, coming late to your Inn.

If you come late to your Inn, so that your Journey be great and earnest, and that your Horse will not eat till he hath drank, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his Drink be Milk given in the dark, lest the Whiteness make him refuse it ; this is both cordial and pleasant. If you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with Water lukewarm.

To give him Mare's Milk to drink, if he be poor.

If your Horse either by Labour, or any Surfeits, be brought low, lean and weak, give him Mare's Milk to drink many days together, and it will make him strong.

The best Times to water in the Winter.

The best Hours to water your Horse in the Winter (when he is at rest) is betwixt Seven and Eight in the Morning, or Four or Five in the Evening.

Not good to wash a Horse if he be hot.

It is not good to wash a Horse when he is hot, but you may wash him above the Knees, so that you do not wash his Belly, and that you ride him after he is washed, and so set him up and dress him. The purer the Water is wherein you wash your Horse, the more wholesom it is, so that it be not too extreme cold.

To light at every steep Hill.

When you travel, at every steep Hill light, both to refresh your Horse and yourself.

How a fat Horse is to have his Meat and his Water.

Let a fat Horse have his Water at four times, and not as much as he will drink at once, and let him stand two or three hours every day without Meat.

Rub.

Rubbing is good for a Horse.

Rubbing much, hard and well, doth profit, preserve, and it keeps both Legs and Body in Strength, and he doth much delight in it, and it doth better than much Meat.

Boiled Barley is good.

Boiled Barley is a great Fatner of a Horse.

To pick his Feet after Travel.

Cleanse and pick the Soles of his Feet ever after Travel, and stuff them well with Ox-dung, and anoint his Hoofs with Grease, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much Rest naught.

Much Rest is the Nurse and Mother of many Diseases.

Be careful to look to your Saddle.

When you ride, look often to your Saddle and your Horse's Shoes, and you shall find much more ease in your Journey.

A Horseman's Rule.

*If you do intend to keep your Horse in his Skin,
Go softly out, and come softly in.*

Riding softly.

Ride moderately the first two Hours, but after according to your occasions.

Trotters Oil is good to help stiff Limbs.

Trotters Oil is an excellent Ointment, being applied very warm to your Horse's Limbs, to nimble them, and to help Stiffness and Lameness: And Dog's-Grease is better; therefore never want one of them in the Stable.

*To bathe his Legs with cold Water, is good to keep his
Legs from Scabs and Swellings.*

Bathe the Fore-legs from the Knees and Gambrels downwards with cold Water, for it is wholesom, and both comforteth the Sinews, and prevents Scabs and Swellings.

To wash at the Stable-door, if Necessity requires.

If foul Ways compel you to wash your Horse's Legs, then do it with a Pail of Water at the Stable-door, rather
than

than to endanger him in Pond or River; and for walking, rather sit on your Horse's back to keep his Spirit stirring, than to walk him in your hand: for he will soon catch cold that way, the Wind and Air getting between his Saddle and Back.

Dressing upon Travel and Rest.

Dress your Horse twice a day upon Rest, and once upon Travel.

Blooding.

Spring and Fall are the best Times to take Blood from a Horse.

Ordering of Hunting Horses.

While he is at rest, let him have all the quietness that may be; let him have much Meat, much Litter, much Dressing, and Water ever by him, and let him sleep as long as he pleaseth. Keep him to dung rather soft than hard, and look that it be well-coloured and bright, for Darknes shews Grease, and Redness inward Heating. Let him be exercised and have Mashcs of sweet Malt, after his usual Scourings; or let Bread of clean Beans, or Beans and Wheat mix'd together, be his best Food, and Beans and Oats the most ordinary.

Sir Robert Chernock's Manner of Hunting in Buck-season.

He never takes his Horse up into the Stable during the Season, but hunts him upon Grass, only allowing him many Oats as he can well eat. And he approves of this to be a very good way, by reason that if there be any molten Grease within him, which violent Hunting may raise up, this going to Grass will purge it out. He hath rid his Horse three days in a week during the Season, and never yet found any hurt, but rather good by it, so that you turn your Horse out very cool.

The Ordering of your Running Horse.

Let him have no more Meat than will suffice Nature, Drink once in twenty four hours, and Dressing every day once at Noon only; let him have moderate Exercise Morning and Evening, Airings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no other Violence but in his Courses only. If he be very fat, scour oft; if of reasonable Stature, seldom; if lean, then scour but with a sweet Mash only: let him stand dark and warm, having many Cloths and much Litter, and that Wheat-straw only. Let him be empty before you run, and let his Food be the finest, lightest, and quickest of

of Digestion that may be. The Sweats are most wholesom that are given abroad, and the Cooling most natural which is given before he cometh into the Stable. Keep his Limbs with cool Ointments, and let not any hot Spices come into his Body. If he grow dry inwardly, wash'd Meats are most wholesom. If he grow loose, give him Wheat-straw in more abundance. And be sure do every thing neat and cleanly about him, which will nourish him the better.

Ordering of Coach-Horses.

Let them have good Dressing twice a day, Hay and Provender their Belly-full, and Litter enough to tumble on. Let them be walk'd and wash'd after Travel, for by reason of their many occasions to stand still, they must be enur'd with all Hardness, tho it be much unwholesom. Their best Food is sweet Hay, or well-dry'd Beans and Oats, or Bean-bread. Look well to the Strength of their Shoes, and the Galling of their Harness; keep their Legs clean, especially about their hinder Fetlocks, and let them stand in the House warmly clothed.

Ordering of the Pack and Cart-Horse.

They need no Walking, Washing, or Hours of Fasting; only dress them well, look to their Shoes and Backs, then fill their Bellies, and they will do their Labour. Their best Food is sweet Hay, Chaff or Pease, or Oat-hulls and Pease, or chopt Straw and Pease mix'd together. To give them warm Grains and Salt once a Week, will not be amiss; which will prevent the breeding of Worms, and such-like Mischief.



The Office of the Rider and Groom, and of Things belonging to him, viz. His general and particular Knowledge in Handling, Saddling, Mouthing, Backing and Riding of the Great Horse, or Horse of Pleasure.

Of the Stable, and what it ought to be built with.

TO begin first with the Winter house of the Horse, the Stable; you ought to place it in a good Air, and to be

be made of Brick, and not Stone, Brick being most wholesome and warmest, for Stone will sweat upon Change of Weather, which begetteth Damps, and causeth Rheums in Horses. There ought not to be nigh it any unfavoury Gutter nor Sink, no Jakes, Hog-fly or Hen-Rooft to annoy it, The Rack ought to be placed neither too high nor too low, and so well placed, that the Hay-dust fall not into his Neck, Mane, nor Face. The Manger ought to be of an indifferent height, made deep, and of one intire piece, as well for Strength as Convenience. Let the Floor be pitched, and not planked, and let there be no Mud or Lome-wall near it, for he will eat it, which will cause him to be sick; for Lome and Lime are suffocating things, and they will infect and putrefy the Blood, and endanger his Lungs, and spoil his Wind. Neither let any Dung lie near his heels, for that will breed kibed and scabby Heels.

Paving of Stables is better than Planked Stables, for these Reasons.

First, They are much more durable and lasting.

Secondly, They are less Charges by much.

Thirdly, For him to stand continually upon a pitched Floor, it emboldneth his Feet and Treading the more.

Fourthly, It is the most excellent thing that may be for Colts who are unshod, for it hardeneth their Hoofs, so that by Custom they will be as bold to go upon Stones, rocky and hard Ways, as Horses that are shod; neither will it suffer the Hoofs to grow broad in the manner of an Oyster: besides, the use thereof will make their Hoofs more tough, durable, and hollow, insomuch that when they come to be shod, they will carry their Shoes much longer.

To shew the Inconveniencies of a Planked Floor:

First, It is more slippery, on which account a mettled Horse may be endanger'd to be lamed or spoiled by some sudden Slip, which a pitched Stable is not so subject to.

Secondly, The Planks oftentimes shrinking, if the Horse be high-mettled and be subject to curvet, he may break a Plank, and so plunging may easily spoil or break his Leg.

Thirdly, When you put forth your Horse to graze in the Summer, the Sun will so dry the Planks, that they will warp and loosen the Pins, and make them give way; that so when a Horse that has gone for some Months before, not being handled, becomes wild and unruly, upon coming into the

the Stable, and feeling the Planks to give way under him, he will fall to flinging and leaping till he has dislocated the Planks, and not only both endanger himself, but his Fellows also.

Fourthly, Whereas you may imagine a planked Stable warmer than a paved one, I know the contrary; for your pitched Floors have no Vaults or Channels under them, like as your planked ones have, to carry away the Water that the Horses make, by which means the Horses lie over a dampish moist Vault; and besides, the evil Savour of the Horse-Piss will be ever in their Nose, which is very unwholesom and noisom, and many times the cause of many Infirmities. Neither can it be so warm as the other, for Chinks and Holes, which are made by the Awger through the Planks (which must always be kept open to let forth the Urine) give way to the cold Wind which cometh from thence, which cannot but be very unwholesom. Therefore I do affirm, that if your Groom do litter up your Horse well, so that he may lie soft and warm, he will prosper better than upon a planked Floor, provided it be laid even, not higher before than behind, more than will carry the Water to his hinder Feet, where there ought to be a small Gutter to carry it away; for by raising your Floor too much, his hinder Legs will swell, and so he will become lame, by reason he bears too much weight on his hinder parts.

Of the Care in the Choice of a Groom.

After you have bred Colts according to my Instructions, and that they prove to your mind, then the next Care you ought to have is of Grooms, which ought to be very expert in their Faculties, in which consisteth their making or marring; for you cannot say that a Colt three or four years old can be a perfect Horse, till he come to be handled and made fit for his Master's Riding, which is to be made gentle, shod, back'd, broken, ridden, way'd, mouth'd, and in brief brought to his utmost perfection. His Rider therefore must be an expert and able Horseman, and his Keeper every way as sufficient; otherwise what Defects you find in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider or to his Groom; therefore let your Care be, that they be both sufficient.

How a Rider ought to be qualified.

If you desire your Colts to come to their utmost perfection,

fection, then let your Rider be one who is cry'd up to be an experienc'd Horseman; he must not be of Life dissolute or debauch'd, nor of Nature harsh, furious, cholerick or hair-brain'd; for the least of either of these Vices are very unseemly in a Person of this Profession. He must be Master over his Passions, for he that is not, cannot make a good Horseman. And it is not much to be wondred at, if a Horse fall into Imperfections or Vices, for these his evil Conditions and Faults are not so much to be imputed to the Horse, but to the Teacher; for he is not a good Horseman that doth not bring his Horse to perfection, by sweet and gentle means, rather than by Correction and severe Chastisements: yet not but that I allow of Correction, and that it is as necessary as Meat, if it do not exceed the limited Bounds of Moderation, and that it be done at the very instant when he offendeth, and doth justly merit the same, or else he will not know the Cause why he is chastised; so on the other side, when he doth well, let him be cherish'd and made much of, which will encourage him to go forward in well-doing.

What manner of Person a Groom ought to be.

The Groom must be a Man that must truly love his Horse, and so shape his course towards him, as that the Horse may love and doat upon; for a Horse is the most loving Creature to Man of all other brute Creatures, and none more obedient to him. Wherefore if he be mildly dealt withal, he will be also reciprocal; but if he be harsh and cholerick, the Horse will be put by his Patience, and become rebellious, and fall to biting and striking: For the old Proverb is, *Patience once wronged will turn into Fury.* He must continually toy, dally and play with him, be always talking and speaking pleasing words unto him; he must lead him abroad in the Sunshine, and then run, scope and shew him all the delight he can; he must duly curry, comb and dress him, wipe, dust, pick and cleanse him, feed, pamper and cherish him, and be always doing somewhat about him, either about his Heels, or taking up his Feet, or rapping him upon the Soles. And he must keep him so well dress'd, that he may almost see his Face upon his Coat; he must keep his Feet stopt and daily anointed, his Heels free from Scratches and other Sorrances, and to have so vigilant an eye upon him, to oversee all his Actions, as well feeding as drinking, that so no inward Infirmary may seize upon him,

him, but that he may be able to discover it; and being discovered, may seek to cure it.

To Saddle and Bridle a Colt.

When your Horse is made gentle, take a sweet Watering-Trench, wash'd and anointed with Honey and Salt, put it into his Mouth, and so place it, that it may hang about his Tush; and then offer him the Saddle, but with that carefulness that you do not affright him therewith, suffering him to smell at it, to be rubbed with it, and then to feel it: then in the end fix it on, and girt it fast, and at what part and motion he seems most coy, with that make him most familiar. Then being thus saddled and bridled, lead him forth to water; then bring him in, and after he hath stood a little reined upon the Trench, an hour or more, take away the Bridle and Saddle, and let him go to his Meat till the Evening: then lead him forth as before, and when he is set up gently, take off his Saddle and dress him, and clothe him up for all Night. The way to make him endure the Saddle the better, is by making it familiar unto him, by clapping the Saddle with your Hand as it stands upon his back, to shake it and sway upon it, to dangle the Stirrops by his Sides, and to rub them on his Sides, and make much of him, and be familiar with all things about him, as straining the Crooper, fastning and loosening the Girts, or taking up and letting out of the Stirrops.

Of Mouthing.

When he will trot with the Saddle obediently, then you shall wash a Trench of a full Mouth, and put it into his Mouth, and throw the Reins over the fore-part of the Saddle, so that the Horse may have a full feeling of it; then put on a Martingal, and you shall buckle it at such length, that he may no more than feel it when he jirketh up his Head. Then take a broad piece of Leather, and put it about the Horse's neck, and make the two ends of it fast by platting, or otherwise, at the Withers and Midpart before his Weasand: about two handfuls below the Throple, betwixt the Leather and his Neck, let the Martingal pass, so that when at any time he shall offer to duck or throw down his Head, the Cavezan being placed upon the tender Gristle of his Nose, may correct and punish him, which will make him bring down his Head, and fashion him to an absolute Rein. Then trot him abroad, and if you find the Reins or Martingal grow slack, straiten them; for where there is no feeling, there is no Vertue.

Of

Of Backing.

When you have exercised your Horse thus, divers Mornings, Noons, or Evenings, and find him obedient, then take him into some ploughed Ground (the lighter the better) and after you have made him trot a good pace about you in your hand, and thereby taken from him all his wantonness, look and see whether your Tackling be firm and good, and every thing in its true and due place. You may then (having one to stay his Head and govern the Chasing-Rein) take his back, yet not suddenly, but by degrees, with divers Heavings, and Half-raising, which if he endure patiently, then settle your self; but if he shrink or dislike, then forbear to mount, and chase him about again, and then offer to mount, and do thus till he be willing to receive you. Then when you are settled, and have received your Stirrups and cherish him, put your Toes forward, and he that stays his Head, let him lead him forward half a dozen Paces, then cherish him; then lead him a little further and cherish him, and shake and move your self in the Saddle, then let him stay his Head, and remove your hand a little from the Cavezan; and as you thrust forwards your Toes, let him move him forward with his Rein, till you have made the Horse apprehend your own Motion of Body and Foot, (which must go equally together, and with Spirit also) so that he will go forward without the other assistance, and stay upon the restraint of your own Hand. Then cherish him, and give him Grass and Bread to eat; alight from his Back, then mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with Cherishings. Thus exercise him till you have made him perfect in going forward, and standing still at your pleasure.

Helps at first Backing.

When this is effected, you may lay by the long Rein, and the Band about the Neck, and only use the Trenches and Cavezan, and the Martingal, and let a Groom lead the way before you on another Horse, and go on straight forward, and stand still when you please, which will soon be effected, by trotting him after another Horse; and bring him home sometimes after the Horse, and sometimes equally with him, and sometimes before, so that he may fix upon no certainty, but your own pleasure: And be sure to have regard to the Well-carriage of his Neck and Head, and as the Martingal slacketh, so to streighten it.

What

What Lessons for what Horse.

When this Work is finished, then teach your Horse these Lessons: As if he be for Hunting, Running, Travel, Hackney, or the like, then the chiefest things you are to apply your self to, are to preserve a good Mouth, to trot freely and comely, to amble surely and easily, to gallop strongly and swiftly, to obey the Hand in stopping gently, and retiring willingly, and to turn on the other hand readily and nimbly. But if you intend him for the great Saddle, or the Use of the Wars, then although the Lessons be the same, yet they are to be done in a more punctual manner. So that if any Horse can be brought to the best, the easier must needs follow with little industry. And it is a Rule in Horsemanship, *That no Lesson which belongs to the Wars can be hurtful, or do injury to any Horse whatsoever, that is kept for any other purpose.* Whence it cometh, that any Horse for the Wars may be trained for a Runner, or Hunter, at pleasure; but every Runner, or Hunter, will not serve the Wars: and every Horse-man that can make a Horse for the Wars, may be a Jockey when he pleases; but no Jockey (that I know) can make a Horse for the Wars. Therefore I will run a middle way, and sute my Lessons to both purposes.

Helps and Corrections.

Before you teach your Horse any Lessons, you must know there are seven Helps to advantage him in his Lessons, to punish him for Faults gotten in his Lessons: And they be, the Voice, the Rod, the Bit or Snaffle, the Calves of the Legs, the Stirrop, Spur, and the Ground,

Voice.

The Voice is an Help when it is sweet and accompanied with Cherishings, and it is a Correction when it is rough or terrible, and accompanied with Strokes or Threatnings.

Rod.

The Rod is an Help in the shaking, and a Correction in the striking.

Bit or Snaffle.

The Bit is an Help in its sweetness, the Snaffle in its smoothness; and they are Corrections, the one in its hardness, the other in its roughness, and both in flatness and squareness.

†

Calves

Calves of the Legs

Are Helps when you lay them to the Horse's Sides gently, and Corrections when you strike them hard, because they give warning that the Spurs follow.

Stirrop and Stirrop-Leathers

Are Corrections, when you strike them against the hinder part of the Shoulder; and they are Helps, when you thrust them forward in a quick Motion.

Spur

Is a Help when it is gently deliver'd in any Motion that asks Quickness and Agility, whether on the ground or above the ground, and a Correction when it is stricken hard in the sides, upon any Sloth, or any Fault committed.

The Ground.

The Ground is an Help when it is plain and smooth, and not painful to tread upon; and it is a Correction when it is rough, deep, and uneven, for the Amendment of any Vice conceived.

Of large Rings.

When your Horse will receive you to and from his Back gently, trot forward willingly, and stand still obediently; then intending him for the Wars, or other purpose, (for these Lessons serve all occasions) you shall in some gravelly or sandy place, where his Footsteps may be discerned, labour him within the large Ring, that is, at least fifty Paces in compass. And having trod it about three or four times on the right hand, rest and cherish; then change the hand again, and do as much on the left hand, then rest and cherish; and change the hand again, and do as much on the right hand, ever observing upon every stop to make him retire and go back a step or two.

Thus labour him till he will trot his Ring on which hand you please, changing within the Ring in the manner of a Roman S, and doing it readily and willingly. Then teach him to gallop them as he did trot them, and that also with true Footing, lofty Carriage and brave Rein; ever observing when he gallops to the right hand, to lead with his left Fore-foot, and when he gallops to the left hand, to lead with the right Fore-foot.

†

Object.

Object. Now here is to be cleared a Paradox held by many of our Horsemen, which is, *That the Exercise of the Ring is not good for running Horses, because it raiseth up his Forefeet, and makes him gallop painfully, and so is an hindrance unto speed.*

Answ. But if they consider that this Habit (if it be taken) is soon broken, either by the Horse-man's Hand or Discretion, who hath power to make him move as he pleaseth; or if they will truly look into the Benefit of the Thing it self, they shall find it is the only means to bring a Horse to the true use of his Feet, and the nimble Carriage of them in all advantages. For every Runner of Horses will allow, that for a Horse (in his Course) to lead with his right Foot, is most proper; and when at any time he breaks or alters it, it must be disadvantage, because, (not well acquainted to lead with the other) he cannot handle it so nimbly. Now at his first backing, by the use of his Ring and Change of Hands, he will become so expert and cunning with both, that whatsoever mischance shall alter his Stroke, yet shall his Speed and Nimbleness keep one and the same Goodness.

Of Stopping.

When you come to the place of Stop, or would stop, by a sudden drawing in of your Bridle-Hand, somewhat hard and sharp, make him stop close, firm, and streight in an even Line; and if he errs in any thing, put him to it again, and leave not till you have made him understand his Error and amend it.

Advancing.

Now if you do accompany this Stop, with an Advancement a little from the Ground, it will be more gallant, and may be done by laying the Calves of your Legs to his Sides, and shaking your Rod over him as he stops.

If it chance at first he understands you not, yet by continuance and labouring him herein, he will soon attain unto it; especially, if you forget not to cherish him, when he gives the least shew to apprehend you.

Retiring.

After stopping and advancing, make him retire, as before shewed. And this Motion of retiring, you must both cherish and increase, making it so familiar with him, that no Lesson may be more perfect; neither must he retire in a confused manner, but with a brave Rein, a constant Head,
and

and a direct Line; neither must he draw or sweep his Legs one after another, but take them clean, nimbly and loftily, as when he trotted forward.

Of Bitting.

When your Horse is come to perfection in these Lessons, and hath his Head firmly settled, his Reins constant, and his Mouth sweetned; you may then (if you intend him for the Wars) take away his Trench and Martingal, and only use the Cavezan of four or three Pieces, that is, a Joint or no Joint in the midst; and to that Joint a strong Ring, and a Joint of each side, with Rings before the Joints, to which you shall put several Reins to use, either at the Post or otherwise. Into his Mouth you shall put a smooth sweet Canon-Bit, with a *French* Cheek sutable to the Proportion of the Horse's Neck; knowing that the long Cheek raises up the Head, and the short pulls it down. And with these you shall exercise the Horse in all the Lessons before taught, till he be perfect in them, without Disorder or Amazement.

Of streight Turns and Turnings.

When he is settled upon his Bit, then you are to teach him to turn roundly and readily in the streighter Rings; and of these there are divers kinds, and divers methods to teach them. But I shall fix upon two manner of streight Turns, as the Perfection from whence all Turnings are derived.

The one is, when a Horse keepeth his hinder Parts inward and close to the Post or Center, and so cometh about and maketh his Circumference with his hinder Parts, opposing face to face with his Enemy.

The first streight Turn.

You shall to the Ring in the mid-part of the Cavezan fix a long Rein of two fathom or more, and to the other Rings two other shorter Reins; then having saddled the Horse, and put on his Bit, bring him to the Post, and put the Reins of the Bit over the forepart of the Saddle, Bolsters and all, and fix them at a constant streightness on the top of the Pommel, so that the Horse may have a feeling both of the Bit and Curb. Then if you will have him turn to the right hand, take the short Rein on the left side of the Cavezan, and bringing it under the fore Bolster of the

the Saddle up to the Pommel, and there fix it at such a straitness, that the Horse may rather look from, than to the Post on the right side. Then let some Groom or skilful Attendant hold the right-side Rein of the Cavezan at the Post, governing the fore-parts of his Body to come about at large: Then yourself taking the long Rein into your hand, and keeping his hinder parts inward, with your Rod on his outward Shoulder, and sometimes on his outward Thigh, make him move about the Post, keeping his inward parts as a Center, and making his fore-parts move in a larger Circumference. Thus you shall exercise him a pretty space on one hand, till he grow to some perfectness; then changing the Reins of the Cavezan, make him do the like to the other hand. And thus apply him divers Mornings, and cherishing him in his Exercise according to his deservings, till you have brought him to that Readiness, that he will upon the moving of your Rod couch his hinder parts in towards the Post, and lapping the outward Fore-leg over the inward, trot about the Post swiftly, distinctly, and in as strait a compass as you can desire, or is convenient for the Motion of the Horse: and from trotting you may bring him to flying and wheeling about, with that swiftness, that both the Fore-legs rising and moving together, the hinder parts may follow in one and the same instant. When you have made him thus perfect in your hand, you shall then mount his back; and making some skilful Groom govern the long Rein, and another the short, by the Motion of your Hand upon the Bit, and soft Rein of the Cavezan, keeping the Horse's Head from the Post, and by the help of the Calf of your Leg, laid on his Side, and your Rod turned toward his outward Thigh, to keep his hinder Parts into the Post, labour and exercise him till you have brought him to that Perfection which you desire. Then take away the long Rein, and only exercise him with the help of the short Rein of the Cavezan, and no other. After take both the Reins of the Cavezan into your Hands, and exercise him for the Post; making him as ready in any place where you please to ride him, as he was at the Post.

The other streight Turn.

Now for the other streight flying Turn, which is to keep his Face fixt on the Post as on his Enemy, and to move about only with his hinder Parts, you shall take the same helps of the long Rein, and the short

Reins of the Cavezan, and govern them as before shew'd; only you shall not give the short Rein to the postward, so much liberty as before, but keep his Head closer to the Post, and following his hinder Parts with the long Rein, by the help of your Rod make him bring his hinder parts round about the Post; and observe, that as before he did lap one foot over another, so now he must lap the hinder Legs one over another. In this Exercise, exercise him as the former; then (after a perfectness) mount his Back, and labour him, as before shew'd. Then lastly, leaving the Post and all other helps, only apply him in such open and free places as you shall think convenient; for upon the finishing of this Work your Horse is made compleat, and can perform all things that can be required, either for the Service in the Wars, for the High-way, or any other galloping Pleasure.

How to help an ill Rein, and cure a Run-away Fide.

Many Horses are evil beholden to Nature, for giving them short Necks, and worse set-on Heads, and little beholden to Art to amend them; which causes many a good Horse to be left cureless of those two gross insufferable Faults, which are either a deform'd Carriage of the Head, like a Pig on a Broach, or else a furious running away, got by a spoil'd Mouth, or an evil Habit.

The Help.

If it be a young Horse at his first riding, then to his Trench; if an old, then to his Snaffle, (for I speak not of the Bit) but a pair of Reins, half as long again as any ordinary Reins, and Loops to fasten and unfasten at the Eye of the Snaffle, as other Reins have. Now when you see that the Horse will not yield to your Hand, but the more you draw, the more he thrusts out his Nose, or the more violently he runs away; then undo the Buttons of the Reins from the Eye of the Snaffle, and draw them through the Eyes, and bring them to the Buckles of the foremost Girt, and there button them fast: then riding the Horse in that manner, labour him with the gentle Motions of your Hand, coming and going by degrees, and sometimes accompany'd with your Spur, to gather up his Body, and to feel your Command, and in a short time he will bring his Head where you will place it. And for running away, if you draw one Rein, you turn him about in despite of all Fury; and if you draw both, you break his Chaps, or bring them to his Bosom. In the end,

end, finding himself not able to resist, he will be willing to obey.

Another Help for unconstant Carriage.

There is another foul Error in many Horses, which these Reins also cure; as this, When your Horse is either so withy-cragg'd (as the Northern Man calls it) or so loose and unsteddy-neck'd, that which way soever you draw your Hand, his Head and Neck will follow it, sometimes beating against your Knees, sometimes dashing against your Bosom, and indeed generally so loose and uncertain, that a Man knows not when he hath steady hold of him; a Vice wonderful incident to running Horses, especially the furious ones: In this case you shall take these long Reins, and as before you drew them to the Buckles of the Girts, so now Martingal-wise draw from the Eyes of the Snaffle, betwixt his Fore-legs to the Girts, and there fasten them. Thus ride him with a constant Hand, firm and somewhat hard, correcting him both with the Spurs and Rod, and sometimes with hard Twitches in his Mouth when he errs; and with a few weeks Labour, his Head will come to a constant Carriage, provided that you labour him as well upon his Gallop as his Trot, and leave him not till you find him fully reclaim'd.



Of the Office of the Feeder.

An Introduction to the Work, touching the Limitation of Time for preparing the Running Horse.

I Will not dispute the several Opinions of Men in this Kingdom, touching the keeping of Running Horses, because they are idle and frivolous. Only this I shall do, clear one Paradox; and that is, the Limitation of Time allow'd for the making ready of a Horse for a Match or Wager.

Some do affirm, that a Horse newly taken from Grass being foul, cannot be made fit under six Months; by which they rob their Masters of half a year's Pleasure, thrust him upon a tiring Charge, to make the Sport loathsome, and get nothing but a Cloke for Ignorance, and a few false got Crowns, that melt as they are possessed.

Their Reasons.

Yet as Hereticks cite Scripture, so these find Reasons to defend Want of Knowledge.

As, *The Danger of too early Exercise, the Offence of Grease suddenly broken, the moving of evil Humours too hastily, which leads to mortal Sicknes; and the Moderation, or helping of these by a slow Proceeding, or bringing of the Horse into order by degrees and time: or (as I may say) by an ignorant Sufferance.*

These Reasons have shew of a good ground, for too early Exercise is dangerous, but not if free from Violence.

To break Grease too suddenly, is an Offence insufferable; for it puts both Limbs and Life in hazard, but not if it be purged away by wholesom Scourings. The hasty stirring up of Humours in the Body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot chuse but breed Sicknes; but not where Discretion and Judgment evacuateth them, in wholesome, sweet, and moderate Airings.

Long Time inconvenient.

And for the Moderation of all these, by the Tedioufness of Time, as two Months for the first, two Months for the second, and as much for the last; it is like the curing of the Gangrene in an old Man: better to die than be dismembred, better lose the Price than bear the Charge. For I appeal to any noble Judgment, whose Purse hath experienced these Actions, if six Months Preparation, and the Dependents to it, do not devour up an hundred Pounds Wager.

Now I allow but of two Months time at any time of the Year whatsoever, for an old Horse, or an Horse formerly trained, for I speak not of Colts; if he does it not in two Months, he shall not do it in fifteen.

But reply they, no Scouring is to be allow'd, for they are physical; they force Nature, and so hurt Nature; they make Sicknes, and so empair Health: And that indeed nothing is comparable to the Length of Time, because Nature worketh every thing itself; and tho she be longer, she hath less danger.

I confess that Sibbesauce Scourings, which are stuff'd with poisonous Ingredients, cannot chuse but bring forth Infirmitie; but wholesom Scourings, that are composed of beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion Sicknes, nor
any

any manner of Infirmary, but bring away Grease and all Foulness, in that kindly and abundant sort, that one Week shall effect more than two Months dilatory and doubtful Forbearance.

I call it dilatory and doubtful, because no Man (in this lingering Course) can certainly tell which way the Grease and other Foulness will be voided; as whether in his Ordure, (which is the safest;) into Sweat, (which is hazardous;) into his Limbs, (which is milchievous;) or remain and putrefy in his Body, (which is mortally dangerous:) since the Issue of any, or all these, falls out according to the Strength and Estate of the Horse's Body, and the Diligence of the Feeder. And if either the one fail in Power, or the other in Care, farewell Horse for that Year.

All this, Envy cannot chuse but confess; only they have one broken Crutch to support them, which is, they know no Scouring, therefore they will allow of no Scouring.

Against Barbarism I will not dispute, only I appeal to Art or Discretion, whether Purgation or Sufferance, when Nature is offended, be the better Doers.

But they reply by a Figure call'd *Absurdity*, That whatsoever is given to any Horse more than his natural Food, and which he will naturally and willingly receive, is both improper and unwholesome. To this I answer, The natural Food of Man is Bread only, all other things (according to the Philosopher) are superfluous, and so to be avoided.

At this Argument both Humanity and Divinity laughs. For other Helps, as Physick, divers Meats, and divers Means, ordained for both, even by the Power of the Almighty himself, tell the Contemners hereof how grossly they err in this foolish Opinion. Nay, allow them a little Shadow of Truth, that things most natural are most beneficial, then it must follow, that Grass or Hay (which is but wither'd Grass) is most natural, and so most beneficial. Now Grass is physical, for in it is contain'd all manner of Simples, of all manner of Mixtures, as hot, cold, moist, dry, of all qualities, and all quantities. So that whatsoever I give (which is good) is but that which he hath formerly gathered out of his own nature; only with this difference, that what he gathereth is in a confused manner, clapping Contraries together so abundantly, that we are not able to judge where the predominant Quality lieth; and that which we compound is so govern'd by Art and Reason, that we

know how it should work, and we expect the Event, if it be not cross'd by some greater Disaster.

But will they bind themselves to keep the Running Horse only with Grass or Hay? They know then the end of their Labours will be loss. Nay, they will allow Corn, nay divers Corns, some nourishing and loosening, as Oats and Rye; some astringent and binding, as Beans; and some fatning, breeding both Blood and Spirit, as Wheat: nay, they will allow Bread, nay Bread of divers Compositions, and divers Mixtures, some before Heat, and some after, some quick of Digestion, and some slow. And if this be not as physical as the Scourings a good Horseman gives, I repent me that I have said any thing.

Nay, these Contemners of Scourings will allow an Egg, and that mix'd with other Ingredients. And for Butter and Garlick, they will use it, tho it be ever so fulsom; the reason is, because their Knowledge can arise to no higher a Stair in Physick, and authorized Ignorance will ever wage battel with the best Understanding: like foolish Gallants on St. George's Day, who neither having Ability to buy, nor Credit to borrow a Gold Chain, scorn at them that wear them; or *Martin Mar-Prelate*, that not having Learning worthy of a Deacon, found no felicity but in railing at Divine Fathers. There are another sort of Feeders, which in a contrary Extreme run beyond these into mischiefs, and those are they that over-scur their Horses, and are never at peace but when they are giving of Potions, (which they call Scourings) sometimes without cause, always without order, bringing upon an Horse such intolerable Weakness, that he is not able to perform any violent Labour.

From this too little, and too much, I would have our Feeder to gather a Mean; that is, first to look that his Simples be wholesom; then to the Occasion, that he be sure there is Foulness; and lastly, to the Estate of the Body, that he may rather augment than decrease Vigour: so shall his Work be prosperous, and his Actions without controulment. To conclude, two Months I allow for Preparation, and according to that time have laid my Directions. Mine humble Suit is, out of a sincere Opinion to Truth and Justice, so to allow or disallow, to refrain or imitate.

*The first Ordering of the Running Horse, according to the
several Estates of their Bodies.*

This Office of the Feeder, albeit in general it belong to
† all

all Horsemen, yet in particular it is most appropriate to the Feeder of the Running Horse; because other general Horses have a general way of feeding, these are artificial and pre-script from, full of Curiosity and Circumspection, from which whosoever errs, he shall sooner bring his Horse to destruction than perfection. You are to have regard to three Estates of a Horse's Body:

The first is, if he be very fat, foul, or either taken from Grass or Soil.

The second, if he be extreme lean and poor, either thro Over-riding, Disorder, or other Infirmary.

And the third, if he be in good and well-liking Estate, having had good Usage and moderate Exercise.

If he be in the first Estate of Body, you shall take longer time for his Feed, as two Months at the least; for he will ask much Labour in airing, great Carefulness in heating, and Discretion in scouring, and rather a strict than liberal hand in feeding. If he be in the second Estate of Body (which is poor) then take a longer time, and let his Airings be moderate, as not before and after Sun, rather to increase Appetite than harden Flesh; and let him have a bountiful hand in feeding, but not so much as to cloy him.

If he be in the third Estate of Body, which is a Mean betwixt the other Extremes, then a Month or six Weeks, or a Fortnight, or less, may be time sufficient to dyet him for his Match. Now as this Estate participates with both the former, so it would borrow from them a share in all their Orderings; that is, to be neither too early, nor too late in Airings; laborious, but not painful Heatings; nourishing in Scouring, and constant in a moderate way of Feeding.

To have an Eye to the particular Estate of a Horse's Body.

Now as you regard these general Estates of Bodies, so you must have an eye to certain particular Estates of Bodies. As if an Horse be fat and foul, yet of a free and spending nature, apt quickly to consume and lose his Flesh; this Horse must not have so strict a Hand, neither can he endure so violent Exercise as he that is of an hardy Disposition, and will feed and be fat upon all Meats and all Exercises.

Again, if your Horse be in extreme Poverty, through Disorder and Misusage, yet is by Nature very hard, and apt both soon to recover his Flesh, and long to hold it;

then over this Horse you shall by no means hold so liberal a hand, nor forbear that Exercise, which is of a tender Nature, a weak Stomach, and a free Spirit, provided always you have regard to his Limbs and the Imperfections of Lameness.

The first Fortnight's feeding of an Horse for a Match, that is fat, foul, or either newly taken from Grass or Soil.

If you match a Horse that is fat and foul, either by running at Grass or standing at Soil, or any other Means of Rest, or too high Feeding; you shall (after his Body be emptied, and the Grass avoided, which will be within three or four days) for the first Fortnight at least, rise early in the Morning before Day, or at the Spring of Day, according to the time of Year; and having put on his Bridle wash'd in Beer, and ty'd him up to the Rack, take away his Dung and other Foulness of the Stable; then dress him well, as in *The Office of the Keeper*. When that Work is finished, take a fair large Body-Cloth of thick Housewives Kersey, (if it be in Winter) or of Cotton or other light Stuff (if it be in Summer) and fold it round about his Body; then clap on the Saddle, and girt the foremost Girt pretty streight, but the other somewhat slack, and wisp it on each side his Heart, that both the Girts may be of equal streightness.

Then put before his Breast a Breast-Cloth sutable to the Body-Cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders; then take a little Beer into your mouth, and squirt it into the Horse's Mouth, and so draw him out of the Stable, and take his back, leaving a Groom behind you to trim up the Stable, to carry out your Dung, and to truss up the Litter. For you are to understand, that he is to stand upon good store of dry Litter both night and day, and it must be Wheat-straw or Oat-straw; for Barley-straw and Rye-straw are very unwholesome and dangerous, the one doth heart-burn, the other causeth scouring. When you are mounted, rack the Horse a foot-pace (for you must neither amble nor trot, for they both hurt Speed) at least a mile or two, or more, upon smooth and sound Ground, and (as near as you can) to the steepest Hills you can find; there gallop him gently up those Hills, and rack and walk him softly down, that he may cool as much one way, as he warmeth another. And when you have thus exercised him a pretty space, and seeing the Sun begin to rise, or else risen, rack down either to

some fresh River or clear Pond, and there let him drink at his pleasure. After he hath drunk, bring him gently out of the Water, and so ride him a little space with all gentleness, and not according to the Ignorance of some Grooms rush him presently into a Gallop; for that brings with it two Mischiefs, either it teaches the Horse to run away with you so soon as he is water'd, or else refuse to drink, fearing the Violence of his Exercise which follows upon it. When you have used him a little calmly, put him into a Gallop gently, and exercise him moderately, as you did before; then walk him a little space, after offer him more Water: if he drink, then gallop him again, after calm Usage; if he refuse, then gallop him to occasion Thirst. And thus always give him Exercise both before and after Water. When he hath drunk sufficient, bring him home gently, without a wet Hair, or any Sweat about him. When you come to the Stable-Door, provoke him to piss if you can, by stirring up his Litter under him; which if he do not, a little Custom will make him do it, and it is a wholesom Action, both for his Health and the sweet keeping of the Stable. This done, bring him to the Stall, and tie him up to the Rack, and rub him well with Wisps; then loose his Breast-Cloth, and rub his Head and Neck with a dry Cloth: then take off the Saddle, and hang it by; then take his Body-Cloth, and rub him all over with it, especially his Back, where the Saddle stood. Then clothe him up first with a Linen Sheet, and then over that a good strong Housing-Cloth, and above it his Woollen Body-Cloth, which in the Winter it is not amiss to have lined with some Cotton, but in the Summer the Kersey is sufficient. When these are girt about him, stop his Circingle with small Wisps very loose, for they will be the softer.

His Feet stopped with Cows-Dung.

After he is clothed, stop his Feet with Cow's-Dung; then throw into the Rack a little Bundle of Hay, hard bound together and well dusted, and let him eat it, standing upon his Bridle. When he hath stood an hour upon his Bridle, take it off, and rub his Head and Neck very well with a Rubber of hempen Cloth, for this is good to dissolve all gross and thick Humours from the Head. Then after you have made clean the Manger, take a Quart of sweet, dry, old and clean-dress'd Oats; for those that are unsweet, breed Infirmities; those that are moist, cause swelling in the

the Body; those that are new, breed Worms; and they which are half-dress'd, deceive the Stomach, and bring the Horse to ruin. Tho the black Oat is tolerable, yet it makes foul Dung, and hinders a Man's Knowledge in the State of his Body. This Quart of Oats you shall dress in such a Sieve as will let a light Oat pass thorow it; and if he eat them with a good Stomach, let him have another, and let him rest till Eleven of the clock. Then rub his Head and Neck as before, and dress him another Quart of Oats; then leave him till One of the clock, with the Windows close, for the darker you keep him the better; and it will cause him to lie down and take his rest, which otherwise he would not: therefore you are to arm the Stable with Canvas, both for Darkness, Warmth, and that the Filth may not come near him. Then at One of the clock use him as you did before, and give him another Quart of Oats in the same manner; making of him clean by taking away his Dung, and give him a little Knob of Hay, and leave him till the Evening. At the Evening come to the Stable, and having made all things clean, bridle as in the Morning, take off his Cloths, and dress him as before. Then clothe, saddle, bring him forth, and urge him to empty; mount, rack him abroad, but not to the Hills, if you can find any other plain Ground, and air him in all points as you did in the Morning. When you have water'd and spent the Evening in airing, till within Night, (for nothing is more wholesom, and consumeth Foulness more than early and late Airings;) rack him home to the Stable-door, and there alight and do as you did in the Morning, both within doors and without, and so let him rest till Nine at night; then at night come to him, and rub down his Legs well with Wisps, and his Face and Neck with a clean Cloth, and turning up his Cloths rub all his hinder Parts; then give him a Quart of Oats in the same manner as you did before, and after that a little Bundle of Hay; then toss up his Litter, and make his Bed soft, and leave him till the next Morning. Then the next Morning do every thing to him, without the least Omission, as hath formerly been declared; and thus keep him for the first Fortnight, which will so take away his Foulness, and harden his Flesh, that the next Fortnight you may adventure to give him some Heats.

Object. But to answer an Objection that may be urged, touching the quantity of Provender which is prescribed, being but a Quart at a Meal, seeing there be many Horses that

that will eat a larger Proportion; and to scant them to this little, were to starve, or at the best to breed Weakness.

Answ. I set not down this as an infallible Rule, but a Precedent that may be imitated, yet altered at pleasure: for I have left you this Caveat, That if he eat this with a good Stomach, you may give him another, leaving the Proportion to the Feeder's Discretion.

Four Considerations in giving of Heats.

First, That two Heats in the Week is a sufficient Proportion for any Horse, of what Condition or State of Body soever. That one Heat should ever be given on that day in the Week, on which he is to run his Match, as thus; Your Match-day is a Monday, your Heating-days are then Mondays and Fridays, and the Monday to be ever the sharper Heat, because it is the Day of his Match, and there are three Days betwixt it and the other Heat. If the Day be Tuesday, then the Heating-days are Tuesdays and Saturdays; if Wednesday, then Wednesdays and Saturdays, by reason of the Lord's-Day; if on Thursday, then Thursdays and Mondays, and so of the rest.

You shall give no Heat (but in case of necessity) in Rain or foul Weather, but rather defer Hours, and change Times; for it is unwholesom and dangerous. And therefore in case of Showers and uncertain Weather, you shall have for the Horse a lined Hood, with lined Ears, and the Nape of the Neck lined to keep out Rain; for nothing is more dangerous than cold Wet falling into the Ears, and upon the Nape of the Neck and Fillets.

And lastly, observe to give the Heats (the Weather being seasonable) as early in the Morning as you can, that is, by the Spring of Day; but by no means in the dark, for it is to the Horse both unwholesom and unpleasant, to the Man a great Testimony of Folly, and to both an Act of Danger and Precipitation.

The second Fortnight's Feeding.

You shall do all things as in the first Fortnight; only before you put on his Bridle, give him a Quart of Oats, then bridle him up and dress him, as before shew'd; then clothe, saddle, air, water, exercise and bring him home, as before shew'd: only you shall not put Hay into his Rack, but give it him out of your hand, handful after handful, and so leave him on his Bridle for an hour; then rub him, and after
other

other Ceremonies, sift him a Quart of Oats, and set them by; then take a Loaf of Bread that is three days old, and made in this manner:

The first Bread.

Take three Pecks of clean Beans, and one Peck of Wheat, mix them together, and grind them, and bolt it pretty fine, and knead it up with good store of Barm and Lightning, but with as little Water as may be; labour it in the Trough very well, and break it, and so cover it warm, that so it may swell: then knead it over again, and make it up in big Loaves, and so bake it well, and let it soak soundly, and when they are drawn, turn the bottom upwards, that so they may cool. At three days old give it him, for new Bread is hurtful. When you give it him, chip it very well, and cut some of it into small pieces, and put them into his Quart of Oats you had formerly sifted. About Eleven of the clock give him the same quantity of Oats, and let him rest till the Afternoon. At One of the clock in the Afternoon, if you intend not to give him a Heat that day, feed him with Bread and Oats as you did in the Forenoon, and so consequently every Meal following for that day.

But if you intend the next day to give him a Heat, (to which I now bend mine Aim) you shall only then give him a Quart of Oats clean sifted, but no Hay; and so let him rest till Evening.

At Four of the clock give him a Quart of clean sifted Oats, and after they are eaten, bridle him up, dress, clothe, saddle, air, water, exercise, bring home and order, as before shew'd, only give him no Hay at all. After he hath stood an hour upon his Bridle, give him a Quart of Oats; and after they are eaten, put on his head a sweet Muzzle, and let him rest till Nine at night.

The Use of the Muzzle.

The Use of the Muzzle being rightly made, is to keep the Horse from eating up his Litter, from gnawing upon Boards and Mudwalls, and indeed to keep him from eating any thing but what he receiveth from your own hands. They are made sometimes of Leather, and stamp'd full of holes, or else close, but they are unsavoury and unwholesome: nay, indeed all Leather is unpleasant. Besides, they are too close and too hot for him. The best Summer Muzzle (and indeed best at all times) is the Net-Muzzle, made of strong Packthread, and knit very thick and close in the bottom,

bottom, and so enlarged wider and wider upwards to the middle of the Horse's Head; then bound upon the top with Tape, and on the nether side a Loop, and on the farther side a long String to fasten it to the Horse's Head. The best Winter-Muzzle (and indeed tolerable at any time) is made of double Canvas, with a round Button, and a square Lettice Window of small Tape before both his Nostrils, down to the very bottom of the Muzzle, and upward more than a handful, and must also have a Loop and a String to fasten about his Head. At Nine of the clock at night, give him a Quart of clean Oats, and when they are eaten, put on his Muzzle, and toss up his Litter, and so leave him.

The next day early give him a Quart of clean Oats, rubbed between your hands with some Beer or Ale, and when he hath eaten them, dress him and saddle him as before; and being ready to depart, give him a new-laid Egg or two, and wash his Mouth after it with Beer or Ale, and so lead him away, and at the door provoke him to empty: then mount and back him gently to the Course, ever and anon making him smell another Horse's Dung.

When you are come within a mile of the Starting-Post, alight and take off his Body-Cloth and Breast-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again; then sending away your Grooms both with those Cloths, and other dry Cloths to rub with, let him stay at the end of the Course till you come: then your self rack your Horse gently up to the Starting-Post, and beyond, making him smell to that Post, (which you call the weighing-Post) that he may take notice of the beginning and ending of the Course. There start your Horse roundly and sharply, at near a three-quarters speed; and according to his Strength of Body, Ability of Wind, and Chearfulness of Spirit, run him the whole Course through. But by no means do any thing in extremity, or above his Wind, but when you find him a little yield, then give him a little ease, so that all he doth may be done with Pleasure, and not with Anguish; for this manner of training will make him take delight in his Labour, and so increase it: The contrary will breed discomfort, and make Exercise irksom. Also during the time you thus course him, you shall note upon what Ground he runneth best, and whether up the Hill or down the Hill; whether on the smooth, or on the rough, on the wet or on the dry, on the level, or on the Earth somewhat rising: and according as you find his Nature, so manage him for your own Advantage. When you have finished the
Heats,

Heats, and a little slightly galloped him up and down to rate his Wind and chear his Spirits, you shall then (the Groom being ready) ride into some warm Place, and with your glissing Knife, or scraping Knife, made either of some broken Sword-Blade, or some old broken Scythe, or for want of that, a thin piece of old hard Oaken Wood, fashioned like a long broad Knife with a sharp Edge, scrape off the Sweat of your Horse in every part (Buttocks excepted) till there will none arise, ever and anon moving him up and down. Then with dry Cloths rub him all over (Buttocks excepted) then take off his Saddle, and having glassed his Back, and rub'd it near dry, put on his Body-Cloth and Breast-Cloth, and set on his Saddle again and girt it; then mount and gallop him gently, and ever and anon rubbing his Head, Neck and Body, as you sit, then walk him about the Fields to cool him: and when you find he drieth apace, then rack him homewards, sometimes racking, and sometimes galloping; and by no means bring him to the Stable, till you find him thoroughly dry. When you are come to the Stable-door, entice him to empty; then set him up and tie him to the Rack, and (as having prepared it before) give him this Scouring, made in this manner:

The first Scouring.

Take a Pint of the Syrup of Roses, or a Pint of strong Honey'd-water, and dissolve into it of Cassia, Agarick and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, and jumble them well together in a Viol-Glass. Then being mull'd, and made warm at the Fire, and the Horse newly come from his Heat (as before shewed) give him this Scouring, for it is a strong one, and avoideth all manner of molten Grease and Foulness.

Ordering him after his Scouring.

When you have given it him, rub his Legs well, then take off his Saddle, and if his Body be dry, run slightly over it with a Curry-Comb, and after that the *French* Brush; and lastly, rub him all over with dry Cloths very well, and clothe him up very warm; and if the Weather be very cold, throw over him a loose Blanket. He must fast full two Hours after his Scouring, not departing out of the Stable, and keep him stirring therein, for it will work the better. After he hath fasted on the Bridle two hours, then take a handful of Wheat-Ears, and coming to him, handle the Roots of his Ears; then put your hand under his Cloths

next

next to his Heart upon his Flanks, and on the nether part of his Thighs; and if you find any new Sweat arise, or any Coldness arise, or if you see his Body beat, or his Breast move fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it shews there is much Foulness stirred up, on which the Medicine worketh with a conquering Quality, the Horse is brought to a little Sickness; therefore in this case you shall only take off his Bridle, put on his Collar, toss up his Litter, and absent your self (having made the Stable dark and still) for other two hours, which is the utmost end of that Sickness. But if you find no such offence, then give him the Ears of Wheat, by three or four together; and if he eat this handful, give him another, and so another or two. Then give him a little Knob of Hay well dusted, and draw his Bridle, and rub his Head well. An hour after give him a quart of clean Oats, and put two or three handfuls of split Beans amongst them, and see that they be very clean, and break amongst them two or three Shives of Bread clean chipt, and so leave him for two or three hours. At Evening before you dress him, give him the like quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, and when he hath eaten them, bridle him, dress and clothe him; for you shall neither saddle, or air him forth, because this Evening after his Heat, the Horse being foul, and the Scouring yet working in his Body, he may not receive any cold Water at all. After he is drest, and hath stood two hours on his Bridle, then wash three pints of clean Oats in Beer or Ale, and give them him, for this will inwardly cool him, as if he had drank Water.

After he hath eaten his wash'd Meat, and rested upon it a little, you shall at his feeding times with Oats and split Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each several, or simply of it self, according to the liking of the Horse, feed him that Night in a plentiful manner, and leave a Knob of Hay in his Rack when you go to bed.

The next day early, first feed, then dress, clothe, saddle, air, water and bring home as at other times; only have a more careful eye to his emptying, and see how his Grease and Foulness wasteth.

At his feeding-times feed as was last shewed you, only but little Hay, and keep your Heating-days, and the preparation of the day before, as was before shewed. Thus you shall speed the second Fortnight, in which your Horse having received four Heats, Horseman-like given him, and four Scourings, there is no doubt but his Body will be drawn inwardly clean;

clean; you shall then the third Fortnight order him according to the Rules following.

The third Fortnight's Feeding.

The third Fortnight you shall make his Bread finer than it was formerly. As thus ;

The second Bread.

Take two Pecks of clean Beans, and two Pecks of fine Wheat, grind them well, and searce them through a fine Raunge, and knead them up with Barm and great store of Lightning, and make it up as you did the former Bread. With this Bread, after the Crust is taken away, and being old, feed your Horse, as before shewed, for this Fortnight, as you did the former, putting it amongst his Beans and Oats; observing his Dressings, Airings, Feedings, Heatings and Preparations, as in the former Fortnight, only with these differences :

First, you shall not give your Heats so violently as before, but with a little more pleasure, as thus ; If the first Heat have violence, the second shall have ease, and indeed none to over-strain him or to make his Body sore. Next, you shall not after his Heats give him any more of the former Scouring, but instead thereof, instantly upon the end of the Heat, after the Horse is a little cooled and clothed up; and in the same place where you rub him, give him a Ball as big as a Hen's Egg, of that Confection which is mentioned in the *Office of the Farrier*, and goeth by this Title, *The true Manner of making those Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold, or Glanders, &c.*

The fourth and last Fortnight's Feeding.

The fourth and last Fortnight you shall make your Bread much finer than either of the former.

The last and best Bread.

Take three Pecks of fine Wheat, and one Peck of Beans, grind them on the black Stones, and boulter them through the finest Boulter you can get; then knead it up with sweet Ale, Barm, and new strong Ale and the Barm beaten together, and the Whites of twenty or thirty Eggs; but in any wise no Water at all, but instead thereof some small quantity of new Milk; then work it up. Bake it and order it as the former. With this Bread, having the Crust cut clean away,
and

with Oats well sunned, beaten and rubbed between your Hands, then new-winnowed, sifted and dress'd, with the purest split Beans, and some fine Chiltern Wheat, with any Simple, or any Compound, feed your Horse at his Feeding-times, as in the Fortnight last mentioned.

You shall keep your Heating-days the first Week or Fortnight, but the last Week you shall forbear one Heat, and not give any five days before the Match-day, only you shall give him strong and long Airings.

You shall not need this Fortnight to give him any Scouring at all. If this Fortnight, Morning and Evening you burn the best Frankincense in your Stable, you shall find it exceeding wholesome for him, and he will take wonderful delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give him any wash'd Meat, wash it in the Whites of Eggs, or Muscadine, for that is most wholesom and less purisy.

This Fortnight give him no Hay, but what he taketh out of your hand after his Heats, and that in little quantity, and clear dusted.

The last Week of this Fortnight, if the Horse be a foul Feeder, you must use the Muzzle continually; but if he be a clean Feeder, then three days before the Match is sufficient.

The Morning, the day before your Match, feed well both before and after Airing, and water as at other times; before Noon and after Noon, scant his Portion of Meat a little; before and after Evening Airing, feed as at Noon, and water as at other times, but be sure to come home before Sun-set.

Late at Night feed as you did in the Evening, and give him what he liketh, according to his Stomach, only as you can, forbear Bread and Beans.

This day you shall coul your Horse, shoe him, and do all extraordinary things of Ornament about him, provided that you do not give him offence to hinder his Feeding or Resting; for I have heard some Horsemen say, that when they had shod their Horses with light Shoes, the Night before the Course, that their Horse hath taken such notice thereof, that they have refused to eat, or lie down. But you must understand, that those Horses must be old, and long experienced in this Exercise, or else they cannot reach these subtil Apprehensions. But to pass by Curiosity, as plating of Tails, and all other unnecessary Ornaments,
E where.

whereby they do injury to the Horse, I shall advise you for necessary and indifferent things, that they be done the day before rather than in the Morning of the Course, because I would have him that Morning find neither trouble nor vexation.

The next Morning (which is the Match-day) come to him very early, and take off his Muzzle, rub his Head well, right his Cloths, and give them ease by wisping and using the plain Circingle; then give him a pretty quantity of Oats wash'd in Muscadine, or the Whites of Eggs; or if he refuse them, try him with fine-dress'd Oats mix'd with Wheat, or Oats simple: when he hath eaten them, if he be a slow Emptier, walk him abroad, and in the places where he uses to empty; there intice him to empty, which when he hath done, bring him home, and let him rest till you have warning to make ready. But if he be a free Emptier, let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to make ready, take off his Muzzle, and put on his Snaffle well wash'd in Muscadine; but before you bridle him (if you think him too empty) give him three or four Mouth-fuls of the wash'd Meat last spoken of, then bridle him up and dress him, and after pitch the Saddle and Girts with Cordwainer's Wax, set it on and girt it gently, so as he may have feeling, but no straitness: then lay a clean Sheet over the Saddle, over it his ordinary Cloths, then his Body-Cloth and Breast-Cloth, and wisp him round with soft Wisps; then if you have a Counterpane, or Cloth of State for Bravery sake, let it be fasten'd above all. Being now ready to draw out, give him half a pint of Muscadine, and so lead away.

In all your Leadings upon the Course, use gentle and calm Motions, suffering him to smell upon any Dung, and in especial places of advantage; as where you find Rushes, long Grass lying, Heath or the like, walk in and intice him to piss. But if you find no such Help, then in especial places on the Course, and chiefly towards the latter end; and having used the same means before, break some of the Wisps under him, and intice him to piss.

Also in your leading, if any white or thick Foam or Froth rise about the Horse's Mouth, with a clean Handkerchief wipe it away, and carrying a Bottle of clean Water about you, wash his Mouth now and then with it.

When you come to the place of Start, before you uncloth, rub or chafe his Legs with hard Wisps; then pick his Feet,

The Office of the Feeder.

51

Feet, uncloth, wash his Mouth with Water, mount his Rider, start fair, and leave the rest to God's Good-will and Pleasure.

Certain Observations and Advantages for every Feeder to observe in sundry Accidents.

There is no unreasonable Creature of Pleasure subject to so many disastrous Chances of Fortune as the Horse, and especially the Running Horse, both by reason of the Multiplicity of Diseases belonging unto them, as also the Violence of their Exercise, and the nice Tenderness of their keeping: and therefore it behoveth every Feeder to be armed with such Observations as may concern Mischiefs, and those Helps which may amend them when they happen.

Of Meat and Drink.

The first Observation that I shall arm the Feeder withal, is the true Distribution of Meat and Drink.

Let him observe, if there be any Meat, Drink, or other Nourishment, which you know to be good for him, yet he refuseth it; in this case you are not to thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle means and cunning enticements win him thereunto, tempting him when he is most hungry and most dry: and if he get but a bit at a time, it will soon increase to a greater quantity, and ever let him have less than he desireth; and that the sooner he may be brought unto it, mix the Meat he loveth best with that he loveth worst, till both be made alike familiar, and so shall the Horse be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

Observations for Lameness.

Our Feeder must observe, if his Horse be subject to Lameness or Stiffness, to Surbate or Tenderness of Feet, then to give him his Heat upon smooth Carpet Earth, or to forbear strong Ground, hard High-ways, cross Ruts and Furrows, till Extremity compel him.

Observations from the State of his Body.

Our Feeder must observe, that the strongest State of Body (which I account the highest and fullest of Flesh, so it be good, hard, and without inward Foulness) is the best and ablest for the performance of these Wagers: yet herein he must take two Considerations; the one the Shape of the Horse's Body, the other his Inclination and Manner of Feeding.

For the Shape of his Body ; There be some Horses that are round, plump, and close knit together, so that they will appear fat and well-shaped, when they are lean and in poverty. Others are raw-boned, slender, and loose-knit together, and will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul and full of gross Humours.

From his Inclination.

So likewise for their Inclination, some Horses (at the first) will feed outwardly, and carry a thick Rib, when they are inwardly lean as may be. There be others that will appear lean to the Eye, when they are only Grease. In this case the Feeder hath two Helps to advantage his Knowledge, the one outward, the other inward.

From his outward Handling.

The outward Help is the outward Handling and Feeling the Horse's Body, generally over all his Ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindermost Ribs.

If his Flesh generally handle soft and loose, and the Fingers sink into it as into Down, then he is foul without all question ; but if generally it be hard and firm, only upon the hindermost Rib is Softness, then he hath Grease and foul Matter within him, which must be avoided, how lean and poor soever he appear in outward Speculation.

The inward Help is only sharp Exercise and strong Scouring ; the first will dissolve the Foulness, the latter will bring it away.

Observations from the Privy Parts.

Our Feeder must observe his Horse's Stones, for if they hang down side, or low from his Body, then is he out of lust and heart, and is either sick of Grease, or other foul Humours ; but if they lie close, couched up, and hid in a small room, then he is healthful and in good plight.

Observations for the Limbs.

Our Feeder must observe ever the Night before he runs any Match, or sore Heat, to bathe his Legs well, from the Knees and Gambrels downward, either with clarified Dogs-Grease, (which is the best) or Trotters Oil, (which is the next) or else the best Hogs-Grease, which is sufficient ; and work it well in with your hands, and not with fire. For what he gets not in the first Night, will be got in the
next

next Morning; and what is not got in the next Morning, will be got when he comes to unclothe at the end of the Course: So that you shall need to use the Ointment but once, but the rubbing as often as you find opportunity.

Observations for Water.

Our Feeder shall observe, that albeit I give no directions for watering him after the Heats, yet he may in any of the latter Fortnights (finding him clean, and his Grease consumed) somewhat late at Night, as about Six of the clock, give him Water in reasonable quantity, being made lukewarm, and fasting an hour after it. Also if through the Unseasonableness of the Weather you cannot water abroad, then you shall at your watering Hours water in the House with warm Water, as aforesaid. If you throw a Handful of Wheat-Meal, Bran or Oat-meal finely powder'd (but Oat-meal is the best) into the Water, it is very wholesom.

Observations for the Ground to run in.

Our Feeder shall observe, that if the Ground whereon he is to run his Match be dangerous and apt for mischievous Accidents, as Strains, Over-reaches, Sinew-bruises and the like, that then he is not bound to give all his Heats thereon; but having made him acquainted with the Nature thereof, then either to take part of the Course, as a Mile, two or three, according to the Goodness of the Ground, and so to run him forth: and again (which we call turning Heats) provided always that he end his Heat at the Weighing-Post, and that he make not his Course less, but rather more in quantity than that he must run. But if for some special Cases he like no part of the Course, then he may many times (but not ever) give his Heat upon any other good Ground, about any spacious and large Field, where the Horse may lay down his Body and run at pleasure.

Observations from Sweat.

Our Feeder shall take especial regard in all Airings, Heatings, and all manner of Exercises whatsoever, to the sweating of the Horse, and the Occasions of his sweating: as if he sweat upon little or no occasion, as walking a Foot-pace, standing still in the Stable, and the like, it is then apparent that the Horse is faint, foul fed, and wanteth Exercise.

If upon good occasion, as strong Heats, great Labour, and the like, he sweat, yet his Sweat is white Froth, and like Soap-suds, then is the Horse inwardly foul, and wanteth also Exercise. But if the Sweat be black, and as it were only Water thrown upon him, without any frothiness, then is he clean fed, in good lust and good case, and you may adventure riding without danger.

Observations from the Hair.

Our Feeder shall observe his Hair in general, but especially his Neck, and those Parts that are uncovered; and if they lie sleek, smooth, and close, and hold the Beauty of their natural Colour, then is he in good case: but if they be rough or staring, or if they be discoloured, then is he inwardly cold at the Heart, and wanteth both Cloths and warm Keeping.

Many other Observations there are, but these are most material, and I hope sufficient for any Understanding.



The Office of the Ambler.

Observations in Ambling.

THERE is not any Motion in a Horse more desired, more useful, nor indeed more hard to be obtained unto by a right way, than the Motion of Ambling; and yet (if we will believe the Protestations of the Professors) not any thing in all the Art of Horsemanship more easy, or more several ways to be effected; every Man conceiving to himself a several Method, and all those Methods held as infallible Maxims, that can never fail in the Accomplishment of the Work.

Mens Opinions and Errors.

But they which know Truths, know the Errors in these Opinions: for albeit every Man that hath hardly a Smell of Horsemanship can discourse of a way how to make a Horse amble, yet when they come to the Performance of the Motion, their Failings are so great, and their Errors so gross, that for mine own part I never yet saw an exact Ambler. I confess, some one Man may make a Horse amble well and perfectly, (nay, more than one, peradventure many) and thereby assume unto himself the Name of Perfection;

fection; yet such a Man have I seen err grossly, and spoil more than his Labour was able to recompence.

But leaving Men's Errors because they are past my Reformation, I will only touch at some special Observations, which in mine Opinion I hold to be the easiest, the certainest, and readiest for the effecting of this Work; and withal glance at those Absurdities, which I have seen followed, tho to little purpose, and less benefit.

Ambling by the plough'd Field.

There is one commends the new-plough'd Lands, and affirms, that by toiling the Horse thereon in his Foot-pace, there is no way so excellent for the making of him amble; but he forgets what Weakness, nay, what Lameness, such disorderly Toil brings to a young Horse, nay, to any Horse; because the Work cannot be done without Weariness, and no Weariness is wholesome.

Ambling by the Gallop.

Another will teach his Horse to amble from the Gallop, by sudden stopping, a more sudden choking him in the Cheeks of the Mouth, thrusting him into such an Amazedness betwixt his Gallop and his Trot, that losing both, he cannot chuse but find out Ambling.

But this Man forgets not alone the Error before spoken (which is too great toil) but also spoils a good Mouth, (if the Horse had one) loses a good Rein (if there were any) and by over-reaching and clapping one Foot against another, endangers upon every step an Hoof-breach or Sinew-strain.

Ambling by Weights.

Another says there is no better Ambling than by Weights, and thereupon overloads his Horse with unmerciful Shoes of intolerable Weight, and forgets how they make him interfere, strike short with his Hind-feet, and tho his Motion be true, yet is so slow, that it is not worth his Labour. Another folds great Weights of Lead about his Feet-lock Pasterns, and forgets that they have all the Mischiefs of the former; besides, the endangering of incurable Strains, the crushing of the Crounet, and the breeding of Ring-bones, Crown-scabs and Quitter-bones.

Another loads his Horse upon the Fillets with Earth, Lead, or some other massy Substance, and forgets the swaying of

the Back, the overstraining of the Fillets, and a general disabling of all the hinder Parts.

Ambling in Hand, or not ridden.

Another struggles to make his Horse amble in his Hand, before he mounts his Back, by the help of some Wall, smooth Pale or Rail, and by chocking him in the Mouth with the Bridle-Hand, and correcting him with his Rod on the hinder Hoofs, and under the Belly, when he treadeth false, and never remembers in what desperate frantickness it drives an Horse, before he can make him understand his meaning; as Ploughing, Rearing, Sprauling out his Legs, and using a World of antick Postures, which once settled are hardly ever reclaimed: besides, when he hath spent all his labour, and done his utmost, as soon as he mounts his Back, he is as far to seek of his Pace, as if he had never known such a Motion.

Ambling by the Help of Shoes.

Another finds out a new Stratagem, and in despite of all opposition in the Horse, will make him amble perfectly, and thereupon he makes him a pair of hinder Shoes, with long Spurs or Plates before the Toes, and of such length, that if the Horse offer to trot, the Hinder-foot beats the Fore-foot before it. But he forgets that the Shoes are made of Iron, and the Horse's Legs of Flesh and Blood; neither doth he remember with what violence the Hinder-foot follows the Fore-foot, nor that every stroke it gives can light upon any place but the Back-Sinews, than which there is no part more tender, nor any Wound that brings such incurable Lameness.

Ambling by the Help of fine Lifts.

Another (out of Quaintness more than strong Reason) strives to make his Horse amble by taking of fine soft Lifts, and folding them streight about the Gambrels, in that place where you garter an Horse for a Stifle-strain, and then turn him to grass for a Fortnight, or more; in which time (saith he) he will fall to a perfect Amble, (for it is true, he cannot trot but with pain) then taking away the Lifts, the Work is finished.

But under the Correction of the Professors of this foreign Trick, for it is a *Spanish* Practice, I must assure them, that if they gain their purpose, they must offend the Members; if they hurt not the Limbs, they lose their labour: but however, this is most assured, that the Amble thus gained, must

must be disgraceful, or ambling and cringing in the hinder Parts, without Comeliness, Speed or clear Deliverance.

Ambling by the Hand only.

Another (and he calls himself the Master-Ambler of all Amblers) affirms, there is no true way of making an Horse to amble, but by the Hand only, and I am of this opinion, could this Secret be found out, or could a Man make a Horse do all that he imagined; but Horses are rebellious, and Men are furious, and the least of either of these spoils the whole Work: and it is impossible for any Man to fadge an Horse to a new Motion, utterly unknown, against which he will not resist with his uttermost power. Besides, to do this Action with the Hand only, it must only be done from the Horse's Mouth, and that Mouth must of necessity be altered from his first manner of riding; for to use all one Hand, must preserve all one Motion, and then where is his Ambling, which was not known at the first backing? Again, we strive at the first backing of an Horse to bring his Mouth to all Sweetness, his Rein to all Stateliness, and the general Carriage of his Body to all Comeliness. Now in this course of ambling by the Hand only, the Mouth must be changed from the Chaps to the Cheeks of the Mouth, which is from Sweetness to Hardness, his Rein must be brought from Constancy to Unconstancy; for the Eyes that did look upward, the Nose and Muzzle which was couched inward must be turned outward, and the general Comeliness of the Body's Carriage must be brought to Disorder and false Treading, or else he shall never accomplish the true Art of Ambling by the Hand only.

Ambling by the Tramel.

There is another, (I will not call him the best, because his Error may be as great as any) and he will make his Horse amble by the Help of the Tramel only; which I confess is nearest, the best and most assured way, yet he hath many Errors, as followeth.

Errors in the Tramel.

First, he loseth himself in the want of Knowledge for the length of the Tramel, and either he makes it too long (which gives no Stroke;) or too short (which gives a false Stroke;) the first makes an Horse hackle and shuffle his Feet confusedly, the latter makes him roll and twitch

twitch up his hinder Feet so suddenly, that by Custom it brings him to a String-halt, from which he will hardly be recovered ever after. Another loses himself and his labour by misplacing the Tramel, and out of a niceness to seem more expert than he is, or out of fearfulness to prevent falling (to which the Tramel is subject) places them above the Knee, and above the hinder Foot-hoof. But the Rule is neither good nor handfom; for if the Tramel be too long or loose, that it gives no offence to the Sinews, and other Ligaments, about which they must necessarily be bound, when they are raised so high, then they can give no true Stroke, neither can the Fore-leg compel the hinder to follow it. And if they be so short and strait, that the Fore-leg cannot step forward, but the hinder must go equal with it, then will it so press the main Sinew of the Hinder-leg, and the Veins and fleshy part of the Fore-thighs, that the Horse will not be able to go without halting before, and cringing and crambling his Hinder-parts so ill-favour'dly, that it will be irksom to behold it; besides, it will occasion Sweatings, and draw down Humours, which will be more noisom than the Pace will be beneficial.

Another makes his Tramel of such coarse and hard Stuff, or else girts it so strait, or leaves it fretting up and down so loose, that he galls his Horse's Legs, and leaves neither Hair nor Skin upon them; at the best it leaves such a foul Print and Mark upon the Legs, that every one will accuse both the Horse and his Teacher of Disgrace and Indiscretion.

As these, so I must conclude with the last Error of the Tramel, which is Mens Opinions; and tho it be the most insufficient, yet it hath the greatest power to oversway Truth: and that is, the Tramel is utterly unnecessary and unprofitable, and the Defender worthy of no Employment, alledging the Land only to be excellent.

The Errors I have already confuted; it now remains (after all these faults-finding) that I shew the truest, easiest, and that way which is most uncontrollable for the making of an Horse to amble, with all the Gracefulness and Perfection that can be required.

The best Way to amble an Horse.

When you are about to make an Horse amble truly, and without controulment; First, try with your Hand by a gentle and deliberate racking and thrusting of the Horse forward,

ward, by helping him in the Weeks of his Mouth with your Snaffle (which must be smooth, big, and full) and correcting him first on one side, then on another, with the Calves of your Legs, and sometimes with the Spur. If you can make him of himself strike into an Amble, tho shuffling disorderly, there will be much Labour saved; for that Proclivity or Aptness to amble, will make him with more easiness and less danger endure the Use of the Tramel, and make him find the Motion without stumbling or amazement: but if you find he will by no means either apprehend the Motions or Intentions, then struggle not with him, but fall to the use of the Tramel in the manner following.

The Form of the Tramel.

But before I come to the Use and Virtue thereof, I will shew you the Form and Substance whereof it ought to be made; because nothing hath ever done this Instrument more injury, than false Substances and false Shapes. Therefore some make these Tramels of all Leather, and they will either reach or break; the first mars the Work by uncertainty, the other loseth the labour.

Another makes it of Canvas, and that galls.

A third makes it of strong Lifts, and that hath all the Faults of both the former; for the Softness will not let it lie close, and the Gentleness makes it stretch out of all compass, or break upon every Stumble. And as these, so there are a world of other useless Tramels: for you must understand, that touching the true Tramel, the Side-Ropes must be firm without yielding an hair; the Hose must be soft, lie close, and not move from its first place; and the Backband must be flat, no matter how light, and so defended from the Fillets that it may not gall. And this Tramel must be thus made, and of these Substances:

First, For the Side-Ropes, they must be made of the best, finest, and strongest Packthread, such as your *Turkey-Thread*, and turn'd by the Roper into a delicate strong Cord; yet at the utmost not above the bigness of a small Jack-line, with a Noose at each end, so strong as is possible to be made; neither must these Side-Ropes be twined too hard, but gentle, and with a yielding Condition, for that will bring on the Motion more easy, and keep the Tramel from breaking. Now these Side-Ropes must be just thirty-six inches in length, and so equal one with another, that no difference may be espy'd.

For

For the Horse which must be placed in the Small of the Fore leg, and the Small of the Hinder-leg, above the Feet-lock; they must be made of fine Girt-Web, which is soft and pliant, and lined with double Cotton. Over the Girt-Web must be fastened strong Tubs of white Neats-Leather well tallowed, and suited to an even length, and stamped with holes of equal distance, which shall pass through the Nooses of the Side-Ropes, and be made longer or shorter at pleasure, with very strong Buckles. These Hose, the Girt would be four Inches in length, and the Tabs ten.

The Back-band being of no other use but to bear up the Side-Ropes, would (if you trammel all the Fore-legs) be made of fine Girt-Web, and lined with Cotton; but if you trammel but one side, then an ordinary Tape will serve, being sure that it carries the Side-Ropes in an even Line, without either rising or falling: for if it rise, it shortens the Side-Rope, and if it falls, it endangers tangling.

Thus you see what the true Trammel is, and how to be made; touching the Use, it thus followeth.

The true Use of the true Trammel.

When you have brought your Horse into an even smooth Path, without Rubs or Roughness, you shall there loose the near Fore-leg, and the near Hind-leg; then put to them the Side-Rope, and see that he stand at that just proportion which Nature her self hath formed him, without either straining or enlarging his Members, and in that even and just length, stay the Side-Rope by a small Tape fastened up to the Saddle. Then with your hand on the Bridle, straining his Head, put him gently forward, and if need be, have the help of a By-stander to put him forward also, and so force him to amble up and down the Road, with all the Gentleness you can, suffering him to take his own leisure, that thereby he may come to an understanding of his restraint, and your Will for the Performance of the Motion; and though he snapper or stumble, or peradventure fall now and then, yet it matters not, do you only stay his Head, give him leave to rise, and with all gentleness put him forward again, till finding his own fault, and understanding the Motion, he will become perfect, and amble in your Hand to your contentment. And that this may be done with more ease and less amazement to the Horse, it is not amiss (at his first Trampling) that you give your Side-Ropes more length than ordinary, both that the Twitches may be less sudden

sudden, and Motion coming more gently, the Horse may sooner apprehend it.

But as soon as he comes to any perfectness, then instantly put the Side-Ropes to their true length. For an Inch too long, is a Foot too slow in the Pace; and an Inch too short causeth Rolling, a Twitching up of the Legs, and indeed a kind of plain Halting.

When to alter the Tramel.

When the Horse will thus amble in your Hand perfectly, being tramelled on one side, you shall then change them to the other side, and make him amble in your hand as you did before. And thus you shall do, changing from one side to another, till with this Half-Tramel he will run and amble in your hand, without snappering or stumbling, both readily and swiftly. When this is attained unto, which cannot be above two or three hours labour, (if there be any tractableness) you may then put on the whole Tramel, and the broad flat-back Band, trameling both sides equally; and so run him in your hand (at the utmost length of the Bridle) up and down the Road at divers times; then pause, cherish, and to it again: and thus apply him, till you have brought him to that Perfection, that he will amble swiftly, truly and readily, when, where, and how you please; then put him upon uneven and uncertain ways, as up hill and down-hill, where there are Clots and Roughness, and where there is Hollowness and false Treading.

When to mount his Back.

Now when he is perfect in your Hand upon all these, you may then adventure to mount his Back, which (if you please) you may first do by a Boy, or Groom; making the Horse amble under him, whilst you stay his Head to prevent danger, or to see how he striketh. Then after mount your self, and with all gentleness and lenity increasing his Pace more and more, till you come to the height of Perfection. And thus as you did before in your Hand, so do now on his Back, first with the whole Tramel, then with the half, and changing the Tramel oft, first from one side, then to another, then altering Grounds, till you find that exquisiteness which you desire; and this must be done by daily Exercise and Labour, as twice, thrice, sometimes oftener in the day.

When

When to Journey.

When you have obtain'd your Wish in the Perfection of his Stroke, the Nimbleness of his Limbs, and the good Carriage of his Head and Body, you may then take away the Tramel altogether, and exercise him without it. But this Exercise I would have upon the High-way, (and not Horse-courser like) in a private smooth Road, for that affords but a couzening Pace, which is left upon every small Weariness; therefore take the High-way forward for three, four, or five miles in a Morning, more or less, as you find his Aptness and Ability. Now if in this Journeying, either through Weariness, Ignorance or Peevishness, you find in him willingness to forsake his Pace, then (ever carrying in your Pocket the Half-Tramel) alight and put them on, and so exercise him in them, and now and then give him ease, bring him home in his true Pace. This Exercise you shall follow day by day, and every day increasing it more and more, till you have brought him from one mile to many; which done, you may then give him ease, as letting him rest a day or two, or more, and then apply him again: and if you find in him neither error nor alteration, then you may conclude your Work is finish'd.

But if any alteration do happen (as many fantastick Horses are subject unto) if it be in the Motion of his Pace, then with your hand reform it. But if that fail, then the use of the Half-Tramel will never fail you.

Now if the Error proceed from any other occasion, look seriously into the cause thereof, and taking that away, the effect will soon cease; for you are to understand, that in this manner of teaching him to amble, you are forbidden no help whatsoever which belongs unto Horsemanship, as Chain, Cavezan, Musroul, Head-strain, Martingal, Bit, or any other necessary Instrument, because this Motion is not drawn from the Mouth, but from the Limbs.

Many things else might be spoken on this Subject, but it would only load Paper, and weary Memory; and I am only at short Essays, and true Experiments, therefore take this as sufficient.



The Office of the Buyer, wherein is shew'd all the Perfections and Imperfections that are or can be in a Horse.

Observations and Advertisements for any Man when he goes about to buy an Horse.

THERE is nothing more difficult in all the Art of Horsemanship, than to set down constant and uncontrollable Resolutions, by which to bind every Man's Mind to Unity of Consent in the buying of an Horse; for, according to the old Adage, *What is one Man's Meat, is another Man's Poison*; what one affects, another dislikes. But to proceed according to the Rule of Reason, the Precepts of the Antients, and the modern Practice of our conceived Opinions, I will as briefly as I can (and the rather, because it is a Labour I never undertook in this wise before) shew you those Observations and Advertisements which may fortify you in any hard Election.

The End for which to buy.

First therefore you are to observe, that if you elect an Horse for your Heart's Contentment, you must consider the End and Purpose for which you buy him; as whether for the Wars, Running, Hunting, Travelling, Draught or Burden: every one having their several Characters, and their several Faces both of Beauty and Uncomeliness.

But because there is but one Truth and one Perfection, I will under the Description of the perfect and untainted Horse shew all the Imperfections and Attendures, which either Nature or Mischance can put upon him of greatest Deformity.

Let me then advise you that intend to buy an Horse, to acquaint yourself with all the true Shapes and Excellencies which belong to a Horse, whether it be in his natural and true Proportion, or in any accidental or outward Increase or Decrease of any Limb or Member; and from their Contraries, to gather all things whatsoever, that may give dislike or offence.

Election

Election how divided.

To begin therefore with the first Principle of Election, you shall understand they are divided into two especial Heads, the one general, the other particular.

The General Rule.

The general Rule of Election is, First, The End for which you buy; then his Breed or Generation, his Colour, his Pace, and his Stature. These are said to be general, because they have a general Dependance upon every Man's several Opinion: as the first, which is the End for which you buy, is a thing shut up only in your own Bosom.

Of Breed.

The other, which is Breed, you must either take it from faithful Report, your own Knowledge, or from some known and certain Characters, by which one Strain, or one Country, is distinguish'd from another: as the *Neapolitan* is known by his Hawk-Nose, the *Spaniard* by his small Limbs, the *Barbary* by his fine Head and deep Hoof, the *Dutch* by his rough Legs, the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth of divers others.

Of Colour.

As for his Colour, tho there is no Colour exempt from Goodness, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed than others; as the Dapple-Grey for Beauty, the Brown-Bay for Service, the Black with silver Hairs for Courage, and the Liard and true mix'd Roan for Countenance. As for the Sorrel, the Black without White, and the unchangeable Iron-Grey, are reputed Cholerick; the bright Bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black with white Marks, are Sanguinists; the Black, White, Yellow, Dun, Kite-glew'd and the Pye-bald, are Phlegmatick; and the Chesnut, the Mouse-dun, the Red-Bay, the Blue-Grey, are Melancholy.

Pace, as Trotting.

Now for his Pace, which is either Trot, Amble, Rack or Gallop, you must refer it to the End also for which you buy; as if it be for the Wars, Running, Hunting, or your own Pleasure, then the Trot is most tolerable, and this Motion you shall know by a cross moving of the Horse's Limbs; as when the Fore-leg, and the near Hinder-Leg, or the near

†

Fore-

Fore-leg and the far Hinder-leg move and go forward in one instant, and in this Motion, the nearer the Horse taketh his Limbs from the ground, the opener, the evener, and the shorter is his Pace: for to take up his Feet slovenly, shews Stumbling and Lameness; to tread narrow or cross, shews Interfering or Failing; to step uneven, shews Toil and Weariness; and to tread long, shews Over-reaching.

Ambling.

Now if you elect for Ease, great Persons Seats, or long Travel, then Ambling is required. And this Motion is contrary to Trotting, for now both the Feet on one side must move equally together; that is, the far Fore-leg and the far Hinder-leg, and the near Fore-leg and the near Hinder-leg. And this Motion must go just, large, smooth and nimble; for to tread false, takes away all Ease; to tread short, rides no ground; to tread rough, shews rolling; and to tread un-nimble shews a false Pace that never continueth, as also Lameness.

Racking.

If you elect for Buck-hunting, galloping on the Highway post, Hackney, or the like, then a racking Pace is required: and this Motion is the same that Ambling is, only it is in a swifter Time, and a shorter Tread; and tho it rid not so much ground, yet it is a little more easy.

Galloping.

Now to all these Paces must be joined a good Gallop, which naturally every trotting and racking Horse hath: the Ampler is a little unapt thereunto, because the Motions are both one, so that being put to a greater Swiftnes of Pace than formerly he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his Legs confusedly, and out of order, and being train'd gently, and made to understand the Motion, he will as well undertake it as any trotting Horse whatsoever. Now in a good Gallop you are to observe these Virtues: first that the Horse which taketh up his Feet nimbly from the Ground, but doth not raise them high, that neither rolleth nor beateth himself, that stretcheth out his Fore-legs, follows nimbly with his hinder, and neither cutteth under his Knee, (which is called the swift Cut) nor crosseth, nor claps one Foot on another, and ever leadeth with his far Fore-foot, and not with the near; he is said ever to gallop comely and most true, and he is the fittest for Speed or any swift Employment.

F

gallop

gallop round, and raise his Fore-feet he is then said to gallop strongly, but not swiftly, and is fittest for the great Saddle, the Wars and strong Encounters: if he gallop slow, yet sure, he will serve for the High-way; but if he labour his Feet confusedly, and gallop painfully; then he is good for no galloping Service; besides, it shews some hidden Lameness.

His Stature.

Lastly, touching his Stature, it must be referred to the End for which you buy, ever observing that the biggest and strongest are fittest for strong Occasions, and great Burdens, strong Draughts, and double Carriage; the middle size, for Pleasure and general Employments; and the least for Ease, Street-Walks, and Summer-Hackney.

The particular Rule.

Now touching the particular Rule of Election, it is contain'd in the Discovery of natural Deformities, accidental outward Sorrances, or inward hidden Mischiefs, which are so many and so infinite, thar it is a World of Work to explain them; yet for Satisfaction sake, I will in as methodical manner as I can, shew what you are to observe in this Occasion.

How to stand to View.

When a Horse is brought unto you to buy (being satisfied for his Breed, his Pace, Colour and Stature) then see him stand naked before you, and placing your self before his Face, take a strict View of his Countenance, and the Chearfulness thereof; for it is an excellent Glass wherein to behold his Goodness and best Perfections. As thus;

His Ears.

If his Ears be small thin, sharp, short, prick'd and moving; or if they be long, yet well set on, and well carried, it is a Mark of Beauty, Goodness and Mettle: but if they be thick, laved or lolling, wide set and unmoving, then are they the signs of Dulness, Doggedness, and Evil-nature.

His Face.

If his Face be lean his Forehead swelling outward, the Mark or Feather in his Face set high, as above his Eyes, or at the top of his Eyes; if he have a white Star or white Ratch of an indifferent size, and even placed, or a white Snip on his Nose or Lip; all are Marks of Beauty and Goodness.

ness. But if his Face be fat, cloudy or skouling, his Forehead flat as a Trencher, (which we call Mare-faced) for the Marks in his Forehead stands low, as under his Eyes; if his Star or Ratch stand awry, or in an evil posture, or instead of a Snip, his Nose be raw and unhairly, or his Face generally bald; all are signs of Deformity.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, big, black, shining, starting or staring from his Head, if the Black of the Eye fill the Pit or outward Circumference, so that in the moving, none (or very little) of the White appeareth, all are signs of Beauty, Goodness, and material: but if his Eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion, if they be little (which we call Pig-eyed) both are uncomely signs of Weakness; if they be red and fiery, take heed of Moon-Eyes, which is next door to Blindness; if white and walled, it shews a weak Sight and unnecessary starting or finding of Buggards; if with white Specks, take heed of the Pearl, Pin and Web; if they water or shew bloody, it shews Bruises; and if any Matter, they shew old Over-riding, festered Rheums or violent Strains. If they look dead or dull, or are hollow, or much sunk, take heed of Blindness at the best. The best is of an old decrepit Generation, if the Black fill not the Pit, but the White is always appearing; or if in moving, the White or Black be seen in equal quantity, it is a sign of Weakness and a dogged Disposition.

His Cheeks and Chaps.

If in handling his Cheeks or Chaps, you find the Bones lean or thin, the Space wide between them, the Thropple or Windpipe big as you can gripe, and the void place without Knots or Kernels; and generally the Jaws so great, that the Neck seemeth to couch within them, they are excellent Signs of great Wind, Courage and Soundness of Head and Body. But if the Chaps be fat and thick, the Space between them closed up with gross Substance, and the Thropple little, all are signs of short Wind, and much inward Foulness. If the void place be full of Knots and Kernels, take heed of the Strangle or Glaunders; at the best, the Horse is not without a foul Cold. If his Jaws be so strait that his Neck swelleth above them, if it be no more than natural, it is only an uncomely Sign of short Wind, and Purfiness or Grossness; but if the Swelling be long, and close by his

his Chaps like a Whetstone, then take heed of the Vives, or some other unnatural Imposthume.

His Nostrils and Muzzle.

If his Nostrils be open, dry, wide and large, so as upon any straining the inward Redness is discovered; and if his Muzzle be small, his Mouth deep, and his Lips equally meeting, then all are good Signs of Wind, Health and Courage. But if his Nostrils be strait, his Wind is little; if his Muzzle is gross, his Spirit is dull; if his Mouth be shallow, he will never carry a Bit well; and if his Upper-Lip will not reach his nether, Old-Age or Infirmary hath mark'd him for Carrion. If his Nose be moist and dropping, if it be clear Water, it is a Cold; if foul Matter, then beware of Glanders: if both Nostrils run, it is hurtful; but if one, then most dangerous.

His Teeth.

Touching his Teeth and their Virtues, they are set down in a particular Chapter; only remember you never buy an Horse that wanteth any, for as good loose all almost as one.

His Breast.

From his Head look down to his Breast, and see that it be broad, outswelling, and adorned with many Features; for that shews Strength and Durance. The little Breast is uncomely, and shews Weakness; the narrow Breast is apt to stumble, fall and interfere before; the Breast that is hidden inward, and wanteth the Beauty and Division of many Feathers, shews a weak-armed Heart, and a Breast that is unwilling and unfit for any violent Toil or strong Labour.

His Fore-Thighs.

Next look down from his Elbow to his Knees, and see that those Fore-Thighs be rush-grown, well-horn'd within, sinew'd, fleshy, and out-swelling, for they are good signs of Strength; the contrary shew Weakness, and are unnatural.

His Knees.

Then look on his Knees, and see that they carry a Proportion, be lean, sinewy, and close-knit, for they are good and comely; but if one be bigger and rounder than another, the Horse hath receiv'd mischief; if they be gross, the
Horse

Horse is gouty ; if they have Scars, or Hair broken, it is a true mark of a stumbling Jade, and a perpetual Faller.

His Legs.

From his Knees look down to his Legs, to his Pasterns ; and if you find them lean, flat, and sinewy, and the inward Bought of his Knee without Seams, or Hair-broken ; then he shews good Shape and Soundness. But if on the inside of the Leg you find hard Knots, they are Splinters ; if on the outside, they are Skrews or Excrescencies ; if under his Knees be Scabs on the inside, it is the swift Cut, and he will ill endure galloping ; if above his Pasterns on the inside you find Scabs, it shews interfering ; but if the Scabs be generally over his Legs, it is either extreme foul Keeping, or else a Spice of the Mange : if his Flesh be fat, round, and fleshy, he will never endure Labour ; and if on the inward Bought of his Knees you find Seams, Scabs, or Hair broken, it shews a Mallender, which is a cancerous Ulcer.

His Pasterns.

Look then on his Pastern-Joint and his Pastern ; the first must be clear and well knit together, the other must be short, strong, and upright standing : for if the first be big or swell'd, take heed of Sinew-Strains and Gourdings ; if the other be long, weak or bending, the Limbs will be hardly able to carry the Body without tiring.

His Hoofs.

For the Hoofs in general, they should be black, smooth, tough, rather a little long than round, deep, hollow, and full of sounding : for white Hoofs are tender, and carry a Shoe ill ; a rough gross-seam'd Hoof shews Old-Age or Over-heating. A brittle Hoof will carry no Shoe at all ; an extraordinary round Hoof is ill for foul Ways and deep Hunting. A flat Hoof that is pumiced, shews Foundring ; and a Hoof that is empty and hollow-sounding, shews a decay'd inward part, by reason of some Wound or dry Founder. As for the Crown of the Hoof, if the Hair lie smooth and close, and the Flesh flat and even, then all is perfect ; but if the Hair be staring, the Skin scabbed, and the Flesh rising, then look for a Ring-bone, or a Crown-scab, or a Quitter-bone.

The Setting on of his Head, his Crest and Mane.

After this, stand by his side, and first look to the setting on of his Head, and see that it stand neither too high nor too low, but in a direct Line; that his Neck be small at the setting on of his Head, and long, growing deeper to the Shoulders, with an high, strong, and thin Mane, long, soft, and somewhat curling; for these are beautiful Characters: whereas to have the Head ill set on, is the greatest Deformity; to have any Bigness or Swelling in the Nape of the Neck, shews the Pole-Evil, or Beginning of a Fistula; to have a short thick Neck like a Bull, to have it falling at the Withers, to have a low, weak, a thick or falling Crest, shews want both of Strength and Mettle; to have much Hair on the Mane, shews intolerable Dulness; to have it too thin, shews Fury; and to have none or shed, shews the Worm in the Mane, the Itch, or else plain Manginess.

His Back, Ribs, Fillets, Belly and Stones.

Look on the Chine of his Back, that it be broad, even, and strait, his Ribs well compassed and bending outward, his Fillets upright, strong, and short, and not above a handful between his last Rib and his Huckle-bone. Let his Belly be well let down, yet hidden within his Ribs, and let his Stones be well truss'd up to his Body, for all these are Marks of Health and good Perfection; whereas to have his Chine narrow, he will never carry a Saddle without wounding; and to have it bending or saddle-back'd, shews Weakness.

To have his Ribs flat, there is not liberty for Wind.

To have his Fillets hanging, long or weak, he will never climb a Hill nor carry a Burden. And to have his Belly clung up or gaunt, or his Stones hanging down loose or aside, they are both signs of Sicknes, Tenderness, Foundering in the Body, and Unaptness for Labour.

His Buttocks.

Then look upon his Buttocks, and see that they be round, plump, full, and in an even level with his Body; or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread forth at the setting on of the Tail, for these are comely and beautiful. The narrow Pin-Buttock, the Hog or Swine-Rump, and the falling and down-let Buttock are full of Deformity, and shew both

both an Injury in Nature, and that they are neither fit or becoming for Pad, Foot-Cloth or Pillion.

His Hinder-Thighs.

Then look to his Hinder-Thighs or Gaskings, if they be well let down even to the middle Joint, thick, brawny, full and swelling; for that is a great Argument of Strength and Goodness, whereas the lank slender Thighs shew Disability and Weakness.

His Gambrels.

Then look upon the Middle-Joint behind, and if it be nothing but Skin and Bone, Veins and Sinews, and rather a little bending than too strait, then it is perfect as it should be. But it hath Chaps or Sores on the inward Bought or Bending, then that is a Sellander. If the Joint be swell'd generally all over, then he hath got a Blow or Bruise; if the Swelling be particular, as in the Pit or hollow Part, or on the inside, and the Vein full and proud, if the Swelling be soft, it is a Blood-spavin; if hard, a Bone-spavin: but if the Swelling be just behind, before the Knuckle, then it is a Curb.

Hinder-Legs.

Then look to his Hinder legs: if they be lean, clean, flat and sinewy, then all is well; but if they be fat, they will not endure Labour. If they be swell'd, the Grease is molten in them. If he be scabbed above the Pasterns, he hath the Scratches; if he have Chaps under his Pasterns, he hath Rains: and none of these but are noisom.

His Tail.

Lastly, for the setting on of his Tail, where there is a good Buttock, the Tail can never stand ill; and where there is an evil Buttock, there the Tail can never stand well; for it ought to stand broad, high, flat, and couched a little inward. Thus I have shew'd you the true Shapes and true Deformities, you may in your choice please your own Fancies.

An uncontroulable Way to know the Age of an Horse.

There are seven outward Characters, by which to know the Age of every Horse; as namely, his Teeth, his Hoofs, his Tail, his Eyes, his Skin, his Hair, and the Bars in his Mouth.

His Teeth.

If you would know his Age by his Teeth, you must

understand that an Horse hath in his Head just forty Teeth; that is to say, six great Wong-Teeth above, and six below on one side, and as many on the other, which maketh twenty four, and are called his Grinders: then six above and six below, in the fore-part of his Mouth, which are call'd Gatherers, and make thirty six. Then four Tusshes, one above and one below on one side, and are called the Bit-Teeth, which make just forty.

Now the first Year he hath his Foal's Teeth, which are only Grinders and Gatherers, but no Tusshes; and they be small, white, and bright to look on.

The second Year he changeth the four foremost Teeth in his Head, that is, two above, and two below, in the midst of the Rows of the Gatherers; and they are browner and bigger than the other.

The third Year he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent Foal's Teeth before, but two above, and two below of each side, which are all bright and small.

The fourth Year he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more Foal's Teeth before, but one of each side, both above and below.

The fifth Year his foremost Teeth will be all changed; but then he hath his Tusshes on each side compleat, and the last Foal's Teeth which he cast: those which come up in their place will be hollow, and have a little black Speck in the midst, which is call'd the Mark in the Horse's Mouth, and continueth till he be past eight Years old.

The sixth Year he putteth up his new Tusshes, near about which you shall see a growing a little of new and young Flesh at the bottom of the Tush; besides, the Tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

The seventh Year all his Teeth will have their perfect Growth, and the Mark in his Mouth will be plainly seen.

The eighth Year all his Teeth will be full, smooth and plain, the black Speck or Mark being no more but discern'd, and his Tusshes will be more yellow than ordinary.

The ninth Year his foremost Teeth will be longer, broader, yellower and fouler than at younger Years, the Mark gone, and his Tusshes will be bluntish.

The tenth Year the inside of his upper Tusshes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that Age you shall ever feel; besides, the Temples of his Head will begin to be crooked and hollow,

The eleventh Year his Teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black and foul; only he may then cut even, and his Teeth will stand directly opposite one to another.

The twelfth Year his Teeth will be long, yellow, black and foul, but then his upper Teeth will hang over his nether.

The thirteenth Year his Tushes will be worn somewhat close to his Chaps (if he be a much ridden Horse) otherwise they will be black, foul and long, like the Tushes of a Boar.

His Mouth.

See that he does not over-hang his upper Teeth over his nether; for tho it be the Mark of an old Horse, yet sometimes a young Horse hath that Infirmary. See likewise that he is not too deep burnt of the Lampas, and that his Flesh lie smooth with his Bars; for if it be too deep burnt, his Hay and Provender will stick therein, which will be very troublesom to the Horse.

His Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be rugged, and as it were seamed one Seam over another, and many Seams; if they be dry, full and crusty, or crumbling, it is a sign of very old Age; and on the contrary part, a smooth, moist, hollow and well-sounding Hoof, is a sign of young Years.

His Tail.

If you take your Horse with your Finger and your Thumb by the Stern of the Tail, close at the setting on by the Buttock, feeling there hard, and if you feel of each side of the Tail a Joint stick out more than any other, by the bigness of an Hazle-nut, then you may presume the Horse is under two years old; but if his Joints be all plain, and no such thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and it may be thirteen.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, full, staring or starting from his Head, if the Pits over them be filled, smooth and even with his Temples, and no Wrinkles, either about his Brow, or under his Eyes, then he is young; if otherwise you see the contrary Characters, it is a sign of old Age.

His Skin.

If you take his Skin in any part of his Body, between your Finger and your Thumb, and pull it from his Flesh, then letting it go again, if it suddenly return to the place from

from whence it came, and be smooth and plain without Wrinkle, then he is young and full of strength; but if it stand, and not return instantly to its former place, then he is very old and wasted.

His Hair.

If an Horse that is of any dark Colour, shall grow grisly only about his Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane; or any Horse of a whitish Colour shall grow meannelled with either black or red Meannels universally over his Body; then both are Signs of old Age.

His Bars.

Lastly, if the Bars in his Mouth be great, deep, and handle rough and hard, then is the Horse old; but if they be soft, shallow, and handle gently and tenderly, then is he young, and in good ability of Body.

And thus much touching the Office of the Buyer.

The perfect Shape of a Horse all together.

First, there is required that the Hoof be black, smooth, dry, large, round and hollow; the Pasterns strait and upright; Fet-locks short; the Legs strait and flat, called also Lath-legged; the Knees bony, lean and round; the Neck long, high-reared, and great towards the Breast; the Breast large and round; the Ears small, sharp, long and upright; the Fore-head lean and large; the Eyes great, full and black; the Brows well filled, and shooting outwards; the Jaws wide, slender and lean; the Nostrils wide and open; the Mouth great; the Head long and lean, like to a Sheep; the Mane thin and large; the Withers sharp and pointed; the Back short, even, plain and double-chin'd; the Sides and Ribs deep, large and bearing out like the Cover of a Trunk, and close shut at the Huckle-bone; the Belly long and great, but hid under the Ribs; the Flanks full, yet gaunt; the Rump round, plain and broad, with a large space betwixt the Buttocks; the Thighs long and large, with well-fashioned Bones, and those fleshy; the Hams dry and strait; the Truncheon small, long, well set on, and well couched; the Train long, not too thick, and falling to the Ground; the Yard and Stones small; and lastly, the Horse to be well-risen before. And to conclude, the perfect Shape of a Horse, according as a famous Horse-man hath described it, is in a few words thus, *viz.* A broad Fore-head, a great Eye, a lean Head, thin, slender, lean, wide Jaws, a long high-reared Neck, reared Withers, a broad deep Chest and Body, upright

upright Pasterns, and narrow Hoof: And this is the common, allowed and approved Shape of a perfect Horse, so that if any of those things be deficient in him, he cannot be said to be a Horse of a perfect Shape. Wherefore I conclude, that if a Horse be of a good Colour, well marked, and rightly shaped, and right also by Sire and Mare, it will be seldom seen that he would prove ill, unless his Nature be alienated and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or else that he be otherwise wronged, by the means of an unskilful Groom. But I may in this point be taxed to hold a Paradox; for some may object unto me, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colour, best Marks, and truest Shapes, do nevertheless prove arrant Jades. I answer, I acknowledge all this to be true, for I have known Horses, who upon their first View have been in extrinsecal Shew so hopeful, as that they have promised what a Man could expect from them; which notwithstanding when they have come to the Test, they have been a Scandal to their Sex: but this is not a thing frequent, for to every one of these who have thus miscarried, you shall have twenty prove right and answerable to your Minds.

Rules to be observed for putting a Horse to Grass, and for taking of him up again.

Before you put your Stable Horse to Grass, eight or nine days before take blood from him; the next day after give him the Drink of *Diapente*, and a day or two after his Drink abate of his Cloths by degrees, before you turn him forth, lest by doing them on the sudden he take more cold: and after his Cloths are taken off, curry him not at all, but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm. Neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of *May*, at the soonest, for till that time Grass will not have Bite enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warm Sunshine Day, and about the Hour of Ten) for Horses pampered in warm Stables, and kept close, will be subject to take cold.

Taking of him up.

Secondly, let him be taken up from Grass very dry, or else he will be subject to be scabby, and that not later then *St. Bartholomew's Day*, which is the twenty-fourth of *August*; for then the Season doth begin to let fall cold Dews, which causeth much harm to your Horse, and then beginneth the Heart of Grass to fall, so as the Grass which he then feedeth upon

upon breedeth no good Nntriment, but gross, phlegmatick and cold Humours, which putrefieth and corrupteth the Blood: and take him up very quietly, for fear of melting his Grease, for his Fat gotten at Grass is very tender, so that every little Motion dissolveth the same, whereby the Blood may be enflamed, and so be in danger of Sicknes, if not of Death. A day or two after you have him in the Stable, let him be shod, let blood, and drencht, as before is shewed you; for this preventeth Yellows, Stavers and such like Diseases, which the Gall and Spleen occasioneth, which the Heart and Strength of Grass, (through the Rankness of Blood) doth engender in his Body.

But if you intend to be curious after you have taken him into the Stable, before you have either blooded or drencht him, you may clean him in this manner.

Of Cleansing, or making a Horse clean.

First, therefore if it be a hot sun-shiny Day, take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there trim him; then take ordinary soft washing Soap, and anoint his Head and every part of him all over therewith, and have a care that none of it get into his Ears or Eyes; then wash him very well with warm Water all over, then wipe him with a warm Linen-cloth, and after rub him dry with woollen Cloths; then soap him all over again, especially his Mane and Tail, and wash him very clean with Buck-lee, with a Wisp or woollen Cloth. And when you have sufficiently cleansed him, dry him as you did before, and so lead him into the Stable, and clothe him up with a clean, thin, soft Cloth. And by this kind of trimming and cleansing him, you may so alter him, that the Owner can scarce know him.

General Notes concerning some Simples.

All manner of Marrows and Piths, of what kind soever they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all Filth or Uncleaness, and from the annoyance either of Wind or Fire; and so they will last full out a whole year.

Syrups, Powders, Pills, Electuaries and Ointments.

You shall keep no Syrups, no sweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserves of Flowers, nor any Ointments: Sewets or Emplaisters, or Conserve of Fruits or Roots, will last fully out two years,

Oils

Oils.

Of Oils, some will last long, some must be new made:
Oils extracted out of Wood or Metals will last long.

Roots.

Gather Roots in Antumn, but take the small Sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the Shade and Wind, and great ones either in the Wind or Sun, or by the Fire; lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor Moisture do injure them.

Herbs.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do most flourish, and dry them in the Shade; except they be very moist and apt to putrefy, they last for the most part a whole Year.

Seeds.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe, and they also last but one whole Year.

*Rind or Bark.*¹

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the Herb is ripe; dry them, and they will last many Years.



The Office of the Farrier.

In what Points consists the Office of the Farrier.

IT consists in four things, viz. Science, Experience, Knowlegde and Handy-work: but I shall let pass the first three, and speak to Handy-Work; and that is, to heat an Iron well, to turn a Shoe well, to make and point a Nail well, to pare the Hoof well, to cauterize well, to let blood well, to be light and well-handed, bold and hardy, and dressing of a Horse well of such Accidents as may happen unto him.

The Principal Members of a Horse.

Some hold that there be four, and make the Stones or Gignitors one; but I say there are but three, the Liver, the Heart, and the Brain: and if he be offended in any of these,
he

he will die ; but if any other Member besides these be hurt he may live ; and therefore the Stones or Gignitors cannot be one of the Principal Members, for you cannot touch any of those three, but you kill him outright, or desperately endanger him. Now the Stones may receive hurt, and if I despair of curing them, I can cut them out, without peril of his Life.

Of the Sinews, and of the Number of them.

There are two Sinews, or Tendons, which are white, and begin at the end of the Nose, and extend themselves along the Neck, and along the Back, and make their extent to the four Legs, and take their Ligaments in the Fore-feet.

There are in every Horse twenty nine or thirty, great and small.

The two great Sinews which I named before.

Item, Two Branches which are main Sinews that proceed from the Brain, and run down the Cheeks to the Teeth.

Item, There are from the Shoulders to the first Joint of the Arms, or Fore-legs downwards, two great Sinews.

Item, From the Knees to the Pasterns are four great Sinews, with the same Number in the Hinder-part.

Item, In the Fore-part of the Breast, and above it, as well within as without, are ten Sinews, some greater and some smaller.

Item, From the Reins of the Back to the Stones are four great Sinews. Lastly, one great main Sinew which runneth along to the End of the Tail. So as the full Number of the Sinews are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to be discerned. But to speak properly, a Horse hath but one only Vein, which is that we call the Median, or Life's Vein, which is in the Liver, being the true Fountain, Source and great Tun, from whence the Canes, Conduit-pipe and little Veins, (as the smaller Rivers) do separate themselves, which do run through all the Parts and Members of the whole Body. Those Veins that do ascend to the Head and Body, are called Veins ascendent ; and those which do run low as to the Legs, and lower Members are called hollow or descendent Veins.

Of the Vital Blood.

Those are Veins which are Vessels of quick or running Blood, and is that, that when the Creature sleepeth, his Blood is in continual Agitation, and never ceaseth.

Of

Of the Number of the Veins that you are to take Blood from.

In the Neck, in the weeping Veins, under the Ears, and in six other Places, of and about the Head; as in the Palate-Veins, in the Tongue, in the Flank-Veins, in the Breast and Spur-Veins; in the four Members, to wit, the Legs, Thighs, Pasterns and Feet; also in sundry other Places according as necessity shall require it, and in Places which may the better kill the Malady of the said Horse.

For what use you open the Veins.

To open the two Temple-Veins easeth the Pain in the Head, coming of Colds, Rheums, Fevers, Yellowes and Stavers, Drowiness, Frenzy, the sleepy Evil, falling Evil, or any Grief in or about the Eyes or Brain. Secondly, we open the two Eyes or weeping Veins, being most sovereign for such Diseases whereunto the Eyes are subject; as watry or weeping Eyes, Blood-shotten, Pin and Web, Haw, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two Palate-Veins in the Mouth, and those do cure the Lampasse, and any inward Sicknes in the Body; as the Yellowes, Stavers, Anticor, Surfeits, Drowiness, Tirednes or Weariness of the Body: or if he hath any Malady in the Throat, as the Strangle, Quinzy, Kernels, Pustles, either within or without; it many times helpeth Inflammations, Glanders, or the like; for the eating or swallowing of his own Blood, is most wholesome and sovereign in such Cases. Fourthly, we do usually open the two Neck-Veins, which helpeth Farcins, Yellowes, Stavers, Scabs, Manges, A. ues, Fevers, Colds, Surfeits, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any ways noxious to the inward Part of the Body. And it also preventeth sudden Sicknes, if you do suspect it. Fifthly, the opening of the two Plate or Breast-Veins do help the Anticor, Sicknes of the Heart, Morfoundring, which is the Foundring in the Body by over-riding, whereby the Grease of the Horse is molten; it also preventeth Diseases in the Liver, Lungs, and inward Parts grieved; and sometimes Hurts in the Shoulder, which causeth Lameness before. Sixthly, we use to touch the two Thigh-Veins before, which helpeth Foundring in the Fore-feet, Mallenders, Splint, Skrew, Ring-bone, and such like Infirmities in the Fore-foot, and such other higher Parts. Seventhly, we use to take Blood from the four Shackle-Veins before, and this is very good for the Crown-scab, Ring-bone, and such like Diseases. Eighthly,

Eighthly, we use to strike the two Sbur-Veins, which cureth the Farcin in the Sides, Morfoundring, swelling under the Belly, which is a Disease called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, we prick the two Toe-Veins, which do help Frettrizing, Foundring, Hoof-bound beating of the Horse's Feet by riding upon hard and stony Ways, and the like. Tenthly, we open the two Thigh-Veins behind, and this doth help the Grief of the Kidneys, swelling in the Hinder-Legs, Foundring, Sellanders, Scratches, Kibes, &c. And it also helpeth Diseases in and about the Belly, as pissing of Blood, pissing oft after great and extraordinary hard Labour, and the Weakness of the Reins, the Back, Belly, Guts, or any other of the inward Parts, the Curb, Spavin, and such Diseases which come of Rankness of Blood. Eleventhly, we sometimes do open the four Shackle-Veins behind, and this is very good against Foundrings, and other Pains in and about the Feet. Twelfthly, we let blood in the two Flanks or Haunch-Veins, and this is most probable for all kind of Fevers, the Stones, Poverty and the Felter-Worm. Thirteenthly, we draw blood from the two Tail-Veins, which cureth the Mange in the Tail, falling off of the Hair, or Itch in the Tail. And these are for the most part all the Veins that are usually open'd: so that the full Sum or Number of Veins which Farriers commonly open, are thirty. Other Veins there are, which are of a smaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be open'd: I will not say that these Veins so open'd do cure Diseases absolutely, but they do sometimes assuage the Malignancy of the Malady, sometimes they prevent Diseases, and sometimes again they prepare the Body the better to receive such physical Drinks which do inwardly cure them; and such Salves, Oils, Unguents, which do dry and heal up outward Infirmities, &c.

How many Bones a Horse hath, and where they are situated.

All the Bones which every Horse hath, whereby to make up an Organical Body, are these, viz. He hath in his Head thirty-nine or forty Teeth: The Bones in his Head do comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the Skull, albeit they be composed of Parts and Parcels of other Bones; also the two flat Handles, which from the Palate and the Fork or Throat bath five; the Chine hath fifty-two, the Breast one, the Ribs have thirty-six, the Fore-legs and Fore-feet have forty-four, and the Hinder-legs and Feet forty: so as the whole

whole Structure of the Body of a Horse, whereby to perfect a full Building of Bones, consisteth of about two hundred fifty seven, or two hundred fifty nine, if they be rightly computed; which do represent themselves all together, at what time the perfect Anatomy of a Horse is laid open.

Of the Elements.

The Elements are four, and they give Life and Nutrient unto Man, and all other living Creatures; they are these, Fire, Air, Water, and Earth.

Their Nature.

The Nature of Fire is to be hot and dry, Air to be hot and moist, Water to be cold and moist, and Earth to be cold and dry.

Signs of the Zodiack.

Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces; these do all govern the twelve Months of the Year, and are placed above the Zodiack.

Names of the Planets.

Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury, and Luna.

The Government of the Signs.

Aries governs the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Arms, *Cancer* the Stomach and Breast, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reins and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy Parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighs, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Pisces* the Feet.

The best time to let a Horse blood in.

If there be no extraordinary Cause, as in case of desperate Sicknes, or so; then *Jan. 3, & 15. Feb. 4, & 9. March 17, & 18. April 10, & 16. May 1, & 13. June 15, & 20.* But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the Canicular Days be then predominant, Blood-letting is not so good, but only in urgent Case of Necessity. In *Septemb. 11, & 28. Octob. 8, & 23. Novemb. 5, & 16. Decemb. 14, & 26.* And these Days we hold to be the very best, unless dangerous and sudden Sicknes do cause us to alter the same; for in Cases of Necessity no days are to be regarded or observed.

More Observations of Blood-letting you may find hereafter,

Of the four Humours, Blood, Choler, Phlegm, and Melancholy.

Four Humours also there are, which be as it were four Children to the four Elements already spoken of; and these are, Blood, Phlegm, Choler, and Melancholy, without which a natural Body cannot be made: for Blood naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moist, but taketh most from Heat, and therefore is subordinate to Air; Phlegm is cold and moist, but the Principality thereof is Coldness, and therefore hath reference to Water; Choler is hot and dry, but its chiefest Nature is Heat, and therefore is govern'd by the Element of Fire; Melancholy is cold and dry, but its chiefest Condition is Dryness, and therefore subjects itself to the Element of Earth. Now the Fountain of Blood is the Liver, which dispersing itself by the help of the Veins into all the parts of the Body, nourisheth and preserveth the same. Phlegm preoccupateth the Brain, being a cold and spongy Substance, and the Seat of the sensible Soul. Choler inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleasing Harmony with the Blood. Melancholy resideth in the Spleen, which is the Receptacle and Discharge of the Excrements of the Liver, from whence we may collect, that it hath its proper Use and End. As for demonstration, Blood principally nourisheth the Body, Phlegm occasioneth Motion of the Joints and Members, Choler excited and provoketh the Belly to avoid its Excrements; and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the Body to an Appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers do with one unanimous Assent agree in this, That in every natural Body there are four principal instrumental Members, from which all the Parts of an organical Body are said to be framed; and these are the Brain, the Heart, the Liver, and the Stones or Gignitors: and each one of these does perform its true Function to all the particular Members of the Body; for the Sinews do receive their Sustentation from the Brain, and these are call'd Animal Spirits; the Arteries from the Heart, which are Vital Spirits; the Veins from the Liver, which are Natural Parts; and the Seed-Vessels from the Stones or Gignitors, as the Place of Generation.

*Of a Horse's Complexion, which is the most necessary Phasis
that a Farrier can judge of his Infirmities.*

To speak of the Complexions of a Horse in a particular manner, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of a Horse's Infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Disease: and therefore by the Colour of the Horse you are to judge of his Complexion. For look which of the Elements is most predominate in him, from that Element you may draw his Complexion: as thus, If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a cholerick Horse, and his Colour is either a bright Sorrel, a Coal-black without any white, or an Iron-grey unchangeable, that is, such a Grey as neither will ever turn a Dapple-Grey, a White or a Flea-bitten; and these Horses are of nature light, hot, fiery, and seldom of any great strength. These Horses are most subject to pestilent Fevers, Yellows, and Inflammation of the Liver: therefore every Farrier should be careful in his composing of any Medicine for such a Horse, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the Potion or Drench; because the Horse being in his best Strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him, that little Strength being abated, there were great danger in confounding the whole Body. If the Horse participate more of the Air than of the other Elements, then he is of a sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright bay or a dark bay, which hath neither scouling Countenance, meely Mouth, nor white Flank; or a white flea-bitten, white-lyard like Silver, or black with a white Star, white Rash or white Foot. These Horses are of nature pleasant, nimble, free, and of good strength. The Diseases to them most incident are Consumption of the Liver, Leprosy, Glanders, or any Disease that is infectious: They are of a good strong Constitution, and may endure Strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horse participate more of the Water than of the other Elements, then is he of a phlegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk-white, a yellow, dun, kite-glew'd, or a py'd-ball, in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours. Otherwise, if the bay, the black, or the dun exceed the white, he is said to be of that Complexion of

which the Colour is the greatest. These Horses are of nature slow, and apt to lose Flesh. The Diseases which are most incident to them, are Colds, Head-ach, Rheums, Staggers, and such-like. They are able to endure the reasonable Strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of Phlegm which is in them sufficeth both Nature and the Potion to work upon. All cold Simples are to them exceeding hurtful, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree; the first, because it bindeth too soon; the latter, because it disperses too suddenly: therefore Simples of a moderate Mean are best.

If the Horse participate of the Earth more than of the other Elements, then is he of a melancholy Complexion; and his Colour is a Mouse-dun, Ruffet, Chesnut, Ashy-Grey, Dark-Bay, having long white Hair, like Goats Hair, growing on his Legs. These Horses are of nature heavy and faint-hearted: The Diseases to them most incident, are Inflammations in the Spleen, Frenzy, Dropsy, and such-like. They are commonly of better strength than they appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable Medicine: All cicatrizing and dry Simples are hurtful unto them, the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shew'd you these four Complexions, Chole-
rick, Sanguine, Phlegmatick and Melancholy, together with their Qualities and Strengths: you shall understand now, that amongst Farriers there is another Complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is call'd the Composition, or Mixture of Complexions; that is, when a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion: and this is the best Complexion, and the Horse that is of this Complexion is ever one of these Colours; that is to say, of a fair brown Bay, dappled, or not dappled, a Dapple-Grey, a Black full of silver Hair, or a fair Roan red or black. And these Horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest, and most healthful; tho they may have any Disease as the other have, yet are they naturally inclined to no Disease. But what Infirmary soever falleth unto them, is merely accidental, and not thro any Overflow of natural Distemperature. All Medicines must be compounded for them according to the Nature of the Sicknes, and the Time of their Languishment; for if the Sicknes be young and new-bred, then are they able to receive any well-composed Receipt; but if it be old, and the
inward

inward Powers and Faculties feebled, then you must be careful to help Nature, by adding to every Medicine, of what nature soever, some Simple of Comfort; that as ill Humours be cleansed, so Strength may still be repair'd and maintain'd. And thus much for Complexions.

Twelve Causes of Health and Long Life.

1. The first is Nature, good Digestion, and good Nourishment.
2. The second is, Moderation in Feeding and Diet.
3. The third is, moderate Labour.
4. The fourth is, moderate Use of Sleeping and Waking.
5. The fifth is, moderate Spending upon Mares.
6. The sixth is, moderate Journeys.
7. The seventh is, wholesom Air.
8. The eighth is, not to be exercised too soon after Grass.
9. The ninth is, to be kept from raw and green Meats.
10. The tenth is, not to be suffer'd to eat or drink being hot.
11. The eleventh is, not to be either wash'd or walk'd at the end of his Journey.
12. The twelfth is, to give him with his Provender such Powders and Simples as are prescribed you in all those Chapters, which are by me mention'd, but more particularly in pag. 2. And tho he dislikes them at first, yet by mixing a little and a little at a time, they will become natural to him.

Dangerous Sicknes how it cometh.

First, All Sicknes cometh either by Heats in over-violent Exercise; as when the Horse hath his Grease moulted, the Heart overcharg'd, the vital Blood forced from the inward Parts, and the large Pores and Orifices of the Heart are so obstructed and stopt, that the Spirits cannot return back to their proper places, so as the Organs of the Body cannot rejoice, but by this means the Body must of necessity languish, founder, and mortify.

Secondly, Dangerous Sicknes cometh also by Colds; as by indiscreet and negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent Exercise; and then is the Head perplex'd, the Eyes dulled and pained, the Roots of the Tongue inflamed and swelled, the Lungs with Rheums tickled and offended, occasioning strong and laborious Coughing, and the Nostrils often distilling, and pouring forth filthy and corrupt Matter.

Thirdly, Dangerous Sicknes cometh also by Surfeit of Food, either by eating too much or too little of what is good, or also of what is not wholesom; so as the first killeth, or at least debilitateth the Stomach, oppresseth the Heart, and sendeth up those evil Fumes into the Head, by which are engendred the Stavers, Frenzies, and other mortal Diseases; the second putrefies the Blood, and converts all its Nutriment into Corruption, from whence proceed the Yellows, Farcins, Fevers, Manges, and other such-like pestilent, leprous and loathsom Diseases; which suffocating the Heart, and clogging the Stomach, dilate and spread themselves universally over the whole Body, leaving no Member free, and confounding every Faculty and Member thereof.

Fourthly and Lastly, Dangerous Sicknes comes also by Accidents; as when a Horse receiveth some deep or perillous Wound or Hurt, either in his Body, or elsewhere in some vital or dangerous part, by means whereof Nature is so far offended, as that incontinently a general Sicknes seizeth upon him, which if not prevented, Death immediately ensueth.

Signs to know these dangerous Sickneses.

If his Sicknes proceed from the first, which are Heats, then are the Signs these, *viz.* The Heaviness of his Countenance, Swellings of his Limbs, especially of his Hinder-legs, Scouring and Looseness of his Body; in the beginning of his Sicknes, short and hot Breath, a loathing and forsaking of his Meat.

If from the second, *viz.* Cold, then the Signs are, A dejected Countenance, Dulness or Sleepiness of the Eyes, Pustles or hard Knots under the Caul, yea, and many times inflamed Kernels and Swellings so high as to the very Roots of the Ear, a rotten, moist, inward and hollow Cough; he many times chewing betwixt his Teeth some loose, filthy, and phlegmatick Matter, immediately after his Coughing, which in some Cases is not an evil Sign, by reason that thereby the Cold rotteth and goeth away: whereas on the contrary side, for a Horse to cough clear and dry, doth demonstrate a dry Cough, which hath long time lurked in his Body, which is difficult to cure, which will so discover itself at last, that his Belly will shrink up, and when he drinketh, Water will come forth of his Nose, and his Eyes will be either watry or mattery, and run continually, thro Pain he hath in his Head, procured by means
of

of his Cold, and his Hair will be rough and staring, &c.

If from the third, which is Surfeit, then the Signs of his Sicknes are these; A Dulness of the Head, Eyes and Countenance, and that so violent, that he will not be able to lift up his Head from the Manger; A dull and dead Eye, and sunk into his Head, his Ears prickt upright, and the tops of them cold, as also his upper Lips and his Sheath, his Pace reeling and staggering; and if he be too far gone, he will be mad, which you may know by his biting the Rack and Manger, or any body that shall come nigh him, and sometimes biting of himself, and beating his Head against the Wall, &c. But if the Malady be not got into the Brain, then you shall find by the Yellowness of his Eyes, Lips and Tongue, that it is turned to the Yellows, which will so infect his Blood all over, that if not prevented suddenly, he will soon come to the Dogs.

Accidental.

The fourth and last Ground of his Sicknes is, if it proceed from accidental Means; the Signs then are a perplexed and troubled Body, sweating at the Roots of his Ears, Flanks, behind the Shoulders, against the Heart, sometimes trembling all over his Body, and sometimes glowing and burning in his vital Parts as in the Temples of his Head, against his Heart, on the inside of his Fore-legs, and on the inside of his Hinder-legs; his Mouth will be dry and hot, his Tongue will be subject to be inflamed and furred, he will have loathing against Meat, and a great Drought to Thirst, and drink cold Water, and keep his Mouth in the same when he hath done drinking.

To cure Sicknes before it comes, and to prevent it when it comes.

First, when you find it come, to let him blood, and for three Mornings together to give him the Drink of Diapente, and keep him warm, and let him fast three hours after it, and then give him a Mash, and Hay after that. But in case Diapente is not to be had, then take Celandine half a handful, as well Roots as Leaves, well washed and picked; Wormwood and Rue, of each half a handful; boil them in a Bottle of Ale or Beer to a quart, and strain it well, and put into it half a pound of sweet Butter, and two or three Spoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm.

But secondly, to prevent it before it comes, is when you turn him to Grass, to let him blood likewise, and to give him

him the next day the Drink of Diapente, and so to abate his Cloths (if he hath any) to harden him before you turn him to Grass, to prevent his taking of Cold.

The Drink of Diapente.

Take of Gentian, of *Aristolochia rotunda*, of Bay-berries, of Myrrh, and of the Shavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity; and let them be pounded severally, and finely scarced, and after weighed, so as the quantity may be just and even, not any one less or more than another: and after you have mixed them very well together, put them into a Gally-pot, close stopped, as that no Air get into it, and so keep it for your use.

How to use it.

If you drench him for a Cold or Glanders, give it him in *Muscadine*; if for other Maladies, then in sweet Sack, and the quantity must be a Pint and an half. But if you cannot get either Sack or Muscadine, then give it in strong Ale or Beer; the quantity of this Powder of Diapente must be two or three Spoonfuls, unless to a small, sick, and feeble Horse, then according to your own Judgment, as you shall think requisite. The word Diapente is as much as to say, Composition of five Simples.

The Vertues of Diapente.

It is the most sovereign thing which can be given to a Horse by way of Drench, to cure him of very many Diseases. It is good against all infectious Maladies, as Fevers of what kind soever, all sorts of Pestilences, or contagious Colds, Coughs wet or dry, Glanders, Surfeits, Inflammations in the Blood or Liver, Frenzies, Yellows; it purifieth, it refineth, and purgeth the Blood from all Infection and Corruption; it easeth the overflowing of the Gall, and the working of the Spleen; in a word, it cureth whatsoever Diseases the Body of an Horse may be inwardly inclined unto.

The making of the true Diahexaple.

Take the Roots of round *Aristolochia*, wash them small, scrape them, and make them as clean as may be; then take Juniper-berries unexcorticated, and Bay-berries excorticated; take the purest and best Drops of Myrrh, and the finest Shavings of Ivory, of each an equal quantity; beat all but the Myrrh together, and scarce them fine. Lastly, beat the

†

Myrrh

Myrrh and searce it also, then mix them all together, press it hard into a Gally-pot, and keep it for your use.

The Vertues of Diahexaple.

This Powder, or indeed Mithridate, is most excellent and sovereign against all manner of Poison, either inward or outward; it cureth the biting of venomous Beasts, and helpeth Short-wind and Purfiness.

It mundifieth, cleanseth, suppleth, and maketh thin old gross Humours; it healeth all Diseases of the Liver and Stomach, helps Digestion, and being given in a Pint of Sack, it cureth all Colds; it is good against Consumptions, breaks Phlegm, helps Staggers, and all Diseases of the Head. *Gerrard.*

It recovers Tiring and Weariness, and takes away Cramps and Convulsions, dries up the Scurvey, breaks the Stone, opens all inward Obstructions, and helps the Yellows, the Gargil, and the Dropsy. *Diascorides.*

It cures all Diseases of the Lungs, as Glanders and Rotteness, gives ease to all Gripings and Windiness of the Belly, provoketh Urine, takes away Infection, and kills Worms.

A Drink to open an Horse's Body, and to cleanse it.

Take a Quart of new Milk, Sallet-Oil, Honey, of each half a Pint; an Ounce of *London-Treacle*, and the Yolks of six Eggs, beat all together; then put to it Liquorice, Sugar-Candy, Anniseeds, (all in Powder) of each an Ounce; and infuse all together, and so give it him; ride him after it, set him up warm, and let him fast two hours or more.

How to make Diateffaron, Mithridate or Horse-Treacle.

Take of the Powder of *Diapente*, two Ounces; and put it into a clean Stone-Mortar, and put thereto clarified or Life-Honey the like quantity; let the Mortar be hot before you put them in, then with a Pestle of Wood work it till it come to a Treacle; then take it forth, and keep it in a Gally-pot close stopped for your use.

How to use it.

Take half an Ounce of this Confection, and dissolve it in a Pint and a half of Muscadine, or sweet Sack, and give it him blood-warm; and as you see occasion, you may add to it of *London-Treacle* an Ounce.

The Virtues of it.

It is good for all Poisons and infectious Diseases, and drives forth all manner of Sicknes from the Heart, and is good for all sorts of Fevers, and all other desperate and dangerous Sicknes; taking first Blood from him, if there be cause.

How to make the Electuary of Diateffaron.

Take Gentian, Bay-berries, *Aristolochia rotunda* or Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to very fine Powder; put them into a stone Mortar (as you did the other) with two Pounds of clarify'd Honey, and work them together till they come to a Treacle: and when you have done, put it up into a Gally-pot, and keep it for your use close stoppt. Use it as you do the other.

The Vertues of it.

It resists Pestilence and Poison, and cures the biting of any venomous Beast; it is good for the Falling-Sicknes, Convulsions, and all cold Distempers of the Brain; as also for Colds and Coughs wet and dry, Surfeits, Glaunders, Inflammation of the Blood and Liver, Yellowes, and many other Diseases which a Horse's Body is inclinable unto.

A Drink given when you neither have Diahexaple, Diapente, or Diateffaron.

Take of Tar two Ounces, of Honey an Ounce, black Soap two Drams, and Bay-Salt a Handful, incorporate them well together: then take two Egg-shells, the Crowns only being broken, so as you may get forth the Meat, and fill them full with this Medicine, and put them down his throat, and walk or ride him gently up and down a quarter of an hour or more, warm clothed: that done, set him up warm, and litter him well, and let his Drink be either Mashs or white Water for four or five days after, and let him fast three hours after his Medicine, and let his Hay and Provender be sweet and good.

Signs of all Sicknes in general.

If you find in your Horse Heaviness of Countenance, extreme Looseness, or extreme Costiveness, Shortness of Breath, Loathing of Meat, dull and imperfect Eyes, rotten or dry Cough, staring Hair, or Hair unnaturally discolour'd, a staggering Pace, frantick Behaviour, Yellowness of the

the Eyes, of Skin, faint or cold Sweat, extraordinary lying down, or beating or looking back at his Body, Alteration of Qualities or Gestures, not casting off the Coat, Leanness, Hide-bound, and the like. All these are apparent Signs of Distemperature and Sicknes.

The Diseases of a Horse are known by the Signs he makes.

If he be slower in pace than he use to be, if his Ears hang down more than they are wont, if his Flank be more than usually hollow, if he burn between his Ears or about his Pasterns, if in Travel his Stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in his Labour do use to foam, become dry; all these are signs of Sicknes.

By hanging of his Head.

If he hang down his Head, which was wont to be of a chearful Countenance, it is a sign of a Fever, Head-ach, the Staggers, or fore Eyes.

By the turning of his Head backwards.

If he turn his Head backward to the place grieved, if it be to the right side, it is a sign of Obstructions in the Liver; but if he turn it down to his Belly, it is a sign either of the Cholick, Bots or Worms.

By Water running from his Mouth.

When Water runs from his Mouth, it is either a sign of the Staggers or wet Cough.

By his stinking Breath, or stinking Matter from his Nostrils.

If his Breath stinks, or foul Matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an Ulcer in the Nose or Head; but if the Matter be white, then it is a sign of Glanders; if the Matter be black, then it is a sign of the mourning of the Chine, if there be any such Disease. But if it be yellow, then it is the Consumption of the Liver: but if he cast little Lumps out of his mouth, then it shews Consumption and Rottenness of the Lungs.

By his Breath and Body being hot.

If his Body and Breath be hot, it is a sign of a Fever and Heat of the Stomach; if therewithal he forsake his Meat, it is a sign of the Inflammation of the Liver, and either of dry or moist Yellows.

By

By his hollow Temples.

If his Temples be very hollow, it is a sign of the Strangle or Old-Age.

By Shortness of Breath.

Shortness of Breath, and beating of the Flank, is a sign either of a Fever or the Strangle; but if the Passage of the Throat be stopped, it is a sign the Film of the Lungs are broken, and the Spleen troubled, or else broken-winded.

By the swelling about his Ears.

If there be any swelling about his Ears, it is a sign of the Pole-Evil: Swelling under the Ears is a sign of the Vives; and Swelling in the Mouth, is a sign either of a Canker, Flaps or Lampas.

By the swelling under the Throat.

Swelling under the Throat is a sign of the Glanders, and swelling about the Tongue-Roots a sign of the Strangle: but if there be about the Tongue-Roots nothing but little small Knots, like Wax-kernels, then it is a sign but of a Cold only.

By his swelling about his Body.

Swelling on the left side, is a sign of a sick Spleen; Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a sign of the Dropsy; and Swelling in the Flank, of Cholick only.

By his offering to cough.

To cough, or to offer to cough, it is a sign either of the Glanders, or of a wet or dry Cough, of a Consumption or Foundring in the Body.

By his Staggering.

Staggering is a sign either of a Fever, of the Staggers, or of swaying in the Neck: but if he stagger or roll behind only, then it is a sign either of Foundring of the Body, or of Pain in the Kidneys.

By the Hollowness of his Back.

The Hollowness of a Horse's Back is a sign of a dry Malady, or the Dropsy.

By his Trembling.

Trembling is a sign of a Fever, or Foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that if he trembleth after he

he hath drunk, he hath during the time of his trembling a Fit of an Ague upon him, and after he hath done trembling he will glow; and some Horses after their burning will sweat also

By the Staring of his Hair.

Hair staring is a sign either of a cold Stomach, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a cold or want of Cloths.

By his Staling with Pain.

If he stale with pain, it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, the Wind-Cholick or the Stone; or if the Urine which comes from him be yellow, it is a sign of the Glanders; but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of the Pain in the Kidneys.

By his Leanness and Gauntness.

Leanness and Gauntness is a sign of Hide-bound, or of the Consumption, of the dry Malady, of Foundring in the Body, Inflammation of the Liver, the Yellows, Cholick or Worms.

By his Looseness of Body.

Laxativeness or Looseness of Body is a sign of a hot Liver.

By his Costiveness.

Costiveness in the Body is a sign of dry Yellows, or Diseases of the Gall.

By his stinking Dung.

If his Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver; if it have no Smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be undigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

By his Lying.

If he desire to lie much on his left side, then is he troubled with the Spleen; if on the right, then it is a sign of Heat of Liver; and if finding no rest, it may be Bots, Worms, Cholick, or Gripping in the Belly; if when he is down he spreads himself abroad, it shews the Dropsy; if he groans when he is down, it shews either a sick Spleen, moist Yellows, Cholick, Bots, or Film broken; if he be not able to rise when he is down, then either mortal Weakness, Foundring in the Body or Legs.

By

By his striking at his Belly.

If he strike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a sign of the Cholick: but if when he striketh, he fisk with his Tail also, then it is either Bots, or rough Worms.

By his being scabby.

If he be scabby and ulcerous all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a sign of the Mange; if it be an Ulcer full of Knots, creeping about the Veins, it is the Farcy: if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a Canker: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a Fistula; but if it be a spungy Wart, full of Blood, it is then an Ambury.

By his Tongue.

If his Tongue hang out and is swoln, it is a sign of the Strangle.

By his eating and drinking much.

If he eat much and drink little, it is a sign of a cold Liver; but if he desire to drink much and eat little, it is either a sign of a Fever, rotten Lungs, Heat in the Stomach, Heat in the Liver, or the dry Yellowws.

By his Dung.

It is necessary to observe his Dung, for it is the best Tell-troth of his inward Parts; and you must not judge it by a general Opinion, but by a private Discourse with your self how he hath been fed, because Food is the only thing that breeds Alterations. As thus;

If he feed altogether upon Grass, his Dung hath one Complexion, as green; if upon Hay, then another, as a little more dark; if upon little Provender, then inclining to yellow. But to avoid both Curiosity and Doubt, observe well the Complexion of his Dung, when he is in best Health, and the best Feeding, and as you find it alter, so judge either of his Health or Sicknes. As thus;

If his Dung be clear, crisp, and of a pale yellowish Complexion, hanging together without Separation, more than as the Weight breaks it in the falling, being neither so thin nor so thick, but it will a little flat on the Ground; and indeed, both in Savour and Substance, resembling a sound Man's Ordure, then is he clean, well fed, and without Imperfection. If it be well coloured, yet falls from him in round Knots or Pellets, so it be but the first and second Dung,

Dung, the rest good, as aforesaid, it matters not; for it only shews he did eat Hay lately, and that will ever come away first. But if all his Dung be alike, then it is a sign of foul feeding, and he hath either too much Hay, or eats too much Litter, and too little Corn.

If his Dung be in round Pellets, and blackish, or brown, it shews inward Heat in the Body.

If it be greasy, it shews Foulness, and that Grease is molten, but cannot come away. If he void Grease in gross Substance with Dung, if it be white and clear, then it comes away kindly, and there is no Danger: but if it be yellow or putrefied, then the Grease has long lain in his Body, and Sicknes will follow, if not prevented.

If his Dung be red and hard, then he hath had too strong Heats, and Costiveness will follow, if not prevented; if it be pale and loose, it shews inward Coldness of Body, or too much moist and corrupt Feeding

Signs from the Urine.

Tho the Urine be not altogether so material as the Dung, yet it hath some true Phases: as thus;

Pale Colour.

That Urine that is of a pale yellowish Colour, rather thick than thin, of a strong Smell and piercing Condition, is an healthful, sound and good Urine; but if it be of an high red Complexion, either like Blood, or inclining to Blood, then hath he had either too sore Heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter-Grass.

High Complexion.

If the Urine be of an high Complexion, clear and transparent, like old *March-Beer*, then he is inflamed in his Body, and hath taken some Surfeit.

White like Cream.

If it carry a white Cream on the top, it shews a weak Back, or Consumption in the Seed.

Green.

A green Urine shews Consumption in the Body.

Bloody Streaks.

An Urine with bloody Streaks shews an Ulcer in the Kidneys;

neys; and a black, thick, cloudy Urine shews Death and Mortality.

Of Sicknefs in general.

Whensoever upon any occasion, you shall find your Horse droop in Countenance, to forsake his Meat, or to shew any other apparent Sign of Sicknefs, if they be not great you may forbear to let blood; because where the Blood is spent, the Spirits are spent also, and they are not easily recovered. But if the Signs be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood instantly, and for three Mornings together, (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder (called by me) *Diabexaple*, and by the *Italians*, *Regina Medicina*, the Queen of Medicines, brewed either in a Pint of Muscadine or Malmsey, or a Pint of the Syrup of Sugar, being two degrees above the ordinary Molosses; or for want thereof, Molosses will serve the turn: and where all are wanting, you may take either a Pint of Dragon-water, or a Quart of the sweetest and strongest Ale-wort; or in Extremity, take a Quart of strong Ale or Beer, but then warm it a little before the Fire. This must be given with an Horn, and if he hath Ability of Body, ride him in some warm place after, and let him fast near two hours after the riding. At Noon give him a sweet Mash, clothe him very warm, and let him touch no cold Water. The making of the *Diabexaple* you may find in the Table.

General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.

Know then first, that whensoever you give your Horse any inward Potion or Glister, give it him no more than milk-warm, there being nothing more mortal to a Horse than the scalding of his Stomach; for a Horse of all living Creatures can worse endure to receive inwardly hot things. Besides, let his Drinks and inward Medicines be given him easily and gently, lest in making too much haste you suffocate him; which if it do, you must then let his Head loose, and walk him up and down till the Passion be past. Now for the administering of Pills, Balls, and such-like Medicines, little Advice is required, if they be not made too great: only if you take forth his Tongue first, and then put them up into his Mouth upon the end of a stick, then let go his Tongue again, which when he draws into his Mouth, he must needs force the Balls down his throat. You are to administer your Physick evermore fasting, unless upon urgent

gent occasion, (as in case of sudden and dangerous Sicknes) and the longer he be kept fasting from Meat and Drink, as well before he taketh his Physick as after, it will be the better, for by that means his Medicine will work the more kindly in his Body; for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking, at least three hours before and after.

Purging Balls how made and given.

Take an Ounce, or an Ounce and a half of *Aloes Succotrina*, more or less, (according to the Strength and Constitution of your Horse) powder it very well, and mix it with a little fresh Butter: then divide it into three equal parts, and cover them all over with fresh Butter, to prevent the bitter Taste of the Aloes; make them about the bigness of a large Walnut, shaped thick in the middle, and sharp at both ends, and given him in the Morning fasting. If you think them not stiff enough with Butter alone, you may mix some Bran with it, and then they will be as stiff as Dough or Paste.

What Exercise is meet with Physick.

A little moderate Exercise is very necessary, whereby his Physick may work the better and the sooner; as to trot him easily about, or to walk him up and down under the Wind in the warm Sun about a quarter of an hour. Then bring him into the Stable, and clothe him up warm, and litter him well, and let his Keeper be with him three or four hours, observing his Postures, and as occasion may require, to help him with all things necessary for his use. No Creature hath a moister Body than a Horse.

Of mixing your Simples.

If your Horse's Sicknes be a Fever, mix always your Simples with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oil; but if the Disease be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of cold Causes, then mix them with good Ale or Wine; but if he be brought low with Sicknes, then mix them with Milk and Eggs.

Observations upon raking a Horse.

Observe whensoever you rake your Horse with your hand, (which is, to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot dung) that you anoint your hand with Sallet-Oil, or Butter, or Hogs-grease: the like you must

ever do, when you put up any Suppository ; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister-Pipe.

Observations upon Blood-letting.

Observe in Blood-letting that you take not so much Blood from a Colt as an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a yearling Foal ; you must likewise have regard to his Age and Strength, taking more or less according to his Ability of Body. Lastly, letting of Blood is either to divert Sickness and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Spirits, or to diminish Blood, or to purge Grease and bad-Humours. Before you let him blood, moderately chafe or exercise him, and let him rest a day before his Blood-letting, and three days after ; not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seasons for that purpose, unless urgent Occasion requires. He will bleed the better if you let him drink before you blood him, conditionally you do not heat him.

When he is bleeding, put your finger into his mouth, and tickle him in the Roof thereof, making him chew and move his Chaps, and that will force it to spin forth ; which when he hath bled enough, according to your discretion, rub the Horse's Body all over therewith ; but especially the place where he is blooded on ; for the antient Farriers hold, that it is endu'd with a certain natural Virtue to comfort the weak and feeble Members of a Horse, and to dry up all evil Humours. And tie him up to the Rack for an hour or two, lest he bleed afresh ; for that will turn his Blood.

Signs to know when he wanteth Bleeding.

If he stand in need of Bleeding, his Eyes will look red, and his Veins will swell more than ordinary ; also he will have a certain Itch about his Mane and Tail, and still be continually rubbing them, and sometimes will shed some of his Hair also ; he will now and then pill about the Roots of his Ears, or in those places where the Head-stall of the Bridle lies ; his Urine will be red and high-colour'd, and his Dung will be black and hard : Also if he hath red Inflammations or little Bubbles on his Back, or doth not digest his Meat well, or if the Whites of his Eyes be yellow, or the Inside of his Lips, either upper or nether. Many other Signs there are of Bleeding, but let these suffice, &c.

Of outward Sorrancess, what they are, and of general Observations in the Cure of them.

Outward Sorrancess, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways: that is to say, either it is an evil State and Composition of the Body, which is to be discerned either by the Shape, Number, Quality or Sight of the Member evil affected and diseased; or else it is the Loosening and Division of any Unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers Names accordingly. For if such a Division or Loosing be in the Bone, then it is call'd a Fracture; if it be in any fleshy part, then it is call'd a Wound or an Ulcer; if it be in the Veins, then a Rupture; if in the Sinews, then a Convulsion or Cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is call'd an Exeortication: And of all these severally I intend to treat in the Chapters following. Now forasmuch as in this general Art of Chirurgery, or Sorrance, there are certain general Observations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any further, give you a little taste thereof.

Burning.

First, You shall therefore understand, that it is the Duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oil, or to make any Incision with a Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews or Joints, but either somewhat lower or somewhat higher.

Corrosives.

Item, You shall never apply to any Joint or Sinewy Part, either Rosalgar, Arsnick, Mercury Sublimate, nor any such violent Corrosive.

Cauterizing.

Item, It is ever better to lance with a hot Iron than a cold; that is, it is better to cauterize than to incise.

Blood.

Item, Blood doth ever produce white and thick Matter; Choler a watrish and thin Matter, but not much; salt Phlegm great abundance of Matter; and Melancholy many dry Scabs.

Bleeding.

Item, You must never let blood, except it be either to divert Sickness and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool

the Blood, or else to diminish Blood, or to purge bad Humours.

Item, When you let blood, take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horse.

Swellings.

Item, In all Imposthumes and swelling Sores, call'd Tumours, you must observe the Beginning of the Grief, the Increase of the Grief, the Perfection and State of the Grief; and lastly, the Declination and Ending of the Grief.

Item, In the beginning of every such swelling Imposthumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repercussive Medicines, if they be not near some principal Part of the Body, but then not for fear of endangering Life; and in augmentation use mollifying Medicines, and suppling, to ripen them: and when they are ripe, lance them, and let out the Corruption, or dry them up; and in the Declination of them use cleansing and healing Medicines.

Hard and soft Swellings.

Item, All Swellings are either hard or soft; the hard will commonly corrode, the soft will continue long.

Item, If you thrust your finger upon any Swelling upon a Horse's Legs, then if it presently rise again and fill, then is the Hurt new and recoverable; but if the Dent do remain and continue still behind, then is it an old Hurt, and cometh of cold Humours, and asks great Art in healing.

Sores.

When Sores begin to matter, then they heal; but if the Putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Cauterizing.

All Cauterizing or Burning with hot Irons, straineth things enlarged, drieth up what is too much moistned, dissolveth things gather'd together or harden'd, draweth back things which are dispersed, and helpeth old Grievs; for it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth Matter, as you may find more at large hereafter.

Burning.

Item, You must sometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours; and sometimes above, to defend and withhold Humours.

Item,

Item, It is ever better to burn with Copper than with Iron, because Iron is of a malignant nature, Steel is of an indifferent virtue betwixt both.

Actual and Potential Burning, what it is.

Item, All actual Burning is to burn with Instruments, and potential Burning is to burn with Medicines, as are Causticks and Corrosives.

Of blowing Powder into a Horse's Eyes.

Item, If you blow Powder into a Horse's Eyes often, it will make him blind.

Of taking up of Veins.

Item, By no means take up any Veins in the Fore-legs, unless great Extremity compel you; for there is nothing will sooner make a Horse stiff and lame. Many other Observations there are, which because they are not so general as these be, I think it meet to omit.

Five things a Farrier ought principally to know:

First, What Diseases a Horse is inclinable to.

Secondly, What be the Causes of every Disease in particular.

Thirdly, How and by what ways and means these Diseases do accrue.

Fourthly, The Signs how to distinguish and know them.

And lastly, The Means and Manner how to cure them.

Of Glisters, and their Uses.

The Nature and Property of Glisters are divers, therefore every Farrier ought to know to what end they serve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded; for every Glisten is to be made according to the Disease. Now some are to ease Grievs, and to allay the Sharpness of the Humours, some to bind, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heal Ulcers. These Glisters, by cleansing the Guts, refresh the Vital Parts, and prepare the Body, (if the Body be not at that time soluble) to make the Purgation work the better; which if you give your Medicine without giving a Glisten before it, you may stir up and provoke the peccant Humours, which by reason they cannot find present way forth, being hindered by Oppilations in the Guts, through Costiveness and Ventosity, and

other Impediments, do attempt to make their Passage a contrary way ; which cannot be done but with great hazard to the Life of the poor Beast.

Now for the Composition of Glisters, you shall understand that they be made of four things ; that is, of Decoctions of Drugs, of Oil, of such like unctuous Matter, as Butter or soft Grease ; and fourthly, of divers Salts to provoke the Vertue expulsive. A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as Mallows, Marshmallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and sometimes of White-Lilly Roots, and other such-like things, which we do boil in Water to a third part : and sometimes we use, instead of Herbs and Water, to take the Fat of Beef-broth, of a Sheep's-head, Milk, Whey, and some such kind of Liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey or Sugar, according to the Quality of the Disease : the Glisten being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of Pain ; or Glutinative, which is joining of things together ; or else Absterfive, which is wiping away or cleansing of filthy Matter. You ought to administer according to the Age, Strength, Greatness, and Corpulency of the Horse ; for if he be a Horse of a strong and able Body, of large Growth and Stature, fat and lusty, we use to put into the Glisten of the Decoction three Pints ; but if he be of a small Growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, then we do put in a Quart of the same at most. Of Oil we use to put in half a Pint, of Salt two or three Drams at most ; and sometimes we use to put Verjuice, sometimes Honey, as we find cause. Drugs we use, are Sena, Cassia, Agarick, Aniseeds, Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, Sugar-Candy, &c. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three Ounces in one Glisten at the most, neither must you exceed of Butter four Ounces, and let it not be above lukewarm when you give it him ; let him be somewhat empty, and let him be raked before you administer it. Give it him in a Glisten-Pipe made for that purpose, which must be put home : and having the Confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good Strength into his Body ; then draw the Pipe by degrees out of his Body, and not all at once, and clap his Tail close to his Tuel, and so hold it with your Hand close about half an hour at the least, to the end it may work in his Belly the better.

A Glister for a Horse that is very costive of Body, and cannot dung.

Take the Fat of Beef-broth a Pint and an half, of *English* Honey half a Pint, adding thereto of white Salt two Drams; mix them well together, and administer it blood-warm, and clap his Tail close to his Tuel, and there hold it for half an hour at least; and if then it will not work, as I am confident it will, let him trot about easily about half an hour, and set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon his Trench four or five hours, during which time he will purge kindly: then unbit him, and give him sweet Hay, and an hour after he hath eaten give him a Mash of Malt, and an hour after that, white Water, and let him drink no cold Water in a day or two after.

The Vertues of it.

The Nature of this Glister is, to open and loosen the Body, to bring away with it all offensive Humours, to remove Obstructions ingendred in the Body by means of excessive Heat; it cleanseth the Guts, and slicketh away all slimy Substance which is residing in the Guts. The Horse that received this Glister was a small *Scotch* Nag, and was grown weak and poor, and low of his Flesh; but if he had been a great, large, fat, healthy or corpulent Horse, you might have made it stronger.

Another Laxative Glister.

Take the Decoction of Mallows, and mix therewith fresh Butter four Ounces, or Sallet-Oil half a Pint; and so luke-warm administer it, and order him as you did before.

The Nature of it.

This is of all the Glisters the most gentle, and is very lenitive, and a great Easer of Pain; it is good for a Horse that is taken with any Contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any Costiveness in a Horse whatsoever, proceeding from any Surfeits or Sickness.

Another Glister Laxative.

Take Pellitory two Handfuls, or for want thereof, Melilot two Handfuls; or if you cannot get any of them, then two Handfuls of Camomile, but Pellitory is the best; boil to a Decoction, and add to it of Verjuice and Sallet-Oil, of each half a Pint, of Honey four Ounces, of Cassia two

H 4

Ounces;

Ounces ; mix all together, and apply it blood-warm Glister-wise.

The Vertues of it.

It will open the Body and Guts of the Horse very well, it will take from him noxious and offensive Humours ; it will carry away all spongy Matter ; it will allay the Sharpness of Humours ; it will cleanse old Ulcers ; it will refresh and comfort the vital Parts. But if you find you have given him too great a quantity, so that he purgeth or scoureth too much, then you may give him this Glister restraining.

A Restraining Glister.

Take of the aforesaid Decoction one Pint, and as much of Cow's Milk (as it cometh warm from her) and put to it the Yolks of three new-laid Eggs, well beaten and mixed with the said Liquor, and give it him blood-warm. This is only to be applied to a Horse that is very laxative, or that doth empty himself too much.

A Glister for a Horse that cannot be kept clean.

Take Mallows three Handfuls ; Marshmallow Roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet-Leaves, of each two Handfuls ; Flax-seed three Spoonfuls ; as many of the Cloves of White-Lilly Roots as you can hold in your hand : boil all these in fair Water from a Gallon to a Quart, and strain it, and put thereto of Sena one Ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the Liquor three hours, standing upon the hot Embers ; then put to it of Sallet-Oil, half a Pint, and being blood-warm administer it.

A Glister in case of desperate Sickness.

Take of the Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, of Cassia, of each half an Ounce ; and of brown Sugar-Candy in Powder, three Ounces ; then take half a Handful of Mallow-leaves, boil them to a Decoction in fair Water, then strain it, and put to it all the fore-named Ingredients, and administer it blood-warm. This helpeth all Fevers, it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing Diseases, most excellent against Surfeits, either by Provender or otherwise ; and it will occasion great Strength in a short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given.

A Glister for the Pestilence and all Fevers.

Take the Pulp of Colloquintida, half an Ounce ; (I mean
+ the

the Seeds and Skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an Ounce; of Centaury and of Wormwood, of each half a Handful; of Castoreum a quarter of an Ounce; boil all these in three Quarts of Water to a Quart, then strain it, and dissolve into the Broth; of Gerologundinum three Ounces, and of white Salt three Drams, of Sallet-Oil half a Pint, and blood-warm administer it.

A Glister for the Cholick.

Take salt Water or new-made Brine two Pints; dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and so blood-warm administer it.

Vertues.

This is very good for the Cholick, or any Sickness or Gripping in the Guts or Belly. And let this suffice for Glisters.

Advice given upon giving Glisters.

1. Before you administer any Glister, be sure to rake him.
2. When you put in the Glister-Pipe, anoint it first with Butter or Sallet-Oil; and that you put it in and out gently, and by degrees; you must anoint likewise the Hand and Arm.
3. Let him keep it above half an hour, by holding his Tuel close to his Fundament.
4. That you do administer it but blood-warm.
5. That you do squeeze and press between your Hands the Bladder strongly.
6. And lastly, that you let him not drink any cold Water in a day or two after; but let it either be sweet Mash, or else white Water.

What things are put into a Laxative Glister.

Pellitory, Melilot, Camomile, (but Pellitory is the best) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet-Oil, Honey, Aloes and Verjuice of the Crab, Brank-ursine, Mallows or Marsh-Mallows, Fennel Roots, Parsly Roots, Jack by the Hedge.

The Nature of the principal Drugs.

Agarick purgeth the Brain, Aloes the Breast and Body, Rhubarb purgeth the evil Water, and it openeth the Liver, and helpeth Obstructions and Oppilations, *Aristolochia rotunda* mollifieth the Breast, Liver and Lungs, and Baccalaury or Bay-berries do mortify the peccant Humours which do engender

gender in the Breast or Entrails, near about the Heart ; and Saffron (if it be discreetly given) doth marvellously comfort and enlighten the Heart.

What the true Nature of Rhubarb is.

Rhubarb hath two contrary Natures, for if you either scrape, grate, or cut it, then it is a Loosner, for it dissolveth and openeth the Liver, and expelleth the Obstructions thereof ; it expulseth all bad Humours in and about the Heart, Liver, and Spleen ; it cleanseth the Body, and sendeth away the peccant Humours among the Excrements, and all such Things as may annoy or offend the Entrails : but if you shall pound or beat it in a Mortar, or otherwise, the Spirit whereof being a subtle Body, will transire and fly away, whereby the Operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

The Nature of a Suppository.

The Nature of Suppositories are to help a Horse that cannot well empty himself, for a Suppository causeth him to discharge himself of many superfluous and evil Humours which do disturb, annoy, and distemper his Body with their peccant Qualities and Conditions ; for they breed bad Nutriment, which oftentimes good Diet cannot amend, and therefore must be sent away by Purgation, that is to say, by Suppository, or Glister, or Potion. A Suppository is but a Preparative to a Glister or Potion, and is of all other things the gentlest you can use ; and it will loosen the Guts, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot and hard Excrements, which a Glister will not so well do.

The first Suppository.

Take a Candle of four or five in the pound, and cut off three Inches at the smaller end, and anoint the biggest part of it either with Sallet-Oil or fresh Butter, and so put it into his Fundament ; then with your Hand hold his Tail to his Tuel about half an hour, by which time the Suppository will be dissolved ; then take his Back, and trot him up and down till he begin to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the better and more kindly. This is the most gentle of all Suppositories that can be given : This dissolveth all hard, dry, and hot Excrements, and sendeth them forth ; and besides, it suppleth the Guts. Another, if you find him so weak, that you dare not without
out

out the peril of his Life administer unto him any Potion, or purging Medicine, then give him this Suppository.

The second Suppository.

Take of common Honey six Ounces, of Salt-Niter one Ounce and a half, of Wheat Flower, and of Anniseeds in fine Powder, of each an Ounce; boil all these to a stiff thickness, and so make it into Suppositorys, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Sallet-Oil, and your Hand also, and so put it up into his Fundament the length of your Hand, then tie his Tail betwixt his Legs, by fastening it to his Girts, and let it remain so half an hour, then ride and order him as before. This is good in case of Surfeits or inward Sicknes.

Suppository the third.

Take a piece of Castle-Soap, and paring it, bring it into the fashion of a Suppository, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you; this is special good to purge Phlegm.

Suppository the fourth.

Take so much Savin as will suffice, and stamp it to a Mash, and stamp with it Stavefaker and Salt, of each two Ounces; boil these in common Honey so much as will suffice, till it be thick, and so make it up into Suppositorys, and administer one of them as you did before, and order him so likewise. This purgeth Choler.

Suppository the fifth.

Take an angry red Onion, and peel it, and jag it cross-ways with your Knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. This purgeth Melancholy.

Suppository the sixth.

Take common Honey a Pint, and boil it till it be thick, and make it up into Suppositorys as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before perscribed. This purgeth ill Humours, it cooleth and comforteth the Body very much, and causeth a good Appetite to Meat.

Observations to be observed in giving Suppositorys, Glisters or Potions.

First, you may do it in a Morning, fasting, unless Necessity urgeth the contrary. Se.

Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink any cold Water; no, not with Exercise, but either sweet Mashcs or white Water.

Thirdly, it is very needful, before you administer either of them, to rake him. And,

Fourthly, that he be after kept warm.

Of Purgations and their Uses.

Purgation is an emptying and voiding of superfluous Humours, which do cumber, pester and disturb the Body with their peccant Condition; which ill Humours do breed bad Nutriment, which when it will not be concocted and amended either by fair means or by the Help of Nature, then it must be compelled, forced and driven away by Purgation, Vomit, Glister or Suppository: but to speak only of Purgations, purging of Horses are either by Pills or Potions; Pills are any solid or substantial stuff fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are cast down the Horse's Throat. A Potion is when you give him any liquid purging Matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid stuff. Now Pills purge and make clean the Head and Brain, bringing Phlegm and other gross Humours down into the Excrements; and Potions cleanse the Stomach, Guts, and every other inward Member.

What a skilful Farrier ought to know: Before he goes about to purge a Horse, he ought to consider the Nature of the Simples.

Now the Art of the true Farrier is in chusing of the Simples, whereof these Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in skilfully applying the same. First then, he ought to know what ill Humours he is oppress'd with; as whether it proceeds from Choler, Phlegm and Melancholy, and where they do most abound, and then what Simples are best to purge those Humours, and with what Quality or Temperament they are endued: for some Simples are most violent and next Cousins to strong Poisons, as Scammony or Colloquintida; some again are gentle, as Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, and such like; and some are neither too violent nor too gentle, but of a Mean, as Rhubarb, Agarick, Sena and Aloes.

The Nature of the Disease, the Strength of the Horse, and the Climate he was bred in.

You ought to consider the Nature of the Disease, the Strength of the Horse, and with them join the Nature, Strength and Quantity of the Medicine; he must consider likewise the Climate wherein he was bred; and you are to make a difference between delicate and tender Horses, and strong and sturdy Horses, and in such cases the Quality and Quantity is to be look'd into of every Simple: the Climate likewise is to be respected, whether it be too hot or too cold, and you are not to administer as hot Simples in the Summer as in the Winter, nor so cold things in the Winter as in the Summer; you ought to have respect to the Day, and to chuse that always that is most temperate, for too much Heat makes a Horse faint, and too much Cold spoils the Working of the Medicine.

When he is to have his Potion.

Give him his Potion in the Morning, after he hath fasted from Meat and Drink all the Night before.

To ride him after it.

After he hath received his Potion, ride him gently after it, about an Hour, and set him up, and let him stand on the Bit two Hours after it, well littered and clothed: If he be sick, let him lie down; but if that will do him no good, and that you find him so sick that you fear his Life, then give him a Quart of warm Milk, with a little Saffron in it, and he will do well, and give him no other Meat than a Mash of Malt, and white Water to drink, till his Medicine hath done working.

How to make a Mash.

Take half a Peck of ground Malt, and put it into a Pail, then put in as scalding hot Water as will wet it very well; then stir it about half an Hour, till tasting the Water you find it as sweet as Honey; then being lukewarm, give it to the Horse to drink: this Mash is only to be used after you have given him a Purge to make it work the better, or after hard Labour, or instead of Drink in the time of any great Sickness.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themselves; and though the antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to say, Pills and Purgations; yet I divide them

them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills, and Purgations.

What Scourings are.

Scourings are those wholesome, natural, and gentle purging Medicines, which stirring up no great Flux of Humours, do only keep the Body clean from such Evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholesome in Health as in Sicknes, and may most properly be termed Preparatives or Preparers of the Body to entertain stronger Medicines.

Scouring by Grasse.

To speak of the most gentle and natural Scouring, which is Grasse, which you are to give but for fifteen Days together, and no more, for after that it fatteth; the best scouring Grasse is a New-mown Meadow, for that will rake his Guts very well, nor will he in such a place gather Flesh; but if you intend to fat him, you are to take him out from thence, and put him in some other Pasture, where the Scithe hath not been. And this manner of Scouring will cause him to empty himself well of all his evil Humours and Surfeits, ease his Limbs marvellous well, do his Legs and Feet very much good, refine his corrupt Blood, and make him agile and full of Spirit. Next unto Grasse is Sorrage, which is only the Blades of green Corn, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given him seven Days and no more, which cleanseth and cooleth the Body very much, so doth the Leaves of Sallows, and of the Elm-green Thistles, likewise being cut up and given him for about five Days is a good Scourer. And the last of these gentle Scourings is the Mash of Malt as aforesaid; but as you are prescribed there to make it of a quarter of a Peck of Malt, you are to take a larger here (if you use it for a Scouring) a Peck of Malt, and to put to it a handful or more of beaten Hempseed.

A Scouring to be given after a Sweat.

Take half an Ounce of Rozin of Jallop in Powder, half an Ounce of Cream of Tartar powdred, and half an Ounce of Liquorish in Powder, make these up into Balls with fresh Butter, about the bigness of a small Wallnut, and give him four or five at a time, in a Horn full of Beer, one after another.

Scourings of a little stronger Nature are these.

To mix with his Oats a handful or two of Hempseed, or to take a handful of the Powder of dried Box-leaves, and as
 † much

much of Brimstone, and mix it amongst his Provender. These are to be used after Labour when he hath sweat much.

They purge the Head and Stomach.

These two Scourings work upon no Matter but what Nature will excel; they purge the Head, Stomach, and Entrails, they kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Phlegm.

Scourings of a stronger nature.

Take of Sallet-Oil half a Pint, of new Milk from the Cow a Pint, brew it together, and give it him lukewarm; or else take a Pint of Muscadine, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him to drink; or the same quantity of Oil and Sack mix'd together, and give it him lukewarm.

Their Virtues.

These Scourings cleanse the Head, Body and Guts, from all Phlegm or molten Grease, which any violent Labour hath dissolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of Cold, or Stoppage of the Wind-pipes; and if you add to them good store of Sugar-Candy, it will be the better.

How to order a Horse before you give him Physick.

In Winter if his Body be purged, it must be prepared by Blood-letting with artificial Diet; you are to keep him a day or two without Hay, Straw, or such-like hard Meats, which will hinder the working of the Physick; and he must be kept for a time from all manner of Meat, because Emptiness is a great help to physical Operation, otherwise it may happen to do more hurt than good. Two or three days before you purge him, let his Meat be either Wheat or Rye-Bran, prepared like as has been taught you, or else good Bread made on purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it; or else good sweet Oats clean sifted: and let his Drink be white Water only. And that Morning you intend to give him his Purge, let him be fasting from either Meat or Drink.

The easiest sort of Pills.

The easiest Pills are these: Either take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pill'd and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so roll up the Garlick in four or five Balls, as big as two Walnuts a-piece, and throw them down his Throat one after another; or else take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders, beat them very well together

together in a Mortar, and make them up in Balls, and give them as you did the other; or else take a handful of Rosemary-Leaves chopt very small, and mix them with a quarter of a pound of Butter, and make it into round Balls as the other, and give them the Horse; or else take five green Figs, and put them down his throat.

The strongest sort of Pill.

Take one Pound of Lard laid in Water two hours, and take nothing but two Ounces of the clean Fat thereof, and stamp it in a Mortar, and put thereto of Liquorice, of Aniseeds, and of Fenugreek beaten to powder, of each one Ounce; of Aloes beaten into powder one Ounce; of Agarrick half an Ounce; knead them all together into Paste, and make three or four Balls of them, and give them the Horse.

This Pill is not to be given but to a Horse of great Stature, and strong in Health of Body.

Purgations that are the strongest Cleansers.

1. Take Myrrh and mix it with a Pint of White-wine, and it will purge all Sickness that proceedeth of Choler; the signs whereof are, his Belly will swell, be very hot, neither dung nor break wind. Or,

2. Take a Pint of Wine, and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an Ounce of Brimstone, and half an Ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it him lukewarm, and it will purge all inward Diseases proceeding of Melancholy. Or,

3. Two Spoonfuls of the Powder of *Diapente* given with half a Pint of Swine's-Grease, purgeth all Diseases proceeding of Phlegm. Or,

4. Take as much black Soap as the bigness of a Walnut, a Quart of new Milk, and a Quarter of a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him lukewarm, and it purgeth all cold Infirmities, but it will make him exceeding sick. Or,

5. Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel cut into small pieces, and give it him in a Quart of White-wine, and it will purge him from all Costiveness and Pain in the Guts. Or,

6. Rye being boil'd so that it burst not, and dry'd again, and given him instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms. Or,

7. Take

7. Take of *Aloes Succotrina* one Ounce, two Drams of Rozin of Jallop, Gentian, *Aristolochia* and *Elecampane*, of each a Dram, mix them well in a Quart of Ale, and two Ounces of Butter, with two Eggs Whites, and all well beaten; shake in the *Aloes* last, when it is a little warm, and give it him. Or,

8. Take of Radish-Roots one Ounce, of the Root called *Panax*, and *Scammony*, of each half an Ounce, beaten all together, and boiled in a Quart of Honey, and give him two spoonfuls of it to drink in a Quart of Ale warm; and this will purge all gross Humours whatsoever. Or,

9. Take *Elecampane* Roots boiled in Milk till they be soft, and add to them half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him lukewarm, and this will purge and cleanse any kind of Glanders. Or,

10. Take of sweet Soap a quarter of a Pound, made up into Balls, and give them the Horse, and it will purge all Humours whatsoever, both violently and most abundantly. Or,

11. Take of White-Wine a Pint, or for want of that, a Quart of new Ale, so much of the Powder *Mechoacan* of the best and choicest, as you may take upon a Shilling at four times; give it him warm. This will purge away his Filth and Slime, and carry away his peccant Humours which Surfeits have ingendred. Or,

12. Take an Ounce or better of the best *Aloes*, and after you have beaten it to a very fine Powder, then work it up with a little sweet Butter, and then divide it into three Parts, and cover them all over with clear Butter, as big as a small Wash-ball, and give them in a Morning fasting upon the point of a Stick, and give him a Horn-full of warm Beer after them, and ride him after them, and set him up warm. *Probatum est.* Or,

13. Take of the strongest Ale-wort one Quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a Pint, of *London Treacle* two Ounces, mix and brew all together well, and so give it him blood-warm, and keep him upon the Trench warm clothed and well littered six Hours after, and let his Drink be white Water or a sweet Mash: This both purgeth and comforteth. Put into his Drink either the Powder of Brimstone, or of Fenugreek, or Turmerick, or *Elecampane*, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like; which being well mixed, put into his Drink one Spoonful at once. Or,

14. Take of ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oats, which must be mixed by rubbing the Oats and Honey be-

twixt the Hands; let him eat his Oats thus mingled till you find him quite cured; which will be when he hath quite done running at the Nose. This is one of the best and most certain Cordials that I know, for this disperseth all Phlegm and Choler; it also purgeth the Head, Brain and Blood, it venteth evil Humours, it causeth good Digestion, and freeth him from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, and the like. Or,

15. When you let blood you may save it in a Bowl or Dish, keeping it stirring to keep it from clotting, and give it him to drink in a Drenching-Horn, mingled with a handful of Salt. This is good for a Cold. Or,

16. Take an Ounce of *Aloes Succotrina* beaten to Powder, and as much of the Powder of Rozin and Jallop as will lie upon a Sixpence, mix them well with a little fresh Butter, then divide it into three parts, and cover each part all over again with Butter, about the bigness of a good handsome Wash-ball, and give them him in the Morning Fasting, with a Drenching-Horn full of strong warm Beer after every Ball; and order him as you have Directions for sick Horses. This is a very good Receipt to scour a hide-bound Horse that is sick of moulten Grease, and that does not thrive, nor fill himself, nor carry a good Coat. Or,

17. Take a handful of Groundsel, half a handful of dried (or less of green) Wormwood, and half a handful of red Sage chopped very small, and boiled in three Pints of strong Beer or Ale: Then strain the Beer from the Herbs, and put into it a good piece of Butter, with as much of the powder of *Mechoacan* as will lie upon a broad Shilling, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning fasting, and order him as you do sick Horses. This Drink purgeth Slime and moulten Grease in Lumps, and makes a Horse thrive very well both in Winter and Summer. See the second Part for Purgations, for another of this kind.

Bran, how boiled and prepared to give a Horse that hath a Cold: As also what Seeds you are to give him amongst his Provender for the Cure of it.

Set a Kettle over the Fire almost full of Water, and when it is ready to boil, put in your Bran, and let it boil a quarter of an Hour; then take it off and cover it with a Cloth or Board, let it stand till it cool a little, and give it him early in the Morning as hot as he can conveniently eat it. At Night let his Meat be Oats and white Water, but be sure you

you put into his Provender the quantity of an Egg-shell full of these Powders grossly beaten (lest he blow them away) viz. Linseed, Cummingseed, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cloves, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, of each of these two Ounces, and of Brimstone six Ounces; but before you give him his Oats and Powders, give him white Water, and rub him and litter him well: let him feed on Wheat straw about an Hour before you give him his Oats, and afterwards give him some Hay. This way of Feeding about eight or nine Days together, will quite free him from his Cold, if it be not too violent.

Horse-Spice how to make.

These several Powders mixed together make it, viz. Rhubarb one Ounce, Turmerick two Ounces, Elecampane six Ounces, Brimstone four Ounces, a quarter of a Pound of Liquorice Powder, and a quarter of a Pound of Anniseeds, Fennel-seeds four Ounces, Grains of Paradise four Ounces, &c. Put all these together in a Glass or Gally-pot, and keep them till you have occasion to use them. The quantity that you are to give your Horse, is either greater or smaller, according to the Strength and Constitution of your Horse: you are not to exceed above an Ounce at a time, mixed with a Spoonful of the best Sallet-Oil, and a Spoonful or two of the Treacle of Jean, dissolved in a Quart of strong Beer, which is very good for a Cold, and to make a Horse thrive. Or you may give him an Ounce of them in three Pints of warm Beer or Ale, after Blood-letting, to prevent Diseases. If you leave out the Rhubarb, you may give him a greater quantity, for that is a great Purger.

Rules to know where a Horse halteth, either before or behind.

If he do halt before, his Grief must of necessity be either in the Shoulder, or Knee, or in the Shank, or in the Pastern, or in the Foot; if it be in the Shoulder, it must be either towards the Withers, or in the Pitch of the Shoulder, you may know it in that he will a little draw his Leg after him, and not handle it so nimbly as he doth the other: if he cast his Leg more outward than he doth the other, it is a sign that he is lame, and that the Grief lieth in his Shoulder; and if you take him in your Hand, or turn him short on either Hand, you shall find him to complain of that Shoulder he is lame of, and he will either favour that Leg, or trip in the turning: you may find him lame by his standing in the Stable, and he will hold out that Leg that is lame more than

the other; and if he complains more when you are on his Back than otherwise, then be sure the Grief lies in the Withers, and gripe him hard, and you shall perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite. If he tread thick and short before, then is the Grief upon the Pitch of the Shoulder close to the Breast, which you may find by setting your Thumb hard to the place, and by thrusting him with it, if you would have him to go back, whereat he will shrink and put back his Leg, Foot and Body. If the Grief be in the Elbow, you may know it by pinching him with your Forefinger and Thumb, and he will hold up his Leg and offer to bite; and these be all the Grievs that lie in the Shoulder of a Horse. If the Grievs lie lower, they must be either in the Knee, in the Skin, in the Pastern, or in the Foot.

When in the Knee.

If it be in the Knee, you may find it by his stiff going, for he will not bend it so nimbly as he doth the other. If it be in the Shank or Shin-bone, you may see it, and likewise feel the same, it being then a Back-sinew Strain, Splint, or some such like Sorrance or Annoyance. If it be in the bending of the Knee, then it is a Mallender, which is also easily descried; when it is in the Pastern or Joint, then you may know it by his not bending it so well as the other; besides, if you put your Hand upon the place, you shall find it very hot: if it be in the Foot, it must be either in the Cronet or in the Sole; if in the Cronet, it is probable it came by some Strain or Wrench; if in the Heel, then it came by some Over-reach, or else by some Disease in or about the Frush: if in the Sole, then it came by some Prick, Accloy, Retoire, Nail, Stub, Stone or Gravel. And thus I have shewed unto you the several ways that cause a Horse to be lame before, and how to know and distinguish the places griev'd, together with the occasion of every particular Grief.

How to distinguish an old Grief from a new.

You have three ways to find out his Lameness, in what Joint, Limb or Member of the Body soever.

I. The first way is to cause him to be turned at the Halter's end, on either hand, suddenly and swiftly, upon as hard a way as you can pick out; and if he have any Ach, Wrench or Grief in his Fore-parts, it will appear: for when he turneth upon that Hand that the Grief is on, he will favour that Leg, and so run both towards you and from you, especially done at a little yielding Hill; and if he have

have any Imperfection, he will soon shew it, for he will favour that Leg wherein the Grief resideth. But if you cannot find it out this way,

2. Then your second way must be to take his Back, and ride him till you have thoroughly heated him; then set him up for two or three Hours till he be cold, then turn him at the Halter's end, or ride him, and you may easily discover the least Grief that may be in him.

3. A third way there is, and that to know whether the Grief proceeds from a hot or cold Cause, for if it proceed from a hot Cause, he will halt most when he is hot; but if it be of a cold Cause, then he will halt least when he is hot, and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilst he is cold: and thus much for Lameness and Halting before.

Now finding that his Lameness is not before, you may then conclude, if he be lame at all it must needs be behind, and then it must of necessity be either in the Foot or in the nether Joint, in the Pastern or in the Leg, in the Ham or in the Hoof, in the Stiffing-place or Joint, or in the Hip. If the Grief be either in the Leg, Pastern or Foot, you may know it by the same Signs as I have inculcated to you already in the Fore-Legs. If it be in the bending of the Ham, it must be a Selander. If it be in the Hoof, then it is either a Bone or Blood-spavin, which is easy enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some Blow, Wrench or Strain; neither then will the Swelling easily appear, which you may perceive either by the stiffness of the Joint, or you may find the place to be hot and burning. If the Pain lie in the Stiffing-place, you may know it by his Gait, for in his going he will cast the stiffler Joint outward, and the Bone on the inside will be bigger than the other, beside his Toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the side of the Buttock; and if it be newly taken, you may know it in that he will go side-long like a Crab. And if it be an old Hurt, the Hip will be fallen lower than the other, and the Flesh shrunk; which to discover it the sooner, run him at the full length of the Rein, and he will be sure to favour that Leg the Grief is in: but if you find him to go upright without favouring any Leg, then take his Back and ride him till he be warmed, and then set him up till he be cold, and then lead or trot him in your hand as you did before, and if he be lame at all he will be sure to complain. And so much for Lameness before and behind.

Chap. I. *The true Art of Paring and Shoeing all manner of Hoofs, and in what Point the Art of Shoeing doth consist.*

The Art of Shoeing consisteth in these Points, viz. in paring the Hoof well, in making the Shoe of good Stuff, in well fashioning of the Web thereof, and well-piercing the same, in fitting the Shoe unto the Horse's Foot, in making Nails of good stuff, and well-fashioning of the same; and finally, in well-driving the said Nails, and cleansing of the same. But sith neither Paring or Shoeing is an absolute thing of it self, but hath respect unto the Foot or Hoof, (for the Shoe is to be fitted to the Foot, and not the Foot to the Shoe) and there be divers kinds of Hoofs both good and bad, requiring great diversity, as well of Paring as Shoeing; it is meet therefore that we speak of the diversities of Hoofs, and then shew you how they ought to be paired and shod.

Chap. II. *Of Hoofs, and divers Kinds thereof.*

1. Of Hoofs, some be perfect, and some imperfect. The perfect Hoof is that which is round, smooth, tough and short, so as he may tread more on the Toe than on the Heel, and also right, and somewhat hollow within, but not over-hollow, having a narrow Frush and broad Heels.

The imperfect Hoof.

The imperfect Hoof is that which lacketh any of these Properties before-said, belonging to a perfect Hoof. If the Hoof be not round but broad, and spreading out of the sides and quarters, that Horse for the most part hath narrow Heels, and in continuance of time will be flat-footed, which is a weak Foot, and will not carry a Shoe long, nor travel far, but soon surbate; and by treading more on his Heels than on his Toes, will go low on his Palterns, and such Feet through their weakness be much subject to false Quarters, and to Gravelling, which is most commonly seen in *Flanders* Horses, and such as are bred in moist Grounds.

Brittle and rugged Hoofs.

2. If the Hoof be not smooth, but rugged and full of Circles, like Rams-horns, then it is not only unseemly to the Eye, but also it is a sign that the Foot is in no good Temper, but too hot and dry, and that makes it to be brittle; which Defect is often seen in our *English* Horses.

Long

Long Hoofs.

3. If it be long, then it will cause the Horse to tread all upon the Heels, and to go low on his Pasterns, and thereby to breed Wind-galls, whereunto the Jennets of Spain be much subject, by reason of their long Hoofs.

Crooked Hoofs.

4. If the Hoof be not right, but crooked, viz. broad without and narrow within, whereby the Horse is splay-footed; then it will cause him to tread more inward than outward, and to go so close with his Joints together, as he cannot well travel without interfering, or perhaps striking one Leg so hard against the other, as he becometh lame. But if he be broad within, and narrow without, that is not so hurtful, notwithstanding it will cause him to gravel sooner on the out-side than on the inside.

Flat Hoofs.

5. If the Hoof be flat and not hollow within, as is most commonly seen in *Frezons* and *Flanders* Horses, then it breedeth such Inconveniencies as are before declared in the first imperfect Hoof. And again, if it be over-hollow, then it will dry the faster, and cause him to be hoof-bound; for the over-hollow Hoof is a strait narrow Hoof, and groweth upright: for tho the Horse treadeth upright, and not on his Heels, yet such kind of Hoofs will dry over-fast, unless they be continually stopt, and cause him to be hoof-bound, which lameth him, making him to halt; whereunto the Jennets and *Barbary* Horses are much subject.

Broad Frushes.

6. If the Frush be broad, then the Heels be weak and so soft, as you may almost bend them together; and then he will never tread boldly on the Stones, or on hard Ground.

Narrow Heels.

7. Narrow Heels be tender, and he will at last grow to be hoof-bound, to which Defects the Jennets are most commonly subject.

Chap. III. Of paring the perfect Hoof and Fore-feet.

First, Pare the Seat of the Shoe, as even and as plain as may be, that so it may fit close, and not bear more on one place than another; and take more of the Toe than the Heel,

for the Heels must be higher than the Toes, because all the weight of the Horse's Fore-body lieth upon the Quarters and Heels of the Fore-feet. And therefore those Parts must be most maintained, and taken off with the Butteries as little as may be, for the Heels are naturally weaker than the Toes. But in the paring of the hinder Feet it is clean contrary, as you shall find hereafter in its proper place.

Chap. IV. *Of Shoeing the perfect Hoof and Fore-feet, and how the Shoe, Paring and Nail should be made.*

Make your Shoe of *Spanish Iron*, with a broad Web, fitting it to the Hoof, and let the Spunges be thicker and more substantial than any other part of the Shoe; yea, and also somewhat broad, so as the Quarters on both sides may appear without the Hoofs a straw's breadth, to guard the Coffin, which is the Strength of the Hoof: and when you come to the piercing thereof, pierce it from the Quarter to the hard Toe, but not backward towards the Heel, and that the holes may be wider on the out-side than on the inside, and that the Circle of the piercing may be more distant from the edge of the Toe, than from the edge of the Quarter, whereas it beginneth because the Hoof is thicker forward than backward, and therefore more hold to be taken. Make your Nails of the same Iron as aforesaid, the Heads whereof should be square, and not fully so broad beneath as above, but answerable to the piercing holes, so as the Heads of the Nails may enter in and fill the same, appearing somewhat above the Shoe, and then they will stand sure without shogging, and endure longer, and that which pierceth them be of the same Size as the Nails, that is to say, great above and small beneath; which our common Smiths little regard, for they make the Holes as wide on the inside as the outside, and their Nails of so great a Shouldring by driving them over-hard upon the Nail-hole, as that the Heads, or rather Necks of the said Nails, cannot enter into the Holes. For to say the truth, a good Nail should have no Shouldering at all, but be made with a plain and square Neck, so as it may justly fill the piercing hole of the Shoe; for otherwise the Head of the Nail standing high, and the Neck thereof being weak, either it breaketh off, or else bendeth upon any light occasion, so as the Shoe standeth loose from the Hoof, and is quickly lost. Moreover, the Shanks of the Nails should be somewhat flat, and the Points sharp, without hollownes or flaw, and stiffer towards the Head above than

than beneath. And when you drive, drive at the first with soft strokes, and with a light Hammer, until the Nail be somewhat entred: and in shoeing fine and delicate Horses, grease the Points of the Nails with soft Grease, that so they may enter the more easily, and drive the two Talon-Nails first. Then look whether the Shoe standeth right or not, which you shall perceive in beholding the Frush; for if the Spunges on both sides be equally distant from the Frush, then it standeth right; if not, then amend it, and set the Shoe right, and standing right drive in another Nail: that done, let the Horse set down his Foot again, and look round about it, to see whether it fitteth the Horse's Foot in all places, and whether he treadeth even or just on it or not; and if you see that the Shoe doth not furnish every part equally, but appeareth more on one side than another, then lift up the Horse's other Foot, that so he may stand steadily upon that Foot; and so standing, strike him on the Hoof with your Hammer on that side that the Shoe is scant, and that shall make the Shoe to come that way. The Shoe standing strait and just, drive in the rest of all the Nails, to the number of eight; that is to say, four on one side, and four on another, so as the Points of the Nails may seem to stand in the out-side of the Hoof, even and just one by another, as it were a circular Line, and not out of order like the Teeth of a Saw, whereof one is bent one way, and another another way. That done, cut them off and clinch them, so as the Clinches may be hidden in the Hoof, which by cutting the Hoof with a point of a Knife, a little beneath the appearing of the Nail, you may easily do. Thus done with a Rape, pare the Hoof round, so as the Edge of the Shoe may be seen round about.

Chap. V. Of Paring of the imperfect Hoofs, every one according to their Kinds. And first of the broad Hoof.

A broad Hoof, not being as yet grown to be too flat, may be holpen and kept from being flat, by the skill and diligence of the Farrier in well paring and shoeing it. And therefore to pare it well, let him take as much of the Toe with his Butteris as he can possibly, keeping it always under; but let him not touch the Quarters nor the Heels at all, unless it be to make the Seat of the Shoe plain, and let that be done so superficially as may be, so shall the Hoofs remain always strong.

Chap.

Chap. VI. *Of Shoeing the broad Hoof.*

Make a good strong Shoe, with a broad Web, and broad Spunges, and pierced as is before said, fitting it to the Foot, being first pared as is above said; and from the Talon-Nail towards the Heel, let the Shoe appear a straw's breadth without the Hoof, and set it on in such order and with such Nails as appertaineth unto the perfect Hoof; saving that you shall set five Nails on the outside of his Hoof, and four on the inside, because he weareth more without than within.

Chap. VII. *Of paring the rough and brittle Hoof.*

This kind of Hoof is most commonly weaker without than within; and because it is for the most part hotter than the other Hoofs be, the Heels may be the more open'd than the other, that so they may be the more easy stopt with Cow-dung, or other Ointment, to keep it moist: and also the raggedness on the out-side of the Coffin should be filed away with a Rape, and made smooth, and also more often anointed than other Hoofs; and as for the rest of the Hoof, it must be pared as the perfect one.

Chap. VIII. *Of Shoeing the rough and brittle Hoof.*

Make this Shoe neither too light, but so as it may well bear the Horse, nor yet too heavy; for then the Hoof being weak, will soon cast it, and pierce this Shoe, to be set on with nine Nails, five without and four within.

Chap. IX. *Of Paring the long Hoof.*

The long Hoof may be holpen by cutting away the Toe, for the shorter Foot a weak and slender Leg hath, the better. And to say the truth, it is the short Foot that maketh the strong Leg, and the long Foot maketh the weak Leg, being forced thereby to tread all upon the Heel, and on the Pastern; and let the rest of the Hoof be pared like the perfect Hoof.

Chap. X. *Of Shoeing the long Hoof.*

Make this Shoe as round as you can at the Toe, that the breadth may take away the evil sight of the length; and if the Foot be very narrow, then let the Shoe disbord without the Hoof, and pierce the Shoe the deeper, and set it backward enough, because such kind of Feet do tread most on the Heels: and set the Shoe on with eight Nails, like the perfect Hoof.

Chap.

Chap. XI. *Of Paring the crooked Hoof.*

First, look on what side the Hoof is highest and least worn, and then pare all that away, and make it equal with the lower side which is most worn; without touching the worn side at all, unless it be to make the Seat of the Shoe plain: and as for the rest, pare it like the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XII. *Of Shoeing the crooked Hoof.*

Make an indifferent strong Shoe with a broad Web, fitting it to the Foot, and pare it not until you have laid the Shoe unto the Foot, to the intent you may pare it to the Horse's most commodity, which shall be done, if you pare the scant side, which most commonly is the inside, more towards the Toe, than the fuller or stronger side. And whereas the Hoof is weakest, there also make the Shoe strongest, and set on this Shoe with nine Nails, viz. five on the stronger side, and four on the weaker side.

Chap. XIII. *Of Paring the flat Hoof, otherwise called the Promised Hoof.*

Make the Seat of the Shoe plain, and take somewhat off the Toe, but touch not the Heel nor the Ball of the Foot, but leave both them so strong as you can.

Chap. XIV. *Of Shoeing the flat Hoof, or Promised Hoof.*

Make this Shoe with a very broad Web, for the more it cover the weak Sole, the better; and let the mid-part of the Web that covers the Ball of the Foot be much thicker than the out-sides where the piercings be, and let it be so hollow as it touch no part of the Ball of the Foot, and let it be large and long enough in all places, so as the Horse may go at ease; and let it be pierced round about the Toe, to favour the Heels, and make ten holes for ten Nails, viz. five on each side.

Chap. XV. *Of Paring the over-hollow Hoof.*

Pare this Hoof round about, and especially the Seat of the Shoe, viz. round about by the Edges, to the intent the Hollowness of the Hoof within may not be so deep, but more shallow than it was before; and let it be always kept moist with stopping it, for fear of Hoof-binding: observing in your Paring so even a hand as may be, in all points like unto the perfect Hoof.

Chap.

Chap. XVI. *Of Shoeing the over-hollow Hoof.*

Make a light Shoe in such order and form as was said before, to serve the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XVII. *Of Paring the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.*

Broad Frushes do cause weak Heels, and therefore had need of little or no paring at all; and for that cause pare only the Toe, and also the Seat of the Shoe, so much as shall be needful to the even standing of the Shoe, leaving the Heels so strong as may be.

Chap. XVIII. *Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.*

Make this Shoe stronger towards the Heel than towards the Toe, and also let the Web be somewhat broad towards the Heels to save them from the Ground, and set on this Shoe with nine Nails, because most commonly it is a great Foot; and in all other points make it like the Shoe with the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XIX. *Of Paring the Hoof that hath narrow Heels.*

Pare the Toe short, and make the Seat of the Shoe fair and plain, and open only so much, as there may be some little space betwixt the Frush and the Heel; for the less you take of the Heel, the better.

Chap. XX. *Of Shoeing the Hoof with narrow Heels.*

Make a light Shoe with a broad Web, and let the Spunges be so broad as they may almost meet together, to defend the Heel from the Ground, and pierce it all towards the Toe, sparing the Heel so much as you can, and let the Shoe be long enough towards the Heels, and set it on with eight Nails, like the Shoe that fitteth the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XXI. *Of Paring and Shoeing the Hinder-Feet.*

The Paring of the Hinder-Feet, is clean contrary unto the Fore-Feet, for the weakest part of the Hinder-Foot is the Toe, and therefore in paring the Hinder-Foot, the Toe must be always more spared than the Heels; but in all other points observe the order of paring, according to the perfection or imperfection of the Hoofs before declared.

Chap. XXII. *Of Shoeing the Hinder-feet.*

Make the Shoe fit for the Hoof, as is before said, and let it be

be strongest at the Toe, and pierced nigher the Heel than the Toe, because the Toe is the weakest part of the Foot, and let the outside of the Hinder-shoe be made with a Calkin, not over high; but let the other Spunge be agreeable unto the Calkin, that is to say, as high in a manner as the Calkin, which Calkin is to keep him from sliding: but then it may not be sharp pointed, but rather flat, and handsomly turned upward, which is the best sort of Calkin.

Chap. XXIII. Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a false Quarter.

If the Horse halts, then make him a Shoe fitting to his Foot, tacking it on the Quarter on that side that his false Quarter is on: if he do not halt, then make him a Shoe with a Button or Shouldering on the inside of the Shoe, and next to the Sole of the Foot, somewhat distant from the false Quarter towards the Toe, and that shall defend the sore place, so as the Shoe shall not touch it; and with this kind of Shoe you may travel your Horse where you will.

Chap. XXIV. For Paring and Shoeing for Interfering.

Those Hoofs that interfere, are most commonly higher on the outside than on the inside, and therefore you should take off the outside with a Butteris, to the intent that the inside may be somewhat higher (if it will be) than the outside; and then make him a Shoe fit for his Foot, which should be thicker on the inside than on the outside, and let that Shoe never have any Calkin, for that will make him to tread awry, and the sooner to interfere, and let it be prepared in such sort that it makes him not to interfere.

Chap. XXV. Of Paring and Shoeing the Foot that is Hoof-bound.

First, pare his Toe as short as may be, and pare the Sole somewhat thin, and open the Heels well, and make him a Half-Shoe like a Half-Moon.

Chap. XXVI. Of making the Planch-Shoe, or Pauncelet.

The Planch-Shoe maketh a good Foot and evil Leg, because it maketh the Foot to grow beyond the Measure of the Leg; notwithstanding, for a weak Heel it is marvellous good, and it will last longer than any Shoe, and it is borrowed from the Moyl that hath weak Heels and Frushes, to keep the Foot from Stones and Gravel; notwithstanding, wo be unto that Horse that hath need of such a Shoe.

Chap.

Chap. XXVII. *Shoes with Calkins, Rings, Welts, and turning Vices, and of the Patten-Shoe.*

Besides all these kind of Shoes before recited, there be divers others, whereof some be made with high Calkins, some with Rings, some with Welts or Borders about, and some with Vices, some with Toes turned upward, some with Heels turned upward, and of many other Fashions, which though they be not so needful, I thought good to speak somewhat of them. And first, as touching Shoes with Calkins, that though they be intended to keep the Horse from sliding, yet they do him more harm than good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon the ground, whereby he many times wrencheth his Foot, or straineth some Sinew, and especially upon stony Ways where the Stones will not suffer the Calkins to enter, the Foot slippeth with more Violence: yet some do not think him well shod, unless all his Shoes be made with Calkins, either single or double, yet of the two Evils, double is the less, for he will tread evener with double than with single Calkins; but then let them not be over long, or sharp pointed, but rather short and flat. And thus much for Shoes with Calkins.

Chap. XXVIII. *Of Shoes with Rings.*

Shoes with Rings were first invented to make a Horse lift up his Feet high, but such Shoes are more painful than helpful, and are an unhandsom Sight in Horses; which thing is incident to most Horses that have not sound Hoofs; for having tender Hoofs, they fear to touch the Ground that is hard. Now such kind of Horses that have naturally these tender Heels, some for Want of Discretion do think to amend them by adding thereunto high Calkins, or else Rings, and thereby cause them to have weaker Heels than they had before; Therefore I shall advise you to lay aside all these unprofitable Devices, and make all your Shoes especially your Fore-Shoes, with Spunges, as hath been before taught.

Chap. XXIX. *Of Shoes with swelling Welts, or Borders about.*

In *Germany* and high *Almany*, the Smiths do make their Shoes with a swelling Welt round about the Shoe, which being higher than the Heads of the Nails, do save them from wearing, which are the best sort of lasting Shoes; for Mr. *Blundevill* travelled in those Countrys outright above 500 Miles

Miles upon very stony Ground, yea, and upon Mountains, without removing Shoe or driving Nail: for the Shoe being made of well-tempered Stuff, weareth equally in all parts, and the Horse treadeth evenly upon them.

Chap. XXX. *Of Shoes with turning Vices, and also Joint-Shoes.*

Some who use to pass the Mountains where Smiths are not easily to be found, do carry about them Shoes with Vices, whereby they fasten it to the Horse's Foot, without the help of the Hammer or Nail, notwithstanding they are more for show than any good use. For though it saves his Feet from Stones, yet it so pincheth the Hoof as he goeth with Pain, and doth perhaps do his Hoof more hurt than the Stones do; therefore it is better upon such needful times to use the Joint-Shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat Rivet-Nail joining them together in the Toe, so that you may both make it wide and narrow to serve any Foot: therefore the Rider ought to understand to drive a Nail, and to have his Instruments about him meet for Carriage, without the which there are but few Gentlemen of *Almany* that love their Horses, but can use those Instruments for that purpose as well as most Smiths.

Chap. XXXI. *Of the Patten Shoe*

Because every Smith knoweth the Use of this Shoe, and how to make it, I shall not need to use many words, but only shew you that it is a necessary Shoe for a Horse that is hurt in the Hip, or Stifle, or Shoulder, which will make him bear upon that Leg the Grief is on, and consequently make him use it the better.

In what Causes to cauterize.

Cauterization or giving of Fire is of two Natures, viz. Actual and Potential. Your Cautery Actual is made by hot burning Instruments, with which you sear and burn those Places which be requisite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure well cured, but by giving of Fire; as in case of great Impoisthumation, stenching of Blood in Wounds, or in searing of Veins, Sinews, or the like, or else in case of dismembring, if other Means be not at hand, whereby to stay the Flux of Blood without danger of bleeding to death: and if they that give Fire be not very skilful, I would advise them to practise upon Jades, and not Horses of Price, to the end they may
the

the better come to know how to carry their hand either lighter or harder, and also that they do make their Circles round, and their Lines streight and even.

An Iron with a Button.



The Drawing Iron.

For this Actual Fire is a Thing most necessary for them that do understand the Vertue thereof, and therefore ought to be very carefully apply'd, and never but upon very good Grounds ; which in so doing, you shall find it to be a most Sovereign Remedy to hinder and stay all manner of Corruption, whereunto any Member may be inclined, provided that in handling your Instrument you touch not Muscles, Arteries, Sinews, Ligaments, Chords, or the like ; for so you may utterly lame, where you would set up-right. For by this Actual Fire you shall join and conglutinate Parts and Members sever'd, dry up superfluous Moisture, and sick Members swelled, and bring forth all evil and putrefaction Matter, congealed and gathered into Knots ; as, Wens, Biles, Pustles, Exulceration, and the like : you shall also assuage old Grievs, and make perfect all such Parts of the Body as may be any way corrupted. Neither shall you need fear the Increase of any evil Humours, by reason that the Skin being sever'd by means of the hot Iron, it doth ripen and digest all manner of Putrefaction and matterative Stuff, whereby it venteth and passeth away very easily ; healing and qualifying all Grief and Pain, causing the Member which before was subject to Festering and to Gangreen, to become the sounder and stronger : and the worst that can be made thereof, will be but a little Eye-sore, by reason of a Scar which it leaves behind it. But then you must have a very great regard unto your Instruments, that they be made according to the Nature and Quality of the Place and Member which is to be seared ; for one Fashion will not serve in all Causes, for as the Places which are to be

be cauterized, are commonly different in shape and proportion, so ought the Shapes and Fashions of your Instruments to be accordingly. You ought to have a care in the heating of them, for as they ought not to be too hot, so they ought not to be too cold, for by that means you may inflame the Place too much. Your Instruments are to be made of Iron or Steel, which are the best to work with, and to be preferred before Gold, Silver, Brass or Copper, because Steel or Iron will retain its own received Heat longer than any other Metal; for the others, as they are the sooner made hot, so they are the sooner cold. Now Steel and Iron Metals are much more substantial and harder than the other Metals are; and though they are the longer a heating, yet they retain their Heat the longer. Again, a Man cannot tell when those other Metals are hot enough, as also when they be too hot; and if you put never so little Water to them to allay their Heat, they presently become too cold, the contrary whereof you shall find to be in the Nature of Iron and Steel.

Cautery Potential.

Now I will in a Word handle Cautery Potential. As the Cautery Actual burneth the Flesh by hot Instruments, even so doth Cautery Potential burn the Flesh by Medicine, of which there are three Sorts or Degrees.

Namely, by Corrosive, by Caustick, or by Putrefaction.

Corrosive.

Corrosive, is that which is applied to the Wound, wherein is dead or Proud-Flesh, to corrode or eat it away, by which means the Wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplasters, Waters or Unguents, which do carnify and make good Flesh; by which means the Wound which before was foul, is now become clean, healed up and made sound: and these corroding Things are commonly Precipitates, *Sublimatum*, *Arsnick*, *Resalgar*, *Leads* white and red, *Copperas* white and green, *Verdegrease*, *Allom*, *Vitriol*, *Sandaracha*, *Chrysocollo*, *Origanum*, *Mercury*, *Aconitum*, *Capitellium*, *Roman Vitriol*, Shavings of Ox or Harts-Horn, *Red-Coral*, Sponge of the Sea somewhat burned, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, *Unguentum Caraccum*, *Magistra*, *Sal Niter*, *Cantharides*, *Apium*, *Aqua fortis*, *Siclamine*, *Melanachardium*, and many more that do burn, eat and corrode the Flesh, putting the poor Beast to a great deal of Pain.

A Caustick.

A Caustick is a great Burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in a short Time make a Wound where none was before; for which we do use to make Issues, for Causticks are stronger and more violent than either Putrefactives or Corrosives; for whereas Corrosives do work only upon Skin broken, and do corrode and eat out dead, proud, spongy, and naughty Flesh, and Putrefactives do ripen, mollify, and prepare the Wound for the Caustick, so Causticks do break Skin and Flesh, and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worse than any of the two former.

Putrefactive.

Now your Putrefactives are such Medicines as we do commonly apply to Swellings, which we do make for the most part of Medicines compounded, as Polteffes, roasted Sorrel, white Lilly Roots and the like: for such things are Drawers, causing Swellings which be hard and fleshy to become soft and putrefactive, and to prepare Sorrhances for the Causticks, whose Nature is to break and open what before the Putrefactive had ripened, which otherwise must have been done by Caution Actual, or by Incision. And this I do think sufficient to be handled upon this Subject.

How to make Bread for a Horse to keep him in Heart and Strength of Body, and to keep him from fainting in his Labour and Exercise, be it never so sore.

Take Wheat-Meal, Oat-Meal and Beans, all ground very small, of each a Peck, Anniseeds four Ounces, Gentiana and Fenugreek, of each an Ounce, Liquorice two Ounces, beat them all to fine Powder, and searce them well, and add to them twenty new laid Egg's Whites, and all well beaten, and as much strong Ale as will knead it up: then make your Loaves like to Horse-Bread, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned: give it him not too new, and when you give it him, give it him five or six Mornings together, without any Provender, and thus you shall have him well winded, lusty, strong, hardy and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retain his Metal to the last.

Another Sort of Bread.

Take of Wheat-Meal one Peck, Rye-Meal, Beans and Oat Meal, of each half a Peck, ground very small, Anni-
seed

seeds and Liquorice, of each one Ounce, and white Sugar-Candy four Ounces, beat all into fine powder, with the Whites and Yolks of twenty new laid Eggs well beaten and put to them, and so much White-Wine as will knead it into a Paste; make them into great Loaves and bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this Bread, but chip away the out-side. Now the reason I prefer Meal before Flower is, because Flower is much more hot and binding, and therefore the coarser the Bread is, the better it is for the Horse; and the Reason why I put Rye into the latter Bread, is because Rye is a Loosener and a Cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

For what causes Veins are to be taken up.

As touching taking up of Veins, you shall understand that it is a thing very behoof-full, as that many times the most exquisite Farrier living shall not be able to perfect this Cure, but by that way and means; for unless such Veins be either taken up, or some way stopped, which are noxious to the Cure, by feeding the Malady with its peccant Humours, the Farrier can never work by true Art. Again, Veins well taken up do prevent many Maladies, whereunto many Horses are much more propense than others are. And lastly, the taking up of Veins cureth some Diseases which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the Thigh-Veins sendeth away Spavins, Splents, Curbs, Kibed Heels, swelled Legs, Scratches, Malenders, Farcin in the Legs, and the like Sorrances; besides, it cureth all Pains, Aches, Strains, Stiffness in the Limbs, &c. Take up the Shackle-Veins, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, Swellings in the lower Joints, Founderings, &c. Wherefore for as much as ignorant People, whatsoever Opinion they may have of their super-abundant Skill, yet they are very much to seek, in that they do so exclaim against taking up of Veins absurdly, affirming it to be a great means of Laming of Horses; but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only Remedy against these and many more Maladies, and when they shall have made trial, they will not be of so prejudicate an Opinion.

Of Rowelling of Horses, and of the Use thereof.

The Rowelling of Horses is so common amongst our simple Smiths, that they will rowel him for any Disease almost, without any Sense or Reason; whereby they needlessly torment the Horse, and bring a Flux of naughty Humours

down to the place; which causes him to be lame, which might otherwise be found. But this I must say of it, that if it be well used by a skilful Farrier, it is not only commendable, but causes great good to a Horse's Body and Limbs.

Helps got by Rowelling are these.

It separateth and dissolveth evil Humours which are gathered together in any one place, it looseneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it strengthneth sick Joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold Phlegm. The use of it in general is for inward Strains, especially about the Shoulders or Hips, or else for great hard Swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward Medicine. Now if the Bruise be not taken away presently, by applying to it some comfortable hot Medicine, there will arise a certain Jelly between the Pot and the Bone which offendeth the tender Gristle, which covers the ends of every Bone, which makes the Horse halt most vehemently. Now nothing will take this away but Rowelling.

Now the Manner of Rowelling is this.

When you have found out the certain place of his Grief, after you have cast him upon some soft place, make a little Slit a handfull below the place grieved through the Skin, no bigger than you can thrust in a Swans-Quill into the same; then raise the Skin a little from the Flesh with your Cronet, and then put in your Quill, and blow all the Skin from the Flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the shoulder; then stopping the Hole with your Finger and your Thumb, beat the place blown all over with a Hazel-stick, and spread the Wind with your hand into every place, and so let it go: then take some Horse-hair, or some red Sarsenet, half the bigness of a Man's little Finger, and put it into your Rowelling-Needle, which should be at least seven or eight Inches long: thrust it in at the first Hole, and put it upward, drawing it out above at least six inches, and if you please you may put in another above that, and then tie the two ends of the Rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the Skin; not forgetting, before you put them in, to anoint them with sweet Butter or Hog's-Grease, and every day after likewise, for that will make the corruption run out the better.

Now there are Farriers who think, that these long Rowels of Hair or Silk, do make a double Sore and a great Scar, therefore they make their Rowels of round Pieces of stiff
Leather

Leather, such as is on the upper part of an old Shoe, with a round Hole in the midst, according to the form in the Margin, and then double it when they put it in, and then spread it open, and lay it flat between the Flesh and the Skin, and that the Hole in the Rowel may be just against the Hole in the Horse's Skin, and once in two or three days to cleanse the Rowel, and to anoint it with Hogs-Grease or Butter, and so to put it in again.



Another French way of Rowelling, which is reputed to be the best Way.

Cut open the Skin with your Incision-Knife the length of an Inch or more downwards, on the lowest part of the Horse's Breast, close to the Side that he is lame on; then raise with your Finger or Cronet the Skin from the Flesh round about the Orifice, about the breadth of a Six-pence, which must be just the size of the Rowel you put into it, whether it be made of the upper Leather of an old Shoe or Horn of an old Lanthorn; but the upper Leather of a Shoe is best. The form of your Rowel must be in the Shape of the Figure in the Margin, with a little Hole in the middle of it, wherein you must put a Needle and Thred through it, as you find by the two Pricks on the top and bottom of the Hole.



Then take a Quill and put it into the Hole, and do as you were taught in the Receipt before, viz. To blow and beat the Wind upwards all over the Shoulder; when you have blown it as much as you think fitting, draw a Needle and Thred through the Rowel and Skin, closing the Rowel in the Slit, and let the Hole in the Rowel be right against the Slit you have cut, so that it may not move. Then run another stitch or two thwart the cut, as you see the manner of it by the Figure in the Margin; When you have sticht it up, anoint it all over with Butter or Hogs Grease, and let the Rowel remain in for about a Week or more before you take it out, and he will do well.



Instructions upon Rowelling.

If you Rowel him for any Swelling, then put in your long Rowel the same way that the Veins run, and seldom or never cross-wise; and the more you blow the Skin for a Swelling, the better, for the Wind is that that causeth Putrefaction,

trefaction, and makes the festered Humours to dissolve and distil down from the secret hollows of the Joints into those open places, where it falleth away in Matter, and so the Breast becomes cured.

How to Geld Horses or Colts.

You are to observe in the Gelding of Horses ; First, the Age : Secondly, the Season of the Year ; And lastly, the State of the Moon. For the Age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen if his Stones be come down ; for the sooner you geld him the better, for Growth, Shape and Courage. Now a Farrier may geld a Horse at any Age whatsoever, if he be careful in the Cure.

The Season of the Year to geld in.

The best Season for gelding is between *April* and *May* or in the beginning of *June* at the furthest, or about the Fall of the Leaf which is the latter end of *September*.

The State of the Moon.

Now for the State of the Moon, the fittest time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane. As touching the manner of gelding, it is in this sort ; whether it be a Foal, Colt or Horse, after you have cast him upon some soft place, take the Stones between your foremost Finger, and your great Finger, then slit the Cod, and press the Stones forth ; then with a pair of small Nippers, made either of Steel, Box, Wood or Brazil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the Stones between them, very near unto the setting on of the Stones, and press them so hard that there may be no Flux of Blood ; then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red-hot, sear away the Stone : then take a hard Plaster made of Rozin, Wax and wash'd Turpentine, well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the Strings ; then sear the Strings, and then melt more of the Salve, till such time as you have laid a good thickness of the Salve upon the Strings. Then loose the Nippers, and do so to the other Stone, and fill the two Slits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outside of the Cod with Hog's grease, and so let him rise, and keep him in a warm Stable loose, that so he may walk up and down, for there is nothing better for him than moderate Exercise. Now if you do perceive that he doth swell in his Cod, and sheath very much, then chafe him up and down,
and

and make him trot an hour in a day, and it will soon recover him, and make him sound.

*To make a white Star either on your Horse's Fore-Head,
or in any other part of his Body.*

After you have with a Razor shaved away the Hair so wide as you would have the Star, then take a little of the Oil of Vitriol in an Oyster-shell, and dip a Feather or a piece of Silk into it, (for it will eat both Linen and Wool- len) and just wet it all over the place shaved; and it will eat away the Roots of the Hairs, and the next that comes will be white. You need not do it above once, you may heal it up with your Copperas-water and green Ointment.

To make a black Star or white Hairs black.

Wash often the place you would have made black, with Fern-Roots, and Sage sod in Lye, and it will breed black Hairs in a white Horse: Or take Souter-Ink, Galls and Rust beaten well together, and anoint the place therewith, and it will turn white to black.

To make a Red Star.

Take *Aqua-fortis* one Ounce, of *Aqua-vita* a pennyworth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them in a Glass; and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the Hairs to be of a perfect red Colour; but they will endure no longer than the casting of the Hair, which you must renew again if you intend it shall continue.

To make a Horse seem Young.

Take a small crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat-Corn, and having made it red-hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outmost Teeth of each side the nether Chap before, next to the Tushes where the Mark is worn out; then with an Awl-blade pick it, and make the shell fine and thin, then with a sharp scraping Iron make all his Teeth white and clean. This done, take a fine Lancet, and above the Hollows of the Horse's Eyes, which are shrunk down, make a little hole only through the Skin, and put in the Quill of a Raven or Crow, and blow the Skin full of Wind, till all the hollowness be filled up; then take out your Quill, and lay your Finger upon the hole a little while, and the

Wind will stay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but six years old.

To make a Horse that he shall not neigh either in company or when he is ridden.

If either you be in the Service of the Wars, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have him to neigh or make a Noise, then take a List of woollen Cloth, and tie it fast in many folds about the midst of his Tongue, and he will not neigh nor make any extraordinary Noise with his Voice, as hath been often try'd and approved of.

To Help a Horse that hath Laved or Bangle Ears.

Take his Ears and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little Boards or Pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them, bind the Ears so fast in the places where they stand, as that they cannot stir: then betwixt the Head and the Root of the Ear, you shall see a greet deal of empty wrinkled Skin, which with your Finger and your Thumb you shall pull up, and with a sharp pair of Scissors clip away all the empty Skin close by the Head. Then with a Needle and red Silk stich the two sides of the Skin close together, and then with your green Ointment heal up the Sore. Which done, take away the Splints which held up his Ears, and you shall find, that in a short space his Ears will keep the same place as you set them without alteration: And this you shall find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut Finger.

The first Inventors of Riding.

Bellerophons, as some Men say, was the first that invented riding on horseback: And the *Pelletrones*, a People of *Lapithia*, found out afterwards the manner of Bridles, Bits and Rings, to guide Horses withal: But they of *Thessalia* were the first that used the Service of Horses in the Wars.

The Receipt of making the Cordial Balls.

The true manner of making those Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, which prevent Heart-Sickness, which purge away all molten Grease, which recover a lost Stomach, which keep the Heart from fainting with Exercise, and make a lean Horse fat suddenly: Take Anniseeds, Cummin-seeds, Fenugreek-seeds, Carthumus-seeds,
Ele:

Elecampane-roots and Colts-foot, of each of these two Ounces, beaten and searced very fine; two Ounces of the Flower of Brimstone; then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquorice, and dissolve it on the Fire in half a Pint of White-wine: which done, take an Ounce of Chymical Oil of Aniseeds; then take of Sallet-Oil, Honey, and of Syrup of Sugar, or for want of it, Molosses, of each half a pint; then mix all these with the former Powders, and with as much fine Wheat-Flower as will bind and knit them all together, work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger than French Walnuts, Hull and all, and so keep them in a close Gallypot, (for they will last all the year) Yet I do not mean that you shall keep them in the Pot in Balls; because they cannot lie close, the Air may get in, and do hurt; as also the Strength of the Oils will sweat outward, and weaken the Substance, therefore knead the whole Lump of Paste into the Gallypot, and make the Balls as you have occasion to use them.

The Form of the Balls.

If you give them upon the End of a stick, you must make them sharp at both ends, and thick in the middle; but if you give him them in a Horn of Beer, make them about the Bigness of a good big Walnut, and put down a Horn full of strong Beer after every Ball, to clear his Passage, and to prevent sticking.

The Use of these Balls.

Now for the Use of these Balls, because they are cordial and have divers excellent Virtues, you shall understand that if you use them to prevent Sicknes, then you shall take a Ball and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and give it him in the Morning in the manner of a Pill, then ride him a little after it (if you please, otherwise you may chuse) and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual Custom. And thus do three or four Mornings together.

If you use them to cure either Cold or Glanders, then use them in the same manner for a Week together. If you use them to fatten a Horse, then give him them for a Fortnight together: but if you use them in the nature of a Scouring, to take away molten Grease and Foulness, then instantly after his Heat, and in his Heat. Again, if you find your Horse at any time hath taken a little cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling, if then you take one
of

of these Balls and dissolve it in a Pint of Sack, and so give it him, it is a present Remedy. Also to dissolve the Ball in his ordinary Water, being made lukewarm, it worketh the like effect, and fatneth exceedingly.

To give one of these Balls before Travel, it prevents Tying; to give it in the heat of Travel, it refresheth the Weariness; and to give it after Travel, it saves him from all Surfeits and inward Sickness.

A Receipt to fat a lean Horse in twelve or fifteen Days.

First therefore, let him bleed if he wants bleeding; then instead of Oats in the morning give him Wheat-Bran, prepared after this manner: Set over the Fire a great Kettle, and fill it almost full with fair Water, and when it boils put in your Bran, and let it boil a quarter of an Hour at least, then let it stand to cool, and in the morning early give him of this Bran so hot as he can eat it, and let his Drink be of the same Water, and at night give him Oats and white Water, and let him be well littered, and warm covered: but if it be in the Summer, his Stable ought not to be too hot; and at night with his Oats give him an Egg full of this Powder, with which you are to continue him for the space of eight Days, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand, that Bran thus prepared, drieth up his naughty, gross and corrupt Humours, and doth the better prepare the Body to assume Lust, Courage, Strength and Flesh, together with the Help of the Powder, which is this.

The Powder how to make a lean Horse fat.

Take of Cummin, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two Ounces; quick Brimstone six Ounces; make all these into Powder, and give him the Quantity of an Eggshell full with his Oats every Night, but first let him be watered with white Water, which is two or three Handfuls of Bran stirred amongst his Water; then rub him, litter him, and clothe him well, then give him some sweet Wheat-straw in his Rack, and let him feed on that for an Hour, then give him his Oats mixed with his Powder, and when he hath eaten them, give him Hay at your pleasure; remembering to keep him warm, but so as with Moderation, and you shall find him amend exceedingly: but you must put into his Oats every time two Handfuls of Nettleseeds, for that is the thing

thing that will principally cause him to battel. It will also greatly avail to his Amendment, if he be aired every Morning and Evening, an Hour after Sun-rising, and an Hour before Sun-set, if the Weather be warm, and the Sun doth shine. And this is the best Course you can take to set up a lean and poor Horse.

Another Receipt to make a lean Horse fat.

Take of Elecampane dried, Cummin, Turmerick, Anniseeds, of each two Ounces, Groundsel half a Handful; boil all these together in a Gallon of Ale, with three Heads of Garlick well bruised and picked, then strain it, and give him a Quart of it blood-warm in the Morning fasting, and ride him after it, but not to heat him, and thus for four Mornings together: and in a short time after (if the Year be seasonable) turn him to grass, and he will fatten suddenly. But if the Time of the Year will not serve, and that you have a mind to raise him in the Stable, then give him amongst his Oats this Powder: Take of Elecampane dried, and of Cummin both alike, well beaten and searced, and when you give your Horse Provender, then give him half an Ounce of them well mixed amongst it for fourteen days together, and you shall find him to amend and prosper after a strange manner; provided, that you give him seasonable Airing, moderate Exercise, and Mashes, and white Water.

Of the Drink called Acopum.

Take of Euphorbium half an Ounce; Castoreum one Ounce; Adraces half a quarter of a pound; Bdelium half an Ounce and half a quarter; Opoponax one Ounce; Fox-Grease half an Ounce; Pepper one Ounce; Laserpitium three quarters of an Ounce; Ammoniacum half a quarter of a pound; Pigeons Dung as much; Galbanum half an Ounce; Nitrum one Ounce and a quarter; Spuma Nitri three quarters of an Ounce; Laudanum a quarter of a pound; Pyrethrum and Bay-Berrys, of each three quarters of an Ounce; Cardamum two Ounces; Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound; Seed of Agnus Castus one Ounce; Parsley Seed half an Ounce; dried Roots of Iris, or Flower-de-luce, one Ounce and a quarter and half a quarter; of Oil de Bay as much; of Oil of Spikenard three quarters of a pound; of Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter; the oldest Oil Olive a pound and a half; Pitch a quarter of a pound and two Ounces; Turpentine a quarter of a pound:
melt

melt of every of these that will be molten, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Ingredients, being first beaten to fine Powder, and after they have boiled a little on the Fire, take it off, and strain it into a clean Gallipot, and so keep it for your use. And when you give your Horse any of it at any time, you must not give him of it above two spoonfuls in a Pint of Sack or Muscadine, and if by long keeping you find it wax hard, then soften it with the Oil of Cypress, so that it may be good and thick.

The Virtues of it.

It is both a Medicine and an Ointment, for it helpeth Convulsions in the Sinews and Muscles; it draweth forth all noisom Humours, and disburdeneth the Head of all Grief, being put up with a long Goose-Feather anointed in it, into the Nostrils of a Horse: it healeth, I say, all manner of Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness and String-halts, Colds and Rheums; it dissolveth the Liver, being troubled with Opilations and Obstructions, it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the Body; it banisheth all Weariedness and Tiredness, if his Limbs be bathed with this Medicine: And lastly, it cureth all sorts of inward Diseases, if it be administred by way of a Drench, in Wine, Strong-beer, or good Ale.

The Nature of it.

It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good in case of Surfeits, Tiredness and of Convulsions, and the like, wherein consisteth its chief Virtues, being administred outwardly; but being administred inwardly, it is not altogether so hot, for it helpeth Fevers for the most part, and I think it is most safe to give not above two spoonfuls of it in a Quart of good Strong-Beer or Ale, tho Mr. *Markham* adviseth to give four or five spoonfuls in Sack or Muscadine, which are hot things of themselves.

The Confection called Arman.

To make this Confection, take Honey of Roses a pound and a half, as much as will suffice of the Crumbs of the whitest Manchet made into fine Powder, then take of Cordial-powder of Nutmegs, and of Cinnamon, of each an Ounce and a half: mix all these together, being first made into fine powder, then put it into a Gallipot, and moisten it with Rose-Vinegar, that it may be of a thick substance like unto
Pap,

Pap, and so keep it for your use. When you use it, put some of it upon the end of a Bull's Pizzle into his Mouth, and let him champ thereon; but if you give it for the Quinsy or Fever, give him down two Hornfuls of it, and do this in the Morning fasting, and let him fast two or three Hours after it.

The Virtues of this Arman.

It provoketh a good Appetite to Meat, and causeth good Digestion, it taketh away all Annoyances that trouble the Stomach, it cooleth the inward Heat in the Body; it helpeth all Agues and Fevers, and is most excellent against Surfeits; it is good for the Quinsy in the Throat, coming of Cold taken; and very good against the Gripings in the Belly or Guts, proceeding of Wind. This Confection was brought out of France.

How to make the Cordial Powder, which we have likewise from the French.

Take Cinnamon and Sugar, of each four Ounces, and of fine Bole-Armoniack two Ounces: make them into very fine powder, and mix them well together, and keep it for your use in a Gallypot close stopped.

The Virtues of it.

It is good for sick Horses that are far spent with a Consumption in the Flesh and Liver, &c. For it is a most restorative Cordial, comforting the Vital Parts, and Spirits Animal, and restoreth it to Sanity.

Another Cordial Powder, called Electuarium Theriacum, by reason it hath much Treacle in it.

Take Syrup of Violets, Syrup of Lemons, Syrup of Roses, of each half an Ounce, adding to it an Ounce of London Treacle, (which is the best of all Treacles for Horses) mingle them well together; and it is a most sovereign Cordial to be administred to Horses that are sick and weak.

To make the black and red Ægyptiacum, which are both Corrosives: For their Natures are to corrode and eat away all manner of dead, proud, rotten and naughty Flesh, out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do also cleanse and prepare a Sore, and make it apt to be healed with canifizing or healing Salves

Take two pounds of coarse English Honey, Verdegrease,
Dyers

Dyers Galls, and green Copperas, of each four Ounces; make them all into powder, and mix them together, and put them into an Earthen Pot, and set it upon the Fire, keeping it stirring; but so soon as it begins to boil, take it off and let it cool, for if it boil too long it will become red, which will not be so good. This black *Ægyptiacum* is good to dissolve the Hoofs of a Horse, if they be too dry or hard, so as it will cause the Corruption, if any be in the Foot, to ascend above the Cronet, where the Hair is, and also to restore the Hoof of the Horse when the Sole is taken out; and in this nature you must use this Unguent, but only at the third dressing after you have taken out the Sole.

The red Ægyptiacum is thus made.

Take coarse Honey two Pounds, Verdegrease four Ounces, green Copperas two Ounces; beat the Verdegrease and the Copperas very small to powder, then put it into an Earthen Pot, and put unto it a little Vinegar, and so boil it very well till it become red, and keep it for Use.

General Drenches or Receipts for all inward Diseases, or Sicknes.

The *Spaniards* have this Receipt for all inward Diseases: Take Wheat-Meal twelve Pounds, Anniseeds four Ounces in fine Powder, Brimstone in Powder three Ounces, Fenugreek in Powder three Ounces and a half, Cummin in Powder three Ounces, Honey two Pounds, good Sallet-Oil one Pound and a half, of good Sack as much: These are all to be put into a Pot well nealed, and boiled until it be thick, and when it is cold to make it up into Pills or Balls; you must keep it stirring while it is a boiling, otherwise it will burn to; and when they are thus made into Pills, give him of them four or five Mornings together fasting. These kill Worms in a Horse's Body, help Diseases of the Lungs and inward Parts, and are a very good Plaster applied outwardly. It is most useful in all cold Causes, and it is so Cordial, that it will bring a lean and poor Horse unto Flesh and good State in a little time.

Another excellent Receipt for all inward Diseases

Take Wheat-Meal six Pounds, or as much as will bring the Ingredients unto a stiff Paste, Anniseeds two Ounces, Cummin two Ounces, wild or Bastard Saffron two Drams and a half, White-Wine four Pints, Fenugreek one Ounce
and

and two Drams, Brimstone one Ounce and a half, Sallet-Oil a Pint and two Ounces, *English* Honey one Pound and a half: Make those things into powder that will beat to powder, then compound them together, and make it into a stiff Paste, and keep it in a Gallypot close covered for your Use.

When you use it make a Ball thereof as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it in two Gallons of fair Water, till it be all molten; let him drink of this Morning and Evening so long as he please, and let him have no other Water to drink, to the end that he may be the better compelled to drink it; which in the end he will do and like it very well. This is good for many inward Infirmities, it raiseth and batteth a Horse much better than either Grasse or Provender, and giveth him Life, Spirit and Stomach, and keepeth him in perfect Health.

Another Receipt for all inward Diseases.

Take Fenugreek, Turmeric, Grains, Anniseeds, Liquorice, long Pepper, Cummin, of each half an Ounce, and of Saffron one Dram; and of Herbs, take Celandine, Rue, Pelamontine, Hyssop, Thyme and Rosemary; and of all of them no more than will make half a handful, chopt small and boiled, first in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, then put in your Spices finely powdered, and boil them again: then strain it and put to it the Quantity of an Egg of sweet Butter, an Ounce of *London* Treacle, and give it him blood-warm, and ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm, and let him fast three or four Hours, and let his Drink be either a sweet Mash or White-Water, This is very good against Fevers, Colds and the Yellows.

Another Receipt for inward Sicknes.

Take Ariltolochia Rotunda, Bay-Berries, Gentian, Anniseeds, Ginger, and of Trifora Magna, of each half an Ounce; beat all the Simples to very fine powder, and mix them well together, then take of White-Wine or good Ale or Beer a Quart, then put into it one Spoonful of all of them, with half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and of Mithridate two Drams; warm these upon a Fire, and administer it blood-warm, and exercise him before and after his Drink, but not to sweat him, neither let him drink any cold Water in four or five days after, but either warm Mash or White-Water.

This

This is most sovereign for any inward Sicknes, Droopings, forsaking of Meat, Fevers, Colds, Coughs or the like.

A Suppository for inward Sicknes.

If he be so sick that you fear to give him any strong Medicine, and that costive withal, then give him this Suppository.

Take of Honey six Ounces, of Salt-Niter one Ounce and a half, of Wheat-Flower and of Anniseeds beaten into fine Powder of each one Ounce; boil all these into a hard thickness, and make it into Suppositories, and after you have anointed your Hand with Sallet-Oil, and the Suppository likewise, convey it into his Fundament a pretty way, and tie his Tail betwixt his Legs to his Girts, else hold it close with your hand about a quarter of an hour till it be thoroughly dissolved; and this will purge kindly, and loosen his Guts, so that you may be the more bold to administer what Drinks, Cordials, or other things, you think requisite for his recovery.

Other General Drenches to cure all inward Sicknes in Horses, which trouble the whole Body. Of Fevers of all sorts, Plagues, Infections, and such like.

Sickness in general is of two kinds, one offending the whole Body, the other a particular Member; the first hidden, and the second visible. Of the first then, which offend the whole Body, are Fevers of all sorts, as the *Quotidian*, the *Tertian*, the *Quartan*, the *Continual*, and the *Hectick*; the Fevers in Autumn, in Summer, or in the Winter; the Fever by Surfeit, Fever Pestilent, Fever Accidental, or the General Plague: they are all known by these Signs, much trembling, panting and sweating, a sullen Countenance that was wont to be chearful, hot Breath, Fainting in Labour, Decay in Stomach, and Costiveness in the Body, &c. First, let him bleed, then give him this Drink: Take of Celandine Roots, Leaves and all, a good handful; as much Wormwood and as much Rue; wash them well, then bruise them in a Mortar, then boil them in a Quart of Ale or Beer; then strain them, and add to them a pound of sweet Butter, then give it the Horse to drink lukewarm; or half an Ounce of the Powder of *Diapente*, given in Sack or Ale, two or three Mornings together. Or give him three or four Yolks of new-laid Eggs, beaten with seven or eight spoonfuls of *Aqua-vita* or Brandy: This is good when he hath his shaking Fit upon him. Or take four Ounces of *Diapente*, and mix it
with

with four Ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close Glass, and give him half an Ounce thereof in Wine or Ale; or take of Liquorice an Ounce, of Anniseeds, Cummin-seeds, and Elecampane Roots, of each half an Ounce; of Turmeric and Bay-berries, of each a quarter of an Ounce; of long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two Drams beaten small; and put five Spoonfuls thereof into a Quart of Ale, warmed with a little Butter or Oil, and it is very sovereign for any Disease coming of cold Causes: Or red Sage, Mint, Cellandine and Rue, boiled in Beer is good. *Diatresaron* is good simply of it self; so is *Diapente*, or *Diahexaple*.

There are several particular Receipts which I might give you for every sort of these Fevers I have named, but I think these in general may serve instead of a more particular Account; only observe this Note by the way, That you must in all hot Causes administer cooling things, and in cold Causes hot things.

Signs whereby you may know every sort of Fever.

Signs in general to know a Fever, is by holding down of his Head, he will quake and tremble, and when his trembling is over, he will burn, and his Breath be hot; he will breathe fast, and his Flank will beat; he will reel, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will swell and be closed up and watering; his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down; he will desire to drink, yet not drink much, neither will he sleep. But more particularly,

A Quotidian Fever proceeds from hard Riding, being set up too hot in the Stable without Riding.

A *Quotidian* or every day's Fever is known by blood-shotten Eyes, short and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his Meat, and Stiffness in his Limbs; and his Sickness will not last above six or eight hours in a day, and then he will be well again.

Tertian Fever proceeds from the same Causes as the Quotidian.

The *Tertian* or every other day's Fever, is known by the Signs formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that he will be sick as on Monday, and well on the Tuesday, and sick on the Wednesday following.

Quartan Fever proceeds from the same Causes as the Tertian doth.

The *Quartan* Fever, as some Farriers call a third day's Sick

Sickness, is thus: If his Fit begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sick again on the Thursday. There is no other Sign to know it, than the coming and going of the Fits.

Continual Fever proceeds from Heats and Colds.

The Fever continual is that which continueth without any Intermission; the Signs are want of Rest, and falling away of the Flesh, besides certain Inflammations or Swellings, which will appear about his Withers and Flanks.

Hectick Fever proceeds from a sick Stomach, being scalded with hot Drinks, hath lost the power of Digestion.

The *Hectick* Fever, which is the worst of Fevers, is known by this, that he will never eat with Appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue you shall find it raw, his Flesh will be loose and flabby, and his Body subject to trembling. All these Fevers do most commonly happen to a Horse in the Spring, because the new Blood is apt to be inflamed.

Autumn Fever proceeds from new Blood being inflamed.

The Signs of an *Autumn* Fever, are known by the same Signs I have declared; for they are the same Fevers, only altering the Time of the Year.

Summer Fever.

A Fever taken in the Summer is the worst of all ordinary Fevers whatsoever, especially such as are taken in the Dog-days. The Signs of this Fever are, that his Arteries will beat most palpably; and wheresoever he staeth, you shall perceive he sheddeth his Seed also.

Winter Fever.

A Fever in the Winter is not so dangerous as the Fever before-mentioned, yet if you do not remove it speedily, it will continue long. The Signs are no other than hath been declared.

Fever by Surfeit.

The Fever by Surfeit is known by these Signs; he will beat upon his Back, his Breath will be short, hot and dry, and his Wind will draw only at his Nose with great Violence.

Fever

Fever Pestilential.

The Fever pestilential is known by the holding down of his Head, forsaking of his Meat, shedding much Water at his Eyes; and many times Swellings, or Ulcers, rising a little below his Ear-Roots.

Fever Accidental.

The Fever accidental comes by some Blow or Wound, by which any of the vital Powers are let or hindred, which may bring him to a Fever; then the Signs be, he will cover much to drink, but cannot, and his Flesh will fall away in an extraordinary fashion.

How to make the Oil of Oats.

Take of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the Fire, put to it a quarter of a pound of burnt Allum, which will make it turn to Curds; then take out the Curd and strain the Whey, then take a quarter of a peck of clean-husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whey, and set them on the Fire till they burst and be soft; then put them into a Cullender to let the Whey run through them, then put the Oats into a Frying-Pan over the Fire, keeping them stirring, till you see the Vapour or Smoke of them ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan: then take them off, and put them into a Press, and press them most exceedingly, and what cometh from them is the Oil of them, which you must save in a close Glass.

The Vertues of it.

This Oil of all Medicines and Simples whatsoever is the most excellent and sovereign for a Horse's Body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholesom and best Food which doth belong unto a Horse's Body. This Oil being given four or five Spoonfuls at a time in a pint of sweet Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the Whey poured into his Nostrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines: it is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those venomous and filthy Humours, which feed the most incurable Farcy whatsoever.

How to make the Powder of Honey and Lime; which is so great a Drier, that it will dry up any Wound or old Sore.

Take such a quantity of unslak'd Lime as you shall think fit, beat it into very fine Powder, then take so much Honey as will make it up into a stiff Paste, then put it into the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf, and put it into an Oven, or burning Fire, till it be baked or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into fine Powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. If you mix amongst it the Powder of a burnt Shoe, it will be much the better.

A Comfortable Drench.

Make it of these Cordials, to wit, of Sugar, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Liquorice, Anniseeds; beat all these into fine powder, adding thereunto White-Wine: and all these infuse in an Earthen Pot.

An Operative Drink.

Put in such a quantity of these things as you think requisite for the Strength of the Horse, viz. White-Wine, Sallet-Oil, Aloes, Rhubarb, Agarick, Duke or Duck-powder, Honey, Cordial-powder, &c.

Several sorts of Charges.

Take of black Pitch half a pound, of Mastick two Ounces, of Galbanum four Ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each half a pound; melt them into a Pot together, and when it is half cold charge the place up to the Hanch, and so overthwart the Reins of the Back, and if it be not cured at the end of eight or ten days, take it off and apply this Ointment: Take of Oil de Bay, Althea, tried Hog's-Grease, of each half a pound; incorporate them all together, and therewith anoint and chafe the place grieved.

[See the second Part for the Best of Charges, I. W. marked in the Margin.]

A Honey-Charge for a Wrench or Slip in the Shoulder, Hip or other Member; for all sorts of Scratches, and for Stiffness of Sinews hurt, or any other way offended, to assuage Swellings and Tumours, and to draw away all bad Humours.

Take of Wheat-Meal two pounds, and put a little White-Wine unto it, and put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make a Poultice, and when it is well mixed, add to it of Bole-

Bole-Armoniack in fine powder half a pound, of *English* Honey one pound; then set it upon the Fire and boil it, keeping it continually stirring, and put to it in the boiling half a pound of black Pitch, keeping it stirring, and when you think you have boiled it enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound; of Oil de-Bay, Cummin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries and Fenugreek, beaten to powder, and of Linseed-Meal, of each two Drams; boil them all together again, still keeping them stirring till they be well incorporate, and therewith charge the grieved Member with it pretty warm, but not to scald him.

A Restraining Charge to be applied to broken Bones, or to Bones dislocated or out of Joint, being first set; and also to take moist Humours from weeping Wounds, and so to dry up bad Humours, which do pre-occupate the Body.

Take of Oil de-Bay four Ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two Ounces; make all these into fine powder, and mix them with your Oil de-Bay very well, and therewith charge the place grieved. This is also very good to charge the Swelling of a Back Sinew-strain.

A cold Charge.

Take Bole-Armoniack, Wheat-Flower, the White of an Egg, and *Aquavite* or White-Wine; beat all these together pretty thick, and lay it to the place grieved upon a brown Paper, and when it is dry lay on fresh. You must keep that part out of the Water, if you intend the Plaster should stay on.

Of Salves, Unguents, Powders and Waters.

Take of Perosen, and of hard Rosin, of each one pound; of Frankincense, Virgin-Wax, or for want thereof new Wax, and Sheep's Suet, of each half a pound; of old tried Hog's-grease one pound and a quarter: boil the Gums and Wax in half a pint of White-Wine, and then put into it your Sheep's Tallow and Hog's-grease; and when all is molten and incorporated together, strain it, and whilst it is yet hot put in an Ounce of *Venice-Turpentine*, and so work all well together, which when it is cold, pour in the Liquor from the Salve, which put up into a Gally-pot for your use.

The Vertues of it.

This is a most sovereign Salve to heal any green Wound, (that is not come to an Ulcer) and so dry it up.

Another most excellent Powder.

Take unslaked Lime, the dry Dust of Tanners Oaken Bark, and an old Shoe-Sole burned to a Coal, of each alike; make them into fine powder, and mix them well, and keep them in a Box for your Use.

The Virtues of it.

This Powder healeth the Buds of the Farcin after they be broken, and skinneth them; and if they be washed with the Juice of Vervine and strong Vinegar, mingled together, and this Powder cast upon them, will heal and skin them. It healeth likewise and skinneth all other Sores.

Another Ointment.

Take half a pound of tried Hog's-grease, a pennyworth of Verdegrease beaten to fine Powder, give them two or three Walms on the Fire; then take it off, and put into it half an Ounce of Venice-Turpentine, and stir it well together till it be cold: this Ointment will heal any Wound or Sore in a Horse.

Another Ointment.

Burn a good quantity of Roch-Allum, and as much Bay-Salt, and burn that also, make them both together into fine powder. Then take of common Honey, and of sweet Butter, of each alike, as much as will suffice; incorporate them all together, by melting them over a gentle Fire, and with a Taint or Plaister apply it: and this cureth any foul Sore.

A good Water.

Take a Pint of fair Water, and put into it of Bay-Salt, and of green Copperas, of each the Quantity of a Hazel-Nut, first made into fine Powder; let them boil a little up on the Fire: with this wash your Sore before you do apply any of your Salves, Unguents, or Powders.

Another Salve.

Take of common Honey, two Ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdegrease and Vinegar, of each an Ounce; make your Allum and Verdegrease into fine Powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdered, two Ounces, boil them a little on the Fire: this laid Plaister-wise on the Wound once a day, or if the Wound be deep, taint it with it; but before you dress it, wash
the

the Sore with Water made of green Copperas and Bay-Salt.

The Virtues of it.

This doth not only cure all sorts of Wounds in the Body, but the Foot also, and it cleareth any Wound from dead and proud Flesh.

Another Salve.

Take the Buds or the tender Tops of the Leaves of Elder, (or for want thereof, the inner Rind of the Bark) one handful, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a Salve, and apply this to the Sore, binding a Cloth about it to keep it from falling off.

The Virtues of it.

This will cure any old or new Sore whatsoever in any Part of the Body, as galled Backs, Spur-Galls, Gravelling, Prick'd, being dressed every Day once; and it will cure a Fistula, if the Juice of it be injected into it unto the bottom.

An Ointment.

Take the White of a new-laid Egg, and Sallet-Oil, as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you apply it unto the Wound, pour into the Wound burnt Butter, and then lay on your Medicines with Hurds Plaister-wise. And this will cure any green Wound.

Another.

An Ounce of black Soap, and as much Dog's-Grease, with as much burnt Allum as will lie upon a sixpence, melted upon the Fire together, is very good to heal or skin any Wound or Hurt: let the burnt Allum be put in last, when the others are melted.

How to give a Horse a Vomit.

Vomits are given to Horses newly taken from Grass, to bring away their gross and phlegmatick Humours, which do abound in their Stomach and Head, which if they be not taken away in due time, may impair greatly the Health of the Horse. I never knew that Vomits were useful to a Horse till I met with a *French* Farrier, which I saw administered it to sundry Horses, which did work very kindly.

The Receipt is this.

Take two of the greatest Roots you can get of Polypodium

dium of the Oak, washed and scraped very clean, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench or Bit; then let it be steeped in the Oil of Spike all Night, and in the Morning fasting put on his Bridle with the same Roots, and ride him about with it about an Hour fair and softly, and if he be troubled with any rheumatick or phlegmatick Humour, or with any cold or filthy Matter, which may annoy his Stomach, this will force him to vent it at his Mouth and Nose, and it will cause him to cough and sneeze, where he will send forth a great Abundance of Filth and evil slimy Stuff from off his Stomach and Head, as that in a very short time he will become very clean in his Body; for this will both refine his Blood, and exhaust all his watry Humours, which will make him sound a long time after it. And this is not only to be applyed to a Horse newly taken from Grass, but to any other Horse that hath taken Cold, or to any ketty, foul, foggy or purisy Horse whatsoever. This may seem strange here amongst us, but let any man make tryal, and he shall find it to be most admirable.

Purging Pills.

Take of fresh Butter one Pound, Aloes and Fenugreek, of each an Ounce; Life-Honey and white Sugar-Candy powdered, of each four Ounces; Agarick half an Ounce; make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Honey, make Pills thereof, and give them to your Horse; and if he be but a small and weak Horse, you must give him but two parts of three, but if he hath a strong Cold and Cough withal, then

Take fresh Butter, and of Mel-Rosarum, of each four Ounces; of Aloes and Sena, of each an Ounce; of Rhubarb and Bay-Berries, of each three Ounces; Colloquintida and Saffron, of each two Drams; Cordial-Powder one Ounce; Duke or Duck Powder four Ounces; make them all into fine powder, and mix them with two Ounces of Mithridate, and with your Butter and Mel-Rosarum beat and pound them together, and make them up into Pills, and give them your Horse. This Receipt will purge him very well, tho it heat him for some time, and let him be ordered as in other Physical Cures of the like nature, and proportion your Pills according to the Strength, Greatness and Corpulency of your Horse.

A Plaister to dissolve and take away evil Humours, which shall at any time fall down in the Legs of your Horse

Take of common Honey a Pound; of Turpentine half a Pound; of Mastick in fine powder two Ounces; of Frankincense and Bole-Armoniack made into fine powder, of each four Ounces; of *Sanguis Draconis* three Ounces; six new-laid Eggs; of the strongest Wine-Vinegar one Pint; of the Flower of Rice seven Ounces; mix all these together, and hereof make a Plaister, and lap the Legs of the Horse from the Feet to the upper Joints, and do this but four or five times, and you shall find that it will perform a strange and rare Cure,

Of several sorts of Baths, and first of a Bath to dry up Humours.

Take Sage, Rosemary, of each a Handful; and of the Bark of the Root of Beach three Pounds, and of the Barks of young Elms, Oaks and Ash, of each a Handful; of Nep, Penny-royal, and of Chestnuts, the Rinds being taken away, of each a Handful; three or four white Onions clean pilled, and cut into small pieces or slices; Red-Wine three Pottles; strong White-Wine Vinegar two Pottles: boil all these together, and cause him to be walked a quarter of an hour till he be warm, then bathe him with this Bath good and hot, and set him up warm, and let his Drink be either sweet Mash or White-Water; and thus bathe him for three or four Days together, and let him not be ridden in any Water for eight or ten Days after.

The Use or Virtues of Baths.

Baths are Fomentations, which are the most comfortable things of any to the Joints and Limbs of a Horse, for they dissolve all ill Humours, and give heat and warmth unto all the Members that are benumbed with Cold, or for want of Blood; it comforteth and strengthneth them, and giveth very great Ease to the pained Sinews. Besides it assuageth Swellings in or about any part of the Body; for Legs swelling, stiff or benumbed, or for any other Joint pained or grieved, or for any String-halt, Cramp or Convulsion. Which Bath to cure all such Maladies is this:

Bath 1.

Take Muscadine and Sallet-Oil, of each a Pint; Bay-leaves
and

and Rosemary, of each two Handfuls; let them boil half an hour; and when you are to bathe your Horse therewith, rub and chafe the grieved place with a Wisp or Hair-cloth a pretty while: then put the Foot into some broad Bowl or Pail, whereby to preserve the Liquor or Herbs, and bathe him thus a quarter of an hour; which ended, bind upon the place a piece of Sheep's or Lamb's Skin, with the woolly side to the Leg, and let him stand so four and twenty Hours. Apply this five or six times, and it will be a perfect Cure.

Bath 2. A Bath to cure all Gourdy and Gouty Legs, which come either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like, &c.

Take a Quart or more of Chamber-lye, and put into it a Handful of Bay-Salt; a quarter of a pound of Soap; a pretty Quantity of Soot; a Handful or two of Mistletoe, chopped small: boil them together, and bathe the place very well therewith, and in three or four Days, bathing it Morning and Evening, it will not only take down the Swelling, but prevent the Farcin.

Bath 3. Another Bath for the same purpose.

Take the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, with the Barm, Smallage Feverfew, Winter-Savory, Comfrey, Mallows, Rue, Set-vel, Penny-royal, Worm-wood, Archangel, of each a good Handful, and of the Leaves and Berries of Mistletoe, three or four good Handfuls; Sheep's Tallow one pound, tried Hog's Grease half a pound; three or four Handfuls of Rye or Wheat-Bran: boil them all together, till the Herbs and Mistletoe become soft; and be sure you have Liquor enough, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put into it some Hay: with this bathe his Legs; first one, then the other, as was before shewed; and when you have bathed that Leg sufficiently, make a Thumb-Band of the Hay in the Bath, and roll it about the Leg, above the uppermost or middle Joint, and put off the Herbs between the Thumb-band and his Leg, which done, pour on the Liquor remaining upon the Thumb-bands; and so bathe him for so many days once, as you shall think requisite, and it will bring down the Swelling quite, and make him sound.

Bath 4. Another Bath very excellent.

Take Smallage, Ox-Eye and Sheep's Suet, of each alike, to a good quantity; chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone Mortar, then boil them with Man's Urine,

Urine, and bathe the greived parts herewith warm, doing as before with Bowl or Pail. Then with Thumb-bands of soft Hay made first wet in cold Water, wrap up the Member, as well above as below the Grief, and use it as often as you shall see cause. This Bath is very good for swelled Legs upon Travel, or for any other Lameness which cometh either by Stroke, Strain, or other Accident.

Bath 5. Another Bath.

Take Savin and the Bark and Leaves of the Bay-tree, Pellitory, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, of each three Ounces; boil these in a Gallon of White-Wine until half be consumed, and bathe your Horse as before is shew'd.

To bathe a Horse in salt Water, is very wholesom, both for the Horse's Skin, and for any Disease in the Stomach.

Bath 6. A Bath for a Horse that is tired or over-travelled.

Take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls; and a Rose-Cake; boil them together in Water till it be all consumed, then add to it a good quantity of Butter or Sallet-Oil, and mix them together, and bathe all his Fore-legs therewith, and all the Parts of his Body also: or let him blood, and with that Blood, Oil and Vinegar mixed together, presently anoint his Body, which helps most sorts of Infirmities.

Of Perfumes or Purges of the Head of all filthy and gross Matter.

Perfumes are necessary to be applied to Horses in Cases of Colds, Glanders, Rheums, Murs, Pozes, Catarrhs, &c. For they do not only break a Cold, but dissipate congealed Humours which do annoy the Head, Brain and Stomach of the Horse, and sometimes they expel and cause him to vent at his Nose and Mouth much Filth and Corruption, which doth stop, clog, and pester his Head and Body; and sometimes they do siccate and dry up many bad Humours which are engendred in the Head and Brain. The Ingredients of which Simples, wherewith we perfume sick Horses, are many. As,

The Juice of Onions snuffed up the Nose draweth forth raw phlegmatick Humours. The Juice of Coleworts squirted up his Nose, or the Juice of red Beets. The Leaves of the Wind Flower stamped, and the Juice squirted up his Nose, or the Juice of Dazies, purge the Head of filthy slimy Humours.

mours. The Juice of Sage draweth forth thin Phlegm. The Juice of the Primrose stamp'd, strain'd, and squirted up his Nose, is good to purge the Brain. The Juice of the small Celandine purgeth the Head of foul and filthy Humours. The Juice of the Leaves or Berries of Ivy that grows upon Walls, doth infinitely purge the Head. Fennel-Giant or Ferula snuffed up the Nose, white Hellebore or Sneezing-Root beaten to Powder, after it is dry'd and blown up into the Nose, purgeth the Head and Brain from gross and slimy Humours: wild white Hellebore hath the same Virtues. The Juice of sweet Marjoram draweth forth much Phlegm. The Juice of stinking Gladdon squirted up the Nose, draweth down to the Nose great store of filthy Excrements. Mustard-Seed beaten to powder, and blow'd up the Nose, purgeth the Head. The Juice of Sneezewort squirted up the Nose, bringeth from the Brain slimy Phlegm. The Juice of the Leaves of Elder purgeth the Head of all gross and vicious Humours. Pellitory, Pimpernel, Rosemary, the Smoke taken up his Nostrils, or take a Feather and anoint it in Oilde Bay, and thrust it up his Nose, is good for any Cold or Obstruction in the Head.

The best Perfume of all.

But the best Perfume of all is to take the best Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense, bruised grossly together, and strew'd upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and let him receive the Smoke of it up his Nostrils through a Tunnel, which will bring away abundance of tough Matter into Water from the Head and Brain, insomuch that it will be almost ready to extinguish the Fire. It is a most excellent Comforter of the Brain, and brings a great Chearfulness to the Heart, and rejoiceth the whole Body.

The Green Ointment.

The Green Ointment, which cures Sores whether old or green, Ulcers, Fistula's, Poll-Evils, or what else; for where this Ointment cometh, no proud or dead Flesh will grow, no Flies will come near the place, or Fore-Horse or Mare-Filly that is gelt or spay'd: anoint but the places, and they will neither swell nor fester; for it doth not only heal soundly, but speedily also, provided you lay nothing upon the Wound or Sorrance, where the Ointment is administred; as neither Hurds, Lint, Plaisters, or the like: unless you have occasion to taint a Wound which is deep, neither that
for

for any long time or too often. And besides, the seldomer the Wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two days, it will heal the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardness of healing. And together with this Ointment you may do well to wash the Sorrance with the Copperas-Water, which by reason it is always first to be used, you shall have it first, and the Green Ointment after it.

The making of the Copperas-Water.

Take two Quarts of fair Water, and put it into a clean Postnet, and put to it half a pound of green Copperas, of Salt a handful, of ordinary Honey a spoonful, and two or three Branches of Rosemary; boil all these till one half of the Water be consumed, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put to it the quantity of a Dove's Egg of Allum: then take it from the Fire, and strain it into a Pan, and when it is cold put it into a Glass close stopped, and keep it for your use. And when you are to dress any Sore, first wash it very clean with this Water; and if the Wound be deep, inject it with a Syringe.

The Virtues of it.

This Water will of itself cure any reasonable Sore or Wound, but the green Ointment being applied after it is wash'd, will heal any old Ulcer or Fistula whatsoever, if they come to the bottom, and for green Wounds they have not their fellow. If you think good you may boil it in Verjuice or Chamber-lye; one being a great Searcher, Cleanser, and Healer, the other a great Dryer.

How to make the Green Ointment.

Take a clean Skillét or Postnet, and first put into it of Rosin the quantity of a Walnut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of Wax; and when that is also molten, put to them of try'd Hog's-grease half a pound; and when that is molten, put into it of common *English* Honey one Spoonful: and when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, and when that is dissolved, take it from the Fire, and put to it an Ounce of Verdegrease beaten to fine powder, and so stir it all together, but be careful it run not over, for that the Verdegrease will cause it to arise: then set it again upon the Fire till it begin to simmer; then take it off, for if you let it boil too much, it will turn red, and lose

lose its Virtue of healing, and become a Corrosive. Then strain it through a Cloth into some Earthen Pot, and keep it for your use close covered.

The Virtues of it.

This is the most excellent Ointment that ever I knew; for *de Grey* hath done such rare Cures with it, that he hath been offer'd ten Pounds for it. For it cleanseth a Wound be it never so foul, or infected with dead, proud, spongy, or naughty Flesh; it carnieth and healeth abundantly, and withal so soundly and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth: it draweth forth Thorns, Splinters, Nails, and all such things in the Flesh; and in a word, it cureth all sorts of Sores and Wounds.

Another excellent Green Ointment made only in the Month of May, which cureth all sorts of Strains, Aches, Burnings, Scaldings, and Swellings whatsoever, either in the Throat or any other part of the Body.

Take half a pound of each of these things here under-mention'd, viz. Rue, red Sage, Wormwood and young Bay-Leaves, beat them very well in a Mortar: then take four pounds of new Sheep's Suet, and work the Herbs and it very well together with your Hands, till they be incorporated and become as one Lump. Then put to them two quarts of Sallet-Oil, and work that also till it become all of one softness and colour: then put it into a new Earthen Pan, and let it stand covered eight days; then boil it over a soft Fire the space of two hours or more, keeping it stirring all the while: then put into it four Ounces of the Oil of Spike, and let that boil as long. The way to know whether it be well boiled, is to put a Drop of it upon a Plate, and if it be upon a fair Green, you may assure yourself it is enough. Then strain it through a new Canvas, and keep it in an Earthen Pot for your use. This Ointment will hold very good seven or eight Years.

A very good Receipt to keep back Humours that flow too fast to a Wound you have in Cure, which will make it heal so much the sooner.

Take two Pints of White-Wine Vinegar or Tartar, and put to it an Ounce or more of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and of common Salt well dry'd the like quantity; the Powder also of the Burdock-Root, or the Juice of the Leaves:

Leaves: and wash the swell'd place round about with it, once or twice a day, and it will be a great help in order to its Cure.

Another for the same Use.

After you have beaten a Pennyworth or more of Camphire very small, dissolve it in a Pint of Verjuice, and boil it about a quarter of an hour; then put it into a Glass close stopped, to keep for your Use, and use it as you have Directions in the former Receipt.

To cleanse a Wound, old or new, before you dress it.

Take more or less of White-Wine Vinegar, according as you have occasion, and put into it the Powder of the Roots of Elder dry'd, or the Juice of the Leaves, with a Spoonful of Honey, and a little Powder of burnt Allum; and boil it about half a quarter of an hour, and use it warm.

Another sort of Green Ointment, which is good to heal any Wound, old or new.

Take a Handful of these Herbs here under-mentioned, viz. Rosemary, Wound-wort, red Sage, Mugwort, Comfrey, Rue and Southernwood, &c. Cut them small, and boil them in a Pound and a half of May-Butter, and the like quantity of Sheep's-Suet. When you have boiled it, according as you have Directions for the boiling of Ointments in the latter end of the Book, strain out the Ointment from the Herbs, and put it into a Pot, and keep it for your Use.

Of Purging or Scouring Things in general.

Turn-sole boiled in Water gently purgeth the Body, Feltwort or Baldmony, Aloes or Sea-Housleek is the most convenient Medicine for the Stomach, that is, the Seed of St. Peter's-wort. The Seed of Tutsan or Park-Leaves do purge cholerick Humours; Dodder that groweth upon Savory, Hedge-Hyssop, purgeth mightily waterish, gross, and slimy Humours; Scammony or purging Bind-weed doth mightily purge, and it is very hurtful to the Body, if you do not mix it with Aloes; Colloquintida is a violent Purger, and is not to be used but upon some desperate Diseases, and then not to be given, unless it be mixed with some clammy things whereby the Vehemency thereof may be repressed. Black Hellebore or Bear's-Foot, Hog's-Fennel purgeth

geth by Siege both Phlegm and Choler; either of the Poly-podies purgeth Choler and Phlegm.

The Entrails of a Carp or Barbel cut into pieces, and given him in White-Wine or Ale, or Rye sodden that it burst not, and dry'd and given him instead of Provender, an Ounce of Aloes made up in Balls of Butter, after it is finely beaten to Powder, purgeth excellently; Spurge boiled in Beer and given him, Hempseed, Fenugreek, Cassia, Honey, Sallet-Oil, in Sack given him; the Powder of Mechoacan boiled in Ale or Ale-wort, London-Treacle and Honey brew'd together and given him; or Sena, Agarick, and Liquorice boiled in Ale and given him; or Gentian sliced and boiled in a Quart of Beer till it come to a Pint, and given him.

Particular Scourings at large; and first of a Scouring for any Horse, sick or sound, and especially for Running or Hunting Horses, whose Grease must necessarily be molten.

Take twenty Raisins of the Sun with the Stones pick'd out, ten Figs slit round-wise; boil them in a Pottle of running Water till the Water is consumed and thickned: then take the Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy, finely searced, and mix it with the Raisins and Figs, stamping and working them together till they become a stiff Paste. Then making round Balls thereof, of a pretty bigness, roll and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give as many of them to the Horse as you shall think meet for his Strength; provided that the day before you give him such Exercise as will raise up his Grease, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine you also warm him thoroughly, that the Humours being again stirred up, the Medicine may work the more effectually.

Another Scouring to purge a Horse from all Grease, Glut, or Filthiness within his Body; which I think may go for as good a Scouring as can be invented by Art.

Take of Anniseeds three Ounces, of Cummin-seeds six Drams, of Carthamus a Dram and a half, of Fenugreek-seed one Ounce and two Drams, of Brimstone one Ounce and a half; beat all these to fine Powder, and searce them: then take a Pint and two Ounces of Sallet-Oil, of Honey a Pound and a half, and of White-Wine four Pints; then with as much fine Wheat-Meal as will suffice, make all into a strong stiff Paste, and knead and work it well. This Paste
keep

keep in a Gally-Pot close cover'd for your Use. When your Horse hath been hunted, and is at Night or in the Morning very thirsty, take a Ball of it as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it in a Gallon or two of cold Water, and it will make the Water look white as Milk. Then give it him in the dark, lest the Colour displease him; if he drink it, then feed him, but if he refuse it, let him fast till he take it, which assuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering: and when he hath once taken it, he will refuse all other Drink for this, and you cannot give him too much nor too oft of it, if he have Exercise. It is an excellent thing for all inward Infirmities whatsoever.

Another excellent Scouring after any sore Heat, or for any fat Horse after his Exercise, with Directions how he is to take it, and how you are to order him after it: with Cautions what to do when you give any Scouring.

Take a Quart of good Sack, and set it on the Fire in a Basin or Skillet, and when it is warm, take an Ounce of the clearest Rosin, being bruised very small, and by degrees little by little put it into the Sack, and keep it stirring for fear of clotting; and when it is well incorporated into the Sack, take it from the Fire, and put into it half a Pint of the best Sallet-Oil, and in the cooling stir them all very well together. Then put into it an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, and being lukewarm, give it the Horse in the height of his Heat. As soon as you come home from Exercise, then rub him well and clothe him warm, and let him fast two hours after it, and keep him stirring in the Stable, for that will make his Spirits work, for Rest doth but dull the Spirits. When you give him any Scouring, be sure that day to give him no cold Water after it, for it is binding and knitting, and detaineth that Foulness which the Scouring should take away.

Another Scouring, when others will not work.

Take a Quarter of a Pound of sweet Butter, and so much of Castle-Soap, and half an Ounce of Aloes; beat them together, and add two Spoonfuls of beaten Hempseed, and of Rosin half a Spoonful, of Sugar-Candy an Ounce bruised: work them all into a Paste, and give it him in Balls immediately after his Heat, when you have warmed him, and stirred up the Grease and Foulness within him.

[There is in my Second Part a very safe and easy Scouring.]

M

If

If you have a desire to see more Variety of Purgations of all sorts, look back.

Of Loosening Things in general.

Brank-Urfin or Seed, Hempseed, Fenugreek-seed, the Juice of the white Beets, Coleworts, Spinage, Mercury, Succory, white Soap and Spurge bray'd together, and given him to drink; Sallet-Oil given him in Sack, or Ale, or Anniseeds, Linseeds, and Piony boiled in Beer, or the Bark of the Elder-Tree bruised and mixed with old Ale and given him; or take of the Decoction of Mallows, Sallet-Oil, and fresh Butter, *Benedicta Laxativa* given him blood-warm Glister-wise, or Rye thrown amongst his Provender, or Mustard-seed, or to anoint your Hand with Butter or Hog's-Grease, and pluck away his Ordure, and then put into his Fundament a good piece of the great End of a Candle; or give him in Ale eleven Leaves of Laurel stamp'd, the Seed of horned Poppy given him in Ale. All sorts of Docks being boiled, are Looseners of the Belly; Marigold-Leaves, Borrage, Bugloss, the Leaves of Hound's-Tongue boiled in Ale do mollify the Belly, Syrup of Violets, black Hellebore or Bear's Foot, Hog's-Fennel looseneth the Belly gently, Sperrage or Asparagus.

Things good to fatten a Horse in general.

Beans boiled in two Gallons of Water till they swell or burst, and mix them with a Peck of Wheat-Bran, and give it him in the manner of a Mash, and it will fat suddenly; or Coleworts sodden and mixed with Wheat-Bran, and give them instead of Provender; or give him, instead of his Provender, the Grain call'd Buck, or give him parch'd Wheat mingled with Ale, or Wheat-Bran mingled amongst his Provender: but be sure to keep him well dress'd and cleanly look'd after; for without clean keeping his Meat will do him but little good, and give him but a little Meat at once, for fear you cloy him. Or take Sage, Savin, Bayberries, Earth-Nuts, Bear's-Grease mingled with a Quart of Wine or Ale, and give it him; or feed him a Month together with scalded Bran; or take Cummin-seed, Fenugreek-seed, *Sileris Montani*, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two Ounces; quick Brimstone six Ounces, made all into fine Powder: and give him an Egg-shell full of it every Night in his Provender, and white Water after it, and put into his Oats with his Powder a Handful of Nettle-seed, for

for that is a thing which will principally cause him to fatten. And when he is glutted with this Meat, then give him Bread; if he leave his Bread, then give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite: or give him many Mornings together half an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a Penny-weight of the Powder of Myrrh in a Quart of Ale; or give him three-leaved Grass half green and half dry for many days together; or give him Pepper, Saffron, Anniseeds, Turmeric, Treacle, Liquorice, Pennyroyal and Archangel, mingled in Milk with the Yolks of Eggs. Barley dry'd or Barley boild till it burst, is a great Fattener, but most of these ways will not breed Fat that will continue. But the best way to make him fat, and to cause him to keep it, is to give him three Mornings together a Pint of sweet Wine, and two Spoonfuls of Diapente brew'd together; for that will take away all Infection and Sicknes from the inward Parts. Then feed him well with Provender at least four times a day, viz. after his Water in the Morning, after his Water at Noon, after his Water in the Evening, and after his Water at Nine at Night; and if you find that he eat not his Provender well, then change it to another, and let him have most of that Food he loveth best, and there is no question but he will grow fat suddenly. But if you will have a more particular Account, then turn to the Mirrour of all Medicines, to make the leanest Horse that may be fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travel, in the space of fourteen days, which you may find before, with several other such-like Receipts ensuing.

*An Explanation of several hard Words belonging to
Chirurgery.*

What a Fracture is.

If there be a Loosening in the Bone, it is call'd a Fracture.

What a Wound is.

If it be in any fleshy part, it is called a Wound.

What a Rupture is.

If it be in the Veins, then it is a Rupture.

What a Convulsion is.

If in the Sinews, then it is a Cramp or Convulsion.

What an Excoriation is.

If it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation.

Of giving of Fire ; and there are two ways of it, the one Actual, and the other Potential. The first is done by Medicine, either Corrosive, Putrefactive, or Caustick.

Cantery Actual.

The actual Fire doth burn the Flesh by Instrument, which stoppeth Corruption of Members, and stancheth Blood, provided the Sinews, Cords, and Ligaments be not touch'd. The Instruments to cauterize are Gold, Silver, Copper, or Iron.

Cantery Potential.

The Potential Fire doth burn by Medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees; namely, by Corrosive, by Caustick, or Putrefaction.

The Corrosive.

The Corrosives are simple or compound : the simple Corrosives are Roch-Allum, burnt or unburnt, red Coral, Mercury sublimed, Verdegrease, Copperas white and green; and these corroding things are call'd Precipitates, which are Eaters of dead Flesh. The Compounds are *Unguentum Apostolorum*, *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Coraceum*, with others.

Medicines Putrefactive.

Medicines Putrefactive are such Medicines which are applied to Swellings, which are made for the most part of Medicines compounded, as Poultices, roasted Sorrel, white Lilly-Roots, and the like.

What a Caustick is.

A Caustick is a great Burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in a short time make a Wound where there was none before ; and those things are Lye, Lime, Vitriol, Aquafortis, and the like.

Corrosives.

Corrosives are weaker than Putrefactives, and Putrefactives are weaker than Causticks. Corrosives work in the soft Flesh, Putrefactives in the hard, and Causticks break the sound Skin.

Thus

Thus you see the Use of these things, you may apply them at your pleasure; for these cure all sorts of Farcies, Cankers, Fistulaes, Leprosies, Manges, Scabs, and such like poisonous Infection.

Of the several sorts of Purgings, which are five; by Pills, by Potions, by Glisters, by Suppositories, and by Grass.

What Pills are.

Pills are solid or substantial stuff fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are cast down the Horse's Throat, which purge the Head and Brain from Phlegm, and other gross Humours, down into the Excrements.

What a Potion is.

Potions are when you give him liquid purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that if it be any other liquid Stuff: now Potions cleanse the Stomach and Guts from such naughty Humours, which Glanders, Colds and Surfeits have ingendred in the Body.

What Glisters are,

Glisters are given at the Fundament, and are made up of four things, that is to say, Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oils, and such like unctious Matter, as Butter or Grease; and fourthly, of divers Salts, to provoke the Virtue expulsive. Now they are of several Natures, some to ease and appease Grievs, and allay the Sharpness of Humours, some to bind and some to loosen, and some to heal, as in Cases of Ulcers and old Sores within the Body, &c.

What a Suppository is.

A Suppository is only a Preparative to a Glisters, and but only to cleanse and make loose the great Guts which come to the Tuel; and they help the Disease of the Guts, being of nature more gentle than Glisters are, and may be applied when Glisters cannot.

Purging by Grass.

Purging by Grass, is either by green Corn, Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats or Tares, which is a great Cleanser and Cooler of his Body.

What a Decoction is.

A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as Mallows,
Marsh-

Marshmallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and sometimes of white Lilly-Roots, and other such like things.

Simples that are good to conglutinate and knit things together, either inward or outward

Iris Illyrica beaten and sifted, and mingled with Pepper, Honey and Currants, and given him to drink in Wine and Sallet-Oil, conglutineth any inward Rupture or Burstness; Dragant, Saffron, the Fruit of the Pine, with the Yolks of Eggs, given him to drink with Wine and Sallet-Oil, is good to conglutinate any inward Member or Vein broken; the Roots and Seeds of Asparagus sod in Water and given him, and after three days give him Opoponax with Honey and Myrrh, and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatsoever. The Bark of Ash beaten with Wine, and plaster it, is a great Knitter of broken Bones; or the inward Bark of an Elm laid in running Water, and bathe the place therewith; or the Roots of Rocket boiled in Water, and plaster it; or wild Briony stamped and plastered also; Hazel-tails and the Seeds of red Docks made into powder, and given him to drink, is good; or Bugle is a Knitter of Wounds inward or outward: so does Lion's paw, or Self-heal, the distilled Water of Sow-bread doth knit any broken Sinew in the Body. Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, and finely sifted and beaten with the White of an Egg, and spread upon the Leg, and covered over with Flax, is very good for a Sinew-strain, and is a great Strengthner of the grieved place, where a Bone hath been out of joint, and put in again. The yellow Wall-flower strengthens any weak part out of joint.

A Poultice made of Brank-Ursin and applied is good, so is a Decoction of the Root of Butchers-broom or Knee-Holly, with the Berries also made into a Poultice: the Root of the great Comfrey bruised and laid to them, doth consolidate and knit them together: the Decoction of the Leaves, Bark or Roots of Elecampane, healeth them, being bathed therewith. The Roots of Eringo or Sea-holly boiled in Hog's-grease, and applied to them, draweth not only Bones out of the Flesh, but also Thorns, and healeth them again. An Ointment made of the Roots of Olmond-Royal or Water-Flag bruised in a Mortar, with the Oil of Swallows, and the place grieved anointed with it, is very good; Flix-weed doth consolidate broken Bones, so do the Leaves of the Holly-tree used in Fomentations; so doth Knot-grass and

and Moon-wort : the Leaves of Mullen bruised and boiled in Wine, and laid to any Member out of joint, and newly set again, take away all Swellings and Pains thereof; the Leaves of Nettles also bruised and laid to them, refresh them; the Juice of Plantain applied to any Bone out of joint, hindreth the Inflammation, Swelling or Pain that shall arise thereon; *Solomon's Seal* knitteth any Joint, which by weakness useth to be often out of its place : or the Decoction of the Root being bruised and infused in Wine all Night, and given him, much helpeth towards the Cure ; the Leaves of Turnsole bruised and applied to Bones out of joint, are very good for them, &c.

Simples that are good to cleanse the Blood.

Avens, Water-Cresses, or Brook-lime, Burrage or Bugloss, Butchers-broom or Knee-holly, *Carduus Benedictus*, the red Dock, which is commonly called Blood-wort, Fennel-seeds, Fumitory, Hops, Wall-Rue, or ordinary white Maiden-hair, Mustard-seed, the Root of the bastard Rhubarb, Sage, Succory, Scurvey-Grass, Smallage, Wood-sorrel, Star-Thistle, Ladies Thistle, the yellow Wall-Flower, &c.

Simples that are good in general to expel the dead Foal.

All-heal, the Herb Alkanet applied to her Shape draweth it forth ; Angelica, Brook-lime, or Water-Pimpernel, Centaury or sweet Chervil given her in Wine is very good. The Powder of the Root of Cuckowpoint, or the Juice of it given in Wine, bringeth it away ; Flax-weed or Toad-Flax is good ; Flower-de-luce made up in a Pessary with Honey, and put up into her Body, bringeth it forth ; Germander, Hore-hound, Filapendula or Drop-wort is good also given her ; so is the Root of Master-wort ; Ground pine is excellent good to expel it. The Decoction of the Leaves and Branches of Sage given is also good, so is the Juice of the yellow Wall-Flower, &c.

Simples good in general to provoke Lust in Horses.

The Decoction of *Asparagus* given him for some time, the Seed of the Ash-tree powdred with Nutmegs is a great Increaser of it ; Beans, Chest-Nuts, Cream of Cich-pease, or Cicers boiled in Water and given. The Seeds of both the sorts of Clary, the Pith of the Stalk of the Burdock, before the Bur cometh forth ; The weight of one Ounce of Cloves given in Milk provoketh it exceedingly ; Bread made

of Potatoes and Bean-Flower, and given him, is a great Provoker of it; The Roots of Chervil, the Roots of Fennel-giant, Spear-Mint, Mustard-Seed, Nettle-Seed; The Seed of the wild Rocket increaseth it exceedingly; Raisins of the Sun, sweet Almonds, Pine-Nuts, the Pizzle of a Bull or Hart, Boars-Stones dried and powdred, and given him amongst his Provender, &c.

Simples good in general to increase Milk in Mares.

The Seed or Leaves of Burrage or Bugloss, Cicers boiled in Milk, Cocks Head, the Leaves or Seed of Fennel, the Seed of wild Rocket, Sow-Thistles, the Seed of Vipers, Bugloss given him in Ale, Dandelion, &c.

Things good in general to wash all manner of Sores and Ulcers.

Alehoof bruised with White-wine and Allum, is very good to wash all sorts of them, Flixweed made into a Salve doth quickly heal them, how foul or malignant soever they be; the distilled Water of the Herb worketh the same effect, but it is somewhat weaker. The Juice of Fox-Gloves doth cleanse, dry, and heal them. The Juice of the Leaves or Roots of stinking Gladwin, by anointing any Scab or Sore in the Skin, will take them away. The Juice of Purslain is good to allay the Heat in Sores and Hurts: Meadow-sweet, Rag-wort, the Juice of the green Herb of Tobacco, wild Tansy boiled with Vinegar and Honey, is good to heal moist, corrupt, and running Sores, &c.

Simples that are good in general for all manner of Swellings or Rising in the Skin, viz. hard Knobs and Kernels, as also swelled Legs, Swellings under the Caul, hard or soft, and to ripen them.

Archangel stamp'd with some Salt and Vinegar, and applied, dissolveth them; Bdellium (a kind of Gum) doth ripen them; the Leaves of the Beech-Tree are good to discuss hot Swellings; Barley-meal and Flea-wort boiled in Water, and made into a Poulrice with Honey and Oil of Lillies, cureth Swellings under the Throat; Brine dissolveth hard Swellings, Chick-weed boiled in Water very soft, adding to it Hog's-grease, with the powder of Fenugreek and Linseed, and a few Roots of Marsh-mallows stamp'd in the form of a Cataplasm or Poulrice, and applied, taketh away the Swelling of the Legs, or any other part. Brook-lime or Water-Pimpernel used in the like manner is also very good; the Decoction of Coleworts taketh away the Pain and Ach,
and

and allayeth the Swellings in swollen Legs, wherein any gross or watry Humours are fallen, the place being bathed with it warm. Oil of Camomile is good to dissolve hard and cold Swellings, Cummin put into a Poultice is also good for them; so is Chervile bruised and applied: Cinquefoil boiled in Vinegar helpeth all hard Swellings, so does Clary and Clivers boiled in Hog's-grease do the like; Cock's-head bruised when they are green, and laid as a Plaster, disperseth Knots and Kernels in the Flesh; the Juice of Colts-foot is good for all hot Swellings and Inflammations. Endive applied assuageth all Swellings and Tumours coming of a hot cause; an Oil made of the broad Flag Flower-de luce, mollifieth all manner of Tumours and Swellings in any part of the Body: as also of the Matrice, the Roots of stinking Gladwin boiled in Vinegar or the Grounds of Beer, and laid upon them, consumeth them. The Decoction of the Leaves of the Gooseberry-bush cooleth them; Frankincense mingled with Honey, and applied, dissolveth hard Swellings; the fresh Herb of Groundsel made into a Poultice, taketh away the Heat and Pains of them, and used with Salt dissolveth Knots and Kernels; Henbane assuageth all manner of Swellings in the Cods or elsewhere, if they be boiled in Wine, or the Grounds of Beer, and applied either of themselves, or by Fomentation warm. True-lo veor One-berry hath the same Virtues. Hore-hound boiled in Hog's-grease is also good for any Swelling in any part of the Body; St. John's-wort dissolveth Swellings, Knotgrass cooleth all manner of hot Inflammations breaking out by heat; Hedge-Mustard is good for Swellings in the Stones; the Decoction of Rag-weed, or Pellitory of the Wall, is good; Rye-bread, or the Leaves thereof, ripeneth and breaketh Imposthumes and other Swellings, so doth Wood-Sage, the Leaves of Southern-wood boiled till they be soft, and stamped with Barley-Meal, and Barrow's-grease applied to the place grieved is good for all cold Tumours. The Decoction of the Root of Scabious applied, doth wonderfully help all sorts of hard or cold Swellings in any part of the Body, &c.

Simples good in general to cause Sweat, given inwardly or applied outwardly.

Mountain Calamint given inwardly, or applied outwardly, being boiled in Sallet-Oil, and the Body anointed with it, the Juice of Scabious given him with Treacle; Camomile used

in Baths provoketh it, opening the Pores, and mitigateth the griping Pains in the Guts and Bowels; the Juice of Bugloss mixed with Brandy, and the Body rubbed therewith, is good; Master-wort or Herb-Gerrard is also good; Fennel-Giant mixed with Sallet-Oil, and the Body anointed with it. An Oil made of *Afarabaca*, with *Labdanum*, by setting it in the Sun, and the Back anointed with it, is good, Wood-sage, &c.

Simples, and other things that are good to expel the Heam in Beasts, which is the same as the After-Birth is in Women.

Thyme, Winter-succory, Pennyroyal boiled in White-Wine and given, common Hore-hound boiled also in the same Wine and given, Dittany given or put up in a Pessary, driveth forth the dead Foal, and expelleth the Secundine; Angelica driveth it forth also, so doth Parsley-seed, Alexanders, Hops, Fennel, Savin and Bay-berries, the Powder of the inside of the wrinkled Skin of the Gizzard of a Hen that lays, dried and given in White-Wine, is excellent, &c.

Simples good in general to provoke or expel Wind.

Alexander or House-parsley, Angelica-seeds, Bay-berries, the Seeds of the wild Carrots, Bishops-weed dissolveth it; Caraway-seeds, Cardamum-seeds, sweet Chervil, Cummin taken inwardly, or given in Glisters, is good for the gnawing of the Guts and Belly; Dill-seeds, the Herb Devils-bit boiled in Wine, Fennel-seeds, Filapendula or Drop-wort, Hemp-seed, the Berries of Holly, Juniper-Berries, the Root of Lovage, Lavender, Nep or Cat-mint, Nutmegs, wild Parsnips, or the Seeds or Roots of common Parsley, dissolve it both in the Stomach and Bowels; China-Roots, Winter and Summer-Savory, Pennyroyal, given in Sack; Burnet, Saxifrage, Stone-parsley, the Seed of Smallage, Thyme or Mother of Thyme, Valerian, &c.

Simples that are good in general for Cattel that are bewitched.

Two Drams of the Berries or Seed of True-love, or one Berry beaten to powder, and given him for twenty Days together, restoreth him: Mistletoe growing upon Peartrees and hung about the Neck is very good; *Amara Dulcis*, gathered in its Influency, is also good for it, used as before: Piony is good. The Branches of the Holly-tree are reported

to defend, not only from Witchcraft, but Lightning also, &c.

Simples that are Cordials and Strengtheners of Nature.

Gentian strengthens the Stomach exceedingly, and keepeth the Heart from fainting; Clove Gilly-Flowers are great Strengtheners both of the Brain and Heart, and are very good to put into Cordials for sick and weak Horses; St. John's-wort, Juniper-berries strengthen the Brain, and all the Limbs of the Body; Marigolds strengthen the Heart, so doth Saffron and Mustard-seed; give not above two Drams of Saffron at a time when you use it: Mother of Thyme is a great Strengthenner of it; Red Roses do not only strengthen the Heart, but Stomach and Liver, and the retentive Faculty, and mitigate the Pains that arise from Heat; Bugloss, Balm, Motherwort, Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, Anni-seeds, Canary, &c.

Simples that are good in general, either taken inwardly, or applied outwardly for the Biting or Stinging of any venomous Beast, viz. Adders, Vipers, Spiders, Wasps, Bees, and Hornets, &c.

The Decoction of Agrimony given him, or the Juice of Alexander or Horse-parsley, Aristolochia rotunda or Birth-wort, Asarabaca, Balm, Woodbetony, the Powder of the dried Leaves of the Bluebottle given in Plantain-Water, Comfrey, Buckshorn, Plantain given him, with some of the Leaves laid to the hurt Place, is good against biting of Adders; the Juice of the Root of the Burdock, given him inwardly, and applied outwardly to the place bruised, with Salt, is also very good for them to ease the Pain thereof; Water-Caltrops, Centaury, Campions, Flower-de-luce boiled in Vinegar and given is good, so is the Decoction of the Root of common Elder, the Seed of St. John's-wort given inwardly, and applied outwardly, is good for them; so is Sage, Rocket, Pennyroyal, Pimpernel, Ground-pine, Marjoram, Summer-Savory taketh away the Stinging of Bees or Wasps; the Root of Spignel, the green Herb of Tobacco applied to the place bruised; the Leaves of the Tamarisk Tree boiled in Wine and given him is good, so is Valerian and Viper's Bugloss: the Flower of Barley or Wheat-Meal boiled in Vinegar, and applied to the place grieved, is very good to draw forth the Venom, the Juice of Mead or Trefoil is also good for them, &c.

A very large Account in general, of what Simples are good for all sorts of Sores or Ulcers, whether inward or outward, of what nature soever.

Agrimony, Ale-hoof boiled with a little Honey and Vergrease, doth wonderfully cleanse them, and stayeth the spreading and eating of the Cankers in them; the Juice or the Water of Angelica is very good to wash them with, so is Anemony or Wind-Flower and Archangel: Arsmart is good for putrid Ulcers, Aloes beaten to powder and strewed upon them is also good; so is the Juice of Broom and Waterbetony, the Water or Juice of Bistort, or Snakeweed, or of the Leaves, Buds or Branches of the Bramble, is very good to wash them with; the Juice of the Leaves of the Blue-bottle helpeth all Ulcers or Sores in the Mouth; Bugle, Burnet, wild Champions given inwardly, or applied outwardly, is very good; so is the Juice of Celandine and Gentuary; the red Berries of the Winter-Cherries given inwardly, cleanse the inward Imposthumes and Ulcers of the Reins and Bladder, and are also good for bloody and foul Urine; the Juice of the bruised Leaves of Chickweed, Cinquefoil or Comfrey, is good to wash them with; Cuckoe-point, the Root of it in powder, or the Herb boiled in Sheep's or Cow's Milk, healeth the inward Ulcers of the Bowels; the distilled Water of Cucumbers given inwardly is very good for Ulcers in the Bladder; the Powder of the Root of both kinds of Fern strewed upon them, drieth up the Moisture in them, and healeth them speedily; so doth the Powder of Sow-Fennel, or Fig-wort, the Juice or the Water of Flix-weed injected into them, doth cleanse and heal them up, Elecampane-Root beaten to powder and mixed with Honey is also very good: Dill burnt and laid upon moist Sores cureth them; Frankincense is good to fill up hollow Ulcers, Hemlock is good for all creeping Ulcers and Pustles that arise from hot and sharp Humours, by cooling and repelling the Heat. Take this Receipt for the Cure of all manner of Ulcers:

Take the green Leaves of the yellow Henbane, three Pounds and a half of them, stamped in a Mortar, and boil it in a Quart of Sallet-Oil, in a Brass Pan, gently upon the Fire, keeping it stirring till the Herbs are black, and will not boil nor bubble any more: then you shall have a most excellent green Ointment, which being strained from the Dross, put it to the Fire again, and add to it half a Pound

Pound of Bees-Wax, four Ounces of Rosin, and two Ounces of common Turpentine; melt them together, and keep them for your Use. This will cure any inveterate Ulcer, Botch, Burning, green Wound, and all Cuts or Hurts in the Head.

The fresh Leaves of Ivy boiled in White-Wine doth wonderfully help to cleanse them; Juniper Berries drieth up hollow Ulcers, and filleth them up with Flesh; Knot-Grass, or the Powder of the Herb or Seed, cools all Gangreens, Fistula's, and foul and filthy Ulcers: Nape-weed is a great Drier up of Moisture in them; Madder helpeth them in the Mouth, if unto the Decoction you put a little Allum and Honey of Roses; Herb Mouse-Ear is very excellent to stay the Malignity and Spreading of them; Pellitory of the Wall, Pennyroyal bruised and put to Vinegar, cleanseth them; the Juice of Plantain is good for old Ulcers that are to be healed; the Juice of Purslain is good for Inflammations in the privy Parts; the Powder of Savin mixed with Honey cleanseth them, but hindreth them from healing; the Juice of Rag-wort is very good also, &c.

Burning Compositions.

The gentlest is *Unguentum Apostolorum*, next to it is Verjuice and Hog's-Grease beaten together; next to this is Precipitate and Turpentine mixt together; next to it is Arsnick allayed with any Oil or healing Salve; next to it is Mercury sublimate, likewise allayed with some cooling Salve; and the worst is Lime and Soap, or Lime and strong Lye beaten together, for they will corrode and mortify the soundest part whatsoever.

To make Hair smooth, sleek and soft.

To do this, keep him warm at the Heart, for the least inward Cold will make the Hair stare; then make him sweat oft, for that will raise up the Dust and Sweat, which makes his Coat foul. When he is in his greatest Sweat, with an old Sword-Blade scrape off all the white Foam, Sweat and Filth that shall be raised up, and that will lay his Coat even and smooth. And when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own Blood, and so let it remain two or three Days; and then curry and dress him well, and this will make his Coat shine like Glass.

How

How to cast and overthrow a Horse.

When you intend to cast your Horse, bring him upon some even, smooth and soft place, or in the Barn upon some soft Straw, then take a long Rope and double it, and cast a Knot a Yard from the Bought; then put the Bought about his Neck, and the double Rope betwixt his Fore-Legs, and about his hinder Pasterns, and underneath his Fet-locks: then put the ends of the Rope underneath the Bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him; then make the ends fast and hold down his Head, under which you must be sure to have always good store of Straw. Now if you would at any time brand your Horse on the Buttock, or do any thing about his Hinder-legs that he may not strike, take up his contrary Fore-leg; and when you do you brand your Horse, see that the Iron be red hot, and that the Hair be both seared away, and the Flesh scorched in every place before you let him go, and so you shall be sure to lose no Labour.

To make an unruly Horse stand still to be trimmed, that will not be trimmed with Barnacles.

Take off one of his Stirrop-Leathers, and put it into his Mouth, and throw over his Head as you do a Bridle, and girt up his Chaps very hard, and he will stand quietly to be trimmed.

Another, to make an unruly Horse stand still to be shod.

The common way is to put a pair of Barnacles upon his Nose, and tye them very hard; but if you find that will not do, then at the same time put some round Stones into his Ears, and tye them up hard that they fall not out.

How to make a stubborn Horse to go.

Tye a small Cord or Line about his Stones pretty hard, and bring it between his Fore-legs, and let it be of that Length that you may reach the other end of it with your Hand when you are upon his Back, and when you find that he will not go forward, jerk him with your Line, which is the only means I know of to break him of his stubborn Tricks. If he be a Gelding, then strike him with a long Rod that is burnt at one end; and this will help.

To make a Horse follow his Master, and find him out and challenge him amongst ever so many People.

Take a Pound of Oat-Meal, and put to it a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and make a Cake thereof, and put it into your Bosom next to your naked Skin, then run or labour your self till you sweat; then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake; then keep him fasting a day and a night, and give it him to eat; and when he hath eaten it, turn him loose; and he shall not only follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he hath lost you, or doth miss you: and tho you be environed with ever so many, yet he will find you out and know you: and when he cometh to you, spit into his Mouth, and anoint his Tongue with your Spittle, and thus doing he will never forsake you.

How to make a black Star, or white Hair black.

If you desire to make on a white Horse a black Star, you shall then take a Scruple of Ink, and four Scruples of the Wood of Oliander beaten to powder: incorporate this in as much Sheep's Suet as will suffice, and anoint the place therewith, and it will make any white Hair black: or take the Decoction of Fern-Roots and Sage, sod in Lye, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black Hair, but you must wash the place very oft therewith. Or take the Rust of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and stamp them with Oil; or else take Souter-Ink, Galls and Rust, and beat them well together, and anoint the place well therewith, and it will turn any white Hair to be black.

Certain Principles touching Simples.

As touching Simples, some are only to ease Pain, as Linseed, Camomile, soft Grease, Suet of all sorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the first degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or *Lynogs*.

There are other Simples which are astonishing, benumbing or bringing Sleep; as Opium, Mandrake, Poppey, Hemlock, and such like, which are gross and cold in the fourth degree: and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongst Leaches called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of Simples are such as incarnate, or breed Flesh, as Saffron, Frankincense, Flower, Yolks of Eggs, and such like, which are hot in the second degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of Simples are corroding, fretting and burning, as Arsnick, Resigallo, Mercury, Lime, and such like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whensoever they are applied simple or compound, then the Medicine is called *Cerrosive*.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which be called Molli-fying, and are four in Number; that is, green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-Ursin.

The last sort of Simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in Number, viz. Violets and Bugloss of both kinds.

And thus much touching the Nature, Use, Property and Operation of Simples.

The End of the First Part.



T H E

T H E
S E C O N D P A R T
O F T H E
Experienc'd Farrier:

S H E W I N G

- I. The Nature, Temperature, and Virtue of most
Simples, for the Cure of all inward and outward
Diseases. Never yet printed in this nature before.
- II. You have things in general, set down one after
another, for the Cure of all Diseases, which you
may use as your Discretion serves.
- III. You have severally particular Receipts for the
Cure of all Diseases.
- IV. You have the Gathering, Drying, and Preserving
of Simples and their Juices.
- V. You have the Way of making and keeping of
all necessary Compounds.
- VI. You have hot Medicaments appropriate to the
Parts of the Body.
- VII. You have cold Medicaments appropriate to the
Parts of the Body.
- VIII. You have the Properties of Purging Medica-
ments.
- IX. You have the Properties of altering Medicaments.
- X. You have a Table of all the Diseases of a Horse;
either inwardly or outwardly, set down alphabeti-
cally, where they do grow in any part of a Horse's
Body, and how you may know them, and what
was the Cause that bred them.
- XI. And lastly, you have in the Margin of these
said Diseases, the Page quoted where to find the
proper Cure for every of these Diseases.



THE
Experienc'd Farrier.

PART II.

Purging Simples.

R H U B A R B, Cassia, Tamarinds, Myrobalans,
Aloes, Sene or Sena, Mechoacan-Root, Aga-
rick, Polypody, Carthamus, Bastard or *Spanish*
Saffron, Dwarf-Elder, Ensula or Devil's-Milk,
Hermodactils, Jalap, Turbith, Scammony, Hel-
lebore or Bear's-foot, Colloquintida, Spurge-Olive, Spurge-
Flax, Lawrel, Soldanella, Turn-sole, &c.

Binding Simples.

[Look for them in the Table, at the latter end of the
Book.]

Foreign Simples that are Heating.

Ginger, Zedoary or Set-wall, Galangal, Acorus or Wa-
terflag, Calamus Aromaticus or the Aromatical Reed, Cos-
tus, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Mace, Pepper, Cloves, Carda-
mums, Cubebs, Kermes, Sanders, Sassafras, China-Root,
Guaiacum or Lignum Vitæ, Sarsaparilla, Aloes-Wood, &c.

Home-bred Heating Simples.

Pellitory of *Spain*, Mustard common, and Treacle-Mustard, Rocket, Nettles, Flower-de-luce or Orrice, Elecampane, Cyprus, Angelica, Lovage, Hartwort, Gentian, Tormentil, Piony, Madder, Rest-harrow, Sea-holly, common Grass, Liquorice, Sow-bread, Radish-Roots, Anemomy or Wind-Flower, Wall-flowers, Thyme, Marjoram, Pennyroyal, Polium, Basil, Origanum, Mint, Calamint, Wormwood, Mugwort, Balm, Horehound, Betony, Speedwell, Dittany, Sage, Clary, *French* Lavender, Scordium, Rue, Gromwel, Saxifrage, Aristolochia or Birthwort, Asarabaca, Burnet, Germander, Groundpine, Feverfew, St. John's-wort, Hyssop, Crane's-bill, Doronicum or Leopard's-bane, Carduus Benedictus, Mother-wort, black Cameleon Thistle, Valerian, Fumitory, Eyebright, Centaury, Rhaphonticum, Coriander, Wood-bine, Broom, Ashen-Keys, Mistletoe of the Oak, Poplar, Cummin-seeds, &c.

Cooling Simples.

Mandrake, Nightshade, Winter-Gherries, Henbane, Poppy, Housleek, Purslain, Dog's-Tongue, Plantain, Knot-grass, Comfrey, Sorrel, Agrimony, four Dock, Primrose, Cabbage or Garden Coleworts, Flea-bane, Coltsfoot, Hops, Bistort, Strawberry-bush, Cinquefoil, Goose-grass or Clivers, Scabious, Catsfoot, Melilot, Fenugreek, red Cicers, Lupins, Sumack, Myrtle, Yarrow, Tamarisk.

Before you enter upon the Use of these Simples, (unless you know them very well) look into the Table of Simples to see the Nature of them, for some of them are very pernicious, unless corrected by Art.

The Nature, Temperature, and Vertue of most
Simples, set down Alphabetically. As also
some Drugs, Liquors, Seeds, Rosins, and
Juices, &c.

A.
A *Garicum*, or *Agarick*, is a kind of Mushroom or Toad-stool. It is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree. It expelleth Humours, purgeth all Phlegm and Choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys: Correct it with the Powder of Liquorice.

Agripa is an Ointment that is good against all Tumours.

Allum, commonly call'd *Roch-Allum*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it is a Dryer up of Humours, and is good for sore Mouths, and old Cankers and Fistulaes, and killeth the Worms, taken inwardly.

Aloes is hot, and that in the first and second degree, but dry in the third; it is extreme bitter, yet without biting: it is the most natural Purger of Man and Beast that is, for it strengthens the Heart, and revives the Spirits; it is also of an emplastick and clammy Quality, and sometimes binding, being externally apply'd.

Sweet Almonds, when they be dry, be moderately hot; but the bitter ones are hot and dry in the second degree: there is in both of them a certain fat and oily Substance, which is drawn out of them by pressing of them. They provoke Urine, and are vee'y good for the Lungs and Liver.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; it looseneth and dissolveth Humours.

Anniseeds are hot and dry in the third degree, saith *Galen*; but others, that they are hot in the second degree, and much less then dry in the second degree: they are good to expel Wind, provoke Urine, stir up Lust, and are great Cleansers of the Breast from phlegmatick Humours.

Aristolochia, which we call *Birthwort* or *Harts-wort*, is hot and cleanseth; but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much

the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree, and draweth and purgeth thin Water and Phlegm, and is good to open the Lungs, and is good against all manner of Poison whatsoever, or the biting of any venomous Beast.

Armoniack both draweth, cooleth, and softeneth.

Arsenick, of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: it bindeth and eateth away proud and naughty Flesh, and is a very strong Corrosive.

Assafœtida, or *Devil's-Bit*, is a stinking Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the fourth degree: it cleanseth evil Humours, it is good for the Yellows and Staggers in a Horse, a little piece of it being dissolved in Brandy, and put into his Ears.

Asphaltum is a Pitch that is mix'd with Bitumen; it is hot and dry, and comforteth any Swelling.

Asponteo is hot in the first, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and draweth, and is good to comfort the Stomach.

Ashes are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanse mightily.

Asarabacca is hot and dry, with a purging Quality, yet not without a certain kind of binding; the Roots are hot and dry more than the Leaves, they provoke Urine.

The black *Aller-Tree*, the inner Bark of it is of a purging and drying Quality; it purgeth thick phlegmatick Humours, and also cholerick, downwards and by vomiting, which must be used with Care.

Aller or *Alder-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it are cold and dry, and astringent, and are used against hot Swellings and Inflammations, especially of the Almonds and Kernels of the Throats. The Bark of it is used amongst poor Country Dyers, to dye Cloth, Caps, Hose, and such like.

The *Ash-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it are dry and moderately hot, the Seeds are hot and dry in the second degree, they stop the Belly, being boiled in Vinegar and Water: the Seeds provoke Urine, and stir up bodily Lust.

Aspodills are hot and dry in the third degree.

Anemones, all the kinds of them (which are Wind-Flowers) are sharp, biting the Tongue, and are of a binding Faculty.

Adders-Tongue is dry in the third degree, and is good for Wounds in the Breast and Bowels, and for Ulcers and Inflammations.

Arsmart, or *Water-Pepper*, is hot and dry, yet not so hot as Pepper, is good for Ulcers, cold Swellings, Bruises, and to lay under the Saddle, to make tired Horses go.

Allheal

Allheal, all the kinds of them are dry, with little or no Heat, and are endued with a binding Quality; they are good for green Wounds, being bruised and boiled in an Ointment. It is good for the Worms, Gout, Cramp and Convulsions of the Sinews, provokes Urine, and is good for cold Grievs of the Head, Biting of mad Dogs, Lethargy, Cholick, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, and expelleth the dead Birth.

Archangel or *dead Nettles* are hotter and dryer than Nettles, approaching to the Temperature of Horehound; and are good for the bleeding at the Nose, Ulcers, old Sores, Bruises and Burnings, and to dissolve Tumours.

Alkanet, the Root of it is cold and dry, and bindeth, and because it is bitter, it cleanseth away cholerick Humours. The Leaves are not so forcible, yet they do bind and dry, and are good for the Stone, Yellow, Leprosy, venomous Beasts, Fluxes, and Bruises by Falls, Worms.

Angelica is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth and attenuateth, digesteth and procureth Sweat, and is good against Poison, Plague, Cold, Wind, Cough of the Lungs, Strangury, Short-windedness, Stoppings of the Liver and Spleen, Biting of mad Dogs, Ulcers, and old Pains.

Alexander or *Wild Parsley*, the Seeds and Roots are less hot and dry than the Garden Parsley; they cleanse and make thin, being hot and dry in the third degree. They are good to consume Wind, provoke Urine, and are good for the Strangury, and open the Obstructions of the Liver.

Amara Dulcis, which is *Woody Nightshade*, the Fruit and Leaves of it are in Temperature hot and dry, and cleansing and wasting away; it is good to remove Witchcraft, ty'd about the Necks of Cattel, and is good to remove the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Difficulty of breathing, Bruises by Falls, congealed Blood, Dropsy, Yellow.

Water-Agrimony is hot and dry in the second degree, it is good to scour and open, it maketh thin thick and gross Humours, and expels and drives them forth by Urine, and therefore is good for the Dropsy; it opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, kills Worms, Itch, Scabs, Flies and Wasps: it is good to strengthen the Lungs, and is good for a Cough and broken Wind in Cattel.

Alehoof or *Ground-Ivy* is hot and dry, and because it is bitter it scoureth and removeth Stoppings out of the Entrails: it is good for inward Wounds, Pains and Gripings by Wind, Choler, Spleen, Plague, Poison, old Pains in

the Joints, sore Mouth and Throat, Ulcers in the Privities, Itch, Scabs, Web in the Eyes, Redness, and Wateriness in them, and Deafness.

Amaranthus, which is call'd *Flower Gentle*, is good for the running of the Reins and inward Bleeding.

Garden Arrach, or *Orrach*, is moist in the second degree, and cold in the first; it is a Loosener of the Belly, and fortifieth the expulsive Faculty, and is good for Swellings of the Throat, being bruised and laid to it; and being taken inwardly, is good for the Yellows.

Wild Arrach, and stinking by Smell, is good given inwardly for the Farcin, and is good for any Disease of the Womb.

Avens, call'd *Coleworts* or *Herb-Bennet*, hath a drying and binding Faculty, with a certain salt Quality, whereby they cleanse; the Decoction of them looseneth the Belly, and is good for the Diseases of the Chest and Breast: it is good for inward Wounds, the Heart, a cold Brain, Obstructions, Cholick, Fluxes, Ruptures, Plague, Poison.

Agarick cometh of the *Larch-tree*, which is almost like a Pine-tree, and the Leaves and Bark are in Temperature like it, but not so strong. It purgeth away gross and phlegmatick Humours; it troubleth the Stomach, therefore Ginger is to be mix'd with it. It is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second: it is good against Short-windedness, Cough of the Lungs, Consumption, comforteth the Stomach, and is good against Worms.

Agnus Castus, the Leaves and Roots of it are hot and dry in the third degree, they are of very thin parts, and waste and consume Wind.

B.

BALM is hot and dry in the second degree, and it mundifieth and cleanseth, it chears up the Heart, opens Obstructions of the Brain, and is a Remedy against the stinging or biting of any venomous Beast, mad Dogs, the Bloody-Flux, Surfeit, Short-windedness.

The *Barberry-Bush*, the Leaves and Berries are cold and dry in the second degree, and as *Galen* affirmeth, are of thin parts, and have a certain cutting Quality; they are good to stop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes. The inner Rind of the Tree is good to purge the Body of cholerick Humours, and is good for Agues, Scabs, Itch, Tetters, Yellows, Boils, Scalding, and the Farcin.

Garden.

Garden-Basil is hot in the second degree, but it hath adjoined with it a superfluous Moisture, and therefore not very good to be taken inwardly; but being apply'd outwardly to the stinging of any venomous Beast, Wasps or Hornets, it taketh away the Venom.

Wild Basil, the Seeds are hot and dry.

Basil Valerian is dry in the second degree.

Bayberries are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of Rheums, Shortness of Wind, especially for any Disease of the Lungs; they are good against Poison, Consumptions, Phlegm, helpeth Tiredness, Cramps, Stone, stopping of the Liver, the Yellows and Dropsy, and provoke Urine.

Bdellium is a Gum that is brought out of *Arabia* and the Holy Land, and is hot and dry; it softeneth and draweth away Moisture, and is good for all manner of hard Swellings whatsoever; it is most excellent for Mixture with a Poul-tice, against Hardness and Knots in the Sinews, and being drunk, breaks the Stone, and expels Urine.

Beans are moderately cold and dry, and are very windy.

Ladies Bedstraw is good for the Stone, and stays inward and outward Bleeding.

White Beets are in Moisture and Heat temperate, and are Looseners of the Belly, and are of a cleansing Quality, and provoke Urine.

Red Beets are of a binding Quality, and therefore good to stop the Bloody-Flux.

Water-Betony is hot and dry, and is good for Ulcers and Bruises.

Wild Running Betony, smelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third degree: it bindeth Wounds and conglutina-teth, and is good for Diseases of the Liver, for the Worms, old Sores and Wounds, and is commonly call'd Centaury.

Beech-Tree, the Leaves of it do cool, and the Kernels of the Nut are somewhat moist: the Leaves are good for hot Swellings, and the Water that is found in the hollow places of it, will cure Man or Beast of any Scurf, Scab, or run-ning Tetters, anointed therewith.

Blites are of a cold moist Temperature, and are good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Bilberries, call'd by some *Whorts* and *Whortle-berries*, are cold, even in the latter end of the second degree, and dry also, and are of a binding Quality: there are two sorts of them, a black and a red; the black are good for hot Agues,

Agues, and to cool the Heat of the Liver and Stomach, and do bind the Belly; the red are more binding, and stay any Fluxes of Blood whatsoever, used outwardly or taken inwardly.

Byfoil or *Tway-blade* is often used for Wounds both green and old, and to conglutinate and knit Ruptures.

Bitumen is the Fatness of the Earth swimming above the Water, which cast upon the shore condensates and becomes hard, and resembles dry Pitch: it discusses, mollifies, glutinates and defends from Inflammation; it takes away gross Humours in all parts of the Body, and cures the Weakness of the Sinews, Palsy, and Diseases of the Arteries from a cold Cause.

Birch-tree, the Juice of the Leaves is good to wash a sore Mouth or Throat, and is good to break the Stone in the Kidneys or Bladder.

Birds-foot, all the kinds of them are of a drying Quality, and therefore very good to be used in Wound-drinks, and to be apply'd outwardly for the same purpose; but the paler-flower'd *Birds-foot* is good to break the Stone in the Back and Kidneys, and helpeth the Rupture, taken inwardly.

Bishops-weed is hot and dry in the third degree, of a bitter taste, and something sharp withal; it provokes Lust, causeth Urine, is good for the Wind, and for the biting of venomous Beasts.

Bistort or *Snakeweed* is cold and dry in the third degree, the Leaves and Roots are excellent good to resist Poison or Plague, and are good for all manner of Fluxes of Blood whatsoever, and stay a Lask; are good for the Yellows, Ruptures or Burstness, and staling of Blood.

One-Blade is a very cordial Herb, and will cause Sweat, and is sovereign against the Plague, by expelling the Poison; and is an excellent Wound-Herb for green and old Wounds and Sinews cut.

The *Bramble* or *Black-Bush*, the Flowers and Leaves of the unripe Fruit do very much bind and dry, and are good for all kind of Fluxes: the Buds, Leaves, and Branches of it, while they are green, are of good use in Ulcers and putrid Sores; the Root is good against the Stone in the Reins or Kidneys; the Leaves of them are good for sore Mouths and Throats, or Quinsy; the Powder of the dry'd Leaves firew'd on Cankers does wonderfully heal them.

Burrage and *Bugloss* is in a mean betwixt hot and cold; the Leaves and Roots are good against pestilential Fevers, Poison of venomous Beasts, Yellows, Itch, Tettars, Worms, Weakness, Corruption, Cough, sore Mouth or Throat.

Bluebottle is naturally cold, dry and binding; the Powder of the dried Leaves is good taken inwardly for broken Veins, and given with Plantain-Water expelleth Poison or the Plague; the Juice of it is good to fodder green Wounds together, and is good to heal Sores in the Mouth; and the Juice of the Leaves dropped into the Eyes, taketh away the Inflammation of them.

Brank-ursin, *Bears-breech* and *Acanthus*, is betwixt hot and cold, being somewhat moist, with a mollifying and digesting Quality, as are those of the Mallow, and are good to put in Glisters to loosen the Belly; the Decoction taken inwardly is good for the Bloody-Flux and Burstness; and is good for Hectick Fevers; or applied made up in a Poultice, unites broken Bones, and strengthens the Joints that have been put out, and is an excellent Remedy for Burnings by Fire.

White Briony is hot and dry in all parts in the third degree, both the white and the black are furious Martial Plants, and purge the Belly with great Violence, and therefore you are to correct it; and then it is very good for all manner of Grievs in the Head, as also for the Joints and Sinews, Cramps and Convulsions, Dropsy, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stone.

Brooklime or *Water-Pimpernel* is a hot and biting martial Plant and is of the same nature as Water-Cresses, and is good to cleanse the Blood, provokes Urine and breaks the Stone.

Butchers-broom is hot in the second and dry in the first, and is of a cleansing nature; it openeth Obstructions, provoketh Urine, expelleth Gravel and Stone, and is good for the Strangury, Yellows and Pain in the Head.

Broom and *Broom-rape*, the Twigs, Flowers and Seed of it are hot and dry in the second degree, they are of a thin Essence, and are of force to cleanse and open, and especially the Seed which is drier, and not so full of superfluous Moisture; it is good for the Dropsy, Cleanser of the Reins, Kidneys, and Bladder from the Gravel and Stone.

Bucks-horn Plantain is of a drying binding Quality, it is good against Poison, Stone in the Reins and Kidneys, stoppeth a Lask, and is good for a bloody Urine and bloody Flux.

Bucks-

Bucks-horn, it is called Harts-horn, Herb-Ivy, Wort-Cresses, or Swine-Cresses, their Virtues are the same with Bucks-horn Plantain.

Bugle is of a mean Temperature, and is good taken inwardly to dissolve congealed Blood that is occasioned by Bruises or Falls, and is effectual in all Wound-Drinks; it is good for Fistula's, Gangreens, the Leaves of it being bruised and applied to them.

Burnet is a Drier and a Binder, yet it is meanly cool, it is a most precious Herb little inferiour to Betony; it stancheth bleeding as well inwardly as outwardly, and is good to stay the Lask and Bloody-Flux; it is good for all old Ulcers or running Cankers and moist Sores, to be used either by Juice or Decoction of the Herb or Root; the Seed is also good for the same purposes aforesaid.

The *Butter-bur* or *Petasitis* is hot and dry in the second degree, and of thin parts; the Root is good against the Plague and pestilential Fevers, by provoking Sweat; the Powder of the Root given in Wine is good to resist the Force of Poison: it is good for Wheezing and Difficulty of breathing; kills flat and broad Worms.

Bran is hot and dry, and dissolveth very much.

Burdock is dry and wasting, the Root is something hot, the Leaves are cooling, and moderately drying, and are good for old Ulcers and Sores; the Juice of the Leaves or Roots are good against the Biting of any venomous Beast, the Seed of it is most excellent to provoke Urine, being beaten to powder, and drank in White-Wine or Ale; and remedieth the Pains in the Bladder: it is good for Burnings and Cankers.

Bur-reeds are cold and dry of Complexion.

Vipers Bugloss, all the kinds of them are cold and dry of Complexion.

Sea bind-weed is hot and dry in the second degree.

Bearsfoot or *black Hellebore* is hotter in taste than the white, and is in like manner hot and dry in the third degree: it is safer to be taken, being purified by the Art of the Alchymist, than given raw. The Roots are good against all melancholy Diseases, as Quartan Agues and Madness: it is good for the Falling-Sickness, Leprosy, Yellows, Pains in the Hip. The Root beaten to powder, and strewed upon Ulcers or putrefied Sores, consumes the dead Flesh, and instantly heals them. It will help Gangreens in the beginning, twenty Grains is a sufficient Dose for

for one time, and let it be corrected with half so much Cinnamon. The Root boiled in Vinegar is excellent good against Scabs, Mange and Leprosy, a piece of it being put into a Hole made in the Ear of a Beast troubled with a Cough, or that hath taken any Poison, and taken out in twenty four Hours, helpeth them; and is very good also to rowel Cattel withal that have the Gargel, and also for many other Uses

Baldmony or *Feltwort*, the Roots are hot, cleansing and scouring; some say it likewise bindeth withal.

Balsam is hot and dry in the second degree, and is good for new and green Wounds.

Bishops-weed, *Herb-William*, *Ameos*, the Seed is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree; it is given against the biting of any venomous Beast; it causeth Urine, it is good against Poison, the Plague and all pestilential Fevers.

Sweet-Briar or *Eglantine-Balls* are binding, and are good for Bloody-Fluxes; and are good to stop a Lask or Looseness.

Wild-Briar Balls are great Binders, and are good to stop a Lask and Bloody-Flux, and for staling of Blood, and are great Driers up of evil Humours.

Buck-thorn or *Laxative Ram*, the Berries as they are in taste bitter, so they are binding, and are also hot and dry in the second degree, and do purge thick Phlegm and cholerick Humours.

The *Box-tree* is of a binding Quality, and is good against the biting of mad Dogs.

Biacca is cold and dry in the second degree; it closeth things opened, it softens Hardness, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all Excretions.

Brimstone is hot and dry in the third degree, draweth and disperseth Humours, killeth the Itch given inwardly, and outwardly applied, it is good for Coughs and rotten Phlegm: it is good likewise for the Worms, being mixed with a little Salt in his Provender; it helps Lethargies snuffed up the Nose, being beaten to powder. The Flower of it is best, used for any inward Use.

Bole-Armoniack is a certain red Earth, which is cold and dry, which draweth and driveth back evil Humours, and is also an excellent Defence against Fluxes of Blood, and all manner of bleeding whatsoever, either taken inwardly, or outwardly applied.

Brine

Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same nature as Salt is; it is good given inwardly to kill Worms, or applied outwardly to dry Humours, and takes away Swellings.

C.

ALL *Cabbages* and *Coleworts* have a drying and binding Faculty, with a certain salt Quality, whereby they cleanse; and being boiled in Broth, open the Belly, but the second Decoction binds. The Juice of them drank is good against the Poison of venomous Beasts; they are good against a Consumption, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, Swellings, Sores and Scabs, and the Juice being dropped into the Eyes with Honey is good to clear them.

The *Sea-Colewort* is of a biting Quality; the first Decoction looseth and is more cleansing than the other kind; the Seed bruised and drank killeth Worms, the Juice of them cleanseth and healeth Sores, dissolveth Swellings, and taketh away Inflammations.

Calamint or *Mountain-Mint* is of a fervent Taste and biting hot, and of a thin Substance, and dry after a sort in the third degree; it wasteth away thin Humours, cuts and maketh thick Humours thin; it is good for Ruptures, Convulsions, Cramps, Shortness of Breath, Torments and Pains of the Stomach, helpeth Yellows, killeth Worms-given with Salt and Treacle, killeth Scabs either inwardly taken or outwardly applied, and killeth the Worms in the Ears, the Juice being dropped therein.

Camomile is hot and dry in the second degree, and of thin parts, and heateth moderately, and drieth little; it mollifieth and dissolveth all Griets, and especially of the Liver; it is good for Swellings, Cholick, Stone, Pains in the Belly, Cold, Yellows, Dropsy and Cramps.

Water-Caltrops are of a cold Nature, and consist of a moist Essence; being made into a Poultice, are good for Inflammations, Swellings, Cankers, sore Mouths and Throats; they are good for the Farcin and Stone, especially the Nuts being dried, they resist Poison, and the biting of venomous Beasts.

Wild Champions are referred to those of the Garden, they are good to stay inward bleeding, taken inwardly; and outwardly they do the like to Wounds; they expel Urine and Gravel, and purge the Body of cholerick Humours, and are good against the Poison of venomous Beasts,
the

the Plague, &c. and are good for all Sores, Fistulaes and Cankers, to cleanse and heal them.

Cardus Benedictus is good for Pains in the Head, the Yellows and other Infirmities of the Gall, cleanseth the Blood, helpeth the Itch, biting of mad Dogs, and other venomous Beasts, and is good for Agues.

Wild Carrots are hot and dry in the second degree, expel Wind, provoke Urine and cause Lust; they are good for the Dropsy, Cholick, Stone, for running Sores and Ulcers: the Seed of them worketh the same effects as the Roots do.

Caraway-seeds are hot and dry in the third degree, have a moderate sharp Quality, whereby they break Wind, provoke Urine; the Seeds are good for Colds in the Head and Stomach.

Celandine is hot and dry in the third degree, the Juice of it put into the Eyes cleareth them from Films and Cloudiness, which darkneth the Sight; it is good in old filthy creeping Ulcers, to stay their Malignity of fretting and running, and to cause them to heal the more speedily: It heals also Tettars, Ring-worms, and spreading Cankers, the Powder of it mixed with Brimstone killeth the Mange; it is good taken inwardly for the Yellows, and openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall.

The lesser *Celandine*, called *Pilewort*, is hot and dry, and more biting and hotter than the greater, and cometh nearest in faculty to the Crow-foot; it is good taken inwardly for the Farcin, and to be applied outwardly for the same Disease.

The ordinary *Centaur* purgeth cholerick and gross Humours, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, helpeth the Yellows, killeth Worms, is good for Cramps and Convulsions, against venomous Beasts, it cleanseth foul Ulcers, and killeth spreading Scabs: all the *Centaur*'s are much of one and the same nature, only take this Observation, That in Diseases of Blood use the red; if of Choler, use the yellow; but if of Phlegm or Water, the white is best.

Winter-Cherries, the Leaves are cool, and are used in Inflammations, but not opening as the Berries and Fruit are, which draw down the Urine, and expel the Gravel and Stone out of the Reins, Kidneys and Bladder; it is also good for all Imposthumes in them, likewise to cleanse them, and is good for bloody and foul Urine.

Chervil is of temperate Heat and moderate Driness, but
not

not so much as the Parsley ; it warms the Stomach, and is good to dissolve congealed Blood in the Body ; it is good for the Stone : the wild Chervil applied, dissolveth Swellings in any part of the Body.

Sweet Chervil or *sweet Cicely*, the Roots warm the Stomach oppressed with Wind and Phlegm, and are good for the Consumption of the Lungs : it is good against the Plague, the Juice of it is good to heal Ulcers.

Chest-nut-tree, the Fruit is dry and binding, and is neither hot nor cold, but in a mean between both ; the inner Rind that covereth the Nut is of so binding a quality, that it will stop any Lask or Looseness whatsoever, and likewise the Bloody-Flux.

Earth Chest-nuts are hot and dry in quality, and also binding in quality, but the Seed is hotter ; they provoke Lust exceedingly, the Seed provoketh Urine.

Chickweed is cold and moist, and of a waterish substance, it cooleth without binding, and is good for all Swellings and Imposthumes whatsoever, Itch, Scabs, Cramps, and is good for Ulcers and Sores in the privy Parts.

Bastard Chickweed is like to the other in Vertue and Operation.

Cinquefoil, or *Five-leaved Grass*, the Roots of it are dry in the third degree, and without biting, for they have very little heat and sharpness. It is good given inwardly for Agues, and to cool the Heat of Pestilential Fevers ; the Juice of it drank for certain days together, cureth the Quinsy and Yellows. It is good for the Falling-Sickness, Cough of the Lungs ; the Roots boiled in Vinegar are good for all hard Swellings, Knots and Kernels, and Lumps growing in any part of the Flesh, and all Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire, and all sorts of running and foul Scabs ; and are good for Ruptures or Burstings used with other things, taken inwardly or outwardly applied ; and are good likewise to stay bleeding of Wounds, inwardly taken or outwardly applied.

Garden Clary, or more properly *Clear-Eye*, is hot and dry in the third degree ; the Seed put into the Eyes doth clear them of Motes, and takes the red Spots out of them. It is good for Swellings, and draweth forth Splinters and Thorns out of the Flesh ; the Powder of the Root put up the Nose purgeth the Head and Brain of much Rheum and Corruption : It is a great strengthner in the Back, the Juice of it drank in Ale or Beer expelleth the Secundine.

Wild Clary is hotter and drier than the *Garden Clary*; the Seeds provoke Lust, warm the Stomach, scatter congealed Blood in any part of the Body, and help Dimness of Sight, being put into the Eye, and there let it remain till it drop out of it self, and it will cleanse the Eyes from putrefied Matter, and by often using of it will take off a Flim.

Clivers or *Goose-grass* is moderately hot and dry, and somewhat of thin parts; it is good for the biting of any venomous Beast, for the Yellows; it stayeth Lasks, Bloody-Fluxes and bleeding Wounds, being bruised and laid to them, as also closes up green Wounds: the Powder of the Herb dried and strewed upon old filthy Ulcers helpeth them, and being boiled with Hog's-grease, helpeth all hard Swellings about the Throat, being anointed therewith. It is a great Cleanser of the Blood, and Strengthner of the Liver.

Clown's Wound-wort is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, and is a most excellent Wound-herb for all green Wounds, and is a Stancher of Blood, and will dry up Fluxes and Humours in old fretting Ulcers and Cankers that hinder the healing of them: A Syrup made of the Juice of it is inferior to none for inward Wounds, Ruptures of Veins, and Pissing of Blood.

Cock's-head, *red Fitching* or *Medick Fitch*, the green Leaves bruised and laid as a Plaster disperseth Knots or Kernels in the Flesh, and being dried and taken in Wine helpeth the Strangury, and being anointed with it provoketh Sweat; it is a good Food for Cattel to make them give good store of Milk, so is *Alder* and *Medick Fitch*.

Columbines are thought to be temperate, between Heat and Moisture; the Leaves are used in Lotions for sore Mouths and Throats; the Seed openeth the Obstruction of the Liver, and is good for the Yellows.

Colts-foot, the Leaves of it while it is green have a drying Quality, and are somewhat cold, but the dried Leaves are not so biting; they are good for Wheezings and Short-windedness, Agues, Inflammations and Swellings, *St. Anthony's Fire* and Burnings.

Comfrey is cold and dry, and of an earthly Quality; the Use of this is the same with *Clown's Wound-wort*: the great *Comfrey* helpeth a bloody Urine, and is good for all inward Wounds, Bruises, Hurts and Ulcers of the Lungs, is good for the falling or shedding of the Seed, and is good made into an Ointment for all Pains and old Aches.

Coral-wort cleanseth the Bladder, and provoketh Urine,
O expels

expels the Gravel and Stone, and easeth Pains in the Sides and Bowels; it is good for inward Wounds, especially for those in the Breast and Lungs, and is good for outward Wounds made up into an Ointment; it stops Fluxes, and is good to dry up the watry Humour that is in Ulcers, that hinders their Cure.

Red Coral bindeth and meanly cooleth, and is very effectual against Issues of Blood, and easeth the difficulty of staling, and is good for the Falling-Sickness.

Costmary, or *Alecost*, or *Balsam-herb*, is hot and dry in the second degree, and provoketh Urine as well as Maudlin; it purgeth Choler and Phlegm, and is good for Agues, and dries up all thin Rheums from the Head and Stomach.

Cud-weed or *Cotton-weed*, their kinds are of a binding and drying Quality, and are good for Defluxions of Rheums from the Head, and to stay all Fluxes of Blood whatsoever: it helpeth the Bloody-Flux, and is good for inward and outward Wounds, Hurts and Bruises, and is good for Burstness, the Worms, and old and filthy Ulcers.

Crabs-Claws are great strengthners of the Reins; they are good for St. *Anthony's* Fire, and all Inflammations and Swellings in Wounds; and an Ointment made of them is good to heal them: it is a most excellent thing for bruised Kidneys, and upon that account pissing Blood.

Winter-Cresses are hot and dry in the second degree, the Seed causeth Urine, and drives forth Gravel, and helps the Strangury; the Juice of them made up into the form of an Ointment, with Wax, Oil and Turpentine, cleanseth foul Ulcers.

Bank-Cresses, the Seeds are of a fiery Temperature, and do extenuate and make thin; they strengthen the Brain, and are little inferiour to Mustard-Seed, and are good to stay those Rheums that fall down from the Head upon the Lungs. They are good likewise for the Yellows, and the Pain in the Hip.

Sciatica-Cresses are hot and dry in the fourth degree, like to Garden-Cresses both in Smell and Taste; they are good to put into a Poultrice to help all old Pains and Griefs in the Hips or Joints, and other parts of the Body that are hard to be cured.

Garden-Cresses are sharp and biting, and therefore they are hot and dry, whilst they are young and tender: the Seeds are much more biting than the Herb, and are hot and dry

dry almost in the fourth degree, and are good for Pains in the Hip, and hard Swellings and Inflammations.

Dock-Cresses are of nature hot, and somewhat abster-
sive and cleansing, the Juice of them is good for ulcerated
Sores.

Water-Cresses are hot and dry, they cleanse the Blood and
Humours, serve in all other uses in which Brooklime is avail-
able; as to break the Stone, and to provoke Urine, and
cleanse Ulcers.

Cross-wort is of a binding and drying Quality, and is a
most excellent Wound-herb, both inwardly taken and out-
wardly applied; it sendeth forth Phlegm out of the Stomach,
and is good for Ruptures and Burstness.

Crow-foot is a fiery hot Herb not fit to be given inwardly
unless it be corrected: it will draw a Blister as well as
Cantharides.

Cuckow-paint, or *Wake-Robin*, is hot and dry in the third
degree, it is good given against the Plague or Poison; being
mixed with Vinegar, it is good for Short-windedness and
Cough of the Lungs, it is good to provoke Urine, for the
Itch, Ulcers, and to take away the Pin and Web in the
Eye.

Calamus is of a hot heating Quality, saith *Dioscorides*;
but *Galen* and *Pliny* affirm, that it has thin and subtile parts
both hot and dry; it provoketh Urine, expelleth Poison, and
is good for inward Bruises, and the Juice of it strained with
Honey taketh away the Dimness of the Eyes.

Corneflag is of force to waste, consume and dry, as also
of a subtile and drying Quality; being stamped with Frank-
incense and Wine: it draweth forth Splinters out of the
Flesh: it is likewise good for hard Swellings.

Cowslips of *Jerusalem* are of the Temperature of great
Comfrey, and are somewhat more drying and binding.

Calloquintida is hot and dry in the latter end of the second
degree, and therefore it purgeth, cleanseth and openeth,
and performeth all those things that bitter things do; but
that the strong quality that it hath, is, as *Galen* saith, of
more force than all the rest of the Operations, therefore it
is not rashly to be used, but upon some desperate Diseases.

Crane's-bill is cold and somewhat dry, with some binding
Quality; it hath power to join and sodder together, and is
therefore good for Burstness and broken Bones.

The Seed of *Garden Cummin* is hot and dry in the third
degree, and hath also a binding Quality, and is good for the
Wind,

Wind, the Chest and Lungs, and all raw Humours, and to put into Plasters and Poultices for Swellings.

The Seed of *Cockle* is hot and dry in the latter end of the second degree, and is good against the Yellows.

Camock is hot in the third degree, it cutteth and maketh thin; the Bark of the Root given in White-Wine causeth Urine, breaketh the Stone, and drives it forth.

Cyprus-Roots, long and round, are of a hot nature; the Ashes of them burnt is good for Ulcers in the Mouth, Cankers, &c.

Cypress, the Fruit and Leaves are dry in the third degree and astringent. The Nut being stamp'd and drunk in Wine, stoppeth the Lask and Bloody-Flux.

Cassia Fistula or *Pudding-Pipe*, the Pulp is moist in the latter end of the third degree, it gently purgeth cholerick Humours and slimy Phlegm.

Cochineal is given alone, and mix'd with other things in malignant Diseases, as pestilential Fevers and the like, and is a great Cordial.

Cinnamon hath power to warm, and is of thin parts; it is also hot, dry, and astringent; it breaketh Wind, provoketh Urine, and is good against the fretting Pains of the Guts and Entrails, proceeding of cold Causes.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, they strengthen the Stomach, Liver and Heart, provoke Urine, the Oil of them taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye.

China-Roots are thought to be moderately hot and dry; they strengthen the Liver, remove the Dropsy, cure malignant Ulcers and Scabs, and are good in a Consumption, and for the Farcin.

Copperas is of two sorts, green and white; they are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger: they are great Dryers up of evil Humours, being outwardly apply'd they kill likewise Scurfs and Scabs.

Costus hath a heating and attenuating Quality, it is good to help Strains, Convulsions and Cramps, killeth Worms, and is good against the biting of Vipers, and against Windiness in the Stomach.

Calafonia or *Colofonia* doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things that are separated.

Camphora is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree, and preserveth the Body from Putrefaction, and bindeth Humours; it is good against Poison, Plague, and Fevers.

Cantha-

Cantharides are certain *Spanish* Flies which are hot and dry in the third degree; they increase Lust taken inwardly, and being apply'd outwardly to any part of the Body, they will raise Blisters.

Cardamomum is hot, and extenuateth Humours; and being mix'd with Vinegar, killeth Scabs.

Castoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cerusa is a white Ointment made of Oil and white Lead; it is cold and dry in the second degree, and is a great Healer and Sheller of Scabs.

Cito or *Cisto* is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons or *Cithrons* are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Comfrey is cold, and conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

Castro or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot and healeth Ulcers.

Cane-Reed is hot and dry in the third degree.

D.

D*Aisies* are cold and moist, being moist in the end of the second degree, and cold in the beginning of the same. They are good for Wounds in the Breast, and therefore fitting to be made into Oils, Ointments, and Plasters, as also into Syrups. The great and wild ones are very good Wound-Herbs, and the distill'd Water of them both is good to refresh the inward Parts, and to allay the Heat of Choler. They are good for Ulcers, Swellings, Kernels, Bruises by Falls, Ruptures, Burstings, and all Inflammations.

Dandelyon, vulgarly call'd *Piss-a-beds*, is like in Temperature with Succory, that is to say, of wild Endive; it is cold, but it drieth more, and doth withal cleanse and open, by reason of the biting Quality it hath, and therefore is good for the Obstructions of the Liver, Gall, Spleen and Yellows. The distilled Water of it is good to allay the Heat of pestilential Fevers, and to wash Sores.

Darnel is hot in the third degree, red Darnel drieth with sharpness. The Meal of it is good to stay Gangrenes, Cankers, and putrid Sores; it killeth Ringworms and foul Scabs. If it be used with Salt and Radish-Roots, with Brimstone and Vinegar, it dissolveth Knots and Kernels, and being boiled with Wine, Pigeons Dung and Linseed, dissolveth those that are hard to be dissolved. Darnel-Meal draweth

forth Splinters and broken Bones, being apply'd as a Poultice: the red Darnel boiled in Wine stayeth the Lask and Bloody-Flux, and all other Fluxes of Blood.

Dill is hot in the end of the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the same, or in the end of the first degree: it provoketh Urine, and is good against Windiness; it is good to ease Swellings and Pains.

Devils-bit is somewhat bitter, and is of a hot and dry Temperature, and that in the latter end of the second degree: it is good against the Plague and all pestilential Diseases, as Poisons, Fevers, and biting of venomous Beasts; it is good for Bruises either inward or outward, to expel Wind, and drive forth Worms. The distill'd Water of it is good for green Wounds, old Sores, and cleanseth the Body inwardly, and the Seed outwardly, from Sores, Scurfe and Itches.

Dock, all of them are generally cold a little, and moderately, and some more. They do all of them dry, but not after one manner, yet some are of opinion that they are dry in the third degree. The red Dock cleanseth the Liver; but the yellow is best to take when the Blood is afflicted with Choler. The Seeds of most of the kinds do stay Lasks and Fluxes of all sorts; they are good for the Itch and breaking out of the Skin, if it be bathed therewith.

Dodder is of the nature of the Herb on which it groweth, is more dry than hot, and that in the second degree; it is a Purger of Choler and Phlegm from the Head, Obstructions of the Liver, Gall and Yellows.

Dogs-Grass, *Quich-Grass*, or *Couch-Grass*, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, stopping of Urine, and easeth Pains of the Belly, Inflammations, and wasteth the Stones in the Bladder, and Ulcers thereof. Also being boiled, the Seed doth more provoke Urine, and stayeth the Lask; it is a good Remedy against all Diseases coming of Stoppage.

Doves-foot or *Cranes-bill* is cold and somewhat dry, with some binding Quality; it is good for the Wind-Cholick and Stone: the Decoction thereof in Wine is a good Wound-Drink for inward Wounds, Hurts or Bruises, and is good to cleanse and heal outward Sores, Ulcers, Fistulaes and green Wounds, and is excellent for Ruptures.

Ducks-meat is cold and moist in a sort in the second degree; it is good for Inflammations and St. Anthony's Fire.

Dragons is under *Mars*, and therefore the best way to use it is after it is distilled; and then the Water of it cleanseth all internal parts of the Body, and so it doth the external from Scurf and Scabs; and being dropt into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web, and is good against Pestilence and Poison.

Dogs-tooth is of a very hot Temperament, and of an excrementitious nature.

The Roots of all the *Daffodils* are hot and dry in the third degree.

Dyers-weed is hot and dry of Temperature: the Root, as also the whole Herb, heats and dries in the third degree; it cuts, attenuateth, opens, and digests; it is good for the biting of venomous Beasts and Poison, taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly.

Bastard-Dittany is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a wasting, attenuating, and opening Quality, and is good for the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder.

Dropwort or *Filipendula* it hot and dry in the third degree, opening, cleansing, and a little binding. All the kinds of them have the same Faculty, unless it be the pernicious Dropwort: They are good against Pains in the Bladder, and break the Stone.

E.

E*lder* is of a drying Quality, gluing and moderately digesting; it purgeth Choler and Phlegm (both the inward Rind and the Berries) and the Dropsy. The Bark of the Root worketh more powerfully than either of them; it is good against the biting of any venomous Beasts, the Juice of it assuageth the hot Inflammations of the Eyes, and all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, being laid to the grieved place.

Dwarf-Elder, call'd *Danewort* and *Wallwort*; it is of Temperature hot and dry in the third degree: it doth waste and consume by purging of Choler, and Phlegm, and Water, and is more powerful than the common Elder, and hath all the Properties of it.

The *Elm-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it is moderately hot, with a cleansing Faculty; the Leaves bruised and applied heal green Wounds, are good to cure a Scurf, Ruptures, broken Bones, Swellings and Burnings.

Endive and *Succory* are cold and dry in the third degree, and withal somewhat binding; they are fine cooling and cleansing

cleansing Plants. The Garden *Endive* is colder, and not so dry and cleansing: the Juice or the Water of it is good to cool the excessive Heat of the Stomach and Liver, or any Inflammation in any part of the Body; and being applied outwardly, it is good for Ulcers, hard Swellings, and pestilential Sores.

Elecampane is hot and dry in the third degree, especially when it is dry; for being green and full of Juice, it is full of superfluous Moisture, which somewhat abateth the Heat and dry Quality thereof. It is good for Colds and Coughs, and to warm a cold Stomach, Wind, Short-windedness, Wheezing, Stone in the Bladder, resisteth Poison, the Plague, Cramps, Convulsions, Worms, Cankers, Fistulaes.

Ensula, or *Devil's-Milk*, is hot, sharp, and drying, and draws Choler from the Joints.

Eringo or *Sea-holly* breedeth Seed exceedingly, and is hot and moist; it is good for the Yellows, Dropsy, Cholick, provoketh Urine, expelleth the Stone: the Roots bruised and applied outwardly are good for the Farcin, or taken inwardly for the same Disease. It is good for broken Bones, and to draw Thorns out of the Flesh; the Juice dropped into the Ears helpeth the Imposthumes in them, the distilled Water of it is good for all the Purposes aforesaid.

Eyebright is hot and dry, but yet more hot than dry; the Juice or the Water of it is good to help all Infirmities of the Eyes that cause Dimness.

Elusa is a Herb like a Sponge, and is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth and cleanseth exceedingly, and of some is call'd Wolf's-Milk.

Excursion is that which we call *Oxieration*, it is a certain Composition of *Aceto* and *Water*, and is good to allay Swellings and Tumours.

Eggs, the Whites are cold and the Yolks are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate. The Shells beaten to powder, and given in Beer or Ale, is very good to expel the Stone out of the Bladder.

F.

FERN, both the kinds of them, Male and Female, are hot and dry, and somewhat binding, their Virtues are both alike; the Roots of them are good to kill Worms, the green Leaves purge the Belly of cholerick Humours. An Ointment made of the Roots, bruised with Hog's-grease, is good for the Wounds in the Flesh; the Powder of them is good to dry up Moistures in malignant Ulcers.

The

The Nature, &c. of most Simples. 201

The *Water-Fern* or *Osmond-Royal* is hot and dry, but lesser than the former, and hath all the Virtues the other hath, but more effectually, and is good for Wounds or Bruises, and the like. The Decoction thereof being drunk or boiled in an Ointment or Oil, as a Balsam or Balm, is very good for Bruises, or Bones broken and out of joint; it is good for the Cholick, for Ruptures. The Decoction of the Root in Wine provoketh Urine exceedingly, and cleanseth the Bladder and Passages thereof.

Feverfew heateth, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; it expelleth the Secundine, being drunk. It is good for a Cough, and to cleanse the Reins of the Bladder, and to expel the Stone out of it. It purgeth Phlegm and Choler, is good for the Head-Ach and Wind-Cholick, and performeth all that bitter things can do.

Fennel-seed is hot in the third degree, and dry in the first; it openeth Obstructions and Stoppings of the Bladder, and maketh the Stone to void by Urine. It is good for all manner of gross Humours, and for the Liver and Lungs; and is of the same nature as Anniseeds are.

Sow-Fennel, or *Hogs-Fennel*, the kinds of the Herbs, especially the yellow Sap of the Root, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the third: it is good against Wind in the Belly and Stomach; it looseneth the Belly gently, and purgeth by Siege both Phlegm and Choler.

Fennel-Giant is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; it is astringent and binding, and good for the Bloody-Flux.

Filipendula or *Dropwort*, vid. *Dropwort*.

Green Figs serve to ripen Tumours, soften and consume hard Swellings, and are good for Purpiness, Coughs and Diseases of the Lungs. The Decoction of the Leaves (the place being wash'd with it) is a most excellent Remedy for the Leprosy, Scurf, Scabs, or Running Sores.

Fuss-balls do dry, and are good to lay to a gall'd Back.

The yellow *Water-Flag* or *Flower-de-luce*, and all the kinds of them, are very astringent, cooling and drying, and help all Lasks and Fluxes, whether of Blood or Humours. It helps all foul Ulcers, the Juice being apply'd to them.

Flax-weed or *Toad-Flax*, all the kinds of them are of the same Temperature with wild *Snap-Dragons*, whereof they are kinds. It provokes Urine, opens the Obstructions

tions of the Liver and Spleen, helpeth the Yellows, expelleth the Poison, driveth forth the dead Foal, and is good to cleanse foul and cankerous Ulcers and Fistulaes.

Fleawort, it is cold and dry; the fry'd Seed taken stayeth the Flux and Lask of the Belly. The Seed is good for hot Agues and burning Fevers and other Inflammations; it is good for the Diseases of the Breast and Lungs caused by Heat, as also for the Head-Ach and all hot Imposthumes and Breakings out of the Skin; it is good for old Pains in the Joints, &c.

Flixweed drieth without any manifest Sharpness of Heat; it is good for Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and for all Issues of Blood whatsoever; it is good for broken Bones to consolidate them together, it heals all Sores and putrefied Ulcers.

Flower-de-luce is hot and dry in the third degree; it purgeth Choler and tough Phlegm, helpeth the Yellows and Dropsy; it easeth the Pains in the Belly, and is good for the Liver and Spleen; it is good for Cramps, all manner of Poison, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Cholick, and is good to comfort all cold Joints and Sinews, and for Ulcers and Fistulaes.

Fluellin or *Lluellin* is of a binding Quality, and is good for hot Swellings, Wounds, Ulcers and Cankers, and to stop a Lask and Bloody-Flux.

Fox-Gloves, in that they are bitter, are hot and dry, with a certain cleansing Quality. The Juice of it is good to heal green Wounds and old Sores, to cleanse, dry, and heal them; it purgeth the Body of tough Phlegm, and is good to open Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, for the Farcin, and other Breakings out in the Skin.

Fumitory is cold and somewhat dry of Operation, and cleanseth by Urine. It is good for the Liver and Spleen, Yellows, Stavers, Plague, sore Mouths and Throat, and all manner of Breakings out in the Skin.

The *Furz-bush*, or *Fuzen-bushes*, are hot and dry of Complexion, and good to open Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen. The Seeds are good to cleanse the Reins from the Gravel or Stones, provoke Urine, and are good against the Yellows.

Frankincense hath the power to bind, saith *Dioscorides*; it is good for Wounds old and new, and also for Ulcers.

Flax or *Line*, the Seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth.

Fitches are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, and they do open and cleanse. See *Olibanum*.

Herb-Frankincense, the Seeds and Roots are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of a digesting, dissolving, and mundifying Quality.

Feltwort or *Baldmony*, the Roots are hot, cleansing, and scouring; some say it is likewise binding and of a bitter taste.

Fenugreek is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, and is a Loosener of the Body, and is good for Colds, and a Killer of Worms.

G.

G*entian Feltwort* or *Baldmony*, there are two sorts of them, and both under the Dominion of *Mars*: they both resist Poison and Pestilence, and strengthen the Stomach. The Powder of the dry'd Root is good against the biting of a mad Dog, or any other venomous Beast, opens Obstructions of the Liver: it is good taken inwardly against Bruises by Falls, provokes Urine exceedingly, is good for Cramps, it expectorates tough Phlegm, and kills Scabs, and all manner of fretting Sores and Ulcers, killeth Worms, is good for the Farcin and Yellowws taken inwardly. The Root made into the form of a Tent is good to open Sores, being put therein.

Garlick is very sharp, and hot and dry in the fourth degree; it causeth Urine, is good against the biting of a mad Dog, or any other venomous Creature, purgeth the Head from tough Phlegm, killeth Worms, helpeth the Lethargy, is a Preservative against the Plague, is good for foul Ulcers, breaketh Imposthumes and other Swellings, and for all those Diseases the Onion is also effectual: but they are better apply'd outwardly than received inwardly, because they have their Vices as well as their Virtues.

Clove-Gilliflowers are so temperate, that no Excess, neither in Heat, Cold, Dryness nor Moisture can be perceived in them; they are great Strengtheners both of the Brain and Heart, and are very good to be put into Cordials for hot pestilential Fevers, and expel Poison.

Stock-Gilliflowers are referred to the Wall-flower, altho in Virtue they are much inferiour.

Garden Germander is of thin parts, and hath a cutting Faculty; it is hot and dry almost in the third degree; it opens and cleanseth, for it opens the Obstructions of the Liver

Liver and Spleen, and Difficulty of Urine; it is good against Poison, Ulcers, Cramps, Agues, Falling-Sickness, Head-ach, Yellows and Worms.

Water-Germander is hot and dry, and hath a bitter taste, harsh, and earthy.

Stinking Gladwin is hot and dry in the third degree, it purgeth Choler and Phlegm; the Powder or Juice of it put into the Head draweth forth much Corruption, and being given inwardly, is good for Cramps. It is good for the Strangury, provoketh Urine. The Roots are very good in Wounds, and draw forth Splinters or Thorns out of the Flesh; boiled in Vinegar, they dissolve any hard Swelling or Tumour. The Juice of the Leaves and Roots heal the Mange, and all other running and spreading Scabs.

Golden-Rod is hot and dry in the second degree, and cleanseth with a certain Astriction or binding Quality, and is good for the Stone in the Reins and Kidneys; it is good taken for inward Bruises, and outwardly applied for outward ones. It stayeth bleeding in any part of the Body, and of Wounds also, the Fluxes of Humours, the Bloody-Flux, Ruptures. It is an excellent Wound-Herb, inferiour to none, either taken inwardly, or outwardly apply'd, and is good for all Sores and Ulcers whatsoever, whether they be in the Mouth or Throat.

Goutwort cures all manner of Pain in the Hip, or Joint-Aches.

Gromwel, the Seed of it is hot and dry in the second degree; it is good to break the Stone, and to void it out of the Reins and Bladder by Urine, and helpeth the Strangury.

Gum Armoniack outwardly apply'd dissolves hard Knots and Swellings in any part of the Body, and inwardly given cures hard Milts, and frees from Obstructions, moves Urine, and fetcheth forth Stones.

Winter-Green is a very good Wound-Herb, and is good taken inwardly, being bruited, for Ulcers in the Kidneys or Neck of the Bladder; it stayeth also Fluxes, whether of Blood or Humours, as the Lask, Bloody-Flux, bleeding Wounds, and taketh away Inflammations, and is good for foul Ulcers, Cankers, and Fistula's.

Groundsel hath mix'd Faculties; it cooleth and digesteth, it is a universal Medicine against Diseases coming from Heat, whatsoever they be; it is good against the Yellows, Falling-Sickness, provokes Urine, expels Gravel in the Reins and Kidneys, is good for Gripping in the Bowels and Cholick,
and

and dissolveth any hard Knobs and Kernels in the Body.

English Galangal hath a heating Quality, and some do reckon it to be hot and dry in the second degree. The greater Galangal Roots are hot and dry in the third degree, but the lesser are somewhat hotter. It is good for cold Grievs in the Stomach, strengthens the Brain, and comforteth the Sinews.

Ginger heateth and drieth in the third degree, and is good for the Stomach, answering the Effects and Qualities of Long Pepper.

Glass-wort is hot and dry, the Ashes of it are both drier and hotter, even to the fourth degree, and have a costick and burning Quality.

Green-weed or *base Broom* are hot and dry in the second degree; they are thought to be in Virtue equal with Broom, the Dyers use it very much to dye withal.

Galls are dry in the third and cold in the second: they cleanse and mundify, they keep back Rheums and such like Fluxes, and do dry up the same; and are good to stop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and the falling out of the Fundament.

Grains of Paradise are hot and dry in the third degree; they comfort the weak, cold and feeble Stomach, and help the Ague, Farcin and Falling Sickness.

Gum Lacke is hot in the second degree, and comforteth the Heart and Liver, and openeth Obstructions, expelleth Urine, and is good for the Dropsy and Yellowes, and expelleth the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder.

Fresh Grease is hot and moist in the first degree, and mollifieth, ripeneth and healeth Wounds, Imposthumes and Ulcers.

Galbanum is a Gum which is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softneth, stoppeth and draweth away evil Humours, and is good against Colds (the Fume taken up the Head) as also, for the Dizziness thereof.

H

H *Earts-Ease* is obscurely cold, but more evidently moist and of a fat and slimy Juice, like that of the Mallow, for which cause it moistneth and suppleth, but not so much as that: it is good for the Inflammations of the Lungs and Breast, Scabs and Itch.

Harts.

Harts-Tongue is of a binding drying Faculty, strengthens the Liver, and is good for the Lask and Bloody-Flux, and is good against the biting of Serpents.

Hawk-weed, all the kinds of them are somewhat dry, and somewhat binding, and good for the Heat of the Stomach, the Fits of the Ague, the Wind, provoke Urine, are good for the biting of venomous Beasts, the Dropsy, the Wind-Cholick, and are good to digest thin Phlegm from the Chest and Lungs: they are good for Ulcers, Burnings, Inflammations and St. *Anthony's Fire*, and being made into a Poullice, are good for Cramps and Pains in the Joints.

The *Hawthorn-Berries* are very binding, therefore are good to stop a Lask; the Berries dried and drank in White-Wine are very good against the Stone and Dropsy. The Seed bruised after it is cleared from the Down and drank, is good for the tormenting Pains of the Belly.

Hemp is hot, the Seed consumeth Wind: it is good for the Yellows, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, and is good for hot Inflammations. The Seed looseneth the Belly, strewed amongst a Horse's Provender, and allayeth the troublesome Humours of the Bowels.

Hedge-Hysop is drying, and is good outwardly applied to Pains in the Hips or Joints, and is good to cleanse old and filthy Ulcers.

Herb-Robert is good for the Stone, and to stay all inward Flowings of Blood, and is a great Healer of green Wounds, and is good for old Ulcers.

Herb True-love, or *One-Berry*, is exceeding cold, and the Leaves or Berries are good to expel Poison of all sorts, as also the Plague and Pestilence; are good for the Cholick, green Wounds, and to cleanse old and filthy Ulcers, and good to discuss all Swellings in any Part of the Body.

Horehound, the White and Black, are hot in the second, and dry in the third degree; it helpeth the Obstructions of the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good against Colds, Consumptions, Short-Windedness, an Expeller of Poison, and a Cleanser of old Sores and Ulcers, cleareth the Eyesight, and snuffed up the Nostrils, is good for the Yellows.

Horse-tail is of a binding Faculty, and doth moderately dry, and is good to cure Wounds, nay, tho the Sinews be cut asunder; and is good not only for all inward Ulcers of the Bladder, but all outward Sores, provoketh Urine, helpeth

helpeth the Stone and Strangury, and is good for all Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and pissing of Blood or bleeding at the Nose.

Housleek or *Sengreen* is of a cooling nature, and is good for all inward Heats as well as outward, as in the Eyes and other Parts of the Body, it cooleth all hot Inflammations, as *St. Anthony's Fire*, Scaldings, and Burnings, Cankers, Tettars, Ringworms, &c.

Hound's-tongue, but especially the Root, is cold and dry; is good for Coughs and Short-Windedness, the biting of mad Dogs, and is good for green Wounds, and is good inwardly for the *Farcin*.

Holly-halm or *Hulver-bush*, the Berries are hot and dry, and of thin parts, they expel Wind, they purge the Body of gross and phlegmatick Humours eaten not dried, but if they be dried and beaten to powder and eaten, they bind the Body, and stop Fluxes, and the Lask. The Bark of the Tree and Leaves are good in Fomentations for broken Bones and Members out of joint.

Heath-bush hath a digesting Faculty, the Flowers and Leaves are good to lay upon the biting of venomous Beasts, and the Bark and Leaves may be used for the same Causes as *Turmerick* is.

Harts-horn is dry, yet it strengtheneth very much, and expelleth Poison.

Honey is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth the Stomach and Entrails, stoppeth Humours and incarnateth Wounds, and cleanseth also the Reins and Bladder.

Hyacinths do little cleanse and bind; the Seeds are dry in the third degree, but the Roots are dry and cold in the first.

Hellebore, vid. *Bears-foot*.

I.

S*T. John's-wort* is hot and dry, being of Substance thin, and is a most excellent Herb for inward Bruises or Hurts, or outward Wounds; it is good to open Obstructions, dissolve Swellings, and strengthen those Parts that are weak and feeble; it is good for Bleedings inward or outward, for the biting of any venomous Creature, and is good to cast forth the Stone in the Bladder by Urine.

Ivy that groweth upon Walls or upon Trees, it hath a certain binding and cold Substance, and somewhat biting. The Flower of it is good for the Bloody-Flux and Lask.

The

The Leaves or Flowers outwardly applied, are good for the Nerves and Sinews. The yellow Berries of them are good for the Yellows, and kill the Worms; are good for the Plague, provoke Urine, break the Stone: they are good for to cleanse foul Ulcers, Sores and green Wounds, or for Burnings and Scaldings. The Juice of the Berries and Leaves squirted up the Nose, purgeth the Head from Rheum, and cureth the Ulcers therein, and are good given for a Surfeit.

The *Juniper-Bush* is hot and dry in the third degree, the Berries are also hot, but not so dry; they are good against Poison, Plague, the biting of any venomous Creature, provoke Urine, are good for the Dropsy, strengthen the Stomach, expel Wind; they are good for the Cough, Shortness of Breath, Consumptions, Pains in the Belly, Ruptures, Cramps, and strengthen all the Members of the Body. A Lye made of the Ashes of the Wood, and the Body bathed therewith, is good for the Mange, and all manner of Scabs, the Berries break the Stone, and bring a Horse to a Stomach, and are good for the Falling-Sickness.

Jack-by-the-Hedge, or *Sauce-alone*, is hot and dry, but much lesser than Garlick; the Seed boiled in Wine is a good Remedy against the Wind-Cholick or Stone; the green Leaves are good to heal Ulcers.

Iris is a Root that is hot and dry; it cleanseth and ripeneth and is good against Colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iron-Rust is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and retaineth evil Humours.

K.

K *Not-Grass*, all the kinds of them are cold in the second degree, and dry in the third, and are of a binding Quality, it is good to cool the Heat of the Stomach, and to stay any Flux of Blood or Humours, as Lask, Bloody-Flux; it is good for the falling of the Seed, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and expelleth the Gravel and Stone, it killeth Worms, is good to cool all manner of Inflammations, and to expel the Poison or Venom of any venomous Creatures; it helpeth Gangrenes, Fistula's, Cankers and Ulcers, and is good for fresh and green Wounds, and to strengthen broken Joints and Ruptures.

Kidney-wort, or *Wall-Pennyroyal*, or *Wall-Pennywort*, the dis-

distilled Water of it given, is good to allay all hot Inflammations of the Stomach and Liver, or Bowels; and being outwardly applied, is good for outward Heats, Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire, and healeth sore Kidneys, torn and fretted by the Stone; provoketh Urine, is good for the Dropsy, it helpeth the Bloody-Flux, and cureth green Wounds, and stayeth their bleeding.

Knapweed helpeth to stay bleeding at the Mouth and Nose, and other outward Parts, and all inward bleedings of Veins, and also the Flux of the Belly and inward Bruises; it is good for Ruptures taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, it drieth up the Moisture of all cankerous and running Sores, and healeth them up gently.

Knee-holm or *Butchers-broom*, the Roots which are chiefly used are hot and meanly dry with a Thinness of Essence, the Decoction of it provoketh Urine, breaketh the Stone, and driveth forth Gravel: it raiseth up tough Phlegm that sticketh at the Chest and Lungs, and the Berries of it are good for the Yellows.

L.

Ladies-Mantle is good for Inflammations and to stay Bleedings, Fluxes of all sorts, and helpeth Ruptures and Bruises; it is one of the best Wound-Herbs that is both inwardly taken and outwardly applied.

Lavender is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it is good for all the Grievs of the Head and Brain, that proceed of a cold cause: it strengthens the Stomach, and frees the Liver and Spleen from Obstructions, expelleth the dead Foal and Secundine. The Flowers distilled and so used, are good to cause Urine, and to ease the Pain of the Cholick; it is good for the Falling Sicknes.

French-Lavender hath a cold and earthy Substance, by reason whereof it bindeth; it is of force to take away Obstructions, to extenuate and make thin, to cleanse and to strengthen not only all the Entrails, but the whole Body also.

Sea-Lavender is very astringent or binding; the Seed beaten to powder, and given in Wine or Beer helpeth the Cholick and Strangury, and stayeth all Fluxes of Blood.

Lavender-Cotton is hot and dry in the third degree, it resisteth Poison, and helpeth the biting of any venomous

Creature. The Powder of it is good for the mattering of the Yard, it killeth the Worms and Scabs.

Ladies-Smocks or *Cuckow-Flowers*, all the sorts of them are hot and dry in the second degree; they differ not much from the *Water-Cresses*, they provoke Urine, break the Stone, and warm a cold Stomach.

Lettice is a cold and moist Herb, but not in the extreme degree of Cold; it loosens the Belly being boiled. It is good for the Pains of the Bowels coming by Choler, it is naught for Short-windedness and the Lungs.

Water-Lilly, the Seed of it hath a drying force, the Leaves and Flowers of it are cold and moist, and cool all Inflammations both inward and outward; the Seed as well as the Fruit stayeth Fluxes of Blood or Humours, either inward or outward, and is good for the mattering of the Yard.

Lilly of the Valley, called *Conval-Lilly* or *May-Lilly*, the distilled Water of it helpeth all Inflammations in the Eyes, and the Pin and Web.

White Lillies, which are the *Garden Lillies*, are hot, and partly of a subtile substance; but the Root is dry in the first degree, and hot in the second: they expel Poison, and are very good in pestilent Fevers. An Ointment made of the Roots with Hog's-grease is good for Scabs, and unites Sinews when they are cut, and is a great Cleanser of Ulcers: the Oil of it is good to bring any Head-swelling to ripeness to break.

Liquorice is very familiar to the Body of Man or Beast. It hath a certain binding Quality, which warmeth and cometh nearest of all to a mean Temperature, and because it is sweet it is meanly moist. It is good for a Cough, Shortness of Breath, and for all the Grievs of the Breast and Lungs; and for the Diseases of the Kidneys and Ulcers in the Bladder: it is good for the Strangury, Heat of Urine; the fine Powder of it blown into the Eye, helpeth the Pin and Web.

Common Liver-wort is good for all the Diseases of the Liver, both to cool and to cleanse it, and helpeth all Inflammations in any part of the Body, the Yellows, mattering of the Yard; it is good for Tettars, Sores and Scabs.

Loose-strife or *Willow-herb* is good for all manner of Bleedings inward and outward, as Bloody-Fluxes and bleeding Wounds.

Lovage is hot and dry in the third degree: It openeth and digesteth Humours, provoketh Urine, warmeth a cold Stomach, is good for the Pain in the Belly coming by Wind, resisteth

resisteth Poison, is good for the Quinsy, taketh away the Redness of the Eyes.

Lung-wort which is a kind of Moss growing on sundry sorts of Trees, is good for Coughs, Diseases of the Lungs both in Man and Beast, and is a most excellent Remedy boiled in Beer for Broken-winded Horses.

Leeks, Scallions or Onions are hot and dry, and do attenuate and make thin, and loosen all evil Humours in the Body.

Unslak'd Lime is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it drieth and corrodeeth.

Laurel and Bays are hot and dry, they cleanse and mundify.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it is very adust cleansing, and piercing.

Lithargirto is of two kinds, one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver; it is dry and bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth and closeth up Wounds. The golden Colour is the best.

M

THE Root *Madder*, which the Physicians and Dyers use, is disputed whether it bind or open: As it is of an obscure binding force, so it is of Nature and Temperature cold and dry; it is of divers thin parts, by reason whereof the Colour doth easily pierce; it is good for inward Bruises, or outward Bruises; it is good for the Bloody-Flux, provokes Urine, cures the Yellows, by opening the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen; and anointed with Vinegar cures the Tettar or Ring-worm.

White Maiden-hair, all the kinds of them are dry, and make thin, and are between Heat and Coldness. It is good for a Cough, of Shortness Breath, the Yellows, Diseases of the Spleen, Stoppage of Urine and Stone, (in all which Diseases the Wall-Rue is as effectual) stayeth both Bleedings and Fluxes of the Stomach and Belly; being green it looseth the Belly, and voideth Choler and Phlegm from the Stomach and Liver, cleanseth the Lungs and Blood, and being boiled with Camomile, dissolves Knots, allayeth Swellings, and drieth up moist Ulcers: the Lye made thereof is good to cleanse the Skin from Scabs, and from dry and running Sores.

Golden Maidenhair hath all the Virtues of the former.

Mallows and Marshmallows, either of them hath a certain Heat and Moisture, and the Leaves and Roots of them boiled

in water with Parsley and Fennel-roots open the Belly, and are good for hot Agues; they are used in Glisters, the Juice of them given is good for the Falling-Sickness; the Leaves bruised with Honey, and laid to the Eyes, take away the Inflammation, of them; it is good against Poison: A Poul-tice made of them, and applied, is good for all hard Tumours, Inflammations, Imposthumes and Swellings; it is good for Scaldings and Burnings, and for St. *Anthony's Fire*. *Marsh-mallows* are more effectual in all the Diseases before-mentioned, and in Decoctions and Glisters, to ease all Pains of the Body, making the Passages slippery for the Stone to descend.

Maple-tree, the Decoction of the Leaves and Bark strengthens the Liver, and opens Obstructions of it and the Spleen, and eases the Pain proceeding thence.

Myrobalans purge gently Melancholy, and comfort the Heart and Liver.

Wild Marjoram doth cut, attenuate and make thin, dry and heat, and that in the third degree; strengthens the Stomach, helps the Cough, Consumption of the Lungs, cleanseth the Body of Choler, expelleth Poison, and is good for the biting of venomous Beasts, helps the Dropsy, Scabs, Mange, Yellows.

Sweet Marjoram is excellent good for all the Infirmities of the Head, squirted up the Nose; and taken inwardly, is good for to comfort a cold Stomach, and the Diseases thereunto belonging; and being outwardly applied, is good for the Obstructions of the Liver; and being put into an Ointment, it warmeth and comforteth the outward parts, as the Joints and Sinews, for Swellings, and for places out of joint.

Marigolds are hot almost in the second degree, especially when they be dry, and are much of the nature of Saffron: the Juice of the Leaves mingled with Vinegar, if you anoint a hot Swelling with it, assuageth it; they comfort the Heart and Spirits, and expel any pestilent or malignant Quality that may annoy them.

Master-wort, the Root is hotter than Pepper, and therefore good in all cold Diseases, or Grievs of the Stomach and Body; it is good for Rheum, Shortness of Breath, and expelleth the Stone by Urine, casts out the dead Foal, it is good for the Dropsy, Cramps, Falling-Sickness, Poison, provokes Sweat, it cleanseth and healeth all green Wounds.

Sweet Maundlin, the Virtues of it are the same with Costmary,

mary, or Alecost, and therefore I refer you unto Costmary for satisfaction.

Medlars are cold, dry and binding, the Leaves are of the same nature, they are good to stop all Fluxes of Blood inwardly given; and the dried Leaves beaten to powder, and strewed upon bleeding Wounds, stayeth the bleeding of them, and healeth them up quickly: the Stones of them made into powder, and given in White-Wine, wherein Parsley-Roots hath lain infused all Night, do break the Stone in the Kidneys, and help to expel it.

Melilot or *King's-Cliver* is hot and dry in the first degree, it hath a certain binding Quality, besides a wasting and ripening Quality; it is good for spreading Ulcers, it is used to be put into Glisters, the Flowers of it with Camomile; expel Wind, and put into Poultices to assuage Swellings, with the Juice of it with Oil, Wax, Rosin and Turpentine, is made a most sovereign drawing Emplaster. The Herb boiled in Wine breaketh the Stone.

French and *Dog's Mercury* are hot and dry in the second degree, and have a cleansing faculty; the Juice of it purgeth Choler and watery Humours, it is good for waterish Eyes; it cleanseth the Breast and Lungs from Phlegm. The Juice put up the Nostrils, purgeth the Head of Catarrhs and Rheums, helpeth the Yellows; it helpeth all running Scabs, Tetters, Ringworms, and being applied as a Poultice, allayeth all Swellings and Inflammations; and given in Glisters, it evacuates from the Belly all offensive Humours. The *Dog's Mercury*, tho it is less used, may serve to the same purposes to purge waterish Humours.

Of all the *Mints*, *Spear-Mint* or *Heart-Mint* is the most wholesom; it hath a heating, binding and drying Quality. The Juice taken in Vinegar stayeth inward bleeding, dissolveth Imposthumes being laid to with Barley-Meal, and applied with Salt helpeth the biting of a mad Dog; it is good in all manner of breakings out of the Skin, and is good against Poison.

Nep or *Cat-mint* hath the same Faculties with the other.

Horse-Mint is hot and dry, it dissolveth Wind in the Stomach, helpeth the Cholick and Short-windedness; it is good against the biting of venomous Beasts; the Farcin, taken inwardly; and squirted up the Nostrils, purgeth the Head of evil Humours.

Mistletoe, the Leaves and Berries are hot and dry, and of subtle parts; the Bird-lime doth mollify hard Knobs, Tu-

mours and Imposthumes, ripeneth and discuffeth them, and being mixed with equal Parts of Rosin and Wax, heals old Ulcers and Sores. Mistletoe bruised, and the Juice put into the Ears, healeth the Imposthumes in them in a few days.

The *Mistletoe* of the Oak being given inwardly, cures the Falling-Sickness, or hung about his Neck.

Money-wort, or *Herb-Twopence*, it is moderately cold, it stays Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, Bleedings inwardly or outwardly, and is good for all Wounds inward or outward.

Moon-wort is cool and drying more than Adder's-Tongue, and is good for all manner of Wounds both inward and outward; it stayeth all inward Bleeding, as Veins broken, Bloody-Fluxes, and the like; it consolidateth all Fractures and Dislocations, it is good for Ruptures; it is reported that it will unlock Locks, and unshoe Horses that tread upon it.

Tree-Moss is cold and binding, and is the more binding according to the Nature of the Tree it grows upon; that of the Oak is the most binding, and is good to stay Fluxes and inward Bleedings. *Moss* boiled in Milk, with the Powder of Anniseeds, Elecampane and Liquorice, is a most excellent Medicine for a Cold or Cough.

Mechoacan-Root is hot and dry in the second degree, and purgeth filthy Humours; it is very safe, and is good for inveterate Coughs, Cholick, Dolour and the Farcin.

Ground-Moss is dry and astringent, without any Heat or Cold; it breaketh the Stone, and driveth it forth by Urine, being boiled in White-Wine and given, and being boiled in Water and apply'd, easeth all Inflammations and Pains coming of a hot Cause.

Mother-wort is hot and dry in the second degree, by reason of the cleansing and binding Quality. It is a very great Comforter of the Heart, provoketh Urine, cleanseth the Chest from cold Phlegm, and killeth the Worms in the Belly; it warms and dries up the cold Humours in the Body, and helps the Cramp and Convulsions of the Sinews.

Mouse-ear is hot and dry, of a binding Quality; it is good for the Yellows, it is good for the Stone and Pains in the Bowels, and is a very good Herb for inward or outward Wounds; it is good for the Dropsy, and stayeth the Fluxes of Blood both outward and inward: the Juice of it is good to stay the spreading of all fretting Cankers and Ulcers whatsoever.

Mugwort

Mugwort is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat binding; it expels the dead Foal, it breaks the Stone, and is good for Stoppage of Urine. The Root made up with Hog's-Grease to an Ointment, taketh away Wens and hard Knobs.

The *Mulberry-Tree* is of different parts; the ripe Berries, by reason of their slippery Moisture, doth cleanse and open the Body. The unripe Fruit is cold and dry in the second degree; the Bark, but chiefly the Root, is hot and dry in the third degree: the unripe Fruit being binding, is good to stop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes; the Bark of the Root killeth the broad Worms in the Belly; the Juice made of the Berries is good for Inflammations and Sores in the Mouth or Throat.

Mullein doth dry, the Leaves are of a digesting and cleansing Quality; the Root is good against Lasks and Fluxes of the Belly; it is good for Burstness, Cramps, and Convulsions, for old Coughs. The Decoction of the Root in red Wine, or in Water wherein Steel hath been quenched, doth stop the Bloody-Flux, it opens the Obstructions of the Bladder and Reins; the Powder of the dry'd Flowers is good for the Pain of the Cholick; the Decoction of the Roots and Leaves are good to dissolve Tumours, Inflammations or Swellings. The Seed bruised in Wine draweth forth Thorns and Splinters.

Common Mustard-seed doth heat and make thin, and is a Loosener of the Belly; it also draweth forth, and is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it cleanseth the Blood, strengthens a weak Stomach, and heats it if cold, and is very good for the Head: it draweth forth Splinters and Bones out of the Flesh, provokes Urine, resisteth Poison; it is good apply'd outwardly to fetch out Cold or any other Pain of the Body or Joints, and is good for all Scurfs or wild Scabs.

Hedge Mustard is good for Diseases of the Chest and Lungs, and for Coughs, Shortness of Breath, Yellows, and is used commonly in Glisters: the Seed is good against Poison or Venom.

Millet is cold in the first degree, and dry in the third, and is of a thin Substance; the Meal of it mix'd with Tar, and apply'd to the biting of any venomous Beast, is good to take out the Venom.

The *Myrtle-Tree* consists of contrary Substances, a cold Earthliness; it hath a subtile Heat, and drieth. The Leaves,

Fruit, and Juice do bind outwardly apply'd; and inwardly taken stayeth all Issues of Blood.

Mastich is good to draw forth Splinters and Nails out of the Flesh, it bindeth and strengthneth weak Parts, and is good for old and new Strains; and inwardly taken strengthens the Stomach, and is good to stop the Distillation upon the Lungs.

Malva is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth and mitigateth Pain.

Malva Viscus is very dry, it softneth, looseneth, and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without Heat, and only bindeth, it is a Comforter of the Heart and Spirits.

Manna is of equal Temper, hot and dry; it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Martiaton* is a hot Unguent against all cold Humours; it helpeth the Grief of the Sinews, purgeth cold watry Matter, and ripeneth Tumours.

Marrow, of what kind soever, is cold and moist, and mollifieth Ulcers. Now the best Marrow is that of a Hart or old Stag, the next that of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the last that of a Goat.

Myrrh is a sovereign Gum, it is hot and dry in the second degree, it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanseth Wounds; it is good against all Colds, it killeth Worms, and helpeth Purfiness, for tho it doth cleanse much, yet it doth not exasperate the Arteries. Also it doth incarnate; it helps all Diseases of the Lungs, the Cholick, stops Fluxes.

Morcosita or *Marcafita* is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth Humours.

The Fruit of the *Myrtle-Tree* is dry in the third degree, it doth bind good, and loosen evil Humours.

N.

N *Arlwort* or *Whitlow-grass* is good for Imposthumes in the Joints.

Nep, or *Catmint*, is good for the Head-Ach coming of cold Causes, all Catarrhs, Rheums; it is good for Windiness of the Stomach and Belly, Colds, Coughs, and Shortness of Breath: the Juice given inwardly is good for Bruises, the Decoction of it is good to bathe Scabs with.

Nettles are of Temperature dry, a little hot, scarce in the first degree; they are of thin and subtile Parts. The Seed provoketh Urine, and expelleth Gravel and Stone out of

of the Reins and Bladder; it is good against the biting of venomous Beasts, biting of mad Dogs. The Juice of them is good to cleanse Sores, Fistula's, and Wounds, such as are fretting and corroding; and against Scabs and Manginess: it is good to strengthen those places that are out of joint, and is good for Aches and Defluxions of Humours upon the Sinews. The Seed of them is a most excellent thing to fatten a Horse, being strew'd amongst his Provender.

Common Nightshade is wholly used to cool hot Inflammations, either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous to use, as the other Nightshades are. It is good to wash a sore Mouth with, as also all corroding and fretting Ulcers and Fistula's. A Cloth wet in the Juice, and apply'd to any Swelling, taketh it away. Have a care you take not the deadly Nightshade for this; if you know it not, you may let them both alone.

The Roots of *Narcissus* or *Daffodil* are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of such wonderful Qualities in drying, that they glue together great Wounds, either in the Flesh, Veins, Sinews or Tendons; they have also a certain cleansing and attractive Faculty. They take away the Aches and Pains in the Joints, and stamp'd with Hog's-grease and Leven, bringeth to Maturation hard Imposthumes; and stamp'd with Darnel-meal and Honey, draweth forth Thorns and Scabs out of any part of the Body. The Juice of the Root drunk is good for the Cough and Cholick.

Neefing-root or *Neefing-wort* is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath been taken for a wild kind of Pellitory of the Wall.

Navel-wort, or *Penny-wort* of the Wall, is of a moist Substance, somewhat cold, and of a certain obscure binding Quality. It cooleth, repelleth and driveth back, scoureth, consumeth, and wasteth away.

Nutmeg is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat astringent; it breaketh Wind, and is good for all cold Diseases of the Body.

Nutshells burnt are hot and dry, and do skin and stop the Flux of Matter.

Nasturtium is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it burneth, draweth, melteth, and killeth Worms.

Nitrum is of the same nature as Salt-petre is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O.

THE Leaves and Bark of the *Oak* and *Acorn-Cups* do bind and dry in the third degree, being somewhat cold withal. The Powder of the Bark or Cups stayeth all manner of Fluxes and Lasks, and stayeth the mattering of the Yard: the *Acorns* procure Urine, expel Poison. The distilled Water of the *Oaken Buds* are good taken inwardly, or outwardly apply'd, to assuage Inflammations, and stop all manner of Fluxes. It is good in pestilent and hot Fevers; it cooleth the Heat of the Liver, breaketh the Stone of the Kidney: the Water found in old hollow Oaks, is good to anoint foul Scabs.

Oats are naturally dry, they do dry, bind, cleanse and comfort all the inward parts; and are the only Simple that agrees with the Composition of a Horse's Body; and therefore the Oil of them is the only absolute and perfect Medicine that can be administred for any inward Sicknes. You are taught how to make it in my first Part.

Oaken Apples are hot and piercing, and much of the nature of Galls.

Oneberry-Herb, *True-love*, or *Herb-Paris*, is very cold, whereby it represseth the Rage and Force of Poison, both the Berries and Powder of the Herb.

One-blade, one Ounce of the Powder of the Roots is a sovereign Remedy against the Plague, and is a very good Wound-herb.

Orchis, which is call'd *Dog's-Stones*, they are hot and moist of Operation, and provoke Lust very much, and kill Worms.

Onions are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and do attenuate and make thin; they help the biting of a mad Dog and other venomous Creatures: used with Honey and Rue, they kill Worms. The Juice of them is good for Burnings and Scaldings.

Orpins are cold and dry, and of subtile parts, and are seldom used inwardly, but outwardly to cool all Heat or Inflammations upon any Hurt or Wound, and are good for Scaldings and Burnings. The Juice of it and Sallet-Oil being beaten together, and anointed therewith, and the Juice of it mix'd with Honey, and given down his throat, you shall find it a better and sooner Cure than a Dog's Turd.

Orpimento is a kind of Metal, of which the artificial is call'd *Arfnick*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second;

second; it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corrosive.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy, dry'd and mix'd with Saffron, and doth astonish, and provoke Sleep.

Olibanum is hot and dry in the second degree, and warmeth, bindeth, closeth, and incarnateth Wounds.

Oil of Olives or *Sallet-Oil* is of a very temperate Nature, and changeth its Quality according to the Nature of the Simples mix'd with it; it is a Cleanser of the Body by a gentle way of purging from molten Grease, and expelleth Poison.

Opoponax is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; it purgeth thick Phlegm from the remote Parts of the Body, viz. Brain, Joints, Feet, Nerves and Breast, and strengthens all those Parts if they be weak: it helps also old rotten Coughs, Gouts, Swellings of the Spleen, Strangury, Difficulty of pissing. You may give one Ounce of it corrected with Mastick, and dissolved in Vinegar.

P.

Parsley is hot and dry, but the Seed is more hot and dry, which is hot in the second degree, and dry almost in the third. The Root is of moderate Heat, it provoketh Urine, and breaketh Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, and looseneth the Body by opening the Obstructions of the Liver; it breaketh the Stone, expelleth Poison, and is good for the Yellows.

Parsley-Piert or *Parsley-Breakstone* is hot and dry, and of a cutting Quality; it provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone, and helps the Strangury.

Parsnip-Roots are moderately hot, and more dry than moist; they procure Lust, tho windy, provoke Urine: but the wild Parsnip hath a more cutting, attenuating, cleansing and opening Quality, and is of more use in Physick; it helpeth the biting of venomous Creatures, or dissolveth Wind in the Stomach and Bowels. The Seed is of more use than the Root: The Country-People call them Mad-neps.

Cow-Parsnips, the Seed of them are of a cutting Quality, and good for a Cough, Short-windedness, Falling-Sickness, Yellows, the Root scraped upon a Fistula, taketh away the hard Skin growing thereon; the Seed given cleanseth the Belly from tough Phlegm.

Pellitory of Spain is very hot and burning, and is the best Purger of the Head that is from Pains, the Powder of it being blown up his Nostrils.

Pellitory of the Wall cleanseth and bindeth, it is good for an old and dry Cough, Short-windedness, Stone, Gravel, Worms, and is put into Glisters to mitigate the Pains coming by Wind: it is good for the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and for a sore Throat; it assuageth hot Swellings, Imposthumes, Burnings and Scaldings by Fire or Water, or all other hot Tumours or Inflammations; it cleanseth foul rotten Ulcers and Scabs.

Pennyroyal, both the sorts of it are of a drying Faculty and of subtile Parts; it maketh thin tough Phlegm, and warmeth any cold Place where it is apply'd; it expelleth the dead Foal and Secundine, it helpeth the biting of venomous Creatures, it cleanseth foul Ulcers, it is good for Cramps, Convulsions of the Sinews, the Cough, Dropsy, and Yellows.

Piony Male and Female doth gently bind with a kind of sweetness, it is a little hot, but it is dry and of subtile parts; it is good for the Falling-Sickness, the Root being hung about the Neck, and some of the Juice of it given inwardly, and is good for the Nightmare.

Pepper-wort or *Dittander* is good for old Pains and Grieffs in Joints, and for Scabs.

Perwinckle is hot in the second degree, and somewhat dry and binding; it is good to stop Fluxes of Blood, and all manner of bleeding inwardly and outwardly.

St. Peter's-wort is of Temperature hot and dry, and is of the same nature as *St. John's-wort*, but somewhat weaker; it purgeth cholerick Humours, helpeth old Pains and Grieffs, and Burnings by Fire.

Pimpernel, both the sorts of it are of a drying Faculty without biting, and somewhat of a drawing Faculty, insomuch that it will draw forth Splinters out of the Flesh, and purgeth the Head put into the Nostrils; they are great Cleansers of Ulcers, and Sodderers up of Wounds. It is good for the Plague, and all Venom taken by venomous Beasts and mad Dogs; it opens the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, provoketh Urine, expelleth the Stone and Gravel; the Juice of it cleareth the Sight.

Ground-Pine or *Chamepitys* is good for the Strangury, and all Diseases of the Liver and Spleen, and gently openeth the Body, casteth out the dead Foal; it is good for all Pains

in

in the Joints, Dropsy, Yellows, Poison, Falling-Sickness, to cleanse foul Uleers, and to fodder up the Lips of green Wounds.

Water-Plantain is cold and dry of Temperature, is good against Burnings or Scaldings, and is good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Ribwort-Plantain is cold and dry in the second degree, as are the other Plantains; the Virtues are referred to the kinds of Plantain.

Land-Plantain is of a mix'd Temperature, for it hath in it a certain waterish Colour, with a little harshness and coldness, and is therefore cold and dry in the second degree. The Juice of it is good for all Pains in the Bowels, and stayeth the Distillation of Rheum from the Head, and is good for all manner of Fluxes of Blood, inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd: it is good for Shortness of Breath and Consumption of the Lungs. The Seed is good for the Dropsy, Falling-Sickness, Yellows, Stoppings of the Liver. The distilled Water of it is good to cool the hot Inflammation of the Eyes, and taketh away the Pin and Web; it is good for all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, is good for sore Mouths, and is good for all Ulcers and Cankers; it is good for all manner of Scabs, Tettars, and running Sores, and is a very good Wound-herb, either inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd.

Polypody of the Oak, Polypody of Fern, Indian Polypody, are dry without biting: it purgeth Choler and Phlegm, and is good for the Cholick; it is good against a Cough, Shortness of Breath, and Distillations of thin Rheums upon the Lungs.

Poppies of all sorts are cold, they are great Cauers of Sleep, they stay the Flux of the Belly. The Leaves or Heads made with a little Vinegar, and brought to a Poul-tice with Barley-Meal and Hog's grease, cooleth Inflammations and St. *Anthony's Fire*.

Prim or Privet, the Leaves and Roots of it are binding, and good to wash sore Mouths, to cool Inflammations, and to dry up Fluxes, and for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and all Swellings and Imposthumes; and are good against all Fluxes of the Belly and Stomach, and Bloody-Flux.

Pepper is hot in the third degree. All the sorts of them beat, provoke Urine, digest, draw, disperse and cleanse the Dimness of the Sight, and are good to be put into Medicaments for the Eyes. It is an Expeller of Poison, and is
good

good for all Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, helps Wind, is good for the Cholick.

Pitch is drawn from the *Pine-tree*, by the Force of Fire, and is the last running, and *Tar* is the first, which is the thinner; it is hot and dry, and *Tar* more hot, and stone *Pitch* more drying: it conglutinateth and gathereth together.

Petrolaum is a certain Oil made of *Salt-Peter* and *Bitumen*, and is hot and dry in the second degree, healeth Wounds, and comforteth weak Members.

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Persicum*, are excellent Positions, and most comfortable in the Loss of Blood.

Pomegranat is cold and dry, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach: the Rind, Seed or Flowers of them beaten to powder and given, stop the Lask and all Issues of Blood.

Pomecitron, the Rind of it is good against all Poisons.

Q.

Queen of the Meadows, *Meadow-sweet* or *Mead-sweet*, is cold, dry and binding, and is good for all manner of inward or outward Bleedings; it helps the Cholick, stayeth the Flux of the Belly, healeth old Ulcers, Cankers and Fistula's: the distilled Water of it is good for the Inflammation of the Eyes.

R.

Radish, *Horse-Radish* and *Garden Radish*, are hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: they drive forth the Gravel and Stone out of the Bladder by Urine.

Horse-Radish is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath a drying and cleansing Quality; it killeth Worms, and being bruised and laid to old Griefs, taketh them away, and is a Provoker of Urine, and likewise good for the Dropsy.

Ragwort is called *St. James-wort* or *Stagger-wort*, is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth, digesteth and discuffeth. The Juice of it is good for Ulcers in the Mouth or Throat, for hard Swellings, Imposthumations and Quinsy; it is good to stay Catarrhs, thin Rheums and Distillations from the Head into the Eyes, Nose and Lungs: The Juice is good to heal all green Wounds, and to cleanse and

and heal all filthy Ulcers in any Part of the Body, it is good for all Pains and Aches in any Part of the Body likewise.

Rattle-Grass, there is two sorts of it, the red and the yellow; the red is good to heal up Fistula's and hollow Ulcers, and stay the Flux of Humours to them, and other Fluxes of Blood, being boiled in red Wine and given. The yellow *Rattle-Grass* is good for a Cough, and Dimness of Sight, the Seed being put therein.

Restharrow or *Chammoack*, is hot in the third degree; it cutteth and maketh thin, it provoketh Urine and driveth forth the Stone, which the Bark of the Root doth very powerfully. It is good to open the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good for a Rupture.

The *Wild Rocket* is hot and dry in the third degree; it provoketh Urine exceedingly, expelleth Poison, killeth Worms, and other noisom Creatures that breed in the Body.

Winter-Rocket or *Cresses*, is hot and dry in the second degree. The Seed of them provoketh Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and expels Gravel and Stone. It is a good Wound-herb inwardly given, or outwardly applied; it cleanseth and healeth foul Ulcers and Sores by the drying Quality they have.

Roses of all sorts, the Leaves and the Flowers of them consist of divers Parts, as binding, yet moist and watry, they come very near to a mean Temperature; the white and the red are very binding, and those that are not full blown, do cool and bind more than those that are full blown. They being dried and beaten to powder, stay the Lask and pissing of Blood; the red strengthens the Heart and Stomach, assuages Inflammations, the Muttering of the Yard and Fluxes of the Belly; the Beards of them are binding and cooling.

Rosa-Solis or *Sun-dew*, the Water of it distilled helps a salt Rheum distilling from the Lungs, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath, the Cough, and to heal Ulcers in the Lungs, comforteth the Heart.

Rosemary is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a binding Quality, and is good against all Fluxes of Blood and cold Diseases of the Head and Stomach: It is good for the Lethargy and Falling-Sickness, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, and is good for Windiness of the Belly; it is good for dim Eyes, Yellows, Cough, Consumption.

Rhubarb

Rhubarb, the best, which is the *Indian*, hath two contrary Natures; for if you either cut, scrape or grate it, then it is a Loosener, for it dissolveth and openeth the Liver, and expelleth the Obstructions thereof; it expulseth all bad Humours in and about the Heart, Liver and Spleen; it cleanseth the Body, and sendeth away the peccant Humours among the Excrements, and all such things as may annoy or offend the Entrails. But if you shall pound and beat it in a Mortar, or otherwise, the Spirit thereof being a subtile Body, will transire and fly away, whereby the Operation thereof will be to bind, and no way profitable.

Garden-Patience or *Monk's-Rhubarb*, is a kind of Dock, bearing the name *Rhubarb*, for the purging Quality therein. It purgeth Choler and Phlegm. The Seed binds the Belly and stayeth any Lask or Bloody-Flux; the distilled Water of it is good to cleanse and heal foul Ulcers, and to allay the Inflammation of them.

Bastard-Rhubarb hath all the Properties of the *Monk's-Rhubarb*, but more effectually for inward and outward Diseases; it cureth the Yellows. The Seed boiled in Wine helpeth the Farcin, the Stone, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Dimness of the Sight, it is a Cleanser and Cooler of the Blood.

The Properties of the *English Rhubarb* are the same with the other, but much more effectual, and it hath all the Properties of the *Indian Rhubarb*, except the Force of purging, wherein it hath but half the Strength: It purgeth the Body from Choler and Phlegm; it cleanseth the Stomach, Liver and Blood, opening Obstructions, curing the Yellows, Dropsy, cleanseth the Reins, being taken with *Venice Turpentine*.

Meadow Rue bruised is good for old Sores; it is a Loosener of the Body, it is good for the Yellows and Plague.

Garden-Rue is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree, and the *Wild* in the fourth; it is of thin Parts, it consumeth Wind, and digesteth gross and tough Humours, provoketh Urine, is good against Poison, the Plague, the Pains and Gripings of the Belly. It is good for the Cough, Wind Cholick, Worms, Dropsy, stops bleeding; it is good for the Farcin, Scabs, Tettars and Ring Worms.

Rupture-wort is dry, closeth up and fastneth, it is good for the Ruptures, Fluxes, Mattering of the Yard, Strangury, stopping of Urine, Stone and Gravel. It is good for

or all griping Pains in the Stomach and Belly, Obstructions of the Liver, Yellows, Worms, Wounds. It stayeth the Defluxions of Rheums from the Head, and drieth up the Moisture of Fistula's and Ulcers.

Reeds are hot and dry in the second degree, and are Drawers of Splints and Thorns out of the Flesh.

Rye is hotter than Wheat, and is more forcible in wasting and consuming away; it ripeneth Imposthumes, Boils and other Swellings.

All the *Rosins* are hot and dry, the Rosin of the Cedar-Tree is the hotter, the Rosin of the Pitch-Tree is not so sharp and biting, and therefore not so hot; the Rosin of the Fir-Tree is in a mean between both; the liquid Rosin of the Pine is moister; the Rosin which is put in Plasters, which is our common Rosin, stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth and purgeth Wounds, and is good against cold Causes.

Resigallo is a Composition of old Sulphur, or Orpiment, and unslak'd Lime, and is a most strong Corrosive.

S

Saffron is binding, it is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it strengthens the Heart, is good for the Consumption of the Lungs, and Shortness of Breath; it is an excellent thing in Epidemical Diseases, as the Plague, and is good for the Yellows.

Garden-Sage is hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree, or in the latter end of the second; it is good for the Head and Brain, strengthens the Sinews, restoreth Health: It is good for a Cough, Biting of Serpents, expelleth Wind, drieth the Dropsy, and is a Cleanser of the Blood; it is good to put into Water to wash a sore Mouth withal, and is good for old Cankers and Sores.

Wood-Sage is hot and dry, yet less than the common Sage, being hot and dry in the second degree; it digesteth and discusseth Swellings and Knots in the Flesh: it is good for Ulcers, Sores, Burstness, green Wounds, and provoketh Urine.

Solomon's-Seal is binding; the Roots of it are good in Wounds and Hurts, to cleanse them, and to dry and restrain Fluxes of Humours and Bloody-Flux and Lask: they are good for Ruptures and Burstness taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, and are good for inward or outward Bruises.

Q

Sanicle

Sanicle is bitter, and hath a certain binding Quality, so that it cleanseth and strengthneth, and is hot and dry in the second degree, and in some Authors hot in the third; it is a most excellent Wound-herb, either outwardly applied, or inwardly given, and is good for Ulcers and Imposthumes in any part of the Body. It is good to stop a Lask and all Fluxes of Blood, either inwardly or outwardly. It is good for the Ulceration of the Kidneys, and Pains of the Bowels and Ruptures. It is good in binding, restraining, heating, drying and healing, as Comfrey, Bugle, Self-heal, or any other of the Confound, or Vulnerary Herbs whatsoever.

Saracens Confound or *Saracens Wound-wort*, is dry in the third degree, with some manifest Heat; it is a good Wound-herb, and is good for the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, Yellows, Dropsy, for all Ulcers of the Reins, or other inward Wounds and Bruises, and for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and Pains in the Stomach.

Sauce-alone, vid. *Jack-in-the-Hedge*.

Winter-Savory and *Summer-Savory* is very good for the Cholick, the Summer-kind is the best; it expelleth Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, it provoketh Urine, it cutteth tough Phlegm in the Chest and Lungs: the Juice dropped into the Eyes cleareth the Sight, if it proceed of thin cold Humours, distilling from the Brain; and being used in a Poullice is good for old Aches and Pains in the Hips and Joints coming of Cold.

Savin is hot and dry in the third degree, of subtile parts; it cleanseth old Ulcers, being dried and mixed with Honey: It is good to break Carbuncles, Plague-Sores, Farcin, Worms, Scabs, Itch and running Sores, Cankers, Tettars, Ring-Worms; it kills the quick Foal, and expels the dead.

Common Saxifrage, the Root and Seed thereof is of a warm and hot Composition, it cleanseth the Reins and Bladder, and dissolveth the Stone, and expels the Gravel by Urine, helps the Strangury, cleanseth the Stomach and Lungs from Phlegm.

Burnet-Saxifrage, the Seed, Leaves and Roots of the great and small, are hot and dry in the third degree, and of thin and subtile parts; they have the same Properties as Parsley hath in provoking Urine, and ease the Pains of the Cholick, break and avoid the Stone by Urine, and are good against Venom, and for Cramps and Convulsions. The Juice of it dipped into Wounds drieth up the Moisture of them.

Scabious,

Scabious, three sorts there are of it, though there be many others, yet these be most familiar, and the Virtues of these and the rest are much alike. It is hot and dry in the latter end of the second degree, or near hand in the third, and of thin and subtile parts. It is good for Coughs, Short-windedness, and all other Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, ripening and digesting cold Phlegm, and other tough Humours, it ripeneth also all inward Ulcers and Imposthumes, it is good for running and spreading Scabs, Tettars and Ring-worms.

English Scurvey-Grass is evidently hot and dry, very like in taste and quality to the Garden-Cresses, it openeth and cleanseth the Blood, the Liver and Spleen; it openeth Obstructions, and evacuateth cold, clammy, and phlegmatick Humours, both from the Liver and Spleen: the Juice of it is good for foul Sores in the Mouth.

Self-heal is of the Temperature of Bugle, moderately hot, dry, and something binding; it is a most excellent Herb for inward and outward Wounds or Bruises in any part of the Body, it stayeth the Flux of Blood in any Wound, and cleanseth foul Ulcers and Sores.

The *Service-tree*, the Berries are cold and binding, it is good to stay Bleedings of Wounds, Lasks and Fluxes of Blood.

Shepherd's-Purse is cold, dry, and very much binding, it helps all Fluxes of Blood, either caused by inward or outward Wounds, and also Flux of the Belly, and Bloody-Flux, or pissing of Blood; is good for the Yellows, and being made into a Poultrice helps Inflammations, and St. *Anthony's* Fire: an Ointment being made thereof, is good for all Wounds in the Head.

Smallage is hotter, drier, and much more medicinable than Parsley; it openeth the Obstructions in the Liver and Spleen, cleanseth the Blood, provokes Urine, helps the Yellows, Agues, the Juice is good for sore Mouths and Throats, cleanseth all the foul Ulcers and Cankers, being washed therewith. The Seed is good to expel Wind, kill Worms; the Roots are effectual to all the Purposes aforesaid, and stronger than the Herb.

Soap-wort or *Bruise-wort* is hot and dry, and a little scouring; the Juice is good to heal up green Wounds, it provokes Urine, expels the Gravel and Stone, and is good for the Dropsy.

The *Sorrels* are moderately cold, dry and binding; the

common Sorrel is good to cool hot Diseases, Inflammation or Heat of Blood, for it purifieth it; it killeth Worms, and is a Cordial to the Heart, which the Seed doth more effectually, being more drying and binding, and therefore stayeth the Humours of the Bloody-Flux, and Flux of the Stomach: It is good to resist Poison, expelleth the Gravel and Stone, helpeth the Yellows. The Juice of it with Vinegar killeth the Itch, Scabs, Tettars, Ringworms and the like.

Wood-Sorrel is cold and dry, like Sorrel, and serves for all the Purposes that the other Sorrels do, and is more effectual in hindring the Putrefaction of Blood, and Ulcers in the Mouth and Body, and cooleth Heats, Inflammations, and pestilential Fevers, or other contagious Sickness.

Sow-Thistles are of a mixt Temperature, for they consist of a waterish Substance, cold and binding; the Milk of them is good for Short-windedness, and causeth the Stone and Gravel to be voided by Urine: it helpeth the Strangury, it causeth Milk in Cattel.

Southernwood is hot and dry in the third degree; the Seed is an Antidote against all deadly Poison, and is good to kill Worms; it is good to draw forth Thorns out of the Flesh; the Ashes of it drieth up old Ulcers that are without Inflammation.

Spignel provokes Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and all Joint-Aches, the Powder of the Root with Honey breaketh tough Phlegm, and drieth up the Phlegm that fasteneth upon the Lungs; the Roots are good against the biting and stinging of venomous Beasts.

Spleenworts are of thin parts, and are in a mean Temper. It is good for the Spleen, helpeth the Strangury, wasteth the Stone in the Bladder, and is good for the Yellows.

Strawberry-Leaves do cool and dry with a binding Quality, they are good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings, applied outwardly, and being inwardly given, after they have been boiled in Vinegar, cool the Liver and Blood, and assuage all Inflammations in the Reins, provoke Urine, and allay the Heat and Sharpness thereof, stay the Bloody-Flux. The Juice of the Leaves are good to make a Lotion for a sore Mouth or Ulcers therein.

Succory and *Endive* are cold and dry in the second degree, and withal somewhat binding; they cleanse phlegmatick and waterish Humours out of the Stomach, open the Obstructions of the Liver, Gall and Spleen, are good for the Yellows, Heat of the Reins, Urine and Dropsy. The Water or the Juice

Juice of the bruised Leaves applied outwardly, allays Swellings, Inflammations and *St. Anthony's Fire*, and is good to wash pestilential Sores.

Wild Succory agrees in Nature and Temperature with the *Garden Succory*; and as it is more bitter, so it doth more strengthen the Stomach and Liver.

Stone-crop, Prick-Madam, or Small Houseleek, grows upon the ground with divers Branches, with thick and whitish green Leaves; it is cold in quality, and somewhat binding, and therefore very good to stay Defluxions that flow from the Eyes: it stops Bleeding both inward and outward, helps Cankers and all fretting Sores and Ulcers; it abates the Heat of Choler, expels Poison, resisteth pestilent Fevers, and is good for Agues: you may take it inwardly for all these Diseases. It is good likewise for the Farcin.

Snap-Dragon, all the sorts of them are hot and dry, and of subtile parts.

Star-wort is of a mean Temperature in cooling and drying; it is good for the falling of the Gut by the Inflammation of the Fundament, and is good for the Falling-Sickness.

White Sattin-Flower, the Seed of it is hot, dry and sharp of Taste, and good for the Falling-Sickness. There may be made an excellent Ointment of the Leaves of it and Sanicle stamped together, adding thereunto Oil and Wax.

Sea Star-wort is hot and dry in the third degree; the Roots of it given in White-Wine, driveth forth by Urine watry and gross Humours, and therefore it is good for the Dropsy and Poison, and is good for all inward and outward Wounds.

Staves-Acre, the Seed of it is extreme hot, almost in the fourth degree; being beaten to Powder, and mixed with Oil or Lard, kills Lice, Itch or Mange in Man or Beast. It is dangerous to give it inwardly.

Sneeze-wort all the kinds of them are hot and dry in the third degree.

Star of Bethlehem, the kinds of them are temperate in Heat and Dryness; the Roots of them roasted and applied with Honey in the manner of a Poultice, healeth old eating Ulcers, and softneth and dissolveth hard Tumours.

Spinach is cold and moist almost in the second degree, but rather moist; it looseneth the Belly, but maketh it windy.

Set-wall, vid. *Valerian*.

Sena is of a mean Temperature, neither hot nor cold, yet

yet inclining to Heat, and dry almost in the third degree; it is of a purging Faculty, and that in such sort that it is not troublesome, having withal a certain binding Quality, which it leaveth after the Purging.

All *Spurges* are hot and dry almost in the fourth degree, of a sharp and biting quality, fretting and consuming; the Milk and Sap is in more special use than the Fruit and Leaves: the Root is of least strength, the strongest is that of the Sea.

Scammony, the Juice of it doth mightily purge, and is the strongest Purger whatsoever, and is very hurtful to the Stomach, if you mix it not with *Aloes*, or some other things, to correct the evil Qualities of it.

Sycamore-tree, the Fruit of it is somewhat sweet of Taste, and of Temperature moist after a sort, and cold, as be the Mulberries. The Liquor that issueth out of the Bark of this Tree in the beginning of the Spring, before the Fruit appeareth, taken up with a Spoon or Sponge, and dried or made up into a Cake, and kept in a Gally-pot, mollifieth and closeth Wounds together, and dissolveth gross Humours, and is good inwardly given, or applied outwardly against the biting of Serpents; it doth soon putrefy.

Storax or *Stirax* is a sweet Gum, which is of a heating, mollifying and concocting Quality; it is an excellent Perfume for the Head, and draweth many evil Humours from thence, as Colds and other Sicknesses in the Head.

Sanguis Draconis is supposed to come from the Dragon-tree, it hath an astringent Faculty, and is good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Sloes, vid. *Black-Thorn*.

Scallions are hot and dry in the second degree, they are good for Scabs, and for the Lungs.

Sassafras or *Ague-tree*, the Boughs and Branches thereof are hot and dry in the second degree; the Rind is hotter, the Root is the best part of it, it procureth the same effects as Cinnamon doth.

Sanders white, red and yellow, are all cold and dry in the second or third degree; they are of an astringent and strengthening Quality; they drive back Humours, and stop Defluxions from any part, help Inflammations, and cool the Heat of Fevers. The yellow is accounted the best.

Snails with Shells are of the same Nature as Snails without Shells are.

Snails without Shells do conglutinate very much, and are good

good to put in Medicines for Ruptures ; the distilled Water of them is good for a Consumption.

Sandevoir is most excellent for dim or rheumatick Eyes, being laid asleep in running Water.

Soap is hot, it draweth forth Splinters and Nails ; it mollifieth, drieth, cleanseth and purgeth.

Sal-nitre, some use for this *Salt-Peter*, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth ; it comforteth Sinews, and taketh away Tiredness and Weariness.

Sal-gemma is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and bindeth.

Sallows or *Willows* bind and dry vehemently.

Salt is hot and dry in the second degree, cleanseth and killeth Worms.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorge*, of some called *Pannicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

Salmoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth.

Sarcocolla is a Gum of the kind of *Euphorbium*, and is hot and dry in the second degree ; it cleanseth, incarnateth and comforteth Wounds.

Sevadalce is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree ; it cleanseth and openeth.

Serapino is a Gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree ; it mollifieth, looseneth and is good for Colds.

T.

TAR is drawn out of the Pine-tree, and is the first running, Pitch is the second, it is hot and dry in the second degree ; it is good against a Cold or evil Humours gathered together in the Breast, and draweth Wounds. It is outwardly applied with other Ingredients to the Scratches, and is good to anoint a Horse's Nose with, to keep the Infection of the Plague from him.

English Tobacco killeth Worms, a little of it chopped small or beaten to Powder, after it is very dry, and put amongst other Medicines. It is good for the Stone in the Kidneys, to help the Pain, and to expel the Gravel ; it is good boiled in Chamberlye with Brimstone, Allum and green Copperas, to kill the Mange or all manner of Scabs ; the Oil of it is good for all manner of Aches, Cramps and Convulsions ; a Pipe filled with it, and put into a Horse's Fundament, which the Wind of his Body will draw out, is a very good Glister

for all manner of Worms there, and to cleanse his Body.

Tamarinds are cold in the third degree, and dry in the second; they are very temperate, and gently purge adust Humours.

The *Tamarisk-tree* hath a cleansing and cutting Faculty, manifest Dryness; it is somewhat binding, it is good for inward Bleedings, Cholick, Yellows, biting of venomous Beasts: the Decoction of it with some Honey is good to stay Gangrenes, and fretting Sores and Ulcers, and to kill Nits and Lice, being washed therewith. The Wood or Bark is good for all the Purposes aforesaid, as well as the Branches; it is good given to a Horse to kill the Farcin.

Garden-Tansy that smells sweet, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third; and that without smell is hot and dry, and of a mean Temperature: it is good to consume phlegmatick Humours. The Decoction of the common Tansy opens all stoppings, is good for the Strangury, it expels Wind; the Seed is good for the Worms, being boiled with Oil is good for shrunk Sinews and Cramps.

Wild Tansy is cold and dry almost in the third degree, having a binding Quality; it stayeth the Lask and all Fluxes whatsoever, it is good for Burstness, and for all Joint-Aches or Pains; it is good for inward or outward Wounds, and to heal running Sores; it cooleth the hot Fits of the Ague, be they ever so violent. The distilled Water of it dropp'd into the Eyes, or a Cloth wet therein, taketh away the Heat and Inflammation of them.

Thistles in general, all of them provoke Urine, the Juice of them will cause Hair to grow where it is fallen off.

Treacle-Mustard and *Mithridate-Mustard* both purge the Body upwards and downwards; they break inward Imposthumes, are very good Antidotes against Poison, Venom and Putrefaction; they are also available in many Cases the common Mustard is used, but somewhat weaker.

The *Black-Thorn* or *Sloe-Bush*, all the parts of it are cooling and binding, and drying, and good to stay bleeding at the Mouth and Nose, stop the Lask of the Belly or Stomach, Bloody-Flux, and to ease the Pains of the Bowels and Guts, that come by overmuch Scourings. The Leaves are good to put into Lotions, to wash a sore Mouth or Throat with, wherein are Sores or Kernels, and to stay the Defluxions of Rheums to the Eyes or other parts, and to cool the Heat of them.

Thorough-wax or *Thorough-leaf* is of a dry Complexion, and is good for all sorts of Bruises and Wounds inward and outward, and old Ulcers and Sores likewise. The Decoction of the Herb, or the Powder of it taken inwardly, and the Leaves bruised and apply'd outwardly, is good to cure Ruptures and Burstings.

Thyme is hot and dry in the third degree, it is a great Strengthenr of the Lungs, it purgeth the Body of Phlegm, and is good for Short-windedness. An Ointment made with it is good for hot Swellings, it comforteth the Stomach, and expels Wind.

Wild Thyme or *Mother of Thyme* is of Temperature hot, and dry in the third degree, it is of thin and subtile parts, cutting and much biting, provokes Urine, easeth the griping Pains in the Belly coming by Wind; it is good for Cramps, Ruptures, Inflammations of the Liver, the Lethargy, Pissing of Blood, Coughing, strengthens the Stomach, expels Wind, and breaks the Stone.

Tormentil or *Setfoil* is binding, and therefore good to stay all Fluxes of Blood or Humours, whether at the Nose or Mouth, or any Wound in the Veins or elsewhere; it resisteth Poison, Plague, pestilential Fevers, and contagious Diseases, and expelleth the Venom from the Heart by sweating. There is not found any Root more effectual to help any Flux of the Belly, Stomach, Spleen or Blood, than this taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly; it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, helpeth the Yellows, it is good made into a Plaster to strengthen the Reins of the Back, and for Ruptures and Bruises by Falls, taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly; and 'tis a most excellent Wound-herb, apply'd outwardly to rotten Sores and Ulcers in any parts of the Body, or for any inward Wound: it dissolves hard Knots and Kernels any where about the Body.

Turnsole or *Heliotropium* purgeth Choler and Phlegm boiled with Water and given, and being boiled with Cummin helpeth the Stone of the Reins or Bladder, provoketh Urine. The Herb bruised and laid to any old Pain in the Joints, taketh it away: the Juice of it is good to take away Wens, and to dissolve hard Kernels or Knobs in the Flesh.

Meadow-Trefoil, or *Honey-suckles*, is cold and dry, and good to put into Glisters; it is good in a Poultice for Inflammations and Swellings. The Juice dropt into the Eye taketh away the Pin and Web, and taketh away the blood-shotten of them.

Heart.

Heart-Trefoil is a great Strengthner of the Heart, forti-
feth it against Poison and Pestilence, and defends it from
the noisom Vapours of the Spleen.

Pearl-Trefoil, it differs not from the common sort, save
only it hath a white Spot in the Leaf like a Pearl, and is of
great Virtue against the Pin and Web in the Eyes.

Turbith is a Root that is hot and dry, and purgeth by
moderate drawing (if it be corrected) gross, viscid, and
putrid Phlegm from the Brain, Breast, and remote Parts
and Junctures.

Tutsan or *Park-leaves*, the Faculties are such as *St. Peter's*-
wort, which declares it to be hot and dry; it purgeth Hu-
mours, is good for Burnings by Fire; it is a very good
Wound-herb, either inwardly given or outwardly apply'd.

Tartar is the Excrement of Wine, which sticks to the
Vessel, and is hot and dry in the third degree, and only
cleanseth.

Turpentine is hot in the second and dry in the first, it
doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together,
and is good for the mattering of the Yard given inwardly,
being made up by Art into Balls, with Flower and Bole-
Armoniack.

Thuris Cortex is dry in the second degree, and bindeth.

Trisora Magna is a certain Composition which will pro-
voke Sweat, helpeth Griets in the Stomach, and taketh away
all cold Rheums.

Tutia Preparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the
first, and dry in the second degree, and is very good for
sore Eyes.

Turmerick is hot in the third degree, and openeth Ob-
structions; it is good against the Yellows, and all cold
Distempers of the Liver and Spleen, and fattens by a certain
hidden Quality.

Tastil Wild is cold in the third and dry in the first degree,
and comforteth and bindeth.

V.

G *Arden Valerian* is hot, but not much, provoketh Urine;
being dry'd and given, helpeth the Strangury: it is
good for Short-windedness; the Roots of it being boiled
with Liquorice, Raisins and Anniseeds, helpeth to open the
Passages, and expectorates the Phlegm easily. It is good
for the Plague, and those that are bitten and stung by any
venomous Creature; it expelleth Wind, and being boiled
in

in White-Wine, and dropt into the Eyes, taketh away the Dimness of Sight, or any Pin and Web: it healeth any inward Sores and Wounds, and also all outward Wounds and Hurts, and draweth Splinters and Thorns out of the Flesh, the Herb being bruised, and laid to the place grieved.

Wild Valerian, some hold, that being dry'd and beaten to powder, purgeth upwards and downwards.

Both the *Vervains* are very dry, and do meanly bind and cool. It is an excellent Herb for the Womb, and all the cold Grievs belonging thereunto, as Plantain doth the hot. It is hot, dry, and bitter, opening Obstructions, cleansing and healing; it is good for the Yellows, Dropsy, the Defects of the Reins and Lungs, and all inward Pains and Torments of the Body: it is good against the Plague, and the Venom of venomous Beasts, against Agues, the Worms, the Diseases of the Liver and Spleen, and all Diseases of the Stomach and Lungs, Coughs, Shortness of Breath, and to cleanse the Bladder from all evil Humours that engender the Stone; it healeth all Wounds both inward and outward, stayeth Bleeding, and healeth old Ulcers in any part of the Body, being used with Honey; it is good for Swellings used with Hog's grease; the distilled Water of the Herb or Juice dropt into the Eyes, cleanseth them from Films.

The Branches of the *Vine* and the Leaves do cool and mightily bind, and stay Bleeding in any part of the Body, and are good to stop a Lask and Bloody-Flux. The Leaves are put into Lotions for sore Mouths, and being put into a Poultice with Barley-Meal, cool Inflammations of Wounds.

All the *Violets* are cold and moist while they are fresh and green, and will cool any Heat and Distemper in the Body, either inwardly given or outwardly apply'd, Imposthumes also and hot Swellings. They purge the Body of cholerick Humours: the Powder of the purple Flower helpeth the Quinsy and Falling-Sickness, it is good for the Liver, Yellows, and hot Agues.

The sorts of *Viper-Grass* are hot and moist, as are the Goats-beards. It is very good for the Plague, Poison of venomous Creatures, Falling-Sickness.

Wall or *Viper-Bugloss*, the several sorts of them are cold and dry of Complexion. It is good against the biting of Vipers or any other venomous Beasts, and also against Poison or any poisonous Herbs. The Roots comfort the Heart, temper the Blood, allay the hot Fits of Agues.

Vinegar,

Vinegar, especially if it be of *Wine*, is cold and piercing; to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree: it cuts Phlegm.

Vermilion is a certain Metal drawn from Quick-Sulphur and Quick-Silver; it draweth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

Verdegrease is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corrosive that eateth away dead and proud Flesh, and is good to be put into Ointments for green Wounds, or for the Scratches.

Green and White Vitriol may be taken inwardly, a few Drops of it with other things, for the Farcin; and outwardly apply'd to take away Wens or hard Kernels, or to eat away a Quitter-bone or Splint; or to take off Warts from the Hands; if you will stay the eating of it, or that you will have it eat no further than where you lay it, wet all round where you lay it with Water. You must take it out of the Glass with a Feather, or a piece of Silk ty'd to a Stick, for it will eat both Linen and Woollen. The white is the strongest, but the green is most safe for any use.

Vitriola Caleanthum is reckoned amongst Metals, and is a kind of inky Earth; it draweth and fretteth.

Vitriola Herba is an Herb that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall.

W.

W *All-flower* or *Winter-Gilliflower*, all the kinds of them are of a cleansing Faculty, and of thin parts. The yellow kind works more powerfully, and is of more use in Physick; it cleanseth the Blood, and freeth the Liver from Obstructions, expelleth the Secundine and dead Foal, stays Inflammations and Swellings, comforteth and strengthneth any weak part out of joint, cleanseth the Eyes from Films, and cleanseth also filthy Ulcers in the Mouth, and is a good Remedy for all Aches and Pains in the Joints and Sinews, and is good for the Farcin.

The *Walnut-Tree*, the Bark of it doth bind and dry very much, and the Leaves are much of the same Tempera-
ture; they kill the Worms in the Belly, with other things put to them; they help the biting of a mad Dog, or the Venom or Poison of any Creature. The Kernels of them when they are old are very astringent, and will stop a Lask. The Oil of the Kernels taken inwardly helpeth the Cholicke, and expels Wind. The distilled Water of the green Husks,

Husks, before they be ripe, is good to cool the Heat of Agues, as also to resist the Infection of the Plague, being apply'd to the Sores; it cooleth also the Heat of green Wounds and old Ulcers, being bathed therewith.

Wold, Weld, or Dyers-Weed, is hot and dry of Temperature; also the whole Herb heats and dries in the third degree, it cuts, attenuates, resolveth, opens, digests: it is good taken inwardly, or apply'd outwardly, against the Venom of venomous Beasts, as also for the Plague or Pestilence, and is good for green Wounds.

Wheat is hot and dry in the first degree; it hath a certain clammy stopping Quality. The Oil of it pressed out between two thick Plates of Iron, healeth all Tettars and Ringworms, used warm. The green Corn chew'd and apply'd to the place bitten by a mad Dog, healeth it. Sliced Wheat-Bread, soaked in Red Rose-water or Spring-water, and apply'd to the Eyes that are hot, red, and inflamed, or blood-shotten, helpeth them: and hot Bread apply'd to the Kernels of the Throat, healeth the Kernels thereof. The Flower of it mix'd with the Juice of Henbane, stayeth the Flux of Humours to the Joints; and being boiled in Vinegar, helpeth the shrinking of the Sinews. The Flower of it mixed with the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, and Turpentine, doth draw, cleanse and heal any Boil, Plague-Sore, or foul Ulcer. The Decoction of Wheat-Bran is good to bathe those Places that are bursten by a Rupture, and the said Bran boiled in Vinegar helpeth all Swellings and Inflammations; it helpeth the biting of Vipers and all other venomous Creatures. Wafers put in Water and given, stay the Lask and Bloody-Flux.

The *Willow-Tree*, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed and Bark, are cold and dry in the second degree, and binding; they are used to stay bleeding of Wounds, and all other Fluxes of Blood; they help to stay all thin, hot, and sharp Distillations upon the Lungs. The Leaves bruised with some Pepper, is good for the Wind-Cholick. The Water of the Willow-Tree received of a Branch cut, is good for Dimness of Sight, for Films, and to stay the Rheums that fall into them, provokes Urine being stopped. The Flowers of it boiled in White-Wine have an admirable Faculty in drying up of Humours: the Bark worketh the same effect.

Woad is dry and without sharpness; the wild *Woad* drieth more, and is more sharp and biting; it is so dry and binding, that it is hardly fit to be given inwardly: an Ointment made

made thereof stancheth bleeding, and is good in such Ulcers as abound with Moisture, for it takes away the corroding and fretting Humours; it cools Inflammations, quenches St. *Anthony's* Fire, and stayeth Defluxions of Blood in any part of the Body.

Wood-bind or *Honey-suckles* are cleansing, consuming and digesting; the Flowers are good for the Lungs, provoke Urine, help Cramps, Convulsions, Palsies, and whatsoever Grief comes of Cold or Stopping. The Flowers are more effectual than the Leaves, and the Seed is as effectual as the Leaves.

Pond-Weed doth bind and cool like as doth Knot-grass, but its Essence is thicker than that; it is good against consuming and heating Ulcers, and all hot Inflammations.

Wormwood is hot and dry in the first degree, just as hot as the Blood; it remedies Choler, provokes Urine, helps Surfeits, Swellings in the Belly, and is the best Herb for the Yellows that is. Take of the Flowers of Wormwood, Rosemary, and Black-Thorn, of each a like quantity; half that quantity of Saffron boiled in Beer or Ale, and this now and then used will keep a Horse in perfect Health. Wormwood is good against Poison, Quinsy, biting and stinging of venomous Creatures, Cholick, Worms, and to keep Clothes from the Moths; it helps the Spleen, strengthens the Heart, and heats the Stomach.

Willow-Herb, vid. *Loose-strife*.

Wall-wort, or *Dane-wort*, vid. *Dwarf-Elder*.

Woodroff is of Temperature like unto our Ladies-Bed-straw, but not so strong, being in a mean between Heat and Dryness; it prevaieth in Wounds, as *Cruciata* and other vulnerary Herbs do.

The Leaves and Berries of the *Wasering-Tree* are cold and dry, and of a binding Quality; the Decoction of the Leaves is good to syringe a sore Mouth with, and is good for the Diseases of the Gums, and fastneth loose Teeth.

Worms do conglutinate and comfort Sinews.

White Lead is a great Dryer and Sheller of Scabs, and is good put into Medicines for Scratches, and for Sellanders and Mallenders.

Y.

Y *Arrow*, called also *Nose-bleed*, *Milfoil* and *Thousand-Leaf*, it cleanseth and is meanly cold, but it most of all bindeth. An Ointment of it cureth Wounds, and is good

good for Inflammations; it is good for the Bloody-Flux. The Ointment is good not only for Wounds, but Ulcers likewise and Fistula's, especially such as abound with Moisture. The Hair being wash'd with the Decoction, stayeth the shedding of it; taken inwardly, it is good for the mattering of the Yard: and the Juice of it is most excellent, or the Decoction of it injected into the Yard with a Syringe, to stop the extreme flowing of the Seed, altho the Issue doth cause Inflammation and Swelling of the Secret Parts, and tho the Spermatick Matter do come down in great quantity, as hath been very well proved.

Water-Yarrow is of a dry Faculty, by reason it taketh away hot Inflammations and Swellings.

Z.

Z*uche*, which are call'd *Gourds*, are cold and moist in the second degree, and allayeth all manner of Inflammations or hot Swellings.

Softening or dissolving Herbs are four, viz.
Mallows, Marshmallows, black Violet, and Bear's-breech.



Reme-



*Remedies for all Diseases, which may be used
according to Discretion. Together with par-
ticular Receipts, &c.*

*Before you enter upon the Drenching and Physicking of
Horses, take these Directions with you.*

I. **T**HAT all Diseases are cured by their Contraries,
and all Parts of the Body are maintained by
their like, *viz.* If Heat be the Cause of the
Distemper, then appropriate those Medicines
that are cold to it; if cold, then give hot. If Wind be
the Cause of Illness, then find out in your Table of Simples
proper Medicines for that Disease, and use them according
to Directions.

II. Apply not the Medicines to one part of the Body,
that are appropriated to another part, *viz.* If the Brain be
overheated, use not such Medicines as cool the Heart and
Liver.

III. If you give distilled Waters for the Disease you in-
tend to cure, give such Water as is distilled out of the
Herb proper for that Disease, and sweeten it with the same
quantity of Syrup as you give Water, made also of the
same Herb, or some other proper for the Disease.

IV. If the Disease of the Body lie remote from the Sto-
mach and Bowels, then use Pills or Balls, which is the most
proper Physick for the Distemper, because they are longest
in Digestion, and therefore the most fit to carry off the Dis-
ease by degrees.

V. Rather be found faulty on the safer side, by giving
your Physick too weak than too strong.

VI. Consider the natural Temper of your Horse's Body
that is afflicted, and support it in that, or else you weaken
and

and destroy Nature, instead of repairing it; as the Heart is hot, the Bran cold, so apply your Simples accordingly.

VII. Those Medicines that are hot in the first degree, are just of the Heat and Temper of the Blood, and therefore most wholesome and proper for the Body.

VIII. All Medicines that are opening and provoke Urine, are best given in White-Wine or Ale, for they are of an opening nature, and great Strengtheners of the Reins.

IX. All Medicines that are given to stop any Looseness or Scouring, let him fast three Hours or more before he receive them.

X. Let your Medicines be proper to the Humour offending, or else you will weaken Nature, not the Disease.

XI. If the Humour offending be thin, that you intend to remove, then let your Medicine be gentle; but if it be thick and tough, then give him some cutting and opening Thing the Night before, to prepare his Body the better to his Purge the next Day.

XII. Have a care how you use binding Medicines, when you purge tough Humours.

XIII. If your Horse be bound in his Body, either rake him with your Hand, (being first anointed with Sallet-Oil, Hog's-Grease or sweet Butter, before you pull his baked or hard Dung from him) or else give him a Glister before you give him a Purge.

XIV. You must consider the Strength and Stature of your Horse, and accordingly prepare your Medicines, either stronger or weaker.

XV. If you give your Horse a Drench for a Cold, you usually give him of three sorts of Powders. *viz.* Fenugreek, Liquorice, Bay-Berries, Anniseeds, Cummin-Seeds, Grains of Paradise, Long Pepper, Elecampane, Turmerick, &c. But be sure you exceed not above three Ounces of them in his Drench at one time.

XVI. If you give a Horse a Scouring that is very strong and lusty, you may venture to give him with safety an Ounce or more of the best *Barbadoes* Aloes, (which are the strongest sort of Aloes that are) powdered and made up into Balls with fresh Butter, as you have Directions afterwards.

XVII. If you give Aloes *Succotrina*, you may give an Ounce and a half of them, (because they are of a weaker Nature than the other) dissolved on the Fire in half a Pint of White-Wine, and brewed afterwards in a Quart of

R

strong

strong Beer, with about two Ounces of fresh Butter put into it, which by reason of the loosening and opening Quality it hath, will cause the Aloes to work so much the sooner and better. This Proportion is to be given only to a large constitutioned Horse, a less Quantity will serve a smaller.

An Advertisement about the several sorts of Aloes, and how you may know not only their Goodness, but also distinguish them one from the other.

There are four several sorts of them, and differ only in Purity, viz. *Aloes Caballina*, *Aloes Hepatica*, *Aloes Barbadoes*, and *Aloes Succotrina*.

1. *Aloes Caballina* is a yellowish sort of Aloes, much of the Colour of a boiled Liver, and is somewhat dearer, stronger and better than *Aloes Hepatica*. This is seldom sold by itself, but kept only to mix amongst the black and coarser sort of Aloes, to give them a good Colour.

2. *Aloes Hepatica* is much of the same kind with the *Caballina* (for they come over mixt together) but is of a blackish rosinny Colour when refined, which is accounted the best Colour.

3. *Aloes of Barbadoes* is found out but of late Years, but is accounted the strongest sort of all the kinds of them. If it be of a duskyish sad brown, and hath an Eye of yellow amongst it, you may conclude it to be good, but the most common Colour is black like unto Pitch. An Ounce of either of these three is a Purge strong enough for most reasonable Horses.

4. *Aloes Succotrina* is the weakest, but best of all the kinds of them: If you break it thin, and find it of a clear rosinny Colour, and transparent, you may be satisfied 'tis the very best. This is four times dearer than the other sorts, and is also given to Horses (but in a larger Quantity) by those that value not their Purses.

XVIII. If you make your Balls of the Powder of Aloes and Butter, mix it not all at once with the Butter, but work it up in a little at first, and then divide it into three equal parts, and cover every part over with fresh Butter, about the bigness of a small Wash-ball; which will prevent the bitter Taste of the Aloes from offending him when you give them: give him a Horn-full of warm Beer after every one of them, not only to prevent sticking, but to clear his Passage the better for the remaining Balls. But the best way of

of making of Balls of Aloes for a Scouring, you may find after the best Receipt for the Glanders, within a Leaf of the latter end of the Book.

XIX. If you put *London-Treacle* at any time into your Horse's Drinks, put not above one Ounce of it at a time where there are other Ingredients; but if you give it by itself, you may give him two Ounces of it dissolved in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that a Quart of good Ale or Beer.

XX. When you physick your Horse at any time, give him his Hay so sparingly over night, that he may stand two or three Hours at the Rack-staves, and let him fast three or four Hours after he hath taken it.

XXI. 'Tis good to stir him a little after he hath taken his Drink, which will make his Physick work so much the better.

XXII. If you are about the Cure of any outward Wound or Sore, the best way to expedite it, is to keep the place warm, which is done by clapping a Plaster of *Burgundy Pitch* over the Medicine, which will be a means to defend the grieved part from the Air or Wind.

XXIII. If a Horse hath swoln or goured Legs, and hath been poisoned with the Medicines of other Farriers, and is fallen into your hands to cure; then be sure before you undertake to meddle with him, to wash his Legs very well with warm Whey, (or for want of that, Milk, but Whey is best) for this will clear off the Venom and Poison of their Medicines, and make the Cure more facile and easy to be effected.

Directions how to order a sick Horse.

1. Whensoever you find your Horse sick at any time, either of a Fever, Farcin, molten Grease, Cold, or any other Distempers, &c. and that you have given him something in order to his Cure, and yet you find his Stomach so bad that he falls from his Meat; then to recover it again, and to strengthen and keep up his weak and feeble Spirits, give him first, (to bring him to a Stomach) half a Pint of White-Wine Vinegar or Verjuice luke-warm, sweetned with two or three Spoonfuls of Honey, well dissolved in it over the Fire; and about three or four Hours after it, give him the common Cordial for Horses, which is made of a Quart or three Pints of strong Beer, with a good big Toast of Household Wheat-Bread crumbed into it gross and

well boiled. Before you give it him, while it is cooling, put into it two or three Spoonfuls of Honey, and about two Ounces of fresh or salt Butter, and let him have it lukewarm: give him at night a Mash of Malt or Oats, that are boiled till they are bursten. After he hath eaten them, let him feed upon Hay for about an Hour or more, then give him warm Water to drink, with a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran stirred amongst it; the next Morning give him his Cordial again, and at nine or ten of the clock warm Water and Bran, and boiled Oats, and now and then a Cordial of White-Wine and Honey, and moderate Exercise once or twice a day, (if he be not too weak to walk.) This is the only Method that I know of that you can use for the Recovery of a sick or weak Horse, and for to remedy his Costiveness which does usually attend Sickneses.

2. The longer he fasts after you have given him his Drink, (conditionally he be in good Heart and Strength) the better effect it will have in working upon the Disease for which it was given; for three or four Hours is time long enough to fast, but if he be a sick, feeble and weak Horse, then two Hours are enough.

3. After he hath fasted according to his Strength, give him some comfortable thing to recruit his Spirits; as a Mash of Malt, boiled Oats, scalded Bran, &c. which will be a means to put Heart and Strength into him again, which his Drench and Fasting may in some measure have weakened.

4. If you use your Horse to scalded Bran, Mash of Malt, or boiled Oats, and half boiled Fenugreek amongst them, or given him at any time amongst his Provender, he will be the more ready and willing to take his Oats thus prepared, (which is very good after any Drench you have given him) viz. To boil a quarter of a Pound of Fenugreek with half a Peck of Oats till they burst, and throw them into the Manger scalding hot; and tho he cannot well eat them till they be somewhat cold, yet the Steam that doth arise from thence is very wholesome to open and comfort his Head and Brain, and to free him from Colds and Stuffings therein. If you find him nice, and not willing to eat them, decoy him with a little Wheat-Bran strowed upon them, which by the liking he may have to that, possibly may cause him to lick them up both together. The Water that is drained from his Oats put into a Pail of cold Water by itself,
and

and give it him to drink lukewarm, after he hath fed a little while upon Hay.

An Advertisement, not only touching the Usefulness of the general Simples, set down in order one after another, in the first and second Part for the Cure of all inward and outward Diseases, but also of the Table of Simples.

Wherever you meet with such Simples in the first and second Part, imagine not that they were put there to no other end nor purpose, than to blot or blur Paper with, or that they were intended only to make the Book swell large and big, to bring Profit and Advantage to the Bookseller. I confess to the Ignorant and Unskilful it may appear so, by reason of their want of Knowledge and Judgment, to discern and apprehend the several Uses for which they were written. But if the Ingenious and Skilful in the Art of Farring, (to whom these things were principally intended) consider them, and seriously weigh the Nature and Virtue of every one of them, they will quickly come to understand their Usefulness, and readily employ them to the same end they were first designed and intended for, viz. not only to improve their Knowledge and Understanding in the Nature of them as to the Theorick, but also as to the Practick, in bettering their Skill in the physical Uses of them; conditionally they will be so ingenious as to compound and fit up their several Juices or Powders into Medicaments according to Art, as their Genius and Inclinations may lead them. Neither are they placed here because there wants Receipts for the Cure of all Diseases, either inward or outward; but for the general good of all (as I have said before) that will be studious to divert and recreate themselves in compounding and making up of new Medicines proper and suitable to the Diseases they intend them for; so that here you see that so long as you have this Magazine or Storehouse of Nature to come to, this Book will never be old, but be always fresh and new, unto those that will resort unto it for their Improvement.

To make Oil of Camomile, which is very sovereign for any Grief in the Limbs, which proceeds from a cold Cause.

Take a good Handful of Camomile, and bruise it in a Mortar, then put it into a Quart of Sallet-Oil in some convenient Vessel fit for your Use, and let it remain therein

three Days and three Nights, then strain out the Oil from the Camomile, and put into it some fresh Herbs, and let them stand also the same time; then change it twice more as you did before, and your Oil is made.

To make Oil of Spike, which is good for all manner of Sinew-strains, or Pains or Aches in the Limbs.

Take the Flowers of Spike, and wash them in Sallet-Oil, then stamp them well, and put them into a Canvass-bag, and press out what Oil you can get; then put it into a Glass and set it by, and it will clear of it self, and wax fair and bright, and smell very strong of the Spike.

You may make Oil of other Herbs after this manner.

To make Oil of Mastick, which is good for any cold Grief.

Take two Ounces of Mastick, and two Ounces of Olibanum, and boil them in a Quart of Sallet-Oil to a third part; then put it into a Canvass-Bag, and press out what Oil you can get as you did the other, and let it stand by you about twelve or fourteen Days, and it will be perfect.

Comprehensive Terms explained.

1. The five greater opening Roots are, Fennel, Smallage, Parsley, Sparrowgrass and Knee-holly. To which may be added, Garlick, Onions, Angellica, Liquorice, Gentian, Succory, Endive, Celandine, Squills and Master-wort.

2. The five lesser opening Roots, are Eringo, Grass, Capers, Rest-harrow and Maddar. To which you may add, Turmerick, Birthwort, Elecampane, Horse-radish, and Polypodium.

3. The five softning Herbs, are Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Mercury, Violet-leaves and Beets. To which you may add, Pellitory of the Wall, Coleworts, Arrach, Melilot and white Lillies.

4. The hairy Herbs are, Maiden-hair, Wall-Rue, Spleenwort, Hartshorn and Trichomanes. The greater are Piony, Lavender, Rosemary, Sage and Poppy.

5. The four Cordial Flowers are Borrage, Bugloss, Roses and Violets. To which you may add Saffron, Marigolds, Spikenard, Rosemary, Clovegilliflowers and Poppy.

6. The four greater hot Seeds are Annise, Cummin, Caraway and Fennel. To which you may add Cardamoms, Grains of Paradise, Pepper and Mustard-seed.

7. The four lesser hot Seeds are, Amomus, Bishops-weed, Parsley

Parsley and Carrots. To which you may add, Cubebs, Dill, Rocket, Smallage and Erysimum.

8. The four greater cold Seeds are, Cucumber, Gourd, Citrul and Melon. To which you may add, Poppy, Henbane, Nightshade and Hemlock.

9. The four lesser cold Seeds are, Endive, Lettice, Succory and Purslain. To which you may add, Chickweed, Dandelion and Plantain.

10. The three hot Flowers are, Camomile, Melilot, Iris or Flower-de-luce. To which you may add, Saffron, Lavender and Rosemary.

11. The four hot Ointments are, Martiarum, Aragon, Althea and Agrippæ. To which may added, Nervinum, Laurinum, Anodynum and Amarum.

12. The four cold Ointments are, Rosarum, Album Camphorinum, Populeum, Refrigerans Galeni. To which may be added, Sumach, Nightshade, Pomatum and Diaphompholigus, which are all bought at the Apothecaries.

The Cold and Hot Ointments repeated over again, with the Virtues belonging to them.

1. *Martiarum* is good for all cold Diseases of the Body, as Palsys, Convulsions, Cramps, Stiffness of the Nerves and Joints, Falling-Sickness, Lethargy, &c.

2. *Aragon* hath all the Virtues of *Martiarum*.

3. *Althea* softens, dissolves and assuages Pains in any part of the Body, and is good against Stiffness and Contracting of the Nerves, helps Palsys and Convulsions, and is good to conglutinate and close up the Mouth of Wounds.

4. *Agrippæ* is very excellent for all watry Tumors in the outward parts, by anointing them there with; it kills Worms, and expels Water by Purging.

5. *Nervinum* is good for the Nerves, to comfort, strengthen and amend their Defects, proceeding from Cold and dead Palsys, Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness, Bruises and old Aches, &c.

6. *Laurinum*, is good for all cold and moist Diseases of the Brain, Nerves, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Joints; it helps Weariness, and is good for all old Aches and Pains, and other Diseases.

7. *Anodynum* is good to assuage Tumors, Inflammations, and easeth Pain in any part of the Body.

8. *Amarum*, anointed on the Belly and Chest, and between the Shoulders, expels Water, and kills Worms,

opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, provokes Urine; the Shape being also anointed with it expels the Heam.

9. *Rosarum* is of a fine cooling Nature, very useful for all Gallings of the Skin, and Frettings accompanied with cholerick Humours, Tettars, Ring-worms, and is good to mitigate Diseases of the Head coming of Heat.

10. *Album Comphoratum* is an excellent cold Ointment to assuage Pain, and is a great Dryer, and is good for Scabs, Burnings and hot Inflammations, Chafings, Frettings or Gallings of the Skin; it dries up Ulcers, and takes away their itching in the time of healing.

11. *Populeum* is a very cooling Ointment, which softens and eases Pains.

12. *Refrigerans* cools and moistens, and is good to cure Inflammations, Tumors, Wounds and other Maladies, proceeding from hot and dry Diseases.

13. *Sumach* is good for the Falling of the Fundament, and helps Pains and Weakness in the Back, consolidates Ruptures, &c.

14. *Night-shade* is a very cooling Ointment.

15. *Pomatum* is softning, cooling and assuaging, and comforteth weary Limbs.

16. *Diaphompholigos* cools, dries, heals and skins Wounds, Sores and Ulcers, &c.

These are all very costly Ointments, and are to be used only by the Rich, who value not their Purses; yet the honest and plain Farrier hath far more cheap, and every whit as good, proper and useful Medecines for the Cure of the said Distempers as the other are, conditionally he takes the pains to look them out, which he may here and there find scattered throughout the whole Work.

Of the Use of Antimony.

Crude Antimony is a Mineral much like unto Lead, the best coming from *Transylvania* and *Hungaria*, and is known by its bright and long Flakes. 'Tis an excellent thing to put into a Horse's Provender, to cleanse and purify his Blood, and to free his Body from Colds, or other Distempers, that lie hid and lurking therein to destroy him. The manner how you are to use it, is to beat it very small, and then sift it through a fine Sieve; then strew about a quarter of an Ounce of it Morning and Evening, (for about a Month together) in a quarter of a Peck of his Oats, being first wet with good Ale or Beer. 'Tis sold at the Druggists for 6 d the

the pound. The Filings of Steel-Needles is also very good for the said Distempers, used after this manner.

General things good for the Joints and Sinews, that have in them any Ach or Numbness, Weakness or Swelling.

If it proceed from a hot Cause, you must apply cooling things to it; but if from a cold Cause, hot things.

The Oil that is pressed out of Almonds is a great Mitigator of Pain and all manner of Aches, Aquavitæ, Archangel, Allheal, Balsam; *Burgundy* Pitch spread upon Leather, and laid to the Place grieved, draweth forth all manner of Pain. Burnet, Brandy, Bay-leaves, Brank-ursin, the Oil of Camomile, the bruised Roots of Comfrey, Cowslips, Chickweed, Centaury, Cow-Parsnips, Germander, Hawk-weed, Mallows or Marshmallows, Mug-wort, Mullen, Pennyroyal, Purslain, the Great-leaved Dock, Saxifrage, *English* Tobacco, Graden-Tansy, wild Mother of Thyme, Sow-Fennel, Flower-de-luce, Turpentine, Rag-weed stamped very small, and boiled with some Hog's-grease, to the Consumption of the Juice, and at the end of the boiling it, add to it Mastick and Olibanum, and anoint the Place with it. Pepper, Saffron, Garlick, Rosemary, Frankincense, Myrrh, Sciatica-Cresses, wild Tansy, Spignel, yellow Wall-Flower, Nep, Catmint, Herb Gerrard, Mustard-seed, &c.

Particular Receipts for Aches.

Take Acopium and mix it well with Sack, and chafe it very well in with your Hand; and if it be of a cold Cause, it will take it away at three or four times doing.

Another.

Take Brandy or Aquavitæ, and chafe and bathe the place grieved very well with it, and dry it in with a hot Fire-shovel; then take a Rag, and dip in the Brandy or Aquavitæ, and strew the inside of it all over with Pepper, finely beaten and searced, and bind it to the place grieved, and swathe it up with a dry Roller, and do it thus once every day till he become sound.

Another.

Take of sweet Butter half a pound, of Aquavitæ a Gill, of Saffron half a Dram, Pepper finely beaten and searced three Drams, three Heads of Garlick bruised; mix them all together, and let them stew on the Fire, and not boil, till it come to a Salve. This being chafed in very warm to the

the place grieved, and a brown Paper wet in the same, and bound to it, with a dry Cloth upon that, and so used Morning and Evening, will cure it,

Things good in general for St. Anthony's Fire.

The Juice of Houfleeck tempered with white Lead, the Juice of the green Leaves of Garden Nightshade mixed with Barley-Meal, is good for it and all hot Inflammations. Allum put to the Juice of white Beets, the Roots of Cinquefoil boiled in Vinegar, the distilled Water of Colts-Foot, with Elder-flowers and Nightshade, and applied; Crabs-claws, the Juice of Wall-pennywort, with the Leaves and Flowers of Fever-few, are good for it, and all hot Inflammations and Swellings. The Roots of Bugloss mixed with Sallet-Oil and Barley-Meal, Water-Sengreen or Fresh-Water-soldier, Ducks-meat, the Leaves of the Gooseberry-bush, or Hawk-weed bruised and applied with Salt. The Juice of Kidney-wort applied also taketh away all outward Heat and Inflammations; the Juice of Mallows or Marshmallows boiled in Sallet-Oil, and applied, is very good; a Poultrice made of Barley-Meal and Hog's-grease, with the green Heads of Garden-poppy bruised and applied with Vinegar, is also very good, so is the Juice of Purslain. An Ointment made of the Juice of Garden-Rue, with Oil of Roses, Cerufs and a little Vinegar, and applied, is most excellent; the Juice of the bruised Leaves of Succory is good, so is an Ointment made of Woad, and the place anointed with it. But because it is a Disease very rare to be found in Horses, you shall have as strange a Cure. 'Tis this:

A particular Receipt for St. Anthony's Fire.

After you have cast him, slit the Skin of the Fore-head of the Horse under the Fore-top, and open the same round about with your Corner, rounding it about an Inch every way; which done, take a Worm, which you shall find in a Fuller's Teasel, and blow it in alive with a Quill into the place, and have a care you kill not the Worm in stitching up the Skin again, for in twenty days the Worm will die, and in that time the Horse will be thoroughly cured. If you would know the Nature of the Disease, you may find it hereafter, in a Table set down alphabetically, shewing where the Diseases of a Horse do grow, and the Causes of them.

Things

Things good in general for the Anticor or Heart-Sickness.

To let blood, if you know he wants it, and to give him a Purgation of Sack, Sallet-Oil and Sugarcandy, or Sugar and Cinnamon given him in Sack or Diapente, or Dr. Stephens's Water, Butter-burr, Avens, &c.

A particular Receipt for the Anticor or Heart-Sickness.

After the Swelling appears, and you have taken a good quantity of Blood on both sides of the Neck, give him the Drink of Diapente with Beer or Ale, which you may find in my First Part, putting therein one Ounce of brown Sugarcandy, and half an Ounce of London Treacle, which will drive the Sickness and Grief from his Heart; which done, anoint the Swelling with this Ointment :

Ointment.

Take Hog's-grease, Boar's-grease and Basilicon, of each three Ounces ; incorporate them well together, and anoint and rub the Swelling every day till it become soft ; then open it, and let forth the Corruption, and wash the Sore with the Copperas-Water, which you may find in my first Part ; and taint it with your green Ointment, which you may find as aforesaid, and it will be soon whole.

Things good in general for an upper or nether Attaint, or any Hurt by Over-reaching.

Before you apply your Salve, lay the place bare without hollowness, and wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt ; and then what will cure a Mallender or Sellander, will cure this.

Particular Receipts good for an upper Attaint.

Take Venice-Turpentine one Ounce, and Brandy three Spoonfuls, beat them well together till they come to a Salve, and anoint the Sore very well therewith, and heat it well in with a hot Iron ; and do this three or four times, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take of *Sanguis Draconis* three quarters of an Ounce, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce, Sallet-Oil as much, Mastich three Ounces, Suet as much, and as much Hog's-grease ; melt and mix all these together, and lay it to the Swelling, and it will take it away.

Ano-

Another.

Take one or two Handfuls of *Saxifrage*, and all the Suet of a Loin of Mutton, and a Pint of White-Wine, chop the Herb, and mince the Suet very small, and boil them all very well together; then take a good quantity of Horse-dung newly made by a Horse that goes to grass, and mix with the other Ingredients, and work it to a Salve, and apply it plaster-wise hot to the place, renewing it every day so long as you think convenient: and this is a very excellent Cure.

Another for the nether Attaint,

Take a piece of Filleting, and bind it about the Pastern-Joint pretty hard, which will cause the Blister or Swelling the better to appear; then let out the corrupt Jelly with your Incision-Knife, and crush it all out; then heal it up with your Copperas-Water, and anoint it with the green Ointment.

Things good in general for the Stavers, Head-Ach, or Farcin.

To let blood, to hang about his Neck the Root of *Amarra dulcis*, the Juice of Sow-Fennel or Hog's-Fennel squirted up his Nose, or the Seed and Root of Cow-Parasnip boiled in Oil, and his Head anointed therewith; the Seeds of Brank-Cresses blown up his Nostrils, or Ducks-Meat apply'd to his Forehead made into a Poultrice, or his Head bathed with the distilled Water of common Elder, take it away if it cometh of a cold Cause. Flea-wort bruised and apply'd after the same manner, doth the like, so doth Germander and Henbane bruised with Vinegar, and apply'd. The Dust of Tobacco blown up his Head with a large Quill or Kix, causeth him to sneeze, which easeth him from the Pain; the Root of Pellitory of *Spain* dry'd and beaten to Powder, and used in the same manner, doth the like. The Juice of Cellandine put into his Ears, or *Affætoetida* dissolved in Brandy, and put into his Ears, or Verjuice and Salt put into his Ears, or Groundsel and *Aqua-vitæ* stamp'd together and put into his Ears, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Stavers.

After you have taken blood from him, take the quantity of a Hazle-Nut of sweet Butter and Salt, dissolve it in a Saucer full of White-Wine Vinegar; then take Lint or fine
Flax

Flax dipt therein, and so stop both his Ears therewith, and stitch them up, and let it remain there about twelve hours, and he will be cured.

Another.

Take of bitter Almonds an Ounce and a half, of the Gall of an Ox two Drams, of black Hellebore made into fine Powder a half-pennyworth; of Grains, Castoreum, Vinegar, and Varnish, of each five Drams; boil all these together till the Vinegar be consumed, then strain it and put it into his Ears, and do as you did before.

Another.

Aquavitæ and Garlick so much as will suffice, and stamp them together and put into his Ears, doing as before.

Another.

Take the Seeds of Cressy, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Pursly, of Dill (the Seeds only of these Herbs) and take also Pepper and Saffron, of each two Drams; make them all into fine Powder, and put to them of Barley-water two Quarts, boiling hot from the Fire, and let it infuse therein three hours, and strain it and give him one Quart thereof, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and the next day give him the other Quart fasting; and let him drink no cold Water for four or five days after, but only white Water, unless sometimes a sweet Mash, and this will cure him. You must note, that in this Disease of the Stavers you must be sure to let him blood before you give him any Medicine.

Another.

After you have sharpened a small and tough Oaken or Ashen Stick, and made a Notch at one end like a Fork, (to keep it from running so far into his Head) put it into his Nostrils, and job it up and down to the top of his Head, which will cause the Blood to descend freely: then in the Morning fasting give him this Drink well brew'd together, viz. One Ounce of the Powder of Turmerick, with as much of the Powder of Anniseeds in a Quart of Strong-beer or Ale, with a Pint of Verjuice, and a Quarter of a Pint of Brandy; and stop his Ears with Aquavitæ and Herb-grass beaten very well together. Put an equal quantity into each Ear, and stop Flox or Hurds over it to keep it down, and stitch them up with a Needle and Thred, and let it remain in for about twenty four Hours; then unstitch them

them and pull forth the Hurds, and the next day blood him in the Neck, and give him his Blood with a Handful of Salt put therein well stirred together to keep it from clotting, and he is in a fair way to be cured.

Things good in general for the Yellows.

Agrimony, Water-Agrimony, the Bark of the black Elder-Tree, Hops, Fennel, Smallage, Endive, Succory-Roots, Garden-Arrach, Orach, Asarabacca, Ash-tree, the Juice of Coleworts, the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree, or Berry, Bay-berries, Burdock-Roots, Wood-Betony, Bistort or Snakeweed, Red Beets, Burrage or Bugloss, Butchers-broom, Calamint or Mountain-Mint, Camomile, Carduus benedictus, Celandine, the Juice of Cinquefoil, the Juice of Clivers, the Seed of Columbines and Saffron boiled together, and given him; Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Eringo, Flax-weed or Toad-flax, the Juice of the Flower-de-luce, Fumitory, the Furz-bush, Garlick, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Seed of Germander, Groundsel, the Roots of black Hellebore, the yellow Berries of Ivy, Liver-wort, Madder, Maidenhair, Wall-Rue, the Seed both of the Male and Female; Mercury, Wild Marjoram, Wormwood, Mouse-ear, Hedge-Mustardseed, Cow Parsnips, the Roots of Pennyroyal, the Seed of Plantain, Bastard-Rhubarb or the great round-leaved Dock, Rupture-wort, Saracens Confound or Saracens Woundwort, Shepherds-Purse, the Seeds and Roots of Sorrel, Spleenwort, Tamarisk, Tormentil or Setfoil, Vervain, Ground-pine, Myrrh, Ivory or Hartshorn, Long Pepper, Liquorice, Anniseeds, Ganders or Geese Dung, Mistletoe, White-Thorn, the Roots of Parsley, Pimpernel, Chickweed, Sheeps Dung steeped in Beer. You are to let him blood in the first place.

A particular Receipt for the Yellows.

Take an Ounce of Mithridate, and dissolve it in a Quart of Ale or Beer, and give it him lukewarm. But if you have no Mithridate, give him two Ounces of London Treacle, and for want of that two or three Spoonfuls of common Treacle.

Another particular Receipt for the Yellows.

Take of Turmerick, Burdock-Roots, long Pepper, of each about half an Ounce; Anniseeds and Liquorice in fine Powder and searced, of each a Spoonful; Celandine, the Leaves and Roots, one Handful, chopt small, and strain the Celan-

Celandine, and put them into a Quart of Strong-beer, and boil them a little on the Fire, and in the Cooling sweeten it with *London Treacle*, and put into it a good piece of Butter, and give it him bloodwarm, and give him white Water, and he will do well.

Another.

Take of the best live Honey, half a Pound of Saffron and Fenugreek made into fine Powder as much as will suffice; incorporate these with your Honey to a stiff Paste, and so make thereof three Pills, and dipping them in Sallet-Oil give him them, and ride him and walk him gently an hour, and set him up warm.

Another.

After you have let him blood, take a Quart of Ale, and put an Ounce of Saffron and an Ounce of Turmerick into it, being first made into fine Powder, and with the Juice of Celandine so much as will suffice, and give it him bloodwarm.

Another for the Yellows.

After you have bled him on both sides the Neck, and third Bar on the Palate of the Mouth, give him Camomile, Elder-Leaves and Celandine, of each a small Handful chopt indifferent small, with a little of the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree boiled in three Pints of Strong-beer or Ale till they come to a Quart. Then strain the Herbs from the Liquor, and give it him lukewarm fasting in the Morning, with a piece of sweet Butter melted in it, and sweetned with two Spoonfuls of Honey or common Treacle; and order him as you have Directions in the physicking of Horses.

Another for the Yellows.

To let blood as before; then give him Turmerick and Anniseeds beaten to powder, of each an Ounce, with half an Ounce of the Powder of the inner Bark of the Barberry-Tree, or for want of that a Gill of the Juice of Celandine. Give him all these either in a Pint of White-Wine Vinegar, or in a Quart of stale Beer, and half a Pint of Brandy lukewarm, fasting in the Morning. Give him with it a Spoonful of the Flower of Brimstone, at the Mouth of the first Horn you give him, but none with the rest; and order him as you do usually sick Horses.

Another.

Another for it.

After you have let blood, as you must always do in this Disease, mix two-pennyworth of Saffron beaten well to powder, a Thimble-full or two of the Powder of Turmerick with fresh Butter, and make it up into a small Ball, and give it him for three or four Mornings together fasting, and it will cure him.

Simples that are good in general for the Cure of the Black Jaundice or Yellows.

The Decoction of the Flowers of Sorrel made in White-Wine or stale Beer, and sweetned with Honey, helpeth it given him often. The Powder of the Leaves and Bark of the Tamarisk-Tree is also good given him in Beer, so is the Juice of the Leaves of Broom, as also the Seeds given him several Mornings together in Beer till you see Amendment. A Horn-full of it is enough to give him at a time.

A particular Receipt which is very good for the Cure of it.

Take the Roots of red Docks, the Roots of Burdocks, and slice a good quantity of them, and put them into a Bottle of Beer, with a little Mithridate, close stopt, and give him a Horn or two full of it in the Morning fasting.

Things good in general for the Falling-Evil, Planet-struck, Nightmare, or Palsy.

Fifteen of the Seeds of the single Piony given him in four Wine; to hang a Flint-stone over his Head, or some old Scythe or old Iron, or to give him Exercise before and after Water, and to mix Hemp seed in his Provender, and to enforce him to sweat; Mistletoe of the Oak given, Mustard-seed, the Seed of the black Poplar, Cinquefoil, Germander, Hyssop, St. John's-wort, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Nightmare.

Take a Handful of Salt, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, brown Sugarcandy four Ounces; mix them all very well together, and warm them on the Fire, and give it him blood-warm two Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Another.

Give him this purging Pill, take of Tar three Spoonfuls, of sweet Butter the like quantity, beat them well together with

with the Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds and Sugarcandy, till it be like Paste: then make them into round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick, and so give it him, observing to warm him before and after, and let him be fasting likewise two or three Hours before and after.

Things good in general for Cramps or Convulsions of the Sinews.

Rhubarb taken inwardly, the Seed of Bastard St. John's-wort given, the Oil drawn from sweet Marjoram, and the grieved place anointed with it is good for all manner of Aches coming of a cold Cause, Calamint given inwardly, Betony, Elecampane, Master-wort or the Herb Gerard given inwardly, the Roots of Valerian given, Southernwood or the Seeds of the Lady's Thistle given, Juniper-berries given, Bay-berries, China-roots, Brank-Ursin taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly, the Leaves of the Burdock bruised and laid to the place grieved, Oil of Camomile, Centaury apply'd to it, Costus, the Juice of Chickweed made up with Hog's-grease, if you anoint the place grieved with it, is very good; or to force him to sweat by Cloths, or to bury him in a Horse-Dunghil only with his Head out. Allheal or Centaury bruised and apply'd to them is very good, so is Sow-Fennel bruised with Sallet-Oil and Vinegar, and apply'd; so is Gentian and Germander bruised and apply'd. The Powder of stinking Gladwin boiled in Ale or Beer, and given, is good: a Poultrice made of Hawkweed and Barley-meal, and laid to the place offended, is also good. Lavender is good for them given inwardly; the Roots and Seeds of Marshmallows boiled in the Grounds of Beer, and apply'd, is also good for them: so is a Decoction of Mugwort with Camomile and Agrimony, and the grieved place bathed therewith warm. Pennyroyal apply'd with Salt, Honey and Vinegar, is also good; Hermodactyls and Venice-Turpentine given inwardly are also very good. The Juice of the green Herb of Tobacco made into an Ointment and apply'd, is also very good, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Cramp.

Chafe and rub the Member contracted with Vinegar and common Oil, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay or
S
rotten

rotten Litter, or else with wet woollen Cloths; either of which is a present Remedy.

Another.

After you have sweated him well in a Horse Dunghill, anoint him with this Ointment: Take of Hog's-grease one Pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a Pound, of Pepper half a Dram, of new Wax half a Pound, of Sallet-Oil one Pound; boil them all together, and anoint him with it.

Another.

Take Pimpernel, Primrose-Leaves, Camomile, Crowfoot, Mallows, Fennel, Rosemary, of each six Handfuls, steeped forty eight Hours in fair Water, and boil them in it till they be tender, and bathe him therewith four days together, Morning and Evening, and apply the Herbs to the place with a Thumb-band of Hay wet in the same Liquor, and anoint the said Member every day about Noon, with Petroleum, Nerval, and Oil of Spike mixed together.

Another.

Take two Quarts of Strong Ale, and of black Soap two Pounds, and boile them together till they look like Tar, with some Brandy, and anoint the place grieved therewith.

Things good in general for all Colds or Coughs wet and dry, or for any Consumption or Putrefaction of the Lungs.

Agrimony, Bay-Berries, Elecampane, Liquorice, Anni-seeds, Long-Pepper, Moss of an Oaken Pale or Timber-Stick boiled in Milk, Briony, a great Purger which must be corrected; the Gum of the Cherry-Tree dissolved in Ale; Coltsfoot, Hawksweed, Horehound, Juniper-Berries Pellitory of the Wall given him with Honey and brown Sugarcandy; Pennyroyal boiled in Milk, Groundpine, the Juice of Purslain, the Juice of Jack by the Hedge, Scabious, Vervain, Fennelseeds, Fenugreek, Cardamom, Cummin, Siliris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, Brimstone, Germander is good for all moist Colds, Hempseed, Raisins of the Sun, Sallet-Oil, Garlick, Tar given him in an Eggshel, Celandine, Mustard and Allum boiled in Milk or Beer, Rhubarb, Cassia, Myrrh, Herb-grass, Caraway Seeds, Marjoram, Currants, Melilot, Lions-Foot, Lady's-Mantle,

Mantle, Opoponax, Galbanum, Storax, a Hedgehog dried in an Oven and beaten to powder, and mixed with his Provender, or Groundsel shred small with the Powder of Anniseeds boiled in Beer, Hyssop, Water and Salt brayed together and given him, is good for a new Cold; or Oil de Bay, Anniseeds and Liquorice, of each alike made into fine Powder, and sewed in a Linen Cloth and fastned to his Bit, and to ride him upon it, is good to break a new Cold; Ivy-Berries dried and beaten to powder and given in Beer, the Seed of Bank-Cresses, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Root of Centaury boiled in Beer and sweetned with Treacle, the Root of Mullin or Longwort, Ferula, Rosemary, bitter Almonds, Grains of Paradise, Lungwort, or Wood Liverwort; or take a Hen-Egg after the White is taken out, and fill it up with Butter, Tar and Salt, and put it down his Throat for three Mornings together, is very good for an old Cough: the Powder of Angelica taken in the distilled Water of Agarick and Wood-Betony mixed with common Treacle or Honey is very good, the Root of Burrage or Bugloss made into an Electuary and given, is also good; the Juice or the Decoction of Cinquefoil with Honey cureth the Cough of the Lungs; Feverfew with the Juice of Sow-Fennel put into an Egg, (the White being taken out) with brown Sugarcandy, or a little *London* Treacle, and given, is excellent: a Syrup made of the green Leaves of the Fruit of the Figtree is good for all the Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, Hyssop boiled with Rue and Honey is good, so is Lungwort, Maidenhair, wild Rotchet, Sugar and Sallet Oil is also very good; the Liquor of the wounded Beachtree given in the Decoction of Coltsfoot is also very good for him, so is also Polypody with Sugarcandy. Or any of these Juices with Honey and Sugarcandy made into a Paste, with the Flowers of Brimstone and Liquorice, are very good, &c.

Particular Receipts for Colds.

Take the Moss that is growing upon an Oaken Pale or Timber-stick, one Handful or better, and boil it very well in three Pints of new Milk, with a green Root of Elecampane cut into thin and small Slices with some Liquorice, and let it boil till the Milk be half consumed, then strain it and press it thoroughly, and as it is a cooling put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him bloodwarm. This

is good also for the Head-Ach, Frenzy, Stavers, Pose, Cold, Cough wet or dry, Shortness of Breath, rotten Lungs, Glanders, Lax, Looseness, Bloody-Flux, or the like Diseases. You may boil them in Ale or Beer, I mean the Ingredients you make up your Drink with. Let him have this Drink three Mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough wet and dry.

Another to take away a Cold, Pose or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any inward Medicine.

Take a small quantity of fresh or sweet Butter, and of Brimstone made into fine powder; work them together till they be one entire Body, and of a deep yellow Gold-Colour, then take two long Goose-wing Feathers, and anoint them herewith to the very Quills on either side: which done, roll them into more of the Powder of Brimstone, and so put one into either Nostril, and at the butt-end of the Quill put a strong Packthred, which must be fastned over his Pole, like to the Head-stall of a Bridle, and ride him moderately after it about an Hour; and this will provoke him to snort and snuffle out of his Nose and Head, much of congealed Filth which is in his Head. Then tye him to the Rack for an Hour after, and this will purge his Head very clean; then draw forth the Feathers, and he will do will, keeping him warm, and giving him Mashies or White-Water for four or five Mornings together. This you may safely use to a Horse, that is ready to hunt or run for any great Wager, and the day is so near that you durst not give him any inward Drench.

Another very good, tho short.

Take of Thyme one Handful, boil it in a Quart of strong Ale till it come to a Pint, then strain it; add thereunto of ordinary Treacle two Spoonfuls, and give it him blood-warm.

Another for a new taken Cold.

Take Water and Salt, and brew them well together, and give it him bloodwarm.

Another for a Cold newly taken.

Take a Hen's Egg, and make a little hole on the top to take out the White and Yolk; then take Tar and Butter, of each alike, and put it into the Egg after you have work'd it very well together, and give it him three Mornings together.

Another

Another which will cure a long taken Cold, yea, tho it be accompanied with a dry Cough, and Shortness of Breath or Purfiness; and it hath done Cures that have been held very impossible to have been effected.

Take of the Conserve of Elecampane three quarters of an Ounce, and dissolve it in a Pint and a half of sweet Sack, and give it him in the morning fasting, and ride him gently a little after; and thus do several times, till you find the Infirmary does decrease.

The kinds of this Conserve, and how to make it.

There are two kinds thereof, one is called particularly a Preserve, and the other an absolute Conserve. The first is simple, the other compound, both very sovereign, but the Conserve is the best: they will keep a whole Year close stopped. The simple you must preserve as you do all other green Roots, and keep it close in a Gallypot, in its own Syrup, and when you use it, beat it in a Mortar together with its Syrup and refined Sugar made first into fine powder. Now your Compound or Conserve is thus made; First let your Roots of Elecampane be neatly candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the youngest Roots you can, which must be kept also in a Gallypot or Glass, close stopped in a dry and warm place, where they may not give again; and when you use it, beat so much of it in a Mortar as you shall use, with the Syrup of Coltsfoot, and the Powder of refined Sugar, still working it till you have brought it to a perfect Conserve, and give it him in sweet Sack. The first of these two, which is the simple, helpeth an ordinary Cold or Stopping, it comforteth the Lungs, enlargeth his Wind, purgeth the Head from all filthy Matter, and dissolveth many other Obstructions as well in the Body as the Head. But the Compound or Conserve worketh better Effects in the Body of the Horse, especially if the Malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any Taint in the Lungs, Liver, or inward Parts. This Conserve in time, by the frequent Use thereof, will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable. But if you have not these Conserves, take this other Receipt.

Another.

Take of the Syrup of Coltsfoot one Ounce, of Elecampane Roots dried, Anniseeds and Liquorice, of each half

an Ounce, all made into fine powder; an Ounce of brown Sugarcandy, which must be divided into two parts: then take sweet Butter as much as will suffice, and so make this up into three Balls good and stiff, which done roll them in your other Moiety of your powdered Sugarcandy, and so give it him fasting, and ride him gently for half an Hour, and so set him up warm, and let him fast three Hours after it, and let him drink no cold Water, unless it be with Exercise, and sprinkle his Hay with Water, and his Oats with Beer or Ale.

A Fume for a Horse that is stopped in the Head, and that voideth Filth and stinking Matter out of his Nose.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Coltsfoot made into powder, of each two Drams, with *Venice-Turpentine*; work them into a stiff Paste, and make them into small Cakes the breadth of a Sixpence, and dry them a little, and put one of these Cakes into a Chafingdish of Coals covered with a Tunnel, and so fume him; and this not only during his Physick, but at other times after.

For a new Cold give him this Candle.

Take the Yolks of four new-laid Eggs, and beat them well together, and dissolve them with a Quart of good Ale; then take three Nutmegs, with a little Anniseeds and Liquorice, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can put upon a Sixpence, and put these in also with a piece of sweet Butter, and two or three Spoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and of brown Sugarcandy four Ounces; warm them all upon the Fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, and give it him bloodwarm four or five Mornings together, and this is an infailible Cure.

Another for a Cold.

Take four Ounces of Horse-Spice, half an Ounce of Diapente, one Ounce of the Powder of Elecampane-Roots, half an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, one Pennyworth of common Treacle, one Pennyworth of Honey, half a quarter of a Pint of Sallet-Oil; take all these together with a little Wheat-Flower to a Paste, made up in a small Ball every morning so long as it lasts, wrapped up in sweet Butter.

Another, which cures any Cold or dry Cough, Shortness of Breath, Purfiness, or Broken-wind.

Take of Tar and sweet Butter of each three Spoonfuls, and work them well together, with the fine Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds and Sugarcandy, till it be brought to a hard Paste; then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give him them, and warm him before and after he hath received them, and be sure that he be fasting before he takes them, and let him fast three Hours after them.

Another for the same Purpose.

Take of the white Fat or Lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almost two fingers thick both ways, then with your Knife make many holes in it, and stop it with as many Cloves of Garlick as you can conveniently get into it; then rolling it in the Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds, Sugarcandy and Brimstone, of equal Proportions alike, and give it him in a morning fasting, twice a Week, till you find Amendment, and ride him after it, and sprinkle his Hay with Water.

Another.

Take a Red-Herring, and take out the Bones, and roll it up in Tar, and give it him down his Throat, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take of the Juice of Liquorice, London-Treacle, Anniseeds, Turmerick, Fenugreek and Long Pepper, of each an Ounce; beat the hard Simples into powder, then put to them two Ounces of English Honey, and as much of Sugarcandy, and incorporate all together, and make thereof Balls as big as Pullets Eggs, and give him two or three in a morning fasting, and give him two new-laid Eggs after them, and at Noon give him a Mash; keep him warm, and do this twice or thrice.

Another for a desperate dry Cough.

Take a Pint of burnt Sack, Sallet-Oil, and Red Wine-Vinegar, of both a quarter of a Pint; of Fenugreek, Turmerick, Long-Pepper and Liquorice, of each a Spoonful in Powder, and give it him half at one Nostril, and half at another, and do this twice a week, and ride him after it and;

and let him fast two Hours, and keep his Head and Breast warm.

Another for a Horse that hath a rattling Cold in his Head.

Take a quarter of a Pint of Mustard made with White wine-Vinegar, and put to it more when it is made, another quarter of a Pint, to make it liquid; then put to it an Egg well beaten, and two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil: then let it be lukewarm and work it very well together till it foams again, and give it him in three Parts, one down his Mouth, and the other two at each Nostril.

Another for a Cold long settled.

Take three Heads of Garlick and roast them in Embers, then mix them with three Spoonfuls of Tar, as much Powder-Sugar, and half a pound of Hogs grease; then with Anniseeds, Liquorice, Elecampane, Fenugreek and Cumminseeds made into Paste, and give as much at once as a Duck's Egg.

Another for a dry Cough or Rotten Lungs.

Take Elecampane, the Flower of Brimstone, Liquorice, Fennel-seeds, Linseed, of each an Ounce, and of clarified Honey one pound; work the Powders and those together, and to a Pint of sweet Wine put two Ounces of these, and give it him Morning and Evening, and ride him after it, and let him fast one Hour after Riding.

A Cordial Powder for any ordinary Cold, and to prepare a Horse before Travel, and to preserve him from Mischief after Travel.

Take of English Liquorice, Elecampane-Roots, of each an Ounce; of Sugar-Candy an Ounce and a half; and beat them into fine Powder, and searce them. Keep it in a Box, and when you use it for a Cold, give him an Ounce in a Pint of Sack: if it be in Travel, then give it in sweet Wine or strong Ale; but if in Ale, then take a Quart, and give it both before Travel and in your Inn, or at home immediately after Travel.

Another to break a festered Cold, or dry up Glanders, and to heal the Ulcer and Canker in the Nose.

Take a Pint of Verjuice, and put to it so much strong Mustard made with white Wine-Vinegar as will make it strong; then take an Ounce of Roch-Allum in Powder, and

as you give this to the Horse, as you fill the Horn, put in some of the Allum, and give him part at both Nostrils, but especially at that Nostril that runneth most, and ride him after it, and set him up warm, and give him no cold Water but with Exercise. Thus do divers Mornings.

If you would see the manner of making those Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, or for other Diseases; look in my first Part for Cordial Balls.

Another for a Cold and Surfeit.

Take two handfuls of Mallows, one of Celandine, one of Herb of Grace or Rue, one Pint of Hemp-seed beaten in a Mortar very fine, chop the Herbs, and boil them in two Quarts of Water to one Quart: then put into it a piece of Butter, and give it him lukewarm, and order him as a Horse should be ordered after Drenching.

Another for a Cold, or for any inward Disease.

Take two Spoonfuls of Bay-salt, two Spoonfuls of *English* Honey, two Spoonfuls of Tar, as much black Soap as a Nut-meg, as much Diapente as will lie upon a Six-pence, and as much Tumerick beaten to powder, as will work altogether until the Salt be molten; then fill two Egg-shells with it, and give it him, cracking the Shells a little first, and ride him a little after it, and let him fast two or three Hours after it; then let him eat Hay, after you have first given him a Mash.

Another.

Take a Quart of Whitewine-Vinegar, four Heads of Garlick pilled clean, five new-laid Eggs, set it in a Dunghill twenty four Hours; then take out the Eggs and wipe them clean, and strain the Vinegar from the Garlick, and put to it two Spoonfuls of Honey, three Ounces of Treacle of Jeane. These being thus mixed, give him of it every Morning two Horn-fulls, and one Egg so long as it lasts.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Elecampane beaten to powder, a Spoonful of Treacle, a Spoonful of *English* Honey; put all these into a Quart of new Milk bloodwarm. This use twice a Week till the Cold is gone.

Another.

Take of the Powder of Diapente one Ounce, of the Powder of Liquorice one Ounce, of Aloes beaten to powder
half

half an Ounce, eight Cloves of Garlick bruised and peeled, and two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil; put all together in a Quart of Beer, and give him them in the Morning fasting, and keep him warm for a day or two after it.

Another.

Take a Quart of new Milk, and a Handful of Celandine with the Roots; seethe the Milk, and cut the Celandine as small as you can; then boil them a little while together, and put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and give it him lukewarm.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Rhubarb, half an Ounce of Cassia, half an Ounce of Mirrh, one pennyworth of *English* Treacle; make them up into three Balls with fresh Butter, and after roll them in Bran, and give him them fasting.

Another for a Cough or Glanders.

Take a little Handful of Box, cut it very small, then take an Ounce of Liquorice beaten, an Ounce of Anniseeds beaten, boil them all in a Quart of Ale or Beer to a Pint and a quarter; then put a quarter of a Pint of good Sallet-Oil, and a quarter of a Pint of Treacle and give it him all at once, and ride him moderately a mile or better; keep him warm covered four or five days, and give him a Mash two Hours after the Drink, and after five days you may ride him moderately, and if you find he requires the same Drink again, give it him.

Another.

Take a Handful of Rue, and shred it very small, and boil it in a Quart of new Milk, till a quarter-part be boiled away, then put into it two Spoonfuls of Anniseeds beaten very small and the like quantity of Liquorice, and two Spoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm, but put first a piece of sweet Butter into it. Let him fast two Hours after it; then give him a Mash of good sweet Malt, and after that Hay.

A Receipt for a dry Husking Cough, which will make him throw out the Filth at his Nostrils.

Take a whole Head of Garlick, and peel all the Cloves clean, then put them into a Linnen-Cloth, and boil them in a Quart of Milk till they become tender; then take out the Garlick and squeeze out the Substance of the Milk, and
put

put it a cooling, then put to it a pound of Honey, and half a pound of fresh Butter, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

If he run at Grasse, and hath got a Cold, and you are minded to drench him, take him up over Night, for fear of catching Cold, and give him the Drink the next Morning, and keep him in the House that day; and if it be warm Weather turn him out the next, and take him up at Night, and the next Day after turn him out both Night and Day.

Another.

Take Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Elecampane-Roots, long Pepper, Liquorice, Anniseeds, Cummin-seeds, about three Ounces of them all beaten very well, and boil'd a little in a Quart of strong Beer; then sweeten it with Treacle, and put a good piece of Butter into it, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take three or four red Onions soft roasted, chop and bruise them very small, and mix them with about two Spoonfuls of Mustard, and four Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil with these Powders well beaten, viz. Elecampane, long Pepper, Liquorice and Fenugreek, of each a Spoonful, made up in Balls with fresh Butter, and give him three of them at a time for three Mornings together and ride him after it.

Another.

Mingle as much Tar, Honey and Powder of Liquorice, of equal parts alike, as will make two pretty big Balls, and dissolve them in a Pint and a half of strong Beer, and give him luke-warm, and exercise him after it.

Balls for a Cold.

Take about a quarter of an Ounce of Cloves, one Ounce of the Flowers of Rosemary or Leaves dried, made into Powder, two Ounces of red Tar, two Ounces of Fenugreek, two Ounces of Diapente, two Ounces of Syrup of Colts-foot, two Ounces of *English* Honey, with a little Malt-flower, and work them up into a Paste, and make Balls of it, and give him two of them at a time fasting, for three Mornings together, with Exercise after it, and it will cure him.

Another

Another most excellent for a dry Husking Cough, or Consumption of the Lungs.

Take about three Ounces of the Fat of rusty Bacon, two Ounces of Tar, one Ounce and a half of good Honey, and half an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, work all these up together into a stiff Paste, with a little Wheat-Flower, and give him a Ball or two of it for three Mornings together, and rest him two or three Days if there be occasion; repeat them again, and it will certainly cure him.

Another for a Cold old or new, or for a Cough wet or dry.

Stamp or chop a Handful of Herb-Grace or Rue very small, and put to it an Ounce of the Powder of Anniseeds, with a little of the Flower of Brimstone, and make it up into Balls with fresh Butter and a little Honey, and give him a large Ball of it dissolved in a Pint of warm strong Beer every third Morning, for three Mornings together, and throw down after it two or three Hornfuls of clear Beer, to take away the ill taste.

Another for a Summer-Cold, or when you find that he doth not fill himself, but looks gaunt and thin.

Dissolve about a quarter of a pound of red Stone-Sugar, in a Pint of Sack, over the Fire, and when it is indifferent cold, put into it two Spoonfuls of the best Sallet-Oil you can get, and give it him lukewarm, and ride him after it, and order him as you do sick Horses, with Mashes, bursten Oats and warm Water.

Another very good for a Cough of the Lungs.

After you have kept him very sparingly with Meat over night, give him this Drink in the Morning lukewarm, with Exercise after it; viz. One Spoonful of the Flower of Brimstone, with half so much of the Powder of Mechoacan, mixed with a Spoonful of the Syrup of Horehound dissolved, in near a Quart of Strong-beer or Ale lukewarm.

The Virtues of it.

'Tis a great Enlarger of the Wind, and a Clearer of his Pipes, and drives away his Cough from the Lungs.

Another for a Cough of the Lungs, Strangling in the Guts, and to clear his Pipes, and to enlarge his Breast.

If you intend your Horse either for Hunting or Running,
and

and that you desire to free him from those Infirmities above-written; then about a Week before you design him for these Exercises, give him this ensuing Drench: *viz.* Two Balls made up in this manner; Take as much of sweet or salt Butter as contains the bigness of a large *Turkey-Egg*, and mix and bray together with it a quarter of an Ounce of the Powder of Anniseeds, with the like quantity of the Powder of Liquorice, and a little of the Flower of Brimstone. Then divide it into three equal parts, and hollow every part in the nature of a Pye, and put into each part half a Spoonful of the Syrup of Horehound, and close them up close to prevent the Syrup from getting forth, and they are made.

How you are to give them, and how to order him after given.

Warm a Quart of Strong-beer, and fill a Hornful of it, and put into it one of your Balls, and throw it down his throat with two Hornfuls more of Beer after it, to prevent sticking, and to clear his Passage for the remaining Balls. Give the rest after the same manner.

Observation.

As Coughs and Colds do generally come by Heats and Colds, so the best way to send them away packing, is by the same means they came: therefore I advise you, that after you have given him his Balls, you ride him upon a gentle Hand-Gallop till he sweat; but bring him home cool, by riding him softly a mile or two before you come home. When he is in the Stable, tie him up to the empty Rack, and clothe and litter him up warm, and order him as you do commonly sick Horses. But in case you find that this Drink hath not wrought the wish'd Effects you expected, then about a Week after give him as you did before the same Balls again. These Balls are very good to give your Horse a Week before you turn him to Grass, and a Week after you have brought him home; and if you give him them three or four times a year, they will keep him in good and perfect Health, making him very thriving and lusty. If this Drink at any time, or any other, make him sick, give him a Pint of warm Milk from the Cow, or warmed over the Fire, and he will be well again.

Things good in general for broken-winded Horses.

To sprinkle Water upon all the Hay he eats is good,
Maiden-

Maidenhair, Iris, Ash, Liquorice, Fenugreek, Anniseeds, Cummin, Pepper, bitter Almonds, Burrage, Aristolochia, Galingal, Cardamom, Nutmegs, Saffron, Colloquintida, Carduus Benedictus, Fluellin, Dragons, Lung-wort, Angelica, Mullet, Mullen or Horse Lung-wort, Nettleseed, the Ashes of a Hedgehog strew'd amongst his Provender, Bayberries, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, Water-Agrimony, Briony, Lung-wort which grows upon rotten Oaks or Beech-Trees; or let him drink ten days together of the Water wherein Liquorice hath been sodden, mix'd with Wine; or let him drink of the Water wherein hath been boiled Carduus Benedictus, Dragons, Elecampane, Pennyroyal.

Particular Receipts for a broken-winded Horse.

Take the Guts of a Hedgehog, and dry them and beat them to powder, and give him two or three Spoonfuls thereof in a Pint of Wine or strong Ale; then the rest mix with Anniseeds, Liquorice and sweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give him two or three after his Drink, and let him fast two or three hours after. Water-Agrimony is excellent good for it.

Another very good.

Take Wheat-Meal, the Powder of Lungwort *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Anniseeds, Cumminseeds, of each three Drams; make them into fine Powder, and make them into Paste with Honey and sweet Butter, of each a like quantity, and put to it the Yolks of two new-laid Eggs; make this Paste into Balls, and every Morning fasting give him three or four of them rolled up in the Powder of Elecampane and the Powder of Liquorice, of each alike. These Pills preserve the Wind of a Horse marvelously, and keep him always in breath.

Another.

Take the Excrements of a sucking Child, and put into it a Pint of White-Wine; let it boil till the one half be consumed, and so give it him bloodwarm. This will cause him to forsake his blowing for fifteen days, so as when he beginneth again to blow, give him the same Medicine, and so keep him with this from time to time, as you shall find cause; and by this means you shall have his Wind good. Put not too much of the Excrement in, for it will make him very sick.

Another, which is the best of all.

Take the Leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horse-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine Powder, and make them up in Balls with ordinary Honey, the bigness of a Pidgeon's Egg, and give him three at a time fourteen or fifteen days together, or longer, as you shall see cause, and let him not drink any cold Water during the time, and let his Exercise be moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and his Oats wet with good Ale or Beer, and in short time he will be well and sound again.

Another very good.

Boar's or Barrow's-Dung dry'd and beaten to powder, and a Spoonful of it, with about two Thimble-fuls of the Powder of Brimstone, put into a Quart of warm Milk, and given him fasting in the Morning for four or five times, resting a day between each taking (to recruit his Spirits) will very much help, if not altogether cure him. If you find that this Drink does not make him sick, you may give him a larger Proportion, not exceeding two Spoonfuls.

Some of the general things for this Distemper mix'd amongst his Provender, will further it very much.

Things good in general for Shortness of Breath, Purfiness, or Preservers of the Wind.

Saffron, Wood-Betony, Butter-bur, Colts-foot, Elecampane, Fennel, Anniseeds, the Juice of Sow-Fennel dissolved in Wine, and put into an Egg given him; Horehound, Juniper-Berries, Lung-wort that groweth upon Oaks or Beeches, which is a kind of Moss, with greyish tough Leaves; Horse-Lungwort, the Roots of Marshmallows, the Roots of Masterwort, Hedge-Mustardseed, the Seeds of Cow-Parsnips, Pellitory of the Wall, the Juice or Seeds of Purslain, *Rosa-Solis* or Sun-dew, Scabious, the Milk of Sow-Thistles given in Wine or Beer, Vervain, Antimony, Southernwood, the Kernels of Grapes, the Blood of a sucking Pig, *Venus-Hair*, Iris, Athen Keys, Fenugreek, Raisins, Pepper, Almonds, Burrage, Nettleseeds, Aristolochia, Colloquintida, Powder of Gentian, Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, Grains of Paradise, Calamint, Hounds-tongue, Filapendula or Dropwort, Thyme, the Root of Valerian boiled with Liquorice, Raisins and Anniseeds, and given him; Caraway-seeds, White-Wine and Yolks of Eggs, the Juice of Water-creffes,

creffes, Frankincense, a Snake boiled and the Broth given him, Agarick, Cardamom, Lightwort, Angelica, the green Bark of Elder-Tree, red Mints, red Fennel, Primrose-Leaves, Brimstone, Salt Nitre, Balm, Violet-Leaves, Hyssop, the Lungs of a Fox boiled or laid in Rose-water, or dry them and beat them to Powder, and give him them in Beer, or strew them amongst his Provender; Bay-berries, white Hawthorn-Leaves, the Guts of a Hedgehog dried and beaten to powder, and boiled in Beer and given, or mixed amongst his Provender with Anniseeds and Liquorice, or wet his Hay with Water, and his Oats with Ale or Beer. Oil of Frankincense, Fern-Roots, Nightshade, Cassia, Mithridate, Diacarthamus, Sena, Aloes, *French Beans* enlarge the Breast much: the Powder of Feverfew given him in Ale or Beer, is also very good, &c.

*Particular Receipts for Shortness of Breath or Purfiness,
or Preservers of the Wind.*

Take Anniseeds, Liquorice, and Sugarcandy, all beaten into very fine Powder, and take four Spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well in a Pint of White-Wine and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil; and use this ever after your Horse's Travel, and a day before he is travel'd.

Another.

Take Wheat-Flower four Pounds; Elecampane and Gentian, of each an Ounce; Anniseeds, Fenugreek, Cummin, Brimstone and Liquorice, of each half a Pound: make them all into very fine Powder and searced; then put into it of common *English* Honey half a Pound, and so much White-Wine as will make all these into a Cataplasm. Boil them till they become so thick, that they are fit to make up into Balls, and give him three or four at a time, for six or eight Mornings together: use it often, for it will keep him in health, and make him sound of his Body, Wind, and Courage. But if you do perceive a Taint in his Wind, then

Take a close earthen Pot, and put thereunto three Pints of the strongest Wine-Vinegar, and four new-laid Eggs unbroken, and four Heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruised; then cover the Pot very close, and bury it in a Dunghill thirteen hours; then take it up, and take forth the Eggs, and use it as you do the same Receipt before-recited.

Things good in general for the Glanders.

Cummin-seeds, Grains of Paradise, Fenugreek, Diahexaple, Sallet-Oil, Aquavitæ, the Bark of Elder, Sugarcandy, Garlick, Urine, White-Wine, Bay-Salt, Liquorice, Aniseeds, Hog's-grease boiled in Water, and take the Fat off; Ginger, Yolks of Eggs, Saffron, Cloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Moss boiled in Milk, Cardamomum, Spikenard of Lavender, Galingal, Honey, Euphorbium, Pepper, Brimstone, Spikenard of Spain, Myrrh, *Iris Illyrica*, Smallage, Pennyroyal, Aristolochia, salt Water, Oil of Oats, Tanners Oil, *Auripigmentum* and *Tufflaginis* beaten into Powder, four Drams of each beaten with Turpentine, and make them into little Cakes; then put them upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and a Tunnel put over it, so let him take the Perfume of it up his Nose; Agarick, Gentian, Bayberries, Horehound, *Gumma Guaiacum*, Amber, Coral, Arkanet, Blackberries, the Dust of Oaken Bark, Bramble-Leaves, Knotgrass, wild Dazy-Roots, Muskadine Figs, Elecampane, Treacle, Box-leaves, Coals of Athen Wood quenched in Ale, and poured down his Nose.

Particular Receipts for the Glanders.

The first thing that is to be done in this Disease, is to let him blood; then for four or five days together give him scalded Bran, which will dry up the moist and bad Humours abounding in him, and prepare him the sooner for his Cure. Take Honey as much as will suffice, and mingle it with his Oats, rubbing the Oats and the Honey together betwixt your hands, so as the Honey may be very well mixed with your Oats: continue him with this manner of feeding Morning and Evening, till you find him leave running at the Nose. This Receipt *de Grey* declares he hath cured very many Horses with.

Another.

Take Sallet-Oil and White-Wine Vinegar, of each six Spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into both his Nostrils if they both run, and continue this three Mornings together; and presently after you have given him this Medicine, you are to put up into that Nostril that runs a long Goose-Feather dipped in Oil de Bay, stirring it up and down in his Nostrils, which will cause him to sneeze and snuff so, that the viscous Corruption which remaineth

in his Head may be voided. Keep him warm all the while, let his Drink be sweet Mashcs.

Another.

Take new-made Chamberlye, and of the best and strongest White-Wine Vinegar, of each half a Pint; then take of Mustard seed two or three Spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vinegar, and let it be very well ground. That done, put your Vinegar and Chamberlye to the Mustard, and stir them well together; then take of Tar and Bay-Salt, of each alike: incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof as three Egg-shells will hold, the Meat first taken forth. And having first prepared these things, let the Horse be taken forth of the Stable (being kept that Night to a spare Diet) and ride him first till he begin to sweat; then give him the three Egg-shells fill'd with the said Tar and Salt, and throw down presently after it a Hornful of the Chamberlye, Vinegar and Mustard, and half a Horn of it at each Nostril, then ride him again as you did before, then clothe him warm and litter him well, and let him stand upon the Trench until three or four of the clock, then give him a warm Mash, and order him as you do Horses in Physick. Give him this Medicine every other or third day three or four times, and you shall find it an infallible Cure. Before you use this Medicine, you must prepare his Body with Bran prepared, and after with a Glister and your Goose-Feathers.

Another.

Take better than two Handfuls of the cankerous Moss which groweth upon an old Oaken Pale, and boil it in two Quarts of Milk to one; then strain it, and squeeze the Moss well, and give it him lukewarm to drink. Then take two Goose-Feathers, and take as much sweet Butter as contains a Walnut, and with the Powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searced, work them well together with your Knife, till the Butter be brought to a high Gold-colour; then take two Feathers, the longest you can get in a Goose's Wing, and first at the Quill's end with a Needle fasten two long Threds, then with your Salve anoint your Feathers all over: which done, roll them well in the Powder of Brimstone, and thrust them up into his Head; then fasten the Thred on the top of the Horse's head, and ride him abroad for an hour or two, airing him in this manner Morning and Evening. And when he hath stood a pretty while in the Stable, after you have brought him home again, untie the Threds, and

draw.

draw forth the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This Disease cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time, and therefore the Cure must be done by leisure: on which account you must continue the Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at the least thrice a week, if it be for four or five Months together, and be sure it will in the end yield your desire.

Another, which will cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine.

Take Elecampane Roots, and boil them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bring them to Pap; then with a Horn give them to the Horse with the Milk lukewarm, being no more than will make the Roots liquid: and having anointed your Goose-feathers, use him and ride him as you did before.

Another.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of *Tussilaginis*, beaten into powder, of each four Drams; then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a Paste: then make them up into little Cakes as broad as a Groat, and dry them. Then lay two or three of them on a Chafing-dish of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the Smoke may come up only at the end thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the Horse's Head through his Nostrils, then ride him till he begin to sweat. This do once every Morning before Water till the running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the Greatness of this Disease.

Another.

After you have purged him two days, give him this Drink: Take of Tanners Ouze new made, wherein never came Hides, one Pint; of Sallet-Oil four Spoonfuls; two Heads of Garlick pilled and bruised; Feverfew and Celandine, of each one Handful chopt very small; Anni-seeds, and Liquorice, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one Spoonful: boil all these a little, and give it him blood-warm twice a week fasting; and being thus four times drenched, he will be perfectly cured, which seldom or never fails. The best Receipt for this Disease is at the latter end of the Book.

Another.

Take Cummin-seeds, Grains of Paradise and Fenugreek in powder, of each half an Ounce; of Diahexaple a quar-

ter of an Ounce, beat this in a Mortar with a quarter of a Pint of Verjuice, three Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil, and two Spoonfuls of Aqua Vitæ; then put all together to a quart of old Ale, with a good Slice of sweet Butter, and set it on the fire till it be ready to boil: then being lukewarm, give it him part at his Mouth, and part at both Nostrils; then ride him pretty roundly for an Hour, and set him up warm; let him fast an Hour, and if you perceive Sicknes to grow, give him a Pint of new Milk.

Another for the Glanders.

Keep the Horse fasting for four or five Hours, then give him this Drink here under written; viz. Ten Cloves of Garlick peeled and bruised, half a Handful of Oaken Moss, and one Handful of Polypody of the Oak; boil all these together upon a gentle Fire in three Pints of new Milk till half be consumed; then strain out the Milk from the Moss and other Ingredients, and put into it three quarters of an Ounce of the Powder of Elecampane-Roots, one Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, half an Ounce of the Juice of Spanish Liquorice, and half an Ounce of the Powder of Fenugreek well mixt together: then take two Handfuls of the innermost Bark of green Elder, and boil it in a Quart of Spring-water, till more than half be consumed; then strain it forth and pour it into the other Ingredients, and stir them well together, and give it him lukewarm, some at his Mouth, and some at his Nose, exceed not above a Pint of it at a time. Warm him very well after it, but bring him home cool, and clothe and litter him up warm, and let him fast three or four Hours after it, and order him as you do sick Horses, with Mashes of Malt, boiled Oats and White-Water, &c.

Observations upon it.

This Disease is very difficult and hard to cure, and therefore you must not think that at once or twice giving, it will get a perfect Conquest over this sturdy Disease, but it must be the Work of a longer time, a Month or more at least, viz.

Give it him two or three days together, and intermit a day or two between to recruit his Spirits, and so continue it till you have recovered him. But the best and most certain Receipt for the Cure of this filthy and loathsome Disease,

ease, is by a Receipt at the latter end of the Book, which I refer you principally unto: *vid.* The best Receipts for the Cure of the Glanders.

Another to stay it for a time, being incurable.

Take the green Bark of Elder, and beat it in a Mortar, and strain it till you have a Pint thereof; then put that Juice to a Pint of old Ale, and warm it on the Fire with a good Lump of sweet Butter, and an Ounce of Sugarcandy, and so give it lukewarm; ride him after it, and let him fast an Hour, and keep him warm: do thus divers Mornings. If you are minded to take a general Receipt to cure all Colds, Glanders, Heart-Sickness, and to purge away molten Grease; look in the first Part for Balls Cordial to cure any, &c.

Things good in general given inwardly to a Hide-bound Horse.

White-Wine, Sallet-Oil, Venice-Turpentine, Mithridate, Loaf-Sugar, Cassia prepared, Milk of sweet Almonds, Verjuice given him, Muscadine, strong Ale, Groundsel, Rue, Smallage, Rosemary, Betony, Gum-Dracant, Garlick, sweet Butter boiled to a Pint and given him three several mornings together, the Pint being divided into three Parts, and keep him very warm, and feed him with Mashies and White-Water, or Fennel-Seeds, Anniseeds, Liquorice, Bay-Berries, Elecampane, Fenugreek, Turmerick, all made into fine powder, infused in Ale and Sallet-Oil, given him four mornings together; or Hog's-Grease, Dragonwort, Incense, Syrup of Roses dissolved in Tutsan, and given him bloodwarm, with moderate Exercise till he sweats.

General outward Applications.

To let him blood either on both sides the Neck, or on both the Side-Veins; then to take fair Water, Mallows, Smallage, Rosemary, Bay-Leaves boiled in Water till they be soft, and bathe his Body with it warm: and after he is dried, anoint him with this Ointment; Hog's-Grease, Camomile, Mallows, Groundsel, Smallage chopped and boiled in the Grease, and anoint his Body with which will loosen his Skin; or rub him against the Hair all over, and lay upon him a Sack well soaked in Water, and when it is well drained a while, lay it upon him, and over that as many Cloths as will bring him to a Sweat, which will be

be the best Cause to restore him; but let him not sweat above an Hour at most, and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for a Hide-bound Horse.

After you have let him blood, give him three or four mornings together a Quart of new Milk with two Spoonfuls of Honey, and one Ounce of *London-Treacle*, and let his Food be warm Grains and Salt, or sodden Barley, or sweet Mash.

Another.

First, let him blood in the Neck-Vein, then give him this Drink: Take two Handfuls of *Celandine* if it be in the Summer, the Leaves and Stalks will serve, but if it be in the Winter, take Leaves, Stalks, Roots and all, chop them small, then take a Handful of *Wormwood*, and a Handful of *Rue*, chop them likewise, put them all into three Quarts of Ale or Beer, and boil them to a Quart; then strain and squeeze the Herbs, and dissolve into it three Ounces of *Treacle*, and give it him lukewarm, and for a Week together once a day rub the Horse's Body all over with Oil and Beer, or Butter and Beer, against the Hair, and feed him with warm Mash of Malt and Water, and for his Provender let him have Barley sodden till it begin to break, provided you keep it not until it sour.

Another.

Take *Anniseeds*, *Liquorice*, *Fennel-Seeds*, *Bay-Berries*, *Elecampane* dried, *Fenugreek*, *Turmerick*, of each alike, made into fine powder; give him two Spoonfuls of this powder mixed in Ale or Beer one Quart, with two Spoonfuls of *Sallet-Oil*, and give it him four mornings together, and the first morning you are to give him two Spoonfuls of the Powder, and the other three mornings but one: keep him warm, and order him as a sick Horse, and he will certainly be cured.

Things good for a tired Horse in general, either taken inwardly, or applied outwardly.

Powder of *Elecampane*, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Grains*, *Cloves*, *Anniseeds*, *Fennel-Seeds*, *Sage*, *Rosemary*, *Mint*, *Rue*, *Camomile*, *Thyme*, half an Ounce of either of them, or all of them given him in a Quart of Beer or Ale, or apply'd outwardly to his Back; *Arsmart* laid under his Saddle, and his Back rubbed therewith, and if he hath any Life in him, this will make him go: or take three or four

four round pebble Stones, and put into his Ear, and tye them fast in, and the Noise of them will make him go: or make a hole in the Flap of his Ear, and thrust a long Stick full of Nicks through the same, and saw and fret him with it, and while he hath any Life in him he will go: or tye a bunch of Pennyroyal to his Bit, and it will keep him from tiring. An Ounce of the Powder of Betony mixed with Honey and Vinegar, given him, is very refreshing.

Simples that are good in general to comfort the Sinews, Arteries and Joints, after Travel, Cold or Pain.

A Poultice made of Pellitory of the Wall, with Mallows or Marshmallows, boiled in the Grounds of strong Beer, with the Flower of Wheat and Bran, and some Oil of Roses put thereto, and laid upon them hot, restoreth any bruised Sinew, Tendon or Muscle to their Strength. A Decoction of Mugwort with Camomile and Agrimony, and his Limbs bathed therewith while it is warm, is a very good Help for them, so is the Herb Ladies-Bread, or the Flower made into a Bath, and used as before, is very good; so is Oaken Moss boiled in the Grounds of Beer, and applied to them, &c.

Particular Receipts for a tired Horse.

Take half an Ounce of Elecampane powdred, and give it him in a Quart of Ale, and tye his Head to the Rack, and provender him well at night; or a bunch of Pennyroyal tied to the Bit or Snaffle, is very comfortable to him, and will cause him to travel lustily.

Another.

Take the Powder of Bay-Berries, and mix it with Hog's-Grease, and bathe his Limbs very well with it, it will wonderfully refresh him.

Of Purgation and their Uses, *vid.* my first Part.

Scourings in general and in particular, *vid.* my first Part.

Things good in general for a hot Stomach.

Bilberries, Barberries given inwardly, or to wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or to give him cold Water mingled with Vinegar, or to give him Milk and Wine mingled together, with some *Mel Rosarum*, the Decoction of Endive, Groundsel, Hawkweed, Kidneywort, Garden-Sorrel, Sow-Thistles, &c.

Things good in general for a cold Stomach.

Bay-Berries, Angelica, Caraway Seeds, Garden-Chervil, Clary, Mace, Cinnamon, Grains of Paradise, Saffron, Pepper, Cloves, Ginger, Elecampane, two Drams of the dried Roots of Lovage is good for it.

Particular Receipts for the Stomach.

If his Stomach be cold, give him Wine and Oil mixt together, divers Mornings together; or other Farriers give Wine, Rue, Sage and Oil boiled together: or to add to the former Compound, White Pepper and Myrrh, or to give him peeled Onions chopt, and Rochet-Seed boiled in Wine. But to clude, for general forsaking and loathing of Meat, proceeding from hot or cold, then give him Blades of Corn in good quantity.

Things good for a Blood-spavin.

To cure it, first shave away the Hair on both sides the Swelling so far as it goes, then take up the Thigh-Vein and let it bleed well; which done, tye the Vein above the Orifice, and let the Vein bleed from below what it will, whereby the Blood which was assembled about the Spavin place, is by this means sent away; then with your Fleam or Incision-Knife, make two Incisions in the lower Part of the Swelling, and after prick two or three Holes in each side of the Hough where the Spavin is, that so the Medicine may take the better effect: and when the Blood and Water hath vented away so much as it will do, bind round about it plasterwise the Whites of Eggs and Bole-Armoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linen-Cloth, and make it fast about the Hough, to keep on the Plaster; the next day take it off, and wash and bathe the Sorrhance with this Bath, viz. Take Mallows and the Tops of Nettles, and boil them in Water till they be soft, and therewith bathe him. Then take Mallow-Roots, Brancha Ursina, Oil, Wax and White-Wine, so much as will suffice, and boil them, and bind this warm to the Sorrhance round about the Hough, and sew a Cloth about it, and so let it remain three Days more, and every Morning stroke it downwards with your hand gently, to the end the bloody Humour may issue fourth: the fourth Day bathe and wash it clean with the former Bath. That done, take Gum-Creana and Stone Pitch, of each an Ounce, and of Brimstone a quarter of an Ounce, made

made into very fine powder, melt these on the Fire together, and when it is almost ready to take off, put into it half an Ounce of *Venice Turpentine*, and make a Plaster thereof, spreading it upon Leather, and apply it to the Place warm round about the Hough, and let it remain till it fall away of its own accord; but if it come off too soon, make another Plaster of the same Ingredients, and lay to it, which is the best Cure I could ever know for this Malady.

Another for it.

When the Swelling doth appear upon the inward Part of the Hough, take up the Thigh-Vein, and let it bleed from the nether Part of the Leg, till it will bleed no longer; and after give Fire to the Spavin both long-ways and cross-ways, and then apply a restraining Charge to the place.

Things good to cure a Bone-Spavin.

Take up the Veins that feed it, (whether Spavin or Curb) as well below as above, then give it Fire; then charge the place with Pitch made hot, and clap Flax upon it: then four Days after you must dulcify the Sorrhance with the Oil Pam-pilion and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle Fire, and when the Scar shall be fallen away, apply unto it a kind of Stuff which is called Blauco or White, made of Jessoe, and so continue it until it be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampane well cleansed, and lap it in a Paper and roast it soft, and after you have rubbed it and chafed it well, clap it on and bind it on hard, but not so hot as to scald away the Hair, and at twice dressing it will take it away; or if you anoint the Place with Oil of Origanum Morning and Evening, it will take it away. This is good for Curb, Spavin, Ring-Bone, or any bony Excrecence.

Another.

Upon the top of the Excrecence, make a slit with your Knife the length of a Barley-corn or more, then with a fine Cornet raise the Skin from the Bone, and hollow it round the Excrecence, and no more; then dip some Lint in the Oil of Origanum, and thrust it into the hole and cover the Knob, and so let it bridle till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both Medicine and Core.

Ano.

Another to abate the Pain of the Bone-Spavin.

Take two pennyworth of the Oil of Camomile, and two pennyworth of the Oil of Turpentine, and mix them well together in a Glass-viol, and anoint the place grieved with it.

Another.

Take a Pint of Anniseed-Water, and put into it one Ounce of Household Pepper beaten to powder, with an Ounce of Roch-Allum, and boil them together to the Consumption of one half; then strain it and put it into a Glass to keep for your use, and apply it once or twice a day, when you have occasion.

Another for it, which will not only take that away, but also a Splint, Curb, Ring-bone, or any Bony Excrescence.

Tye up the Horse's Head, for fear of biting it away.

When you take off the Plaster, anoint the place with Train Oil warm.

First, clip away the Hair as far as the Excrescence goeth, and a little more, then take a piece of allum'd Leather, made as big as the place you have cured; then take a little Shoemakers Wax and spread round about the very edge or verge of the same, leaving all the inward part empty and not touched with the Wax: then take the Herb Spear-grass, or Spear-wort; which hath the Vertue to raise Blisters, and bruising it, lay some thereof upon the Leather in the empty place, and bind it fast thereon, suffering it so to lie, (if it be in the Summer-time, when the Herb hath his full strength,) near half a day; but if it be in the Winter, then it is not amiss (to renew the strength of the Herb) if you add to it a drop or two of the Oil of Origanum, and let it lie half a day fully, and be sure to tie up his Head, for fear of biting it away. When you take away the Herb, rub the place well, and anoint it with Train-Oil warm, or else lay on a Diminium Plaster. But because this Disease is not easily to be cured, unless you see some skilful Farrier do it before you; I shall shew you therefore, for the prevention thereof (when you find a Swelling begin to arise) what you shall use.

Take Natural Balsam, and having first shaved away the Hair, anoint the place with it for two or three days, and after you shall repress the Humours with this Charge: Take three Ounces of the Oil of Roses, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce,

Ounce, Wheat-flower half an Ounce, and the White of an Egg ; make all these into one Body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balsam, lay on the said Charge.

Things good in general to take away a Splint.

Oil of Vitriol, unslak'd Lime, Oil of Origanum, an Elecampane-Root roasted and laid to it, Oil of Peter, Spear-Grass, *alias* Spear-wort, Verdegrease, Oil-de-bay, Powder of Mercury, Powder of Arsnick, Crow-foot laid to it, &c.

Particular Receipts to cure a Splint.

After you have washed the place and shaved away the Hair, as you must do in the cure of all Splints and bony Excrescences ; knock and rub it with your Blood-staff, or a Hazel-stick, then prick it with your Fleam. Then take Vervain and Salt, of each a Handful, pound them together to an Ointment, and apply it to the place, and bind it up with a Roller, and stitch it on fast, and let it so remain twenty four Hours, and then unbind it, and it is cured.

Another.

Take Nerve-Oil one Ounce, Cantharides the weight of sixpence, and as much of the Oil of Vipers, boil them easily ; then anoint the Splint with this cross the Hair, and heat it in with a hot Iron, then tie up the Horse's Head to the Rack for twenty four Hours, then squeeze out the Corruption ; and do this twice or thrice,

For a Splint, and to dry up Wind-Galls.

First, heat the Sorrhance with a hot-pressing Iron, then vent it in several places with your Fleam ; then take a Spoonful of Salt, half a Spoonful of Nerve-Oil, a Penny-Weight of Verdegrease, and the White of an Egg ; beat all to a Salve, and dipping Flax-Hurds therein, apply it to the Grief.

Another to take off a Splint.

Take of the Oil of Vitriol, and dip a Stick or Feather into the Glass, and touch the Place with it, and it will eat it away. If you find it eat too much, you may stop it by bathing it with cold Water ; or if you boil some green Copperas in Water, and wash the Sore with it, it will not only cleanse the Sore from any piece of the remaining Splint, but soon heal it up likewise.

To take away a Splint, and leave no Scar behind.

Take a red Hazel-Stick about the bigness of your Thumb, about a quarter of a yard long, and after you have beaten and knockt the Splint very well with it, then take and cut one end of it very smooth, and stick a Needle into the pith of it, leaving so much of the point of it out as will prick through the Skin, pricking it full of holes; then take some of the Oil of Peter, and rub all over it, and bathe it in with a hot Fire-shovel, and do thus four or five days together, and it will cure it.

Another.

First, wash the place with warm Water, and shave away the Hair, then slit a hole in the Skin more than the length of a Barley-corn, and then convey into the hole so much Arsnick as the fourth part of a Hazle-nut, and bind it on with a Bolster and Roller of Linen, and make it fast with a Needle and Thred, and so let it remain for three whole Days and Nights, in which time the Arsnick will eat and corrode clean away the Splint: then to kill the Fire anoint the place with sweet fresh Butter eight or ten days after, being first molten, and it will be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampane well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roast it in the hot Embers, as you do a Warden; then after you have rubbed and chafed the Excrecence, bind it fast on, but not so hot as to scald away the Hair: this will consume it away in two or dressings. Or if you anoint the Splint with the Oil of Origanum, Morning and Evening, it will take it away, but not presently.

Observation.

You must stay the falling down of new Humours to the place troubled, by binding Plasters, as Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, red Lead, Oil, Bole-Armoniack, and such like; then to draw forth matter which is gathered, with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like; and lastly, to dry up the Relicks with drying Powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyster-shells, Soot and such like, And also you must know, that all Splints, Spavins or Knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning, or after the Full of the Moon.

Another

Another Receipt to take off a Splint, which though it seem difficult, de Grey declares that he hath taken off more then 100 Splints.

Take two Heads of Garlick and peel them, and cut them small, and do neither stamp nor bruise them; then take the like quantity of Salt, and mix with them, and divide them into two equal parts, and put them into two fine Lin Clouts, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, about a Foot in length, of the fashion of two short wooden Foils, but not so long, being not above twelve inches a piece: Take then your Blood-stick, and rub, knock and beat the Splint therewith very well, to soften it; then prick it through the Skin with your Blood-staff and Fleam: then take of the Oil of Nuts one Pint, and put it into a small Pipkin, and set it upon the Fire with a Chafing-dish of Coals, and make it boiling hot, and when it is ready to boil put in your short Sticks or Foils, which have the Garlick and Salt fastened unto them; and first with the Foil, and then with the other, (I mean by turns) apply them hot to the Splint, and between whites rub and stroke the Splint downwards with your Thumb, whereby to bring forth the Blood; till having with the Foils very well mollified the said Splint, you may the more easily crush forth the Blood whereof the Splint is engendred and formed, and thus it is cured: only you must remember to anoint the place two or three times after with sweet or fresh Butter.

Things good in general for a Curb.

Oil of Vitriol, Arsnick, Verdegrease, an Elecampane-Root roasted and laid to it, an Onion roasted with unslack'd Lime and laid to it, Mercury, Turpentine, Nerval, green Copperas, Tartar, &c.

Particular Receipts to cure a Curb.

First, shave away the Hair, then bind the Hough strait above the Joint; then with a small Stick beat, rub and chafe the Curb, like as you do in the cure of a Splint, then pierce the Skin with your Fleam in two or three places, and so with your Thumb thrust forth and crush out the corrupt Blood, and after convey so deep as you can get, into every Hole, the bigness of two Barley-corns of Arsnick, and so bind up the place, and let it remain for the space of twenty four Hours; then open the place, and anoint it every day with fresh Butter till it be whole. Oil of Vitriol used as you do to take away a Splint, will take off a Curb also.

Note,

Note, That whatsoever cureth the Splint or Spavin, cureth the Curb also.

Another Receipt.

Take White-wine Lees one Pint, a Porringer-full of Wheat-Flower, of Cummin in fine Powder half an Ounce; mix all these well together, and being made warm upon the Fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it once for three or four days together: and when the Swelling is almost gone, draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the Burning with Pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applied warm, to the end the charge may stick on the better; then presently clap on Flox, and let it remain until it fall away of it self, and let it come in no Wet or Water for the space of fourteen days.

Another.

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red-hot, and hold it near to the place till it become warm, then with a Fleam prick six or seven holes through the Skin, and anoint the Sorrance with Nerval; then take a Spoonful of Salt, and a Penny-weight of Verdegreafe in fine Powder, with the White of an Egg, incorporate them well together, and wet some Flox in this Medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in a short time he will be perfectly cured. Or calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it in Water, and congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Ointment, and dress it therewith; and this will in forty Hours heal any Mules, Pains and Scratches whatsoever.

Things good for the Mules, *vid.* Scratches.

Things good for the Pains, *vid.* Scratches.

Things good for Kib'd-Heels, *vid.* Scratches.

Things good for Crepances and Rats-tails, *vid.* Scratches.

What cures the Scratches cures all these Diseases.

Things good in general for the Scratches.

These things boiled in Hogs-grease and Train-Oil, are good *viz.* Tar, White Lead, Bole-Armoniack, Verdegreafe, green Copperas, Allum, Brimstone, Briar-Apples all beaten to powder; the Powder of Galls, Rue, Rosemary, Gun-powder, burnt Oyster-shells, Turpentine, Ginger, red Herrings chopped small, Elecampane, &c. Or Lime, Honey, Bay-salt, Urine, Vinegar, the Sperm of Frogs, Pepper, Garlick, Mustard, Plantain, Rib-wort, Sage, Tobacco, Elder, Man's-dung, Burdock-roots and Snails are good for them, &c.

Obfer.

Observations how to order him in this Disease.

You are to take notice, that in all the Cures of the Scratches you must keep his Legs from Wet during the Cure; and likewise you must clip away his Hair from off his Heels very close, or else that will poison his Leg. And likewise before you dress him with any of the Receipts following, you must scrape off his Scabs first, and wash off the Blood that follows them with Chamberlye and Salt, or Brine.

When you have dress'd him with any of the Receipts following, wash it clean off with scalding Chamberlye and Salt, or scalding Brine, before you dress him again.

Particular Receipts for the Scratches.

Take Brimstone, and make it into fine Powder, and mix it with sweet Butter, and anoint him therewith once a day.

Another.

Take unslak'd Lime, Salt and Soot, of each alike, all made into fine Powder, boiled in the strongest White-wine Vinegar you can get, till it be as thick as a Poultice; then soften it with try'd Hogs-grease, and so work it to an Ointment, and anoint the places grieved till they be cured.

Another.

Take the tender Tops of Elder-buds, and the Berries of the Brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each a Handful; boil them in two Quarts of Wort, and put to it the quantity of an Egg-full of Allum, and wash the Sorranee very hot twice a day.

Another.

Take Verdegrease and make it into fine Powder, and work that and common Honey together till they come to an Ointment: anoint the Sorranee with it, and it will cure it.

Another.

Take try'd Hogs-grease and Gunpowder, of each as much as will suffice: incorporate your Gunpowder very well with it after it is well beaten to powder, and anoint the place grieved with it once a day.

Another.

Take Honey, Verdegrease, Brimstone bruised small, green Copperas and Bay-salt, of each a like quantity; boil all these with a double quantity of Hogs-grease, and put to it a big Root of Elecampane bruised in Red-Wine Vinegar; apply

apply this to the Sore very hot, and supple it by bathing it with new Milk from the Cow.

Another.

Take a hundred and twelve Snails, and put them in a Linen Bag, and put to them a Handful of Bay-Salt, and hang them against the Heat of the Fire, and catch the Oil that shall drop from them, and keep it close in a Glass, and chafe it into his Legs when he is dry, and three or four Dressings will cure him. This must be made in *May*.

Another.

Take the Spawn of Frogs, and distil it, and keep the Water close stoppt in a Glass for your use, and wash and bathe the places with it every day warm, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine Powder, and boil them together, and anoint the Sorrance therewith, and they will soon heal and dry up.

Another for them being held incurable.

First, let him blood in the Shackle-Veins, the Spur-Veins, and the fore Toe-Veins, only let it be three days between the bleeding of the one Toe and the other; then with a Thumb-Rope of Hay rub the Sores till they be raw and bleed: then take a Quart of old Urine, and a Quart of strong Brine, and put to them half a pound of Allum, and boil it to a Quart. With this hot wash the Sores well, then take the Sperm of Frogs (in *March*) and put it into an earthen Pot, and in a Week's time it will look like Oil; then take the Oil and the round things you see in the Sperm, and spread it on a Cloth, and bind it to the Sores, and do this divers times.

Another.

A piece of Bread sod in Vinegar to a Poultice, and laid to them, will draw out the Cores; then take half an Ounce of Verdegrease, as much Brimstone in quantity and bigness, not in weight, and as much Honey as will fill an Eggshell; boil them together till they look black, and anoint the fore places with it, and this will heal them and cure them. Or seethe three or four Ounces of Brimstone in a Quart of White-wine Vinegar till a fourth part be wasted, and with a Clout put upon the end of a stick wash the sore Legs therewith as hot as your Horse can endure it, the Hair

being

being first cut close, and the sore Places and Chops of his Heels made as clean and dry as you can.

Another.

Take two Ounces of green Copperas, and beat it to powder; then take half a pound of *English* Honey, and half a pound of black Soap, an Ounce of burnt Oyster-shells, an Ounce of beaten Brimstone; boil them all together to a Salve, and anoint your Horse's Heels with it cold.

Another.

Take two Quarts of strong Ale, a Pint of old *Malaga* Sack, a Handful of dry'd Rosemary beaten to powder, a Handful of dry'd red Sage, two Handfuls of dry'd Bay-leaves, and half a pound of Allum; boil them all together till it be half consumed, then strain it, and when you use it anoint your Horse's Feet with it every day warm till they be whole. Keep him in the Stable during the Cure.

The Mirroure of all Medicines for the Scratches, which never yet failed to cure them, tho their Legs were as big as two Legs, and tho they run ever so much at the heels, provided you follow these Directions; First, to draw Blood from him, and a Week after to give him these Balls, which will purge away the evil Humours out of his Body.

The Purge.

If he be a strong-body'd Horse, and of a good Stature, you may give him an Ounce and a half of the best Aloes you can get, and pound it to a very fine Powder; then put some Butter to it, and work and mix it very well together with your Knife: then divide it into three parts, and cover every part of them over again with fresh Butter, and make them as big as a good Wash-ball; then fasting in the Morning give him them upon the point of a stick, and ride him a little after it, to warm them in his Body, which will make them work the better: then bring him into the Stable and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three hours after it, then give him his Mash of Malt, and let him eat a little Hay, and so ride him softly after that. After you have given him his Balls, put down a Hornful or two of warm Beer after them. If you find him purge too much, so that it takes him quite off his Stomach, give him two or three Wild-Briar Balls beaten to powder in a Quart of warm Beer, and it will soon stay him; or for want of them, boil some Cinnamon, Pepper, Nutmegs, Ginger and Bay-berries

u

in

in it. But if you find that he will not purge at all, which is very unlikely, then ride him to some green Cornfield that is not eared, (or for want of that, some four Grasse) and let him feed thereon about a quarter of an hour: then ride him gently home, and set him up warm, and you shall find him purge very kindly without any danger.

The Receipt for the Scratches.

After you have thus purged him, clip off the Hair as close from his Heels as you can; then scrape off all the Scabs till they bleed, and wash them with Brine, or Chamberlye and Salt scalding hot. Then take a quarter of a pound of Brimstone, half a quarter of a pound of green Copperas beaten to powder, or a quarter of a pound of Goose-grease, a pennyworth of Tar; boil all these together in a very large Pipkin, or else they will boil over. Let them boil about a quarter of an hour, then take a Rag and tie it to a stick, and dip it into it, and put it all over the raw places scalding hot, and dress it every other day; making his Feet first clean by washing off the Stuff with scalding Brine, or Chamberlye and Salt, and the Scabs pick'd off, and in three or four Dressings it will cure them, be they ever so bad, provided you keep him out of the Water during his Cure. If you find his Legs not very much swelled, you need not purge him.

Another very good, but not so certain, but more proper for the killing and shelling of all manner of Scabs growing about a Horse's Legs.

After you have clipped off the Hair of his Legs very close, and rubbed off the Scabs with a Thumb-Rope of Hay, and washed them with scalding Chamberlye and Salt, or with scalding Brine, and when he is dry, anoint him with this Ointment here-under written. When you come to use it, mix with it as you use it some Oil of Turpentine, for it will be much the better. 'Tis this: Take a Pound of try'd Hog's-grease, with a quarter of a Pint of Train-Oil, and boil these things in it very well, after they are beaten to fine powder, viz. Dyers-Galls five, Verdegrease, Bole Armoniack, green Copperas, Allum, Brimstone, two Wild-Briar Balls, a Red Herring chopped small, three or four Sprigs of Rosemary, and as many of Rue; mix them as equally as you can, (I mean, the rest of the Ingredients) only Brimstone excepted, which you should have most of about

about half a pound weight of all of them together is enough. After your Hog's-grease is melted, and the rest of the Ingredients boiled for some time in it, then put in two or three pennyworth of Tar, and boil that with it, which will take away the ill Scent of all the rest of the Ingredients. When you have well boil'd it, strain it out into a Pot, and keep it for your use.

Observation upon it.

When you dress his Legs with it, anoint him well with it over night, and rub it off with a Thumb-Rope of Hay the next Morning very easily, for this Ointment will shell them off extraordinarily; then wash it with scalding Brine, and at Night anoint him again with the same Ointment. Keep him dry during the Cure.

Another that cureth not only the Scratches, but also all rotten and broken Cuts and putrefied Sinews.

After you have order'd him, as in Observations how to order him in this Disease, take half a Pound of *English* Honey, one Ounce of black Pepper beaten, about thirty Cloves of peeled Garlick; bruise and mix them very well together in a wooden Bowl or stone Mortar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the grieved place spread upon a brown Paper doubled two or three times double, and put over that a Linen Cloth, sew'd fast to keep it from coming off. Bind also over that a Thumb-band of wet Hay, and about two or three days after take all off, and make clean the grieved place very well with warm Beef-broth. Do this three or four times after this manner, and it will certainly cure them, conditionally you give him a Drench or two of the Drink, that is call'd, *A Drink to cure the most malignant Farcin that is.*

The Vertues of this Salve.

It will not only kill this Disease, but also draw, cleanse and knit Sinews together in a very strange and wonderful manner.

A most Excellent Water, not only good for this Infirmary, but also for sore Heels, Sellander, or Mallender, and to cleanse and heal any Wound or Sore, by drying up the evil Humour that abounds therein.

After you have boiled a Quart of Conduit or Spring-water, and scummed off the Filth that shall arise on the top, take it off the Fire, and put it up into a Bottle, with two

Ounces of white Copperas, and three Ounces of the Powder of burnt Allum. When you use it, shake the Glass to make it all alike, and apply it warm to the place grieved, and wrap a Linen Rag dipt in Water about the Mallender three or four times double. This Water will keep many Years, for the older it is, the better.

Things good in general for Foundring.

First pare all his Soles so thin, that you may see the quick, then let him blood at every Toe, and let them bleed well; then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rosin, and having tack'd hollow Shoes on his Feet, stop them with Bran, Tar and Tallow as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a Week together; then exercise him much, and his Feet will come to their Use and Nimbleness: or after he is pared thin, and let blood at his Toes, stop his Feet with Cow's-Dung, Kitchin's-Fee, Tar and Soot boiled together, and poured boiling hot into them. If you travel your Horse, you must stop him with it cold, and add unto it the White of an Egg or two, for that will take away the Heat of the former Day's Journey: or stop his Feet with Tow dipt in an Ointment made of Turpentine, Sallet-Oil, Verdegrease, Wax and Hog's-grease. If he be newly foundred, give him with a Horn a Pint of fair Water with a Handful of Salt in it; but if you stay three or four days, or longer, then give him of Hellebore a Spoonful, of Saffron a Pennyworth, of Assa-fœtida and of Soap of Venice two Drams, a little of the Seed of Bay, all made into Powder, and given him in a Pint of Vinegar blood-warm, and cover him with a wet Cloth, and clothe him warm, and tye him up to the Rack, that he neither lie down nor vomit, and let him sweat an hour, and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a foundred Horse in the

For a Horse foundred in his Feet, let him blood its of Neck, Breast, and Spur-Veins, and take two Quar eth: Blood from him, with which make this Charge as follow ellis
Take the Blood, and put into it eight new-laid Eggs, Sh d
and all, beat them well together, and put to it half a poun e
of Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, strong White-Wine
Vinegar one Pint, *Sanguis Draconis* three Ounces in fin e
powder; make this up with Wheat-Meal good and thick,
with this charge his Back, Reins, Breast, Thighs, Fetlocks
and

and Soles, and spread two Cloths plaster-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the Coffin of his Feet, and bind the fore Legs about the Knees good and streight, with broad Filleting or Lifts; then ride him two hours upon a hard Way, which if it be paved or pitch'd, it is the better, his Feet being pared reasonable near before-hand: and when you do bring him into the Stable, let his Feet be stoppt with this Charge; Take Rye or Wheat-Bran, Ox or Cow's-Dung, Sheep's-Suet or Turpentine (which must be put in last;) mince your Sheep's-Suet small, melt and heat all these upon the Fire, stirring them very well; then put in your Bran, to make it into a stiff Paste; then put in your Turpentine, and incorporate them all very well together, and stop your Horse's Feet with it: which being thus charged and stoppt three or four days together, ridden and kept warm, and not suffered to drink cold Water, but either Mashs or white Water, he will be sound in four or six days. If it be a dry Foundring by standing too long in the Stable, then pare him somewhat near, and let him bleed well in the Toe-Veins. Then take Eggs, and roast them blue hard, and together with the Powder of Cummin stop his Feet therewith so hot, as they may be taken out of the Embers, and put over the Soles a piece of Leather, with Splints cross, to keep the Eggs from coming out.

Take then a great Onion, peel and stamp it, and let it infuse twenty four hours before in the strongest Whitewine-Vinegar you can get, and give it the Horse presently after you have stoppt the Horse's Feet, and cover him up warm, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, and then give him Meat and white Water.

Another for Foundring a Month or more.

You must take out the Soles of his Feet, and have in a readines these things, viz. Take the tender Tops of Hyfop three Handfuls, pound them together in a Mortar to stench his bleeding, then have this Receipt in a readines:

Take Snails in the Shells, and take them forth and reserve them; then take a Handful of Bay-Salt, and two or three Handfuls of the tender Tops of the angriest Nettles you can find; beat them with your Snails and Salt to a Salve, then take out the Sole, and stench the bleeding with your Hyfop, and when it leaveth bleeding, apply this Medicine to it, and bind it up with Cloths, and let it remain twenty four hours: then open it and heal it up with your green
U 3 Ointment,

Ointment, which you may find in my first Part, and in two days you shall see a new Sole coming. But if he be but hoof-bound, then take Turpentine and Sheep's-Suet, of each half a pound; Wax a little, Sallet-Oil half a Pint; boil all together, but put in the Turpentine last, and as they boil keep them with a continual stirring, and anoint his Hoof once a day well.

For an ordinary Heat in his Feet.

Take Wheat-Bran and Hog's-grease, and make them into a Poultice, and apply it as well to the Coffin as the Soles, and it will be well again.

Another for a Founder or Frettize wet or dry.

First, pare thin, open the Heels wide, and take good store of blood from the Toes; then tack on a Shoe somewhat hollow, broad at the Heels, and the Inside of the Web, from the first Nail to the Heel, turned inward towards the Frog, yet not to touch any part thereof, or the Hoof, so as he may tread on the Out-verge of the Shoe, and not on the inward. Then take *Burgundy Pitch*, or *Frankincense*, and rolling it in a little fine Cotton-Wool or Bombast, with a hot Iron melt it into the Foot, betwixt the Shoe and the Toe, till the Orifice where the Blood was taken be filled up; then take half a pound of Hog's grease and melt it, and mix it with Wheat-Bran till it be as thick as a Poultice: then boiling hot stop up his Feet with it, then cover it with a piece of an old Shoe, and splint it up, and so let him stand for three or four days; then if occasion serve you may renew it, otherwise the Cure is wrought.

Observations on the Cure.

First, You shall not need to remove or stir his Shoes; then after twenty four hours rub off the Charge from his Back.

Item, Take away his Garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Hoof with your hand, and with Wisps, to take away the Numbness.

Item, If you cannot get Wheat-Meal, take Oat-Meal.

Item, If he will not bleed in the Veins before-named, then bleed him in the Neck-Vein.

Lastly, If you take him in hand to cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be cured in twenty four hours; but if he go longer, the Cure will be longer in doing.

Now

Now if he be foundred through Streightness of his Shoe, which is not a Founder but a Frettizing, which is a degree less than Foundering; then let him bleed on the Toes, and stop the place with bruised Sage, and tack his Shoe on again, and stop it with Hog's-Grease and Bran boiled together, as hot as possible you can, and do this twice in a Fortnight, and give him rest and it will help him.

An odd kind of Receipt to cure a Foundred Horse.

Ride him so hard as to sweat, then ride him up to the Knees in Water, and there let him stand about half an hour, which will cause the Humour to ascend out of his Feet, into his Body; then an Hour after you come home, give him a thorough Scouring, and ride him gently after it, and so bring him home, and clothe him up warm, and this will carry it out of his Body again. *Probatum*, by Mr. Goodman; give him the Purge as aforesaid.

Another for the taking out of his Sole.

If you find that none of the Receipts for this Disease have had their wished Effects in order to his Cure, then follow these Directions for the taking out of his Soles; and though it be not the common way that is practised amongst our Smiths, yet 'tis looked upon to be the best and safest: 'Tis this; First, tye about his Pastern a Lint or Cord so hard as will keep up the Blood into his Leg, that it fall not down to trouble you, then pare the Foot thin, and cut the Hoof round with your Incision-Knife to the quick, as near to the inside of the outward Shell of the Hoof as you can raise the Sole at the Toe, then take hold of it with a Pair of Pinchers, and pluck it gently upwards towards the Heel, for fear of breaking the Vein in the Foot. When you have so done tack on the Shoe again somewhat hollow and broad; then untie the Cord, and knock round the Hoof with a Blood-staff, and the Blood will descend very freely, which when you think he hath bled enough, stanch it with two or three Handfuls of Hysop bruised with Salt, and put over it Flox, Hurds, or Tow, and over them a piece of stiff Leather between the Hurds and the Shoe, to keep them in; or you may put two or three flat Sticks cross them in the room of the Leather. About twenty four Hours after or more, take away the Flox or Hurds, and bruise a Handful or two of the angriest red Nettles you can get, with Bay-Salt, and apply them, and cover them over with the Hurds and Splinters as

you did before. About a Month after or more open it again, and new dress it with Salt and Hog's-Grease well bruised and mixed together, and splint it up as you did before with Tow or Flox, or some such like thing. Continue this last Medicine during the Cure, which will be perfected in two or three times dressing more at farthest: If you find him somewhat sound, tack on the Shoe with a broad Web, and let it stand wide and easy, and in twelve or thirteen days he will be fit to ride an easy Journey. When you ride him at any time, when you bring him home at Night, apply all over his Foot, both inside and outside, a Poultice made of about four Ounces of Sheep's Suet cut small and White-Wine Vinegar boiled together, and keep it on with Hurds and Splints as you did before: Let this remain about forty eight hours or more. This last Poultice used three or four times will very much strengthen his Hoof, and make him stand again.

Directions for the Ordering of him.

1. To let blood, and keep him in during his Cure.
2. If he be foundred of both his Feet, take not out both his Soles together, for then he will not be able to stand, nor rise when he is down.
3. Some Smiths do take out the Frush and Sole, and some but only the Sole: your often Practice in this Cure will be the best Director.
4. The common way of taking out of Soles is known by every Country Smith.
5. The Poultice that I ordered to be last applied to the Sole and Coffin of the Foot, is very good applied to it when it hath been bruised by Stub, Stone, or any other Accident.

Another for the Foundring in the Cheft.

About five or six Pennyworth of the Oil of Peter, with the like Quantity of Ale or Beer mixed with it, and well rubbed in with your Hand, holding a hot Fire-shovel at the same time before it, while you are doing it, is a very good Help in order to his Cure. If you intend to have the right Oil of Peter, do not stint yourself in the Price of it; for if you do, they will mix Oil of Turpentine with it.

Things good in general for the Mallender and Sellender.

You are always in these Diseases first to wash and shave away the Hair, and rub the Sorrance with a Wisp till it be

raw, and dry up the yellow Matter that comes out of it, before you apply any thing to it.

What cures the Scratches, will cure this Disease.

Gunpowder bruised in Hog's-Grease, and anoint the Grief therewith; a soft-rowed Herring out of the Pickle, beaten with Soap and Allum, and laid to it, and renewing it for three Days together, and pluck off the Scabs before you lay it on again; Hen's Dung and Gilly-Flowers beaten together, or Soap and Lime laid to it; or the Dung of a Man, or Sulphur, Vitriol, Salt-Nitre, Sal-Gemmæ mixt with Oil-de-bay, or green Copperas, Allum and Tobacco boiled in Urine, or Oil of Turpentine, Oil of Hempseed, Mustard, Verdegrease, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of these Diseases.

Take Glovers Shreds which he cutteth from his white Leather, and boil them in Whitewine-Vinegar till they be soft, and bind this to it hot; and if you find that once or twice dressing it take not away the Scurf or Scab, renew it daily till it doth, for by this means the Roots of the bristly Hairs which grow in it, which feedeth the Mallender, will be taken away by this Receipt, which will cause it soon to be cured.

Another.

To anoint the Sorrhance with the Oil of Turpentine, will both kill and heal it, and make it marvellous sound. And this will likewise cure the Scratches.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Gunpowder, bruise it to dust, and mix it well with Hog's-Grease and Allum, and chafe it in well, two or three Dressings will cure it.

Another.

Take Verdegrease and soft Grease, and grind them well together to an Ointment, put it into a Box by itself: Then take Wax, Hog's-Grease and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that Salve into another Box; and when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab, and made it raw, anoint it with your green Salve of Verdegrease and fresh Grease, only for two or three Days. It is a sharp Salve, and will kill the cancerous Humour: then when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two Parts of the yellow Salve, and one part of the green Salve, and mix them well together, anoint the Sore there.

therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker, as you shall find occasion.

Another.

Take of the strongest Whitewine-Vinegar, and boil it, and so boiling hot rub the Mallender therewith twice every day until it do bleed; that done, put upon it the Powder of Verdegreafe good and thick, and so bind it on with a Clout, and let it so remain till a Crust come thereon: and when you shall find the Crust to be dry, and withal to chop, anoint the grieved Places with try'd Hog's-Grease, and that will cause the Crust to fall off.

Another.

After you have rubbed off the Scabs, and washed it well with sclding Chamber-lye and Salt, anoint it with this Salve made of green Copperas, Galls, Verdegreafe, Gunpowder, and Allum, all made into fine powder, and made up in Hog's-Grease and Tar.

Things good in general to eat away proud Flesh.

Ink, Quick-Sulphur, Orpiment, Lethargy, unslak'd Lyme, Roch-Allum, Galls, Soot, Verdegreafe, green Copperas, white Copperas, Precipitate, the Juice of Burrage, Scabious, Fumitory, a little Oil and Vinegar boiled with a soft Fire, and put to it Tar, and it will eat away any dead Flesh; Oil of Vitriol, black Hellebore, the Root of it beaten to powder, Arsnick, &c.

An excellent Ointment to eat away all dead Flesh, and to heal the same.

Take of common Honey two Ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdegreafe and Vinegar, of each an Ounce, Sublimate two Drams: let all be made into fine Powder, and boil it a few Warmths, keeping it still stirring, and then take it from the Fire, and keep it in a Gallypot close stopped for your Use. Apply it upon Lint or fine Hurds to the Sorrance once a day, and it cureth speedily and soundly; but before you dress the Sore, cleanse, wash and inject the Wound with this Water.

A Water to wash and cleanse a Sore or Wound, before you use the Ointment above.

Take Red-Sage, Plantain, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble-Leaves, Rosemary, Hyfop, Honeyfuckle-Leaves, of each half a Handful; boil them in one Pint of White-Wine, and as much

much of Smith's or cold Trough-Water; then add thereto the boiling of common Honey one Spoonful, and as much Allum as a Wall-nut, and a bright black piece of a Sea-coal, the bigness of an Egg unbroken; then let it boil till half be consumed, then strain it hard and wash the Sore therewith, and if the Wound be deep, inject of this Water with a Syringe into it every day when you dress him, and by this doing you shall cleanse the Wound, and take away all bad and dead Flesh, and heal it up soundly.

Another Water to cleanse and heal a Sore.

To a Gallon of Smiths-Water and a Quart of Ale, add two Handfuls of Sage, a Pint of Honey, an Ounce of common Allum, and half an Ounce of white Copperas; boil them very well together till they be all consumed, and put them into a clean Vessel, and keep them for your use. Or take Spring-water, and put to it Roch-Allum and Madder, and boil them till they be both consumed, and put them up for your use. Or take Sage, Cinquefoil and Fennel, of each a good Handful, and boil them in a Gallon of Spring-water till they be tender; then strain the Liquor from the Herbs, and put to it a quarter of a Pound of Roch-Allum, and let it boil again a little while, till the Allum be dissolved: then take it from the Fire, and make use of it after this manner, *viz.* Dip Lint in it warm, and lay it upon the Sore, and if it be hollow apply more Lint; then make a Bolster of Linen-Cloth, and wet it well in the Water, then wring out the Water, and bind on the Bolster close.

A Receipt for a Puncture or green Wound.

If it be in the Foot, or any other part of the Body, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Imposthumation unbroken, scald it first with this Medicine: Then wash it with the Water above.

Medicine.

Take red Tar a pennyworth, of the reddest and best, of Hog's grease half a pound, of green Copperas and Bay-salt of each a Handful, both made into fine Powder; boil all these very well, and with a Clout fastened upon a Stick, apply it scalding hot four Mornings together, for this scalding doth so kill the Malice of the Fistula, that it can never break to annoy the Horse any further. It cureth the Imposthumes and foul Ulcers, being thus applied.

Things good to take a Wen, or any other Excrecence arising in the Flesh, or hard Swellings.

Balm used with Salt taketh away the hard Swellings in the Throat, or Wens or Kernels therein. The Decoction of the lesser Celandine wonderfully cureth all hard Wens or Tumours applied to them; the Seed of Darnel, Pigeons-dung, Sallet-Oil and the Powder of Linseed boiled to the form of a Plaster, consumeth them; the Seed of Turn-Sole laid upon them, Archangel, or rather the Hedge-Nettle, stamped with Vinegar and applied as a Poulrice, taketh away any hard Swelling, and also fiery hot Inflammations. To tie a double Thred about it to eat it off, then with your Incision-Knife cut it across in four equal parts or quarters to the very bottom, but beware you touch not either Vein or Sinew; then with your Oil of Vitriol eat it away, or with Mercury, or else burn them off with your hot Iron, then heal the place with your green Ointment. The Leaves of Bucks-horn bruised and applied will consume them. The Milk that issueth out of the Fig-tree Branches when they are broken and applied, is also very good; so is the Juice of Housleek or Mercury: the Juice of the Leaves and Flowers of Mullin, with the Powder of the dried Root rubbed upon them, taketh them away. The Water that droppeth from the hollow places of the Poplar-tree anointed with it doth the like; Garden-Rue bruised with a few Myrtle-leaves, made with Wax, and applied, taketh away all sorts of them, so doth an Ointment made of burnt Ashes of the Willow-tree, mixed with Vinegar, and the place anointed therewith, &c.

Things good to cure an Anbury, which is a great spungy Wart full of Blood.

To tie it about with a Thred or Hair so hard as you can pull it, and in few days it will fall away of it self; then strew upon it the powder of Verdegrease to kill it at the Root, and heal it up again with your green Ointment. But if it be so flat that you cannot bind any about it, then take it away with your Incision-Knife close to the Skin, or else burn it off with a hot Iron, and then first kill the Fire with Turpentine and Hog's-grease molten together, and heal it up as before prescribed: but if it grow in such a sinewy place that it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron,

Iron, then eat it out with the Oil of Vitriol, and heal it up as you do other Wounds.

Head purged, *vid.* Perfumes in the first Part.

Things good for to put in Ointments and Salves, for the Cure of all manner of Wounds in general.

The Juice of ordinary Centaury is good to cleanse old Sores, and to heal up Wounds, the Juice of the Leaves of Clivers do close up the Lips of green Wounds, or the Powder of the Seed of the Herb doth the same; Clown's Wound-wort, Coral-wort, Cole-wort, the powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel, or Hog's-Fennel, Fox-gloves, Golden-rod, Winter-green, True-love or One-berry, Hounds-tongue, St. John's-wort, Kidney-wort, Knape-weed, Ladies-Mantle is the best Wound-Herb that is, and is good for inward and outward Wounds, Loofestrife; the dried Leaves of Medlers strewed upon a Wound, heal it quickly, Money-wort or the Herb Twopence. The Juice of Nettles is good to wash a Wound with, and if it be bound to it but three days you need no other Medicine; Pimpernel, Ground-pine, Plantain, Rag-wort, wild Sage, Saracens Confound, Solomon's-Seal, Sanicle, Burnet, Saxifrage, Scabious, Self-heal, Southernwood, the Juice of wild Tansy, Tutstan, Vervain, Blue-bottle, Elder, Couch-grass or Dog's-grass, Daffadil, Cranes-bill, Comfrey do so conglutinate things together, that it is reported that it will fodder Meat together, being cut into peices and put into the Pot; Celandine, Broom, Turpentine, Mallick, Frankincense, Balsam, the Leaves of Elm, Flix-weed is good for Ulcers and Wounds, Byfoil, Costmary, Cowslips, Cross-wort, Yarrow is good for Fistulaes and Ulcers, &c.

Particular Receipts for Salves or Ointments, for Wounds old or new.

Take common Honey and Verdegreafe finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boil them together till the Medicine wax red, and this will heal up any old or green Sore in short space.

Another.

Take Turpentine, black Soap, Hog's-grease, green Treat and Pitch a like quantity; mix and boil them together, and apply it warm, either Plaster-wise or Tent-wise.

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Soap

Soap of each half as much, and a little Turpentine, boil all but the Soap together, and when you take it off the Fire, put in the Soap; with this Ointment dress any Cut, and it will heal it, or Hog's-grease and *Venice-Turpentine* melted together.

Another.

Take eight Drams of *Venice-Turpentine*, four Drams of new Virgins-wax, melt them in a Pewter-Vessel, and stir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the Fire, and put into them half a Pint of White-wine, and when it is cold, pick holes in it, and let the White-wine run out; then anoint your Hands with Oil of Roses, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together; then put them into the Pewter Vessel again, and put to them half an Ounce of the Gum of the Fir-tree, and three Drams of the Juice of Betony; then seethe them well together till the Juice of Betony be wasted, and put to it three Drams of Womens Milk, or the Milk of a red Cow, and seethe them once again until the Milk be wasted, and so keep it for your use in a Gally.pot.

Another.

Take Wormwood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, Olibanum, beat them all into powder, and boil them in Wax and Barrow's grease till they be as thick as an Ointment or Salve: with this anoint any Wound, and it will heal it.

Others.

The Powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine simply of it self, will dry up and skin any Wound. If your Horse be gored upon a Stake, then pour into the Wound Butter scalding hot, and let him lie after he is cast so long as you think the Ointment is gone down to the bottom, and do thus once a day till it be whole. If you desire to keep a Wound open, put in the Powder of green Copperas; but if to heal it up speedily, then Wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together will do it.

Another for any new Wound or Hurt.

A quarter of a pound of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack put into the best Whitewine-Vinegar as you can get, and boiled well upon the Fire, and a piece of Butter put into it when it comes off the Fire, and the Wound washed therewith warm once every day, will be soon well. Or Linseed-Oil is very good put into a Wound to heal it up, and to kill a Gangreen if it be well washed and cleansed with Butter and Vinegar:

Vinegar: Or Train-Oil and the Powder of Verdegrease melted together, will heal and skin any Wound well and quickly.

If you desire to see more Variety of Ointments, Salves, Powders and Waters, look for them in the first Part.

Observations upon dressing of Wounds.

If he hath a Wound in his Head newly made, or in any other part that is full of Sinews, Bones or Gristles; wash it well with White-Wine warmed, and keep it while you are in dressing covered warm with wet Cloths: then search the bottom of the Wound with a Probe, and let it take as little Wind and Air as you can, and having found the bottom of it, stop the Wound close with a Clout till your Salve be ready. If the Wound be a Cut, make a handsome Roll of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the Mouth of the Wound; then make another Roll somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the Wound, even the hard Mouth, and anoint them with such Ointment as you shall think fit for the Cure, lukewarm: only observe this, that if the Wound be large, stitch it a little together with crimson Silk, it will heal the sooner, and make the Scar less. But if the Hurt be like a Hole made with some Prick, then make a stiff Tent either of Tow or Lint, so long as will reach the bottom, and anoint it with your Ointments, and bolster the same with a little Tow, and clap a sticking Plaster over it made of Pitch, Rosin, Mastick and Turpentine, melted together. If the Mouth of the Wound be not wide enough to let out the Matter, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting the Sinews, give it a slit from the Mouth downwards, that so the Matter may have the free passage out; and be sure to keep in the Tent by one means or other, and that it be not drowned within the Wound, and to tie some Thred at the upper end thereof, that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the Hole be deep, and in such a place as you cannot cut it, then make your Tent full as big as the Hole of a dry Sponge that was never wet, so long as it may reach the bottom; and the Tent being made somewhat full with continual turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it down, and dress the Wound twice a day, and cleanse it every time with White-Wine lukewarm: for the Sponge anointed with the Ointment, will both draw and suck up all the evil Matter, and
make

make it very fair within. And as it beginneth to heal every day, tent it lesser and lesser, until it be ready to close up; and never leave tenting it so long as it will receive a Tent, be it never so short: for hasty healing of Wounds breedeth Fistula's, which properly be old Sores, and therefore must be healed like Fistulaes. Now if the Wound proceed from some antient Imposthumation, then take two or three great Onions, and taking out the Cores, put therein a little Bay-Salt and a little whole Saffron, and roast them in hot Embers, then plaster-wise lay them hot to the Wound, renewing it once a day till it be whole. Now if the upper Skin of the Wound be putrefied, to take it away, lay a Plaster of Cow's-dung to it sod in Milk, and there let it remain for twenty four hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the Wound.

An Excellent Receipt for any green Wound.

Take Pennyroyal, Camomile, Brooklime, Ragwort or Ragweed, Sage, Groundpine, Ivy, Plantain, Yarrow, Feverfew, Maidenhair, of each a Handful; shred and bruise them very well in a Mortar together, then set them over the Fire in a Pound and a half, or more, of Hogs-Seam or Lard, with half a Pound of Deer's-Suet; let them gently simmer for about an Hour: then take it off the Fire, and strain the Herbs from the Liquor, and set it over the Fire again, and make it boil up; then take it off, and put into it a quarter of an Ounce of Verdegrease finely powdred and searced, with a quarter of an Ounce of burnt Allum, and an Ounce of common Bees-Wax, and a good quantity of the Oil of Deer's-Shank; stir them very well together, and put it into a Pot, and keep it for your use. If you cannot get Maidenhair, use Chickweed, and for want of Deer's-Suet, or Oil of Deer's-Shank, put in a Pound of Seam or Lard, half a Pound of May-Butter, and half a Pound of Sheep's-Tallow.

How to make Adders-Tongue Ointment, which is a most sovereign and excellent Ointment for any Beast that hath been stung or bitten by any venomous Creature; or for any Wound by Stake, Bite, or any other Accident: As also for any hard Swelling in any part of the Body. And is also very good for the Garget in a Cow's-Bag, chafed in very well with your Hand twice a day.

Take as much of the Herb Adders-Tongue as you have
occa.

sion to use, with a third part of Male Plantain, and bruise them very well in a Mortar together; then put to it fresh Butter new from the Churn, well beaten from the Butter-Milk, and mix it very well with your Herbs, but put not in so much of it as to make it lose its green Colours. After you have so done, put it into an earthen Pan, and let it lie about three or four Weeks in some cool place till it grow mouldy; then melt it down upon a gentle Fire till the Herbs grow crisp: then strain it out into some convenient thing fit for your purpose, and keep it for your use. You may dissolve into it, if you please, (when it comes off the Fire) some fine and clear Turpentine, which will make it much the better. You may make an excellent green Balsam for the said Distempers, if you boil the Herbs in Sallet-Oil, and dissolve into it, when it comes off the Fire, some fine clear Turpentine. This Ointment is made only in the Month of *April* or *May*, the Herb being then to be found, and in its prime, for it soon perisheth with a little Heat.

Another for a Sore or Swelling.

Black Soap, common Turpentine, green Treat (which is a green Ointment bought at the Apothecaries) Pitch and Hogs-grease, of each a small quantity boiled well together, and apply'd, is very good.

Another to dissolve any Sore or Swelling without breaking.

Take half a pound of black Soap, (or for want of that, common Soap) as much Bole-Armoniack powder'd, with a little of the Powder of unslak'd Lime, and put to them a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, with a small Gill of the Oil of Roses and Oil of Linseed, and anoint them with it, and it will help them.

Things good to cure a galled or swelled Back in general.

Take the White of an Egg and beat it to an Oil, then take Flower, Honey, and Bole-Armoniack finely beaten, and mix them well together, and spread it upon a piece of thin Leather, and lay it over the place galled, and it will not come off till it be well. Or take the Soot of the Chimney, and mix it with Cream till it become a Salve, and make a Plaster thereof, and lay it to the Gall and Swelling, and it will cure him. Or take some two or three Spoonfuls of Aquavitæ, and put to it some Soap, and boil them well together, and anoint the place well with it, as

hot as it can be well apply'd to the Swelling, and it will take it down; or Loam boiled in Vinegar to a Poultice, and apply'd to it very hot, taketh it down.

Or take a Loaf of wheaten Bread, and cut a slice of it, and toast it very well, and when it is toasted, spread it all over with Honey on both sides, and prick it full of holes, and toast it till the Honey is well soaked into it, and the Toast is become dry: then put it into a Mortar, and beat it to powder, and keep it for your use. When you use it, strew it upon the galled place, and it will dry it up in a short space.

To take away any Swelling, and to heal any Galled Back whatsoever.

Take only the Oil of Turpentine, and lay it upon the raw Back Morning and Evening with a Feather, and it will heal it up; and so use it to a swelled Back, it will either sink it or break it.

Another for a galled Back, Interfering or Shackle-Gall.

Take three parts of Sheep's-dung newly made, and one part of Rye or Wheat-Flower, and dry the Flower and mix it well with the Sheep's-dung, kneading it to a Paste, and make it into a Cake and bake it, and apply the Powder warm unto the place, and it will heal it very well, or anoint it with Turpentine and Verdegrease mixed together finely powder'd.

Another.

Take Water and Salt, and boil them well together, and wash the place therewith: Then take Pepper made into fine Powder, and strew it upon the place, and it will heal it in a very short time; or bruise a new-laid Egg between his Legs, and rub the place with it, and it cureth the Gall there.

Another.

Take the Leaves of Arsmart, and wash them, and lay them all over the place, and tho you ride him every day, yet they will heal very fast; but if he remain in the Stable, put the Water of the Leaves upon it.

Another, which cureth not only galled Backs, but any other Wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin and common Pitch, of each six Ounces; Mastick and Incense, of each one Ounce; Turpentine, Galbanum, Bole-Armoniack, of each three Ounces: melt and incor-

incorporate all these together upon a gentle Fire, and as they begin to cool make them up in Rolls, and when you use it, spread it upon a Cloth or Leather somewhat thin, but if you use it without either Cloth or Leather, to any outward Part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you use to do Plaster-wise, and whilst it is warm clap Flox of the same Colour upon it. This is a most excellent defensative Plaster for the staying and drying up of all evil Humours, and also very soveraign for assuaging of Swellings.

Another for a sore Back.

Take the Juice of Celandine and live Honey, of each two Spoonfuls, beat them with the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Allum and Wheat-Flower as will serve to bring it to a Salve; dress the Sore with this once a day, and it draweth and healeth. Now tho these Medicines are enough, yet because Farriers hold divers Opinions, and think what they know to be the best; I shall give you a Catalogue of their Receipts in general.

The Powder of Bryar-Leaves, Rye-Flower, the Powder of burnt Oyster-shells, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley, Straw burnt, and Soot will dry up and heal a sore Back. The Powder of Honey and unslak'd Lime will skin any Gall, provided the Sore be first washed with Vinegar; and Onions boiled in Water, and laid hot to a swoln Horse's Back, will assuage the Swelling, and the Yolk of an Egg, Salt and Vinegar will heal it up when it is broken, provided you wash the Sore with Ale wherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or Grim of a Pot will dry and skin a galled Back.

Things good for inward or outward Bruises, or Swellings in general.

Wood and Water-Betony, Honeyfuckle-Leaves, Knot-Grass, Archangel, Plantain, Ribwort, Yarrow, *Bursa Pastoris*, Bugle, Chervil, Mallows, Solomon's-Seal, Saracens-Confound, Saracens-Woundwort, Scabious, Self-heal, Sanicle, Soapwort, Thorough-wax, Rosin, Turpentine, Honey, Galbanum, St. John's-wort, Pitch, &c.

The Juice of Arsmart consumeth all cold Swellings, and dissolveth all congealed Blood got by Bruises, Strokes or Falls; the Root of Cinquefoil, Cud-weed or Cotton-weed, doth the like; Osmond-royal or Water-Fern is also good; Golden-rod outwardly applied is good for them; Nep or

Catmint bruised, and the Juice given inwardly, is also very good; the Decoction of Wood-Sage is a very good Remedy for any inward Vein broken, to disperse and void the congealed Blood, and to consolidate the Veins; Sanicle is also good. The Powder of Bole-Armoniack given in warm Ale, stops any inward Bleeding; the Powder of *Irish* Slate given also in warm Ale is good for any inward Bruise whatsoever, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of Bruises or Swellings.

First, ripen it with Hay boiled in Chamberlye, or with rotten Litter laid upon it; then let out the Corruption, then fill the Hollownes with the Powder of Rosin, and lay a Plaster of Shoemakers-Wax over it, and thus do once a day till it be whole: if it be slow of skinning or healing up, strew on the Powder of unslak'd Lime, and Bole-Armoniack mixt together, and if any proud Flesh arise, take it down either with burnt Allum, or Verdegrease in powder.

Another.

Take Ale or Beer-Yeast, and Verjuice, and putting a little fine Hay thereunto, boil them well together, then bind the Hay to the Swelling, and pour on the Liquor; and do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the Swelling: or rotten Litter and Hay boiled in Urine will take it away.

Another for any inward Bruise, by Fall or otherwise.

Take near a Quart of strong Beer or Ale, and put to it one Ounce of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and half an Ounce of the Powder of *Irish* Slate, and boil it a little, and give it him fasting in the Morning, for three or four Mornings together, lukewarm, and he will do well.

Another for a Swelling upon the Head, occasioned by a Blow or otherwise.

If the Swelling be on both sides, then bleed on both sides; but if it be but on one side, then bleed but on that side the Swelling is of, and give him this Drink, viz. One Ounce of Anniseeds, one Ounce of Turmerick, half an Ounce of Bay-Berries all beaten to powder, with a Gill-full of the Juice of Herb-Grace, Red-Sage and Wormwood; put all these into a Quart of strong Beer lukewarm, and give it him fasting in the morning, and order him as you do

do a Horse that hath had Phylick. 'Tis good also to apply this outward Application to it, *viz.* A little common Soap put to a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and rub and chafe it in with your Hand very well, and heat it in with a hot Fire-Shovel; leave it as thick upon the Swelling as you can. This will prevent a Farcin, which Blows and Strokes do commonly breed, and is also very good for any old or new Swelling whatsoever.

Another, which will take away any Crusty Knobs or hard Swellings in any Part of the Body of a Horse.

According to the Cure you are to undertake, whether great or small, proportion Oil of Turpentine, and strong Beer or Ale, and let it be of equal parts alike, well shaken together in a Glass, and then rub and chafe it very well in with your Hand, and heat it also in with a hot Fire-Shovel, and two or three Days after apply a Charge of common Soap and Brandy, well chafed in, as you did the Turpentine before. You may if you please put in a little of the Oil of Worms, which is a great Mollifier of any crusty, hard or bony Part.

If you will see more of this kind, *vid.* Observations upon Bruises and Strains, about three Leaves further.

Things good in general to cure swelled Legs.

Nerve-Oil, black Soap and Boar's-Grease melted together, and anoint the place with it, or bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter melted together, or with Sheep's-foot Oil, or with Train-Oil, or with Piss and Salt-Peter boiled together; and roll his Legs with Hay-Ropes wet in the same Liquor, from the Patter to the Knee, but bind them not too hard; or bathe him with the Water wherein hath been boiled Sage, Mallows, Rose Cakes, and Butter and Sallet-Oil put into it; or to take Frankincense, Rosin, fresh Grease, of each alike, boiled and strained, and used once a day, as you see occasion; or wash his Legs with the coldest Fountain-Water you can get; or let him stand every day, till the Swelling be assuaged, in running Water up to the Knees: or else take Primrose-Leaves, Violet-Leaves, Strawberry-Leaves, of each a Handful, boil them in new Milk till they be soft, then put into it of Nerve-Oil, of Petroleum, and of Pompilion, of each an Ounce, anoint him with it for five or six days together: or take Pitch, Virgins-Wax, Rosin, the Juice of Hyssop,

Galbanum, Myrrh, secondary Bdellium, Arabicum Populeon and Storax, according to your Discretion, and boil them in Deer's-Suet; and when it is cold put into it Bole-Armoniack and Costus beaten into fine powder, and incorporate them well together into the other Ingredients, and boil them all over again, and when it is almost cold, work them up into Rolls, and when you use it, spread it upon a Plaster, and wrap it about the Swelling, and let it stay there till it drop off of itself: this is good for a Surfeit.

To assuage the Swelling of a Horse's Legs, that are very much swelled by reason of the Scratches.

Take a Quart of Chamberlye or more, as you shall think fit, and put into it a Handful of Bay-Salt, a quarter of a Pound of Soap, a pretty quantity of Soot, a good Handful of Mistletoe chopt; boil them all very well together, and bathe his Legs with it very warm two or three times a day, and wrap a Cloth wet in the same, and lap about it, and this will assuage them. If you will have more Receipts for swelled Legs, see the first Part for Plasters and Baths for swelled Legs.

Things good to cure a Horse that is Spur-gall'd, or Shackle-gall'd, or Lock-gall'd.

Salt and Urine mixt together, or Salt and Water, and the place bathed with it, takes out Venom; warm Vinegar is likewise good; or else bind unto the place, the tender Tops of Nettles stamped. Oil of Turpentine is good, or Allum and green Copperas boiled in Water, and wash the place with it; the Leaves of Briony stamped and bruised with Vinegar, and applied to the place: Honey and Verdegreafe boiled together till it look red, and anoint the place with it twice a day, and strew upon it some chopt Flox to keep on the Salve, are very good for the Shackle-galls, and chiefly for the Scratches, &c.

Things good in general to cure the Diseases of the Eyes, as Watery Eyes, Blood-shotten Eyes, Dim Eyes, Moon Eyes, Wart in the Eyes, Inflammation in the Eye, Pearl, Pin, Web or Haw, &c.

The Juice of Cabbages and Coleworts boiled with Honey and dropped into the Eye, cleareth the Sight and consumeth any Film, as also the Canker that groweth therein; the Juice of Celandine put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye, and cleareth the Sight; the Juice of

or

ordinary Centaury cleareth the Sight; the Juice of Ground-Ivy, *alias* Alehoof, is good for Moon-Eyes, and to clear the Sight; the Juice of Housleek is good to allay the fiery Heat of the Eyes, and is good likewise for rheumatick and watery Eyes; the Juice of Germander put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web, and all Dimness of Sight, so doth the Juice of Eyebright, so doth the Juice of Horehound with Honey. The Seed of Clary powdered and finely searced, and mixt with Honey, taketh away Dimness of Sight, and is good for watery Eyes likewise; so doth the Juice of Dragon, Alehoof, Celandine and Daisies stamped and strained, and white Sugar and White-Rose water put to it, taketh away all manner of Inflammations, Spots, Webs, Itch, Smarting, and any Grief whatsoever in the Eyes, nay, tho the Sight be in a manner gone. The Leaves of common Ivy laid atleep in Water for twenty four Hours, help sore and smarting waterish Eyes; the Juice of Endive cleareth the Sight; the distilled Water of Groundsell, the Juice of Melilot cleareth the Sight; the distilled Water of the Lilly of the Valley is good for Inflammations of the Eyes, or for Pin and Web; the Powder of Liquorice blown into the Eye, is good likewise for the same, with rheumatick Distillations in them. The distilled Water of Looselstrife is good for Hurts and Blows in the Eyes, and for Blindness; the distilled Water of Lovage taketh away the Redness and Dimness of them; sweet Marjoram stamped with fine Flower, and laid to them, is good for Inflammations in them; the Juice of Mercury is good for waterish Eyes; the Juice of Pimpernel with a little Honey, cooleth the Inflammations of them, and taketh away the Pin and Web; the Juice of Purslain is good to take away the Redness of the Eye; the Juice of the yellow Rattle-grass with Honey put into the Eyes, or the whole Seed put into them, draweth forth any Skin, Dimness or Film from the Sight, the distilled Water of red Roses, is good for the Heat and Redness in the Eyes, and to stay and dry up the Rheum and Wateriness in them; the Juice of Rue, Fennel, Honey, and the Gall of a Cock put thereto is good, the Juice of Strawberry-Leaves lick'd into the Eye is good: or take Strawberries and put them into a Glass well stopped, and set it on a Horse-Dung-hil for twelve or fourteen Days, and then distil them, and it will be good for inflamed Eyes, or to take away any Film or Skin that groweth over them. The distilled Water of the wild Tansy, or the Juice of it taketh away the Heat and Inflammations

tions in them; Meadow-Trefoil or Honeysuckle-Leaves are good for a Pin and Web; the distilled Water of Vervain is good to clear the Sight and to take away the Film; the Juice of Violet-Leaves is good to take away the Inflammations of them, either applied outwardly, or put into them. Spring Water is good to bathe an inflamed Eye with; Water that is gathered from the Willow-Tree when it flowreth, the Bark being slit, and there being a fitting Vessel to receive it, is very good for Redness and Dimness of Sight, and for Films that cover the Eye, and to stay the Rheum that falls into them. The Juice of Mustard-seed is good for Dimness of Sight; the Juice of an Onion with Honey cleareth the Eye, and doth remove the Pin and Web, and amendeth the bloodshotten-Eye; the Juice of the Blessed-Thistle is good for the same: the Flowers or Roots of Valerian boiled in White-Wine cleareth the Sight; Egg-shells burned between two Tiles and beaten to powder, after the inward Film is taken away, are good for Dimness of Sight. Lapis Calaminaris, Plantain-Water, White-Wine squirted into his Eyes, cleareth them; so does Aloes, Camphire-Powder, white Vitriol, or white Copperas blown into his Eye, after it is beaten to powder, and searced very fine, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any Film whatsoever: the Ashes of the Root of black Sallow, Sugarcandy, and grated Ginger and Salt made up in Butter into little Balls, and being put into his Eye once a day, taketh away the Film of it. Fine-Bole or Bole-Armoniack with white Sugarcandy blown into the Eye, stoppeth any Rheum that falleth into the Eyes; Alabaster beaten very fine and searced and blown into the Eye, taketh away any Film whatsoever; so doth the Powder of a black Flint burnt: Sanguis Draconis taketh away a Film; so doth the Bone of the Cuttle-Fish beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, and is likewise good for blood-shotten Eyes: *May*-Butter, Rosemary, yellow Rosin and Celandine stamped and fryed, and kept in a Box, is a Jewel for the Eyes; burnt Allum blown into the Eyes, is good for to take off a Film; an Eggshell filled with Pepper, and burnt and beaten to powder, and blown into the Eyes, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any other Dimness; the powder of Sandevour, and the Powder of white Salt burnt, is good likewise for the same, so is the Powder of Pumicestone blown into the Eye; the Powder of the inner Sole of a Shoe burnt to Ashes and beaten to powder, is good to stop the rheumatick Eye; the Powder of two
Tiles

Tiles rubbed together and blown into the Eye, taketh away a Film; Wormwood with the Gall of a Bull beaten together, is good for a dim Sight; or take the Roots or Leaves of Primrose clean washed and boiled in running Water the space of an Hour, and put some white Copperas to it, then strain it and let it stand, and there will appear an Oil upon the Water, and anoint his Brows, Temples and Eyes with it, and it will take off a Film; Man's-dung burnt in a Fire-shovel to a Coal, and beaten to powder, and blown into his Eyes, taketh away a Film; or take a Handful of the angriest young Nettles, and stamp them well, and put them in a Linen-Rag, and dip it in Beer, then squeeze out the Juice, and put a little Salt to it, and lick that into the Eye, and it will take away the Film; or the Lean of Beef, or a Gammon of Bacon dried and beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, taketh it away also; Sal-Armoniack, or Lapis-Tutia doth the like prepared; the Gall of a Hare, and live Honey alike, put into the Eye, doth the same. The Haw every Smith can cut out.

Eye-lids swelled outward.

If you meet with a Horse (which is very rare to do) whose Eye-lids are so swelled that the inside of them are turned outward, and look very red, and as it were full of Bladders, and yet the Ball of the Eye very sound and good; then you need do nothing to him but keep him warm with a Hood made fit for his Head, of some Linen Cloth, and to anoint them twice a day with white Sugarcandy, Honey and white Rose-Water; and in two or three days time they will turn into their Places again. Then take Blood from him, which is partly the occasion (and cold Rheums together settling in the Head) of this Disease: do not clip nor meddle with the Bladders, or any part of the Eye, lest you do not only put out his Eyes, but endanger his Life, or at best make him but Blear-Ey'd.

Particular Receipts for the Eyes.

Take-Rose-Leaves, Smallage, Maiden-hair, Euface, Endive, Succory, Red-Fennel, Hill-wort and Celandine, of each half a quarter of a pound: being washed clean, lay them in White-wine asleep a whole Day, and then distil them; and the first Water will be like Gold, the second like Silver, and the third like Balm; This Water hath recovered Sight for some years lost.

Ano-

Another to take off a Film, or Pin and Web.

Take white Copperas and beat it to powder, and sift it through a very fine Sieve, with the same quantity of white Sugarcandy beaten, and blow it into his Eye once a day, and as you see it amend, once in two or three days is enough.

Another to take off a Film.

Take Alabaſter and beat and ſearce it very fine, and blow it into his Eye once or twice a day, and it will take it off.

Another for the ſame.

Take Bay-Salt, or for want of that common Salt, and bruise it very ſmall and mix it well with freſh Butter, then make it up into ſmall Balls, as big as a Hazel-nut, and open his Eye-lid, and put one of them in, holding your Hand over it till it be all melted; and thus doing once a day will take off any Film, if it be taken in time.

Another to take away the Rheum from his Eyes, and to clear them.

Take Butter and Salt, of each alike, and mix them well together with your Knife; then take a piece as big as a ſmall Walnut, and put it into his Ear, (on that ſide that is offended) and let it remain there for four or five Hours, and this will dry up the Rheum and clear his Eye. You muſt tie or ſew his Ear cloſe, or elſe he will ſhake it out.

Another to ſtay a Rheum in a Horſe's Eye.

Take fine Bole, or Bole-Armoniack, and blow it into his Eyes, and it will drive back the Rheum; but if he will not ſuffer you to blow it into his Eye, mix it with Butter and ſome white Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and make it up into little Balls, and put one of them into his Eye once or twice a day, as you ſhall ſee occaſion.

Another to take off a Film.

Take the blackeſt Flint you can get, and calcine it, then beat it to powder, and ſift it through a fine Sieve, and put to it the powder of Ginger, and blow it into his Eye as you ſee occaſion.

Another for ſore Eyes, dim Eyes or Moon-Eyes.

Take Lapis Calaminaris half an Ounce, and heat it red hot, and quench it in a quarter of a Pint of Plantain-Water,
or

or White-wine; do this eight or nine times, then beat it to powder, and put it to the Water, then add half a Dram of Aloes, and a Spoonful of Camphire in powder, and let them dissolve: drop this into the Eye.

Another for the same.

Take a Pint of Snow-Water, and dissolve into it two or three Drams of white Vitriol, and with it wash his Eye three or four times a day, and it helpeth.

Another for a white Film or Skin over the Eye.

Take the Root of the black Sallow, and burn it to Ashes, then put to it the like quantity of white Sugarcandy, and grated Ginger finely searced, and blow it into his Eyes Morning and Evening.

Another for any Soreness in the Eye, as Pearl, Pin, Web or Bruise

Take a new-laid Egg, and roast it very hard, then cleave it in sunder long-wise, and take out the Yolk, then fill the empty holes with white Vitriol finely beaten, and close the Egg again, and roast it the second time, till the Vitriol be molten; lastly, beat the Egg, Shell and all, in a Mortar, and strain it, and with that moisture dress the Eye. If instead of the Vitriol you fill the Holes with Myrrh finely searced, and hang the Egg up that it may drop, and with that moisture dress the Eye, it is every way as good, only it is a little stronger.

Another which is infallible for the curing of a Pin, Pearl, Web or Spot in a Horse's Eye.

Take an Egg and make a hole in the top, put out half the White, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roast it very hard, so as you may beat it into fine powder, having formerly lap'd it in a wet Cloth; then Morning and Evening, after you have washed his Eye with the Juice of Ground-Ivy, or Eyebright-water, blow this Powder therein.

To cure a Wart in a Horse's Eye, which is upon the Edge or Inside of the Eye-lids.

Take burnt Allum, and the same quantity of white Cop-peras unburnt, both being beaten very small, and lay some of
this

this Powder on the head of the Wart once a day, and it will consume it.

Another for foul Eyes, sore Eyes, or Sight almost lost.

Take Tacamahacca, Mastick, Rosin and Pitch, of each a like quantity, and being molten with Flox of the Colour of the Horse, lay it as a defensive on each side his Temples, as big as a twenty-shilling Piece; then underneath his Eyes upon the Cheek Bone (with a round Iron) burn three or four Holes, and anoint them with sweet Butter: then take a Handful of Celandine, and wash it clean in White-wine, but let it touch no Water, then bruise it and strain it, and to the quantity of Juice, put the third part of Woman's Milk, and a pretty quantity of white Sugarcandy, searced through a piece of Lawn, and lick it into his Eye Morning and Evening. Thus do for the worst of sore Eyes, but if the offence be not extreme, then you may forbear both the defensative and the burning, and use only the Medicine.

Another for a Bite, or Stroke upon the Eye.

Honey, Powder of Ginger, and the Juice of Celandine, mixed together, and licked into his Eye with a Feather twice a day, is a very good Cure for it.

Another for a Film.

The Powder of Verdegrease finely beaten and searced, and burnt Allum, of equal parts alike, mixed with some of the Ointment of Marsh-mallows, and about the bigness of a Pea put into his Eye once or twice a day, will cure him.

Another for Blood-shot Eyes.

Roman Vitriol steeped in white Rose-water, till it be coloured, (or for want of that, fair Spring-water) and the Eye washed therewith twice or thrice a day cureth it.

Another to stop a Rheum flowing to the Eyes.

Take Flox or Hurds, and dip it in the best melted Rosin you can get, and apply it to the Hollow of the Eyes, and it will drive it back.

Some Observations upon Bruises and Strains.

1. In all Bruises by Falls or any other Accidents, 'tis good to bleed first in the common bleeding Neck-Vein, before you give him any equal Medicines for it; and be very careful
that

that what you give him be not binding things, for they will so coagulate and thicken the strained Blood, that it cannot have its free passage through the Ureter-Vein as it should have, which will be very prejudicial to his Health.

2. The best thing you can give him for any inward Bruise or Wrench in the Back or Kidneys, is common Turpentine made into Balls, with the best *English* Liquorice-powder you can get for Money: about an Ounce of it given him every Morning for about a Week together, and a Plaster or Charge applied at the same time to his Loins or Fillets, made up with *Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together, will perfectly cure him in a Month at farthest; you may renew your Charge, if there be occasion.

3. All things that provoke Urine are very good for him, for the congealed Blood must have its Vent through the Ureter-Veins, or else it will do him but little good.

4. If your Horse hath a Strain upon the Back-Sinews, 'tis also very convenient to let him blood with your Fleam on the Shackle-Vein, on the Pastern-Joint, the Hair being first clipped away, to the end you may the better see how to strike the Vein. When you have so done, apply your Plaster or Charge of *Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together, as before directed, and lay it hot upon the grieved Part, and let it lie on till it come off of it self, and it will cure him in a very short time.

Things good in general for the Cure of any Halting coming by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

If it be in the Shoulder, let blood and apply things to it as you do to other Strains. A Poultrice made of Pellitory of the Wall, and Mallows boiled in strong Beer-Tilt, with Bran, Bean-flower and Sallet-Oil put thereto, and applied warm, is good to restore any Sinew-strain in a short time: the Decoction of the Herb Scabious applied is good for any Shrunk-Sinew or Vein; or Tansy boiled in Oil is good for it: Oil of Turpentine, Brandy, Aquavitæ, Oil of Spike, Nerve-Oil, Sallet-Oil, Bear's-grease, Oil of Swallows, Bole-Armoniack is good for Sinew-strains; so is Arsmart and Brook-Lime steeped together, good for old Strains: Glovers specks boiled in Ale, and applied hot to the place, is good; Oil of Origanum, Oil of *Exeter*, Oil of Peter, Oil of St. John's-wort, Oil of Roses, Mirtles, Sanguis Draconis, Pickle or Brine from Olives, Train-Oil, Mallows, Oat-meal
and

and Bran bruised together and boiled with Urine, and laid to it Poultrice-wise; Dialthea and Nerve-Oil mingled together; Pompilion, Nerve-Oil, and black Soap mingled together upon the Fire, and anoint it therewith; Brandy and Soap boiled together is good; or Whitewine-Vinegar and fresh Butter boiled together, with as much Bran as will bring it to a Poultrice, and laid to it Morning and Evening, is good; or Mallows and Chickweed boiled together in Ale, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of all manner of Haltings, coming by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

Markham's Master-Medicine for a Back-Sinew-Strain, or any Strain, Shrinking, or Numbness of Sinews.

Take a fat sucking Mastiff-Whelp, flay it and bowel it, then stop the Body as full as it can hold with grey Snails and black Snails, then roast it at a reasonable Fire; when it begins to warm, baste it with six Ounces of Oil of Spike made yellow with Saffron, and six Ounces of Oil of Wax: then save the Droppings, and whatsoever Moisture falls from it, whilst any Drop will fall, keep it for your use. With this anoint the Strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot Fire-shovel before it: Thus do both Morning and Evening till Amendment.

Another in nature of a Charge for a Back-Sinew-Strain.

Take five Quarts of Ale and a Quarter of a Peck of Glovers Specks, and boil them till it come to a Quart; then apply it hot to the Grief, and remove it not in five or six days.

Another for a Strain in any part, new or old.

Take of Sheep's-Suet a Pound, of Sheep's-Dung two Handfuls, chopt Hay a Handful, Wheat-Bran a Pint, sweet Soap a quarter of a Pound; boil all these in a Quart of strong Ale till it come to a Poultrice, then take it from the fire, and put in half a Pint of Whitewine-Vinegar, and a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and apply it hot to the Grief; and give him moderate Exercise.

Another for a Strain or Sinew-Bruise.

Take Cummin-seeds and bruise them gross, then boil it with the Oil of Camomile, and put to it so much yellow Wax as will bring it to a Cerate, and spread it upon a Cloth or Leather, and apply it hot to the Grief.

And

Another for old Strains, Grieffs, or old Cramps.

Take Brandy, Oil de Bay, Oil of Swallows, Bole-Armoniack, Hog's-grease, black Soap, of each half a pound; boil them till the Brandy be incorporate, then take of Camomile, Rue, Red Sage and Mistletoe, of each a Handful; dry them and bring them to powder, and mix it with the Ointment, and bring all to a Salve. With this anoint the Grieff, and hold a hot Bar of Iron before it, chafing it well in; and do thus once a day, and in nine days the Cure hath been effected.

A sudden Cure for a Knock or Bruise on the Sinews, or Sinew-Strain, new or old.

Take a live Cat, wild or tame, and cut off her Head and Tail; then cleave her down the Chine, and clap her hot, Bowels and all, to the Bruise: let it lie on twenty four hours, and serve another Cat or two so if there be occasion. When it is dry, anoint it with Oil of Turpentine, Brandy and Soap, and heat it well in with a hot Iron. The Cats Bones must be broken.

Another for a Strain newly done, to help it in twenty four Hours.

Take the Grounds of Ale or Beer a Quart, as much Parsley chopt gross as you can gripe, boil them till the Herb be soft, then put to it a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and put it in a Pint of Wine-Vinegar, and if it be thin, thicken it with Wheat-bran, and lay it upon Hurds, and Poultice-wise, as hot as he can endure it, lay it to, and remove it once in twelve hours, and give him moderate Exercise.

Another, which is Markham's own Balm, which he says hath never failed him in any Strain in the Shoulder, or other Parts, hid or apparent, or for any Wind-gall or Swelling.

Take ten Ounces of Piece-grease, and melt it on the Fire, then take it off, and put into it four Ounces of the Oil of Spike, one Ounce of the Oil of Origanum, an Ounce and a half of the Oil of Exeter, and three Ounces of the Oil of St. John's-wort; stir them well together, and put them up into a Gally-pot. With this Ointment (or indeed precious Balm) being hot, anoint the grieved place, and rub and chafe it in very much, holding a hot Fire-shovel before

before it, and anoint it once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise. For want of Piece-grease take Goose-grease.

Another for Sinews that are extended, over-strained, and so weakned, that the Member is useless.

Take of Cantharides, Euphorbium and Mercury, of each a like quantity, and of the Oil de Bay double as much as of all the rest; bring the hard Simples to powder, and beat all to a Salve: apply this to the Grief (being desperate) and tho it make a Sore, it will give strength and straitness to the Sinews. For the Sore, you may cure it either with Populeon, fresh Butter or Deers-grease warm.

Another of the same nature, but more gentle.

Take Turpentine two Ounces, Verdegrease three Ounces, Hogs-grease six Ounces; boil them till the Verdegrease be dissolved, then take Rosin, Bees-Wax, of each two Ounces; mix all these together, then apply it to the grieved place hot.

Another, which is a Charge for a new Strain or Grief proceeding from Heat.

Take the Whites of six Eggs, and beat them with a Pint of Whitewine-Vinegar, the Oil of Roses and Myrtles, of each an Ounce, Bole-Armoniack four Ounces, as much *Sanguis Draconis*, and with as much Bean-flower or Wheat-flower (but Bean is the best) as will thicken it, bring it to a Salve, and spreading it on Hurds, lay it about the grieved place, and renew it not until it be dry.

Signs to know where the Grief lies.

You may know where the Grief lies, by pinching every several Member; and where he most complaineth, there is his most Grief.

For a new Strain.

Take Whitewine-Vinegar, Bole-Armoniack, the Whites of Eggs, and Bean-flower, and having beaten them to a perfect Salve, lay it very hot to the sore place, and it will cure it.

Another for an old Strain.

Take Vinegar and Butter, and melt them together with Wheat-Bran; make it into a Poultice, and lay it as hot as may be to the place grieved, and it will take away the Grief.

Ano-

Another for a Back-Sinew-Strain.

Take *Venice-Turpentine* and Brandy beaten together to a Salve, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and heat it in with a Fire-shovel, and in two or three times doing it will take it away.

Another for an old Strain or Lameness.

Take Boars-grease, Bole-Armoniack, black Soap and Nerve-Oil, of each a like quantity; boil them well together, and apply it hot to the Grief, chafing it very well, and heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel; and thus do it once a day till the Pain go away.

Another for a Strain in the Pastern, or Foot-lock Joint.

A Poultice made of the Grounds of Strong-beer, Hens-dung, Hogs-grease and Nerve-Oil boiled together, and applied to the grieved part, two or three times bound on with a Linen Rag, will help him.

Another very good for a new Sinew-Strain.

Take common Soap a quarter of a pound, Bole-Armoniack in powder an Ounce, the Whites of three or four new-laid Eggs, a Gill of Whitewine-Vinegar, half a Gill of Brandy, and a quarter of a Pint of new Wort, either of Beer or Ale, with half a Gill of the Oil of Turpentine, and incorporate and mix them very well with your Hand. Then rub and chafe the thinnest of it in upon the grieved place, holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, to make it sink in the better: then daub all over the thickest of it in the nature of a Charge, and stick Flox or Hurds upon it, and bind it up with a Linen Cloth, and it will do well. If there be occasion, you may apply a fresh Charge to it.

Another for an old Strain upon the Legs.

After you have clipped away the Hair so close on the Pastern-Joint, that you can see the Pastern-Vein, strike it with your Fleam, and let it bleed well; then take two Ounces of the Oil of Turpentine, with the like quantity of strong Ale or Beer, and put them into a Glass, and shake them very well together, to incorporate them the better: Then pour it out into an Earthen or Pewter Dish, and with your Hand anoint and chafe it into the grieved part very well; holding at the same instant of time a hot Fire-shovel

Y

before

before it, to make it sink in the better. When you find that the Swelling is abated, lay the common Charge of Soap and Brandy upon it, and bind a Linen Rag wet in the same about it. When your Charge begins to peel off, anoint it with the Oil of Trotters once or twice. This Way of ordering him will perfect the Cure in a Week or Fortnight at farthest.

Another for any Grief, Pain, Numbness, Weakness, or Swelling in Joints, that cometh of a cold Cause.

Take Brandy and bathe the place therewith very warm, heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel; then wet a Linen Cloth in the said Brandy, and cover the wet Cloth all over with Pepper finely beaten, very thick, and so fold it about the grieved place: then roll it on fast with a dry Roller, and let him rest, and do this once a day till you see Amendment.

An Excellent Charge, which never yet failed, for any Sinew-Strain, from the Shoulder or the Hips down to the Foot; nay, tho it be in the Coffin-Joint, which is the hardest of Strains to cure.

Take of Burgundy Pitch and of Frankincense, of each a quarter of a pound; as much stone Pitch, or for want of that, common black Pitch, as contains the quantity of a Walnut; a quarter of a pound of Roses, and the like quantity of Bole-Armoniack finely beaten to powder: melt all these together till they be thoroughly dissolved, incorporate them well together. If you add two or three pennyworth of Mastick to them, it will be the better; but if you have none of it, it will do without it.

How to use it.

When it is almost cold, that it will not scald the Skin, lay it on the grieved place with a Lath or any other such-like thing; then lay all over the Charge some Flox, Wool, Deers-hair, or such-like things: then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flox somewhat hotter than you did the former. Then cover it all over again with some Flox, as you did before, and if he be a Stable-Horse, keep him out of the Water by watering him in the Houle; but if it be in the Summer, you may charge him abroad. If the Strain be in the Coffin-Joint, you must let him blood in the Toe, which every common Smith can do; then stop the bleeding
of

of it by some Flax or Tow dipt in the White of an Egg, beaten with Bole-Armoniack; use it as before shew'd, laying it all over the Hough, Heels, and Footlock-Joint, and especially at the setting on of the Hough.

How to know when it is well made.

If it be well made, you may know it by this Sign, *viz.* If you drop it upon a piece of white Paper, and let it lie until it be cold; then take and break it asunder, and if it crumble in the breaking, it is too hard; but if it break clear without crumbling, it is well made: and if you find it too soft, and that it will not keep on the Horse's Foot, then put a little more Rosin and Bole-Armoniack into it; and if you find it too hard, put in a little Tallow or Sallet-Oil, but Tallow is the best. If it be in hot Weather, you must make it the harder, and especially if he run abroad; and if it be in cold Weather, you must make it the softer. If you desire to see more Charges for these Uses, look in my First Part.

For swelled or garded Legs, whether by Grease or other Accident.

If your Horse's Legs be swelled, only because the Grease is fallen into them, and there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold Fountain-water, and other ordinary Helps assuage them; then take a Pottle of Wine-Lees, or else take the Grounds of strong Ale or Beer, and boil it with a pound of Hog's-grease, then with as much Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, make thereof a Poultrice, and having made him a Hose of Woollen Cloth, fill it with this Poultrice as hot as he can suffer it; then close up the Hose, and let it abide two days: the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Poultrice, but put in hot molten Grease to sit whilst it will receive any, for that will renew the Strength thereof. Then close it as you did before, and let him stand two or three days longer: then open the Leg, and rub it down, and if you find occasion you may apply another; if not, the Cure is wrought.

Now, if besides the Swelling he hath Ulcers, Chops and Sores, then apply the Poultrice, as before shew'd; and after a Week's Application, take a Quart of old Urine, and put to it half a Handful of Salt, as much Allum, and half an Ounce of white Copperas; boil them together, and with it wash the Sore once or twice a day: then after a little

before it, to make it sink in the better. When you find that the Swelling is abated, lay the common Charge of Soap and Brandy upon it, and bind a Linen Rag wet in the same about it. When your Charge begins to peel off, anoint it with the Oil of Trotters once or twice. This Way of ordering him will perfect the Cure in a Week or Fortnight at farthest.

Another for any Grief, Pain, Numbness, Weakness, or Swelling in Joints, that cometh of a cold Cause.

Take Brandy and bathe the place therewith very warm, heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel; then wet a Linen Cloth in the said Brandy, and cover the wet Cloth all over with Pepper finely beaten, very thick, and so fold it about the grieved place: then roll it on fast with a dry Roller, and let him rest, and do this once a day till you see Amendment.

An Excellent Charge, which never yet failed, for any Sinew-Strain, from the Shoulder or the Hips down to the Foot; nay, tho it be in the Coffin-Joint, which is the hardest of Strains to cure.

Take of Burgundy Pitch and of Frankincense, of each a quarter of a pound; as much stone Pitch, or for want of that, common black Pitch, as contains the quantity of a Walnut; a quarter of a pound of Roses, and the like quantity of Bole-Armoniack finely beaten to powder: melt all these together till they be thoroughly dissolved, incorporate them well together. If you add two or three pennyworth of Mastick to them, it will be the better; but if you have none of it, it will do without it.

How to use it.

When it is almost cold, that it will not scald the Skin, lay it on the grieved place with a Lath or any other such-like thing; then lay all over the Charge some Flox, Wool, Deers-hair, or such-like things: then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flox somewhat hotter than you did the former. Then cover it all over again with some Flox, as you did before, and if he be a Stable-Horse, keep him out of the Water by watering him in the Houle; but if it be in the Summer, you may charge him abroad. If the Strain be in the Coffin-Joint, you must let him blood in the Toe, which every common Smith can do; then stop the bleeding
of

of it by some Flax or Tow dipt in the White of an Egg, beaten with Bole-Armoniack; use it as before shew'd, laying it all over the Hough, Heels, and Footlock-Joint, and especially at the setting on of the Hough.

How to know when it is well made.

If it be well made, you may know it by this Sign, *viz.* If you drop it upon a piece of white Páper, and let it lie until it be cold; then take and break it asunder, and if it crumble in the breaking, it is too hard; but if it break clear without crumbling, it is well made: and if you find it too soft, and that it will not keep on the Horse's Foot, then put a little more Rosin and Bole-Armoniack into it; and if you find it too hard, put in a little Tallow or Sallet-Oil, but Tallow is the best. If it be in hot Weather, you must make it the harder, and especially if he run abroad; and if it be in cold Weather, you must make it the softer. If you desire to see more Charges for these Uses, look in my First Part.

For swelled or garded Legs, whether by Grease or other Accident.

If your Horse's Legs be swelled, only because the Grease is fallen into them, and there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold Fountain-water, and other ordinary Helps assuage them; then take a Pottle of Wine-Lees, or else take the Grounds of strong Ale or Beer, and boil it with a pound of Hog's-grease, then with as much Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, make thereof a Poultice, and having made him a Hose of Woollen Cloth, fill it with this Poultice as hot as he can suffer it; then close up the Hose, and let it abide two days: the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Poultice, but put in hot molten Grease to it whilst it will receive any, for that will renew the Strength thereof. Then close it as you did before, and let him stand two or three days longer: then open the Leg, and rub it down, and if you find occasion you may apply another; if not, the Cure is wrought.

Now, if besides the Swelling he hath Ulcers, Chops and Sores, then apply the Poultice, as before shew'd; and after a Week's Application, take a Quart of old Urine, and put to it half a Handful of Salt, as much Allum, and half an Ounce of white Copperas; boil them together, and with it wash the Sore once or twice a day: then after a little

drying anoint them with the Ointment called *Ægyptiacum*, which is made of Vinegar eight Ounces, of Honey twelve Ounces, of Verdegrease two Ounces, of Allum one Ounce and a half, and boiled to the height, till it come to a red Salve; and it will both kill the malignant Humours, and heal and dry up the Sores.

Another for swelled Legs, whether by Grease, Goutiness, Wind or Travel.

First, Bathe them well with the Pickle or Brine which comes from Olives, being made hot; then take a Pint of Train-Oil, as much Nerve-Oil, and as much Oil de Bay, a quarter of a Pound of Allum, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, half a Pound of Hog's-grease; put all these to a Pottle of Urine, and with a Handful or two of Mallows, Oatmeal bruised, and Bran, boil them to a Poultrice, and very hot apply it to the Grief. Do this once in two days.

Things good in general for a Horse that hath a Wrench in his Back.

To shave away the Hair, but then you must not lay his Charge on too hot: You may find many sorts of them in my First Part. But more particularly take this; Take of Bole-Armoniack, Comfrey *alias* *Consolida major*, Galbanum, Sal-Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his own Blood, *Burgundy* Pitch, Mastick, Olibanum, of each alike; stamp them well together with Wheat-Meal, Vinegar, and the White of an Egg, and lay it upon the place grieved: then clap upon the top of it all along the Chine and Back, a Sheep's-Skin newly taken off from his back, and change it every day, and in three or four days it will be well; but let the Charge lie on till it fall away of itself. Or to bathe his Back with Brandy well warmed, and the Powder of Bole-Armoniack mix'd together, is very good. But if your Horse be naturally weak in the Back, or sway'd in the Back, these two Diseases are not absolutely cured; but Coleworts boiled in Sallet-Oil, and Bean-Meal put into it, and the Back charg'd with it, will strengthen it.

Or you may give him these things inwardly, which is good for a Back weak'd in the Fillets or Loin, or for a Wrench in the Back-bone, *viz.* Take one Ounce of *Solo-*
mon's Seal, one Ounce of Comfrey, one of Clary, a quarter of a pound of Polypody of the Oak, Wood-Betony two Handfuls; boil them in a Gallon of strong Beer or more,
till

till half the quantity be consumed, then take it off the Fire, and put into it a quarter of a Pound of Butter, and a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and give him a Quart of it lukewarm in a Drenching-Horn fasting, at the end of every third Day, for about three or four times, and order him as in Observations how to order sick Horses. Ifing-Glass boiled in Milk with a little Bole Armoniack is a great Strengthner of the Back, given him for several Mornings together: but the more easy and familiar way to cure these Distempers, (and as good a thing as I think you can possibly give him) is to make him some Balls of common Turpentine, and the Powder of *English Liquorice*, and give him about two Ounces of them, for about a Fortnight together, and apply at the same time to the Reins of his Back this excellent Plaster, viz. *Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus*, of each a like quantity (but rather more of the *Oxicroceum*) melted together, and spread upon Sheep's Leather, and apply it to the grieved part, and let it lie on till it fall off of itself. You may renew this Charge if you think it convenient, after the other hath been about a Fortnight on. This is also a very excellent Plaster for a Back-Sinew-Strain in the Footlock-Joint, and indeed for all manner of Strains whatsoever.

To cure the Lampas.

Take a roasted Onion very hot, and put it upon a Clout, or upon Hurds, and with it rub the Lampas very much, and do this two or three times a day till it be whole; but the best Cure is to burn it away, which every common Smith can do.

Things good to cure the Camery or Frounce.

To let him blood in the two greatest Veins under his Tongue, and to wash the Sore with Vinegar and Salt, or to burn the Pimples on the Head, and to wash them with Ale and Salt till they bleed.

To cure the Barbes.

Clip them away with a Pair of Scissars, and let them bleed, then prick them in the Palate of the Mouth with your Fleam, and wash the place with Wine-Vinegar, Bole-Armoniack and Salt, and see that no Hay-dust stick upon the place clipped, and he will be well again.

Several Receipts for the Canker in the Mouth, Nose, or in any other part of the Body.

For the Canker in the Mouth or Nose, take White-Wine half a Pint, Roch-Allum the Quantity of a Walnut Bay-Salt half a Spoonful, *English* Honey one Spoonful, Red-Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Bramble-Leaves, of each a like quantity; boil these in the White-Wine so much as will suffice, till a quarter be consumed, and inject this Water into the Sorrhance; or if it be in the Mouth, wash the place with a Clout fastned to a Stick, and dress him therewith twice a day, or oftener as you shall see fit, till it be whole.

Another for the Nose or Mouth, or any other place.

Take the Juice of Plantain, as much Vinegar, and the same Weight of the Powder of Allum, and with it anoint the Sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it and cure it.

Another.

Take of Ginger and Allum, of each alike, made into fine powder, mixing them well together till they be very thick like a Salve; and after you have washed it very well with Allum-Water or Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing it will be killed.

Things good in general for the Canker.

The Herb Fluellen stamped, and the Juice given inwardly, or applied outwardly, healeth the most spreading and eating Cankers and Ulcers, and fretting Sores; Sage, Plantain, Rosemary, Honey, Allum, Verdegrease, green and white Copperas, Brimstone, Tansy, Bay-Salt, Bramble-Leaves, Elder, Ginger, the Roots of Asphcdil, Quick-Silver, Arsnick, Agrimony made up with Hog's-Grease cureth old Cankers and inveterate Ulcers; Allum, Honey and Verdegrease mixed together is good, the Decoction of white Beets in Water; is good for running Sores, Ulcers and Cankers in the Head, Legs, or other Parts of the Body; the Decoction of the Leaves of the Burdock, &c.

Another excellent Cure for the Canker in the Head, Face or Eyes, &c.

Take three Ounces of *Burgundy* Pitch, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and put them into a large earthen new Pipkin, and set them over a soft Fire, and let them simmer gently, keeping

keeping them stirring while they are on the Fire, to incorporate them the better. Your Pipkin must be the larger, by reason that you are to put in Verdegrease, which is of that fiery nature, that it will make it quickly rise and boil over, if you have not a special Care thereof: After you have boiled it near a quarter of an Hour, put to it one Ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much of the Powder of Verdegrease as will lie upon a Sixpence, finely powdered and searced through a Lawn Sieve, boil them also a little while together, then take it off the Fire, and put it into a Gally-pot, and keep it till you have occasion to use it.

Directions to know whether it be well or ill made.

If it be well boiled it will be neither too thick nor too thin, but in the Condition of an Ointment, and of a very good green Colour; but if it be too much boiled, your Verdegrease will turn it of a red Colour, which will be so prejudicial to your Salve, that it will lose the healing Quality thereof.

Directions how to use it.

If you use it for a Canker in his Nose, you are to tye a Linen-Rag upon the end of a Stick, and dip it in Wine-Vinegar and Salt, or Verjuice and Salt mixed together, and put up into his Nostrils, and rub and scrub off the Scabs and Filth that you find therein: When you have thus washed and cleansed it, take the longest Goose-Feather you can get, and if it be not long enough to reach the Top of his Nostrils, tye it to the end of a small Stick, and dip it into the Salve, and use it as before, once a day, and he will do well. If you find it on his Head, Face or Eyes, you must do the like, viz. rub and scrub off the Scabs till they bleed, and lay on some of your Salve with a Feather, and strew some Wheat-Bran upon it to make it keep on the better. You are to dress it once a day till you find it heal, and then once in two or three days is enough.

Observation.

The quickest and speediest Way for to effect all outward Cures, is to let him stand in the House, during his Cure.

Things good to kill Worms in general.

Alheal, Alkanet, Water-Agrimony, the Leaves of Bistort or Snakeweed, the Powder of the Root of Butter-Bur, the Seed of Sea-Colewort bruised and given in Beer; the Pow-

der of ordinary small Centaury; the Powder of the Root called Devils-Bit, Elecampane, the Powder of Fern-Roots, the Juice of Flix-weed, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, Germander, Hops beaten to powder and given him, the Powder of Horehound, Knot-grass, Groundsel, Savin, Brimstone, Allum, Salt, Mother-wort, the Bark of the Root of the Mulberry-Tree, Nettle-seeds, the Powder of the Leaves of the Peach-Tree, the Powder of Plantain, Horse-Radish, Wild-Rochet, Rupture-wort, Southernwood, Vervain, the Bark of the Walnut-Tree, or the Powder of the green Shells, Wormwood dried and beaten and given: Tansy-Seed, the white Beete sodden with Garlick, Mercury calcin'd, Aloes, black Soap, Tanners-Ouze, his own Hair chopped small and given him in his Provender; Rue, Soot, the warm Guts of a new-slain Hen or Chicken rolled up in Salt and Brimstone, and given him; Elder-Berries sodden in Milk, Chalk, Fenugreek, Bay-Berries, Turmerick, Worm-Seed, Garlick, Hen's-Dung, Saffron, Mint, Sage, Rosin, Juniper-Berries, the green Branches of Sallow or Willow given him; Reeds, so much of Sublimatum as will lie upon Twopence, work'd up in Butter and given him; Stone-crop, Quick-Silver crude or mortified with the Juice of Lemons, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Bots or Worms.

Take a Quart of new Milk, and as much Honey as will extraordinarily sweeten it; then give it him in the morning lukewarm, having fasted all the night before, and let him fast after it two Hours: then take a Pint of Beer, and dissolve into it a good Spoonful or more of black Soap, and being well mixed together, give it him; then ride and chafe him a little, and let him fast another Hour, and the Worms will avoid.

Another more easy.

Take Savin chopped and stamped small, a good Handful warmed in a Quart of Beer, and given him lukewarm, or a Quart of Brine given him is very good.

Another.

Take as much Precipitate, *alias* red Mercury calcin'd, as will lie upon a Silver Twopence, and work it into a piece of sweet Butter, the bigness of a small Walnut, in the manner of a Pill; then lap it all over again with Butter, and make it as big as a small Egg, and give it him fasting in a Morning, taking forth his Tongue, and putting it upon the
end

end of a Stick, put it down his Throat, and ride him a little after it, and give him no Water that Night, and let him fast two Hours, and then let him feed as at other times. With this Medicine you may kill all manner of Bots, Trunchions and Worms of what kind soever; but you must be very careful you exceed not the Quantity prescribed, for it is a very strong Poison.

Another.

Take the tender Tops of Broom and of Savin, of each half a Handful; chop them very small, and work them up into Pills, with fresh or sweet Butter, and having kept him over night fasting, give him three of these Pills the next Morning early, and let him fast two Hours after it, and give him no Water that Night: or take Rosin and Brimstone beaten not very fine, and strowed amongst his Provender, and given him fasting, long before he drinks, is good.

To a Mare with Foal, be cautious what you give her.

You shall need therefore but only to rake her, and to let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own Blood, for that will not only kill, but help all inward Maladies.

Another.

Take a Quart of Milk warm from the Cow, and put half a Pint of Honey to it, and give it her the first Day; the next Day take Rue and Rosemary, of each half a Handful; stamp them well together, then let it infuse together with the Powder of Brimstone and Soot, (so much as will suffice) four Hours in a Quart of Beer or Ale-wort; then strain it, and give it her bloodwarm, then ride her gently an Hour or two, and set her up warm, and give her Hay an Hour before you give her Drink, and let it be White-Water, and give her no Hay before you give her the said Drink, and let her Drink be either a Mash or White-Water.

Another.

Take two or three Heads of Garlick well peeled and bruised, with the quantity of a small Nutmeg of black Soap, and put them into a Quart of strong Beer, and warm it a little over the Fire, and give it her lukewarm in the morning fasting, with about an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone at the Mouth of the first Horn, and order her as you do Horses that you give Drenches to.

Another

Another.

Three or four Pennyworth of the Powder of *Carolina*, (which you may buy at the Apothecaries) given her in a Quart of sweet Wort in the morning fasting, is a very good Cure for her.

Another.

Take of Turmerick and Anniseeds a good Spoonful of each beaten to powder, put them in a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and a Pint and a half of strong Beer, and give it her fasting in the morning lukewarm, with some Flower of Brimstone put at the Mouth of each Horn, not exceeding an Ounce of it in all, and let her fast three or four Hours after it. You may repeat this Drink two or three times, as you see occasion.

Another for the Bots in a Horse.

Take the Guts of a Chicken newly killed, and wrap them up warm in Honey, and put them down his Throat over night; the next morning give him a Pint of new Milk, with about three Ounces of the Flower of Brimstone, and exercise him after it.

Things good in general to stanch Bleeding, either inward or outward, or of any Sinew, Cut or Wound, or Bleeding at the Nose.

The Leaves of Snakeweed or Bistort strewed upon the Wound after they are beaten to powder; the Juice of Clivers applied to a bleeding Wound will stop it; the green Leaves of Cudweed or Cottonweed bruised and laid to the Wound, the Decoction of the Herb called Golden-Rod outwardly applied, the smoother Horsetail is good, either inwardly taken or outwardly applied. Lady's-Mantle, the dried Leaves of Medlars strewed upon the Wound, being beaten to powder, stop the bleeding of it; the Juice of Mint given in Vinegar stayeth bleeding inwardly; Money-wort or the Herb Twopence stayeth bleeding inwardly, so doth Moon-wort, or the Oaken-Moss of a Pale or Spear; Mouse-ear stayeth the Flux of Blood inward or outward; the Powder of the Leaves of the Peach-tree strewed upon the Wound; Plantain, Queen of the Meadows, Medlars dried before they are ripe and beaten to powder, and strewed upon the Wound; the Juice of Sorrel, Stonecrop, a piece of a Fuze-Ball or a Mullipuss laid to any bleeding Wound, stoppeth it presently; an Ointment made of
White-

White-Lilly Roots with Hog's-grease is very good for them : The Broth wherein Colewort hath been sodden, is good for cut Sinews and Joints. The Root of Garden-Lilly stamped with Honey, gleweth and soddereth them together ; the Herb Tutſan or Park-leaves, the Leaves or Bark of the Willow-tree is good for the bleeding of Wounds, or at the Noſe, or Fluxes of Blood, the Powder of the Bluebottle taken inwardly, the Juice of Clowns Wound-wort taken inwardly with Comfrey or applied outwardly, the Down of a Hare or Coney-Skin, or Woollen-Cloth burnt to aſhes and ſtrewed upon the Wound, Primroſe-Leaves or wild Tanſy bruised, an old Felt burnt and beaten to powder, Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, and given inwardly or applied outwardly, ſtancheth bleeding. To ſtop bleeding at the Noſe, tie him hard upon his Fore-legs, about twelve Inches above his Knees, and juſt beneath his Elbow, and keep the Nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with wet Hay or Cloths, and it will ſtanch him preſently. The Leaves of Roſemary made into Oils, Ointment or Bathings, help all cold and benumbed Joints, Sinews, or Members, &c.

The beſt Receipt to ſtop Bleeding at the Noſtrils.

The Juice of the Root or Leaves of Nettles ſquirted up his Noſtrils ſtayeth the Bleeding at the Noſe. But the beſt thing of all to ſtop bleeding at the Noſe, is to take a Hank of Coventry-blue Thred, and hang it croſs a Stick, and ſet one end of it on Fire, and ſtrew a little Whitewine-Vinegar on it, to keep it from burning too faſt, and let him receive the Smoak up his Noſtrils, and it will ſtop it in a very ſhort time, when nothing elſe will do. New Horſe-dung tempered with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar laid to a bleeding Wound will ſtop it, burnt Silk is good likewise for it, ſo is the Juice of Coriander, or bruised Sage, or Hog's-dung, or a Clod of Earth, or bruised Hyſop, or the ſoft Crops of Haw-thorn bruised, or to boil two Ounces of the Horſe's Blood and beat it to powder, and ſtrew upon the Wound. And to ſtop Bleeding at the Noſe, the Juice of Coriander ſquirted up it ſtayeth it, or the Juice of Periwinkle, the Coam of a Smiths-Forge laid to the Wound, ſtayeth bleeding ; or Shepherds-Pouch diſtilled and an Ounce given faſting, ſtayeth any inward Bleeding, whether natural or unnatural, or Burſa-Paſtoris bruised and applied to the place.

Particular Receipts to stop Bleeding.

Take the Powder of the Stone Emachile, and blow it up into his Nose, and lay it to the Vein or Wound that bleeds, and it stancheth them.

Another.

Take the Root of Rhubarb and bruise it in a Mortar, and stop it into the Nostril that bleeds, and it stayeth it.

Another for the Bleeding at the Nose.

Take Betony and stamp it in a Mortar with Bay-salt, or other white Salt with Wine-Vinegar, and put it into his Nostril that bleeds, and it stayeth it.

Loosening things in general, *vid.* the first Part.

Binding things in general which are good to stop a Looseness, Lask or Flux of Blood.

Sloes, or the inner Rind of the black Bush, wild Bryar-ball, or the inner Rind of it, Dock-Roots, or the Seeds of Docks boiled in Beer, the inner Skin that covereth the Chestnut, Cud-weed or Cotton-weed, the Root of the Water-flag or Flower-de-luce, the Seed of Flea-wort fryed and given, the Seed of Flix-weed given in Water where Steel hath been quenched, the Powder of stinking Gladwin is good for the Flux; Winter-green, the dried Shells of Hazle-nuts, or the red Skin that is over the Kernel, the Berries of Holly-holm or Halver-bush beaten to powder and given, Knape-weed, Knot-grass, Ladies-Mantle, the Seeds or Roots of Water-Lilly, Loose-strife or Willow-Herb, Money-wort or the Herb Two-pence, Moon-wort, the Oaken-Moss of a Pale or Spear, Mulberries, the Roots of Mullen, the Leaves and Bark of the Oak and Acorn-Cups, the Leaves of the Pear-Tree or four Pears, Periwinkle, Queen of the Meadows, red Roses, Sanicle, the Powder of Services when they are mellow, Shepherds-Purse, wild Tansy; the Bark of the Walnut-Tree, or the Kernels of the Walnuts when they are old; Yarrow, Wormwood, the Juice of Rue mixed with clarified Honey, with red Wine; or Bean-flower and Bole-Armoniack boiled in Milk, or red Wine and Bay-salt bruised together, Cinnamon and Nutmegs boiled in red Wine, Tanners-Bark, Dragons-water, a Pint of it sweetened with Treacle, Myrrh, Mastick, Storax, the Rind of Pomegranate, Allum: for a Foal, give him a Pint of Verjuice to drink. The inward and outward Barks of the Willow-tree

tree burnt to ashes is a great Binder and Dryer up of Sores, &c.

Particular Receipts to stay a Lask or Looseness.

Take Bean-flower and Bole-Armoniack, of each three Ounces, mix them with red Wine, or stale Beer, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

Take half a Pint of Plantain-water, and half a Pint of red Wine, (or for want of that, Claret) and put into it an Ounce of Cassia-powder finely beaten, with as much of the Powder of Pomgranate-Rinds, and boil them well together, then take the Yolks of two Eggs, and some Loaf-Sugar, and make a Caudle of it, and give it him lukewarm, and it will help him.

Another.

The Powder of a Stag's-Pizzle dried and grated, and given him in Claret or stale Beer, is a very sovereign Remedy for it, so is the powder of the Jaw-bone of a Pike, Teeth and all, given after the same manner.

Another very Excellent.

Take three Pints of stale Beer, and put to it the powder of Cumminseeds three Spoonfuls, and boil them together till half be consumed, then take Knot-grass, Shepherds-Purse and Plantain, and stamp them severally and put four or five Spoonfuls of the Juice of each of them, to the Beer, and boil them again a little, and give him it half over night, and half the next morning; but if it fall out in the Winter, that you cannot get the Herbs, then take the Water of the distilled Herbs, and use it as before.

Another.

Take as much Bole-Armoniack as contains the bigness of a Walnut, beat it into fine Powder, and put it into a Pint of Claret, (or for want of that, Verjuice) and give it him when you find occasion. Or take a Pint of Claret, Verjuice or Beer, and put into them an Ounce of the Powder of Cinnamon, with some of the Powder of the wild Briar-balls, and two or three Yolks of new-laid Eggs warmed over the Fire. This given twice or thrice at most will perfectly cure him.

Another very good.

Take a Quart of Claret, and put to it four Yolks of new-laid Eggs, half an Ounce of long Pepper, with as much of the Grains of Paradise, boil them together and give it him

him luke warm. Or take an Ounce of the inward Bark of an Oak, and half an Ounce of the Powder of long-Pepper boiled in a Quart of new Milk, and give it half over night, and the other half of it the next morning fasting is very good.

Another.

Take two or three wild Briar-balls, if they be not very large, and beat them to powder, and boil them in a Quart of Beer with a little of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and give it him blood-warm, and it is a certain Cure.

Another for a violent Scouring.

Take the Entrails of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizzard, and mix with them of Spikenard one Ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his Scouring, yea, though it be a Bloody-Flux.

Another which will stay a Lask, be it never so violent.

Take a penny-worth of Allum powdered, Bole-Armoniack powdered an Ounce, put them in a Quart of Milk, keeping them stirring till the Milk become all of a Curd, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take a Quart of red Wine, and put into it an Ounce and a half of Bole-Armoniack in fine Powder, and two Ounces and a half of Conserve of Sloes; mix them together and boil them pretty well, then take it off and put into it a Spoonful of the Powder of Cinnamon, brewed all together, and give it him, and let him fast two Hours after it, and let him eat no washed Meat. Hay is wholesom, so is Bread and Oats, if they be well mixt with Beans or Wheat; but not otherwise.

Another.

Take a Handful of the Herb Shepherds-Purse, and boil in a Quart of strong Ale; and when it is lukewarm, take the Leaves of Wood-rose stamp'd and put therein and give it him.

Things good in general for a Bloody-Flux.

Cummin-seeds, Knot-grass, Plantain, the Leaves or Seeds of Agrimony, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, or Berries, or red Beets, Bistort or Snakeweed, and Tormentil is very Excellent, Brank-urfine, Bear's breech, Buckthorn, Plantain, Burnet, the Roots of Cinquefoil or five-leav'd Grass, the Juice of Clowns Wound-wort, red Darnel, the Powder

Powder of the yellow Water-flag or Flower-de-luce, the Flower of Ivy, Kidney-wort, Sage, Wormwood, Shepherds-Pouch, red Robin, the Seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tansy, Bole-Armoniack, Myrrh, Southernwood, Parsley, Rue, Spittle-wort, Cassia, Cinnamon, Chalk, Vinegar, Bursa Pastoris, Tanners Bark, red Wine, Sloes, Arsmart, Self-heal, Paul's-Betony, Milfoil, the Blood of a Hare made into Powder, the Powder of Men's-bones, the Powder of white Dog's-Turd, the Pizzle of a Hart, or Harts or Goats-horns burned, the Jaw-bone of a Pike beaten to powder, red Saunders, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Bloody-Flux.

Take an Ounce of Saffron, two Ounces of Myrrh, three Ounces of Southernwood, of Parsley an Ounce, of Rue three Ounces, of Spittle-wort and Hylop of each two Ounces, of Cassia which is like Cinnamon one Ounce; beat all these into fine Powder, and with Chalk and strong Vinegar work them to a Paste, of which Paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shade, and dissolve some of them in a Pint and a half of Barley-Milk, or for want of that, that Juice which is called Cremor or Ptisan, and give it him to drink; and it doth not only cure the Bloody-Flux, but being given with a Quart of warm Water, healeth all Grief and Pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which cometh for want of staling.

Another.

Take red Wine three Pints, half a Handful of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris or Shepherds-Purse, and as much Tanners Bark taken out of the Fat and dried, boil them in the Wine till somewhat more than a Pint be consumed, then strain it hard and give it him lukewarm to drink: if you add to it a little Cinnamon, it will be better, or to dissolve into a Pint of red Wine four Ounces of the Conserve of Sloes, and give it him to drink, either of the Medicines are sufficient.

Another most Excellent Receipt, which is infallible for the Cure of the Bloody-Flux, or any other Scouring whatsoever.

Take three Pints of new Milk, and dissolve in it over a gentle Fire one Ounce of Ising-Glass or better; dissolve it first in a little fair Water over the Fire, before you put it to the Milk, that it will look like unto Cream. After you have so done, pour or strain it forth through a very coarse Sieve, to take out the dross and dregs of the Ising-Glass that will remain

remain behind undissolved, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning fasting, and at twice or thrice giving it will cure him at farthest. 'Tis also a very great Strengtheners of Nature.

When the Ising-Glass is dissolved, and the Dregs strained and poured from the Milk, there will not be above a Quart of it, which is quantity enough to give him at a time.

To make your Ising-Glass dissolve the freer and better, bruise it first in a Mortar, and then take it in pieces, which if it be right and good, it will flake off like unto a Wafer, and be transparent.

Ising-Glass is not much unlike in form and shape unto a white Pudding.

'Tis very good also to be given to a weak Horse, to strengthen and make him lusty.

Things good in general for the Falling of the Fundament.

To anoint it with Oil of Roses or warm red Wine, if it be not inflamed, and put it up again; but if it be, bathe it with a Sponge dipt in the Decoction of Mallows, Camomile, and Dill, mingled together, to assuage the Swelling, and put it up again with your warm Hand, and bathe the Tuel about with red Wine, wherein hath been sodden Acacia, Galls, Acorn-cups and the Paring of Quinces, then throw upon it the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, Frankincense, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Falling of the Fundament.

Take Garden-Cresses, and having dried them to powder, with your Hand put up the Fundament, and then strew the Powder thereon; after it lay a little Honey thereon, and then strew more of the Powder, mix with it the Powder of Cummin, and it helpeth.

Another.

Take white Salt made into very fine Powder, strew a little upon the Gut, then take a piece of Lard, and first having boiled Mallow-leaves till they be soft, and beat the Leaves well with the Lard, and when it is well beaten make it up like to a Suppository, and apply it to the place every day once till it be whole.

Another.

Take a small Faggot made of the green Boughs of the Willow-tree and burn them to ashes in some clean Place. When you have done, wash his Fundament with warm Water, and strew some of the finest of them upon it; and put it up
into

into its place again with your warm Hand, and tie down his Tuel between his hinder Legs to his Surcingle, pretty strait, and it will knit very strong again. Or white Pepper strewed upon it, after it hath been beaten and searced to a very fine Powder, and used as you did the other, is very good also.

Things good in general for the biting of a mad Dog.

To let blood first, Angelica, Balm, Wood-betony, Carduus Benedictus, the Juice of Elder, all taken inwardly: An Ointment made of the Juice of the Figtree-leaves and Hog's-grease is good to anoint the Sore, Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Hounds-tongue, Mint bruised and laid to the Sore is good, Pimpernel given inwardly, or applied outwardly; Plantain, the Bark of the Walnut-tree taken with Onions, Salt and Honey is good, the tops of Rue, Box-leaves, Primrose-roots, of each alike, powdered together, and boiled in new Milk with London-Treacle, is good: Hobgoblin, Danewort, Sallet-Oil, the Powder of Diapente given inwardly, or lay a live Pidgeon cleaved in the midst hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the Venom, and heal the Sore with Turpentine and Hog's-grease melted together. The Leaves of Aristolochia bruised will take away the Poison; Yarrow, Calamint and Southernwood made into a Salve. The Ash Keys, the Roots of the sweet Briar dried and beaten to powder, and given inwardly, and applied outwardly, is good, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Biting of a mad Dog.

Take Hobgoblin, Periwinkle and Box-Leaves, of each half a Handful; first mince them small, and stamp them very small in a Stone-Mortar, and with Milk or Beer administer it both at the Change and Full of the Moon.

The best of Cures for the Biting of a mad Dog

Take the Herb which groweth in dry and barren Hills, called the Star of the Earth; you must give it three Days together: the first time you must gather three of these Herbs with all the whole Roots, and wash and wipe them clean, then pound them well, losing no part of them, and give it him in Beer, and be careful that he hath all the Herbs and Roots, you may make them up in sweet Butter, which will do as well: the second Day give him five of these Herbs or Roots, and the third Day seven, and he will be assuredly cured, for it cureth all manner of Cattel of all sorts whatsoever.

It cured a whole Kennel of Hounds of a Gentleman's, one Beagle excepted, which they did not suspect to be bitten. It cured a Gentleman's Son, who was so far gone with it that his Head began to addle, and to talk idly, yet it cured him perfectly; and though he was then but a Child, yet he lived to be a proper Man. Look for another afterwards.

Another.

Take Goats-dung, and of Flesh that hath lain long in the Salt, with the Herb Danewort, of each half a pound, and forty Walnuts stamp all together, and lay part thereof to the Sore, and it will suck out the Venom, and heal up the Wound; but upon the first Dressing give him Wine and Treacle together to drink.

Another.

Give him two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Diapente, in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, and cauterize and burn the Sore, and heal it up with a healing Salve.

Another.

Presently after the Biting let him blood, then take Sage and Rue, of each a large Handful, one Ounce of common Treacle, three or four Heads of Garlick peeled and bruised, of scraped Tin or Tinfoil the bigness of a Nutmeg; put all these into a Gallon of strong Ale, and put them up into an Earthen Pot close stopped with Paste, then boil it in a Kettle of Water till half of it be consumed. Give him five or six Spoonfuls of it before the Full of the Moon, and three Days after; but if necessity requires, give it presently.

Another not so difficult to make.

First, let blood, (as you must always do in this Distemper) then take Henbane and burn it to ashes, and mingle it with Hog's-grease, and apply it to the place bitten; and give him some of the Juice of the green Herb inwardly to drink in a quarter of a Pint of Angelica-Water, and he will do well.

Things good in general to expel all manner of Poison, either by Serpent, Spider, or any other venomous Beast.

Bay-burries, Burrage, the Powder of the Bluebottle, the Powder of the Root of the Butter-bur, Water Caltrops, Dragons, the Seed of Fennel, Garlick, *English* or foreign Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Clovegilliflowers, Angelica, Germander, Hawk-weed, the Leaves or the Berries of

of the Herb called True-love, or One-berry, Hops, Horehound, Juniper-berries, Lavender Cotton, the white Lilly, Lovage, wild Marjoram, Mustard-seed, Ground-pine or Champepitis, the Seeds of Garden Rue, Sorrel, Southernwood, Stone-crop, the Juice of Tormentil or Set-foil, Heart-trefoil, Vipers Bugloss, the Root of Valerian, Holly-thistle, Birth-wort, the Root of Spider-wort, the Seed of Turneps, the Juice of Bastard wild Poppy, Moon-wort, Calamus, white Hellebore or Sneezing-root, Betony, Elecampane, Mallows, Cinquefoil, Master-wort or Herb Gerard, the Seed of *Hercules*, All-heal, Parsley-seed, Ameos or Bishops-weed, Wormwood, Pomcitron, the Seed of Oranges, Pepper, the Ashes of Reeds given him to drink, Mug-wort or great Tansy, and Wine and Camomile stamp together.

Particular Receipts to expel Poison.

Take a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and mix with it some Dragon and Angelica Water, and give it him lukewarm.

Another.

Take Calamus, Betony, Angelica, Dragons, and Elecampane and Bay-berries, about two Ounces of all of them together very finely beaten, and boil them in a Quart of Ale, and give it him, is very excellent.

Another.

Take Rue, Mug-wort, Germander and Wormwood, chopt small and boiled in a Quart of Beer, and give it him.

Things good in general for the Plague or Pestilence.

Red-Lead, Bezoar, the Seed of the Thorny-Apple, Gunpowder, Bistort or Snake-weed, One-blade, Burrage, the Powder of the Blue-bottle, the Roots of the Butter-bur beaten to powder the Juice of Celandine, Cuckow-point dried and beaten to powder, the Leaves or Root of Devils-bit boiled in Wine, Elecampane, Garlick, True-love or One-berry, the Berries of Ivy, Juniper-berries, Pimpernel, the Seeds of Garden Rue, Saffron, Sage, the Roots of the Star-thistle, Stone-crop, Angelica, the Roots of Valerian, Diapente mixed with Sack and sweetned with Treacle, Urine mixt with Hen's-dung, Gentian, Aristolochia, Myrrh, Scrapings of Ivory, Bay-berries, Pepper, Germander, Tormentil. The Skull of a dead Man, dried and beaten to powder, and given in Sack, is most excellent; the Seeds or Leaves of Southernwood

*Blood not your
Horse in this
Disease, for if
you do it will
certainly kill
him.*

stamped and given in White-wine or Ale with Bole-Armoniack or Balm, Betony or Naphe; the Juice of Marigolds, Scabious, Dragons-water, Mugwort, Feverfew, Yarrow, Tansy, Briar-leaves or Elder-leaves; the Root of the white Lilly given three Mornings together boiled in Beer, causeth the Poison of the Pestilence to break forth into Blisters in the outward part of the Skin: the Root of Wintergreen is good, Calathian Violet, Vipers-grass, Rue, Ameos or Bishops-weed. To preserve a Horse from the Infection of the Plague, you must anoint his Nose with Vinegar, wherein hath been steeped Assafoetida during the Infection.

Particular Réceipts for the Cure of the Plague or Pestilence.

Take Devil-bit, Gunpowder, Bistort or Snakeweed, Angelica, Bayberries, the Root Meum, Elecampane, all beaten to powder, and give it him two Mornings together, and order him as you do other sick Horses. About three Ounces of all of them is enough.

Another.

Give him two Spoonfuls of Diapente with a Pint of White-Wine or a Quart of Strong-Beer sweetned with Treacle, and give it him. If you desire more Receipts, you may compound them as your Discretion will think fit, out of my general things for the Plague.

Things good in general for Pissing and Staling of Blood.

Agrimony, Wood-betony, Buckthorn, Plantain, wild Bryar-balls, the whole Chesnut dry'd and beaten to Powder, the Powder of the Root of the Earth-Chesnut, the Root of Cinquefoil or five-leav'd Grass, Clown's Woundwort, Comfrey, the Powder of an Herb call'd Crabs-Claws, the Herb or Seed of Flixweed given wherein Steel hath been quenched, Fluellin or Lluellin, Golden-Rod, the smother Tail of the rougher Horse-tail, the Juice of Housleek, Spearmint, Moneywort, Mouse-ear dry'd, green Mulberries, Red Robin, Shepherd's-Purse, Bole-Armoniack, * Hobgoblin, Bloodwort, Plantain, the Juice of Purslain, the Powder of Gum Tragacanth and Arabick, the red Rattle-grass boiled in red Wine, red Roses, the Seeds of Rushes, the Juice of the

* Hobgoblin is a Stone much like an Oyster-shell, which you may find upon coarse stony Lands. It is good also beaten to powder, to take off a Film from the Eyes.

Powder of Sanicle. The Seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tanfy, wild Thyme or Mother of Thyme, Tormentil or Setfoil, the Kernels of old Walnuts, the Powder of the Rind of dry'd Pomegranates, Polypodium of the Wall, Knot-grass, Comfrey, Storax, Pine-apple Kernels, Daffodil and Wheat-flower, or Liquorice and Anniseeds rolled in Honey and given him. Barley boiled in the Juice of Gum-folly, the Barley to eat, and the Liquor to drink; the yellow Willow-herb, Bugle, Herb Twopence, Water Sengreen, Marshmallows, the Root or Queen of the Meadow, Knipper-wort, the tender Tops of the Bramble-bush or Flowers, the Berries of the Hawthorn-Tree, Acacia, Moss of an Oaken Pale or Stick boiled in Beer. Coral is a most excellent thing to stop all Issues of Blood, a live Frog given him, or *Aristolochia longa* boiled in Ale or Beer is very good.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Horse that pisses or stales Blood.

Take Knot-grass, Shepherd's-Purse, Bloodwort of the Hedge, Polypodium of the Wall, Comfrey, Garden Bloodwort, of each a Handful; shred them small, and put them into a Quart of Beer and boil them: then put to them a little Salt, Leven and Soot; mix all together, and give it him.

Another for the same.

Take three or four red Sprats, or one red Herring with a hard Row, chop them very small, and let them lie astleep about half an hour in a Quart of strong Beer, and give it him lukewarm fasting in the Morning, or at any time of the day when you have occasion, with about a Spoonful of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack amongst it, and it will cure him at twice giving at farthest.

Another, which never yet failed, whether it be a Strain or some other inward Distemper, and will stop any violent Scouring, being boiled in Beer, and given.

Take two or three Wild-Briar Apples, if they be small, and beat them to very fine Powder, taking out the Sticks that are in them, and boil them in a Quart of Beer, and give it him fasting so long as you find him stale Blood. If you put to it the Powder of Hobgoblin, it will be the better, and it will certainly cure him. Take heed you blood him not, for if you do you endanger his Life. It will cure him at twice or thrice giving at furthest.

These Balls are to be given when they be ripe, which is about the latter end of *November*.

Another.

Take a good Handful of Arsmart, and chop it very small, and boil it well in a Quart of good Beer, and when it is cool enough give it him so long as you find him to stale Blood, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and you shall find it work a Cure in two or three times giving at farthest.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

To sink it at the first rising, anoint it very well with red Lead and Sallet-Oil, and chafe it in very well twice a day with your Hand, and keep him warm, and it will sink it; and if you find it will not sink, ripen it with Wine Vinegar and the Loam of a Wall, Straws and all, boiled together, and let out the Corruption with a hot Iron, and tent it with Flax dipt in Hogs-grease, and after four days tent it with a dry Sponge dipt in Turpentine, Saffron, and the Yolks of Eggs. But if it be turn'd to a Fistula, then take of unslak'd Lime and Arsoick, the Juice of Garlick and Onions, Wall-wort and Holly, and boil them till they become an Ointment: then wash the Sore with the Water wherein green Copperas and Allum hath been boiled, and fill the Hole full of the Ointment, by dipping a Tent therein twice a day. Or take of Orpiment, unslak'd Lime, Verdegrease, the Juice of Pellitory, Celandine, black Ink, Honey, and strong Vinegar boiled together thick, and made into Rolls, and put it into the Sore, and if the Fistula be killed, the Matter will be white and thick. Then dry it up with the Powder of Savin, Honey and Lime baked together, or anoint it with Tar, fresh Hogs-grease and Sallet-Oil melted together; or tent it with red Lead and black Soap mingled together. And to sink it before it breaks, lay a Charge to it of Shoemaker's Wax spread upon allum'd Leather, or what other Charge you think most convenient. You may find variety of them in my First Part, if you look for Charges.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

After you have shaved away the Hair from the Swelling, then lay on a Plaster of black Shoemakers Wax, with some Mastich melted in it, and spread it upon allum'd Leather, and let lie till it hath ripen'd or broke the Imposthume: then take a Pint of Wine-Vinegar, and when it is boiling
hot,

hot, mix with it as much Loam, with the Straws in it, and apply it as hot as the Horse will suffer it, and renew it once a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Quicksilver, and kill it in fasting Spittle, and mix it with the quantity of a Hen's-Egg, with Hog's-grease and Brimstone finely beaten to powder; incorporate these very well together, and anoint the Swelling very well with it: then take red Tar one Pennyworth, of Hogs-grease half a Pound, and of green Copperas and Bay-salt of each a Handful, both made into fine powder. Boil them very well, and boiling hot apply it to the place with a Clout ty'd on the end of a stick, being lately anointed with the Quicksilver, Hogs-grease and Brimstone: and by so scalding it three or four Mornings together, you may after that but only warm the Tar and apply it, and it will be cured: for this scalding doth so kill the Malice of the Fistula, that it will never break forth any more, and this will cure any other Fistulaes or foul Ulcers whatsoever.

Another.

After you have so slit the Sore that the Corruption may run forth, and you have eaten or cut away the proud and dead Flesh, and wash'd it and made it very sweet and clean with allum'd Water, pour into it some Oil of Turpentine, and thus dressing it every day, you shall soon find it grow well; for this Oil will not only search it at the bottom, but it will also cleanse and heal it. It will likewise heal any raw Back pinch'd by the Saddle, or any Swelling it will likewise sink.

Another.

Take Euphorbium and Mastick, mix them well together, and seethe them well with *French Soap*, and make a Tent and put it into it, and it will consume the evil Moisture.

Things good for the Pains, vid. Scratches; for what cures the Scratches, cures these.

Things good in general to kill the Canker in any Part of the Body.

Green Copperas, white Copperas, Bay-Salt, unslak'd Lime, Soap and Quicksilver well mix'd together, Turpentine Hogs-grease, Arsnick, Verdegrease, Allum, Garlick, Rue Savin, Tar, Ginger, Pepper, Orpiment, Oil of Vitriol³
Ele.³

Elecampane, Fluellin, Tansy, Cuckow-point, Snapdragon, Burdock Roots, &c.

Particular Receipts to cure the Canker of the Body.

Take Savin, Bay-Salt and Rue stamp'd with Barrows-grease, and anoint the Sore therewith; and when the ill Humours are killed (which you shall know by the Whiteness) then heal it with Tar, Oil and Honey mix'd together.

Another.

Take Vinegar, Ginger and Allum, and mix them well together, and anoint it therewith, and it will kill the Poison and heal the Ulcer.

Another for a Canker, foul Ulcer, Leprosy, and to make Hair grow.

Take a Quart of Tar, and put to it half a Pound of Boars-grease, an Ounce of green Copperas, a quarter of a Pound of Saltpetre, two Ounces of Wax, a Quart of Honey, a quarter of a Pound of Rosin, two Ounces of Verdgrease, a Quart of Linseed Oil; seethe them till half be consumed, then strain it and keep it close in a Pot: then when you have occasion to use it, take of it warm, and apply it to the Sore, it doth heal, draw, and make Hair to grow.

Things good in general to cure a Fistula or Canker, or any other Running Sore whatsoever.

Wild Champions, Doves-foot or Cranes-bill, the Powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel put upon them, the Juice or Water of Flix-weed or Toad-flax put into them, the Juice of Coleworts, the Juice of Fleawort mixed with Hogs-grease cleanseth them; the Juice of the Flower-de-luce, Fluellin or Lluellin, Golden Rod, the Juice or the distilled Water of Winter-green, the Root of the black Hellebore beaten to powder and strewed upon them, consumeth the dead Flesh instantly. The Leaves of Truelove or One-berry, Knapeweed, Knotgrass, Lady's Mantle, Moneywort or the Herb Twopence. The Juice of the Leaves or Roots of Nettles is good to wash all rotten and stinking Sores, Fistula's and Gangrenes, and such as are fretting, eating, or corroding Scabs or Manginess in any part of the Body. The Root of Cow-Parsnips scraped upon the hard Skin of a Fistula, will take it away. The Juice of Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, Groundpine or Chamepitis, the Juice of Plan-

Plantain, Queen of the Meadows, the Juice of Ragwort or Ragweed, the red Rattle-grass, Winter Rochet or Winter Cresses, the Juice of wild Sage, the Juice of Saracens Woundwort. It is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, be they ever so foul and stinking, and so is Sanicle : the Powder of Savin is good to cleanse them, but it keeps them from healing ; the Juice of Scabious, the Juice of Garden Succory, Self-heal is good to cleanse Sores, and is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, so is the Juice of Smallage put to Honey of Roses. The Juice of Sorrel or Wood sorrel is good for Ulcers and Cankers, the Juice of the Tamarisk-Tree, Vervain, the Juice of the Leaves of the Walnut-Tree, or the Water of them distilled in Ale, is good to cleanse and cure foul running Sores. Wheat-flower mix'd with the Yolk of an Egg, Honey and Turpentine do draw and heal any Bile, Plague-Sore, or any running foul Ulcer. Roch-Allum and Bay-salt burned to powder and beaten together, and mixed with Cummin and Honey, keep it for your use, and apply it either Tent-wise or Plaster-wise, which will heal any old Sore ; the Oil of Turpentine is good likewise for the same purpose, the Juice of Beets, Calafoma or Calosonia, the Ashes of Garlick strew'd upon them, the Powder of Celandine or Verdegrease, Vinegar and Honey mingled together upon the Fire. But if you intend to make it stronger, put to it some Mercury Sublimate and Arsnick beaten to powder ; but the other may be apply'd to the Mouth, and he receive no danger : or White-wine Vinegar, Mercury, Precipitate, Camphire, green Treacle, Sage, Yarrow and Ribwort, with Honey and Hogs-grease boiled together till half be consumed, and strain it and wash the Wound with the Liquor : Or take four Quarts of Coal-trough Water, boil it and skim it, then boil it over again, after you have strained it, with white Copperas, Allum, and Verdegrease, of each a pound, beaten to Powder ; and when it is clear, put it into a Glass for your use. The Powder which remaineth at the bottom, keep by itself, for it will heal up any old Sore.

This Water will cure any Fistula whatsoever, if it come to the bottom ; and heal it up with your green Ointment.

Or take Roman Vitriol, Roch-Allum and Rosewater boiled till they become as hard as a Stone, and strew this Powder upon it, is excellent good. But to break a Fistula, take Brooklime, Mallows, Arsmart, of each alike, boiled in Chamberlye till they be soft, and apply it to the Swelling, and

and renew it not in two or three days. But to cure a
A Canker Canker, take red Grape-Leaves, Bramble-leaves,
cured. Honeyfuckle-leaves, Allum, Columbine-leaves,
 Sage-leaves boiled in Water, and wash the Sore
 till it bleed : or Verdegrease, Butter and Salt
 melted scalding hot, and pour it into the Fistula, and use it
 till all the Flesh look red ; then tent it with Verdegrease,
 Allum, Wheat-flower, and the Yolks of Eggs beaten and
 mingled together, and skin it with Barm and Soot mixed
 together ; or Loam Wall and Wine-Vinegar put hot upon
 the Sore, is good to ripen and heal it ; or Butter, Rosin,
 and Frankincense, made boiling hot and poured into the
 Wound. And for a Fistula in the Head, dip a Lock of
 Wool in the Juice of the Housleek, and put it into his Ear,
 and put Hurds upon it, and tie it close, and this will break
 it ; or Salt mixed with Butter or Water, and Salt put into
 his Ear, will do the like.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Fistula.

After you have search'd it to the bottom with a Probe of
 Lead, or some other thing which will bend wheresoever the
 Concavity of the Sorrhance leadeth it, and when you have
 found the bottom, let it be open'd downwards, if it may
 be possibly done, to the end the Corruption may the better
 issue out ; then tent it two or three days with try'd Hogs-
 grease, to cause the Hole to be the wider ; then inject this
 Water following : Take of Sublimate and of Precipitate,
 of each as much as will lie upon a Threepence ; of Allum
 and of white Copperas, of each three Ounces ; burn all
 these in an Earthen Pot, but first rub the bottom with a
 little Oil to keep it from burning. This done, burn them
 together ; then take two Quarts of fair clear Water, boil it
 first by itself, and scum it in the boiling : then take it from
 the Fire, and put in as much of this Powder as will lie upon
 a Shilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you would
 have it stronger, then take fair Water and Smith's Water,
 of each alike ; and of Whitewine Vinegar a third part, and
 with the Ashes of Ashen-wood make Lye of them with the
 Wine and Vinegar, and so make your Water with this
 Powder and Lye in the former Ingredients, according as be-
 fore is taught you. Inject this Water with a Syringe into
 the Sorrhance, and in a short time it will both kill the Fistula
 and heal it up, and is an approved and infallible Cure.

Another.

Take a Pint of the best Honey, an Ounce of Verdegrease beaten to powder, and boil them together three quarters of an Hour, then strain it into a Gallipot, and keep it for your Use. This is a very precious Ointment to tent a Fistula or Poll-Evil, for it searcheth it to the bottom, and eateth away all dead and evil Flesh, which causeth it to heal the better.

A Water for a Fistula.

Take a Pint of the best White-Wine you can get, or for want of that, Whitewine-Vinegar or Verjuice, and put a good Handful of Sage-Leaves bruised into it. After you have boiled it pretty well, strain out the Sage from the Wine, and dissolve into it about an Ounce and a half of Roman Vitriol, half an Ounce of burnt Allum, and half an Ounce of the fine Powder of Verdegrease: when it is cool put it in a Glass, and keep it close stopped for your Use. When you dress the Sore, let it be very warm, and syringe it very well to the bottom once or twice a day, and in five or six Weeks it will be cured.

Another Receipt for a Fistula.

Take of Roch-Allum and Bay-Salt burnt, of each half an Ounce; the Leaves of Ragweed and Elder-Tops, what you think fitting, according to the Concavity of the Sore; bruise and mix them very well together, with a Handful or two of Grey-Snails, Shells and all, and stop the Hole full of it to the bottom, having first washed and cleansed it very well with a Syringe, with the Water abovesaid: do this once or twice a day, and it will do well.

Things good for Fevers in general, which you are to use according to your Discretion.

To let blood, the distilled Water of the Branches, Leaves, Flowers, or Fruit of the Bramble is very good; the Leaves or Roots of Burrage or Bugloss is very good for pestilential Fevers, to defend the Heart, and to mitigate Heat in them; the Seeds or Leaves of the Bluebottle are likewise good for the same, so is the Root of the Butter-bur; the Juice of Cinquefoil is good for all Inflammations and Fevers; the distilled Water of Dandelion, the inner Juice of the Pomcitron or Lemons is good; Cochineal is good in pestilential Fevers; a Manchet steeped in

Some hold it death to let blood, but this you may use as Discretion serveth.

in Muskadine and given him, or in Sallet-Oil; Mash of Malt and warm Water; three or four Yolks of Eggs given him in eight Spoonfuls of Aqua-vitæ, and stir him till his shaking Fit be over, is good, so is Muskadine and Sugarcandy brewed together: Wormwood, Pepper, Grains, Powder of dried Rue boiled in Ale, and sweetned with Treacle and Sugarcandy, is good, so is Stone-crop bruised and infused in Ale and given him; Germander, Gumdragant and dried Roses put into a Quart of Ale, with Sallet-Oil and Honey, given him lukewarm, is good; Aloes, Garlick, Liquorice and Anniseeds mixed in White-Wine and given him; Rue, Long-Pepper, Bay-Berries, Smallage boiled in Beer; Saffron and Treacle mingled together, or a Handful of Thyme boiled in Beer till it be tender, then strain

If you desire to know the several sorts of Fevers, look in the first Part for Fevers, and there you shall find them.

it, and put to it Sugarcandy, Anniseeds and Treacle, and give it him blood-warm; but for a Hectick Fever, boil Sage, Yarrow, Ribwort, Plantain, Bramble-Leaves, Honeyfuckle-Leaves, of each a Handful, with common Honey a Spoonful, in two Quarts of running Water, till half be consumed; then put to it a good Piece of Allum, and two Spoonfuls of Vinegar, and when it is dissolved, drain the Water from the Herbs; and keep it for your Use, and wash his Mouth therewith often, for his Tongue will be raw. Then give him this Drink; Take of Aloes an Ounce, powdered Garlick half an Ounce, of Anniseeds and Liquorice an Ounce made into powder: bruise your Garlick, and put to it three Ounces of brown Sugarcandy, and add to it a Pint of White-Wine, and give it him blood-warm, and ride him afterwards. Give him this Drink every other day for three Mornings together.

Particular Receipts for them.

Take Oil of Vitriol, Oil of Sulphur and the Spirit of Salt, and put to it a Quart of strong Beer, ninety or one hundred Drops of either of them, and give it him every Morning till you find his Fever abate. These three Oils or Spirits are much of a nature, for they all comfort and strengthen the Stomach very much, and abate all Inflammations, quenching Drought, and abating the Heat of Fevers, and create a good Stomach; they purify the whole Mass of Blood, and resist all Poison, Plague and Putrefaction, and are such excellent Medicines, that they are to be accounted truly

truly cordial and comfortable to the whole Body ; powerful, yet safe in Operation : If you give them alone, they are present death. They are good also applied outwardly, to take away hard Knobs or Warts, and to kill Ulcers or Fistula's in the Flesh ; the Dose given him is from fifty to one hundred Drops. When you take them, mix them not together, but use them singly by themselves. Have a care you touch not your Linen or Woollen with them, for if you do, they will soon eat them full of holes. The Salt Spirit I advise you rather to make use of, of the three.

Another Receipt for a Fever.

Take of Diapente one Ounce, Bay-berries and Long-Pepper, of each half an Ounce, of the flat Shell of an Oyster burnt and beaten to powder half an Ounce, of Diascordium half an Ounce ; put all these into a Quart of strong Beer, and give it him luke-warm when you find him want it, and order him with White-Wine and Honey to preserve his Stomach, and a Cordial of brown Household-bread boiled in Beer, and sweetned also with Honey, as you have Directions more fully how to make and use them, in Directions for sick Horses, after the Table of Simples. This Drink will cause him to sweat and sleep, which will bring him to his Senses, which is the proper Effect of Diascordium ; but if you find that this does not make him sleep, then give him as much Powder of Poppy-seeds as will lie upon a Sixpence, in two Hornfuls of small Beer, at each Nostril one, or for want of that, a Spoonful of white Poppy-Water, which will cause him to sleep soundly.

Things good in general to be given inwardly for the Cure of the Farcin.

Hounds-tongue, Knot-grass, Horsemint and Spearmint, Rag-wort, Seed of Bastard Rhubarb, Savin, Scabious, Stonecrop, Tamarisk, Oil of Vitriol, ten or fifteen Drops of it in his Drink is good for it ; stinking Gladwin, Dodder, Calamint, Water-Hemp or Water-Agrimony, Hearts-ease, Hops, black Hellebore or Bears-foot, Fumitory, the dried Bark of the black Aller-tree, the Root of Asarabaca is not only good for it, but likewise for all Cankers or old putrid Ulcers and Fistula's upon the Body ; the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, the inner Rind of the Elder-tree or Berries, Burrage ; Briony a great Purger, which must be corrected ; Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Juice of Housleek or Stone-

Stonecrop, Liverwort, the Seed of Male or Female Mercury, Chickweed, Turmerick, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Nutgalls, the inner Rind of the Walnut-tree, the Juice of Cinquefoil put into his Ears, or the Juice of Rue and Aquavitæ or Affafetida and Brandy put into them; the Juice of Ground-Ivy given him inwardly; the Juice of Celandine, the Juice of Sow-thistle, Southernwood, &c.

Things good in general to be applied outwardly to kill the Knots of the Farcin.

After you have blooded him well, take Oil of Bay and Euphorbium mixed together, and anoint the Knots with it; or bathe the place with the Stale of a Cow or Ox, and with the Herb called Lyons-Foot, boiled together, or Tallow and Horse-Dung melted together; or burn the Knots with a hot Iron, or wash the Sore with Salt, Vinegar, Allum, Verdegrease, Green Copperas and Gunpowder boiled together in Chamberlye; or take a Pennyworth of Tar, two handfuls of Pigeons Dung, white Mercury two Pennyworth, and make it into a Salve, and anoint him with it. Soot, Bay-Salt and black Soap are likewise good; so is Rue, Brimstone, Arsmart, Hemlock, Nettles, Housleek, Brandy, Oil of Turpentine, Aqua vitæ, Pepper, Ginger, Mistletoe, the Powder of unslak'd Lime, used at your pleasure, &c.

Observation upon this Disease.

If his Breath smell strong and stink, his Lights are rotten, and there is no Cure for him.

Particular Receipts both inwardly given and outwardly applied for the Cure of the Farcin.

Take nine Leaves of the Pot-Herb called Beets, of the smallest but soundest Leaves, and nine Grains of Bay-Salt; beat these very well together to a Salve, and put this Medicine into his Ears by equal Portions in the morning before Sun-rise, and stitch them up, and let him stand with Meat before him, and let his Drink be White-Water. Unstitch them not in twenty four Hours, then take forth the Wool and stuff, and he is cured.

Another.

If the Farcin be in the Fore-parts of the Horse, take two Ounces of Arsnick, and put it into a piece of new Cloth, and bind it up with a piece of new Packthread, and fasten it unto his Mayn; and if it be in his Hinder-parts as well
as

as his Fore-parts, then hang it upon his Tail, and the more you ride and exercise him, the better: and tho the common way is to keep him with a spare Diet, I like not of it, for you cannot keep him too well, for the lower you keep him, the more doth the Disease get the upper hand of him.

Another to anoint the Farcin-Knots with.

Take black Hellebore, and add to the Herb some of its Juice; then put to it old Boar's or Barrows-Grease, and boil it till the Juice be quite boiled away in it, whereby to bring it to an Ointment, with which anoint the Knots or Buttons of the Farcin, but shave or clip away the Hair before you anoint it.

Another for it when it first appears, before it begins to be raw.

Take of Chamberlye, Soot and Bay-Salt, and boil them very well together; then at night wash the Places infected with a Rag upon the end of a Stick very hot, but not so hot as to scald away the Hair; then in the morning anoint it with Tar and black Soap boiled together pretty hot. This done four or five times together will cure it.

Another, which De-Grey says he hath cured a hundred Horses with.

Take of Rue the Leaves and tender Tops only, without any the least Stalk, a good Handful; first chop them small, then stamp them in a Mortar to an Ointment; then put to it one Spoonful of the purest tried Hog's-grease you can get, and work them together to a Salve, then stop into either Ear the whole quantity by equal Proportions, and put a little Wool upon the Medicine to cause him to keep it in the better, and so stitch up his Ears, and let it be in about twenty four Hours, and then unstitch them, and take forth the Wool, and he is cured.

Another, which if he hath it given him twice, will cure him.

Take the inner Rind of Elder, the inner Rind of the Walnut-tree, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, of all of them an equal quantity, and not exceeding above a handful of all of them together: boil them in a Quart of strong Beer a little while, then take out the Barks, and add to it the Powder of Turmeric, Fenugreek, and two Nut-galls beaten

beaten to powder, with the Powder of Grains of Paradise, about an Ounce of all of them; boil them in the same Beer about as long as you did before, then sweeten it with Treacle, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning fasting, and let him fast two or three Hours after it, and order him as you do a sick Horse; if you put into it a little Handful of Stone-crop, it will be the better: you must wash the Buds of the Farcin Night and Morning with this Water. Take half a pound of green Copperas, and boil it a little while in a Quart of Chamberlye; before you boil it, you must put in a good quantity of Salt or Brine.

Another.

After you have kept him slenderly fed all Night, give him the next Morning fasting, half a Pint of the Juice of Houf-leek, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil mingled together, and let him fast till Night, and then give him Hay and no Water till the next Morning, and that warm too. This Drink used twice will almost cure any Farcin.

Another for the Farcin.

Take a Handful of each of these Herbs here under-written, chopped very small, and boiled in three Pints of strong Ale or Beer to about a Pint and a half, and after you have strained the Liquor very well from the Herbs, give it him lukewarm fasting in the Morning; but before you give it him, stir into it an Ounce of crude Antimony, finely powdered and searced: About three or four Days after give him the like Drink again, and repeat it the third time if there be occasion, and it will certainly cure him. The Herbs are these, Chickweed, Wood-betony, Groundsel and Mullen.

The Buds must be anointed also with this outward Application.

Take the bigness of a Hazle-nut, of yellow Arsnick beaten to powder, and put to it about a Spoonful of black Soap, (or for want of that, common Soap) and lay a little of it upon the Head of every one of them, which will so corrode and eat into them, that they will become so loose, that they will drop out by the Roots; then heal up the wounded Places by anointing them with your green Oinment, which you may find in the first Part, or with Sallet-Oil or Hog's-grease; take care you let him not come to gnaw it with his Teeth for fear of poisoning him, or that you lay it not upon any sound Place, for it will make a Wound wheresoever it comes.

comes. You may anoint them with the Oil of Vitriol, if you please, which hath the same Operation with the other.

Another outward Application for this Disease, which will not only cure the Buds of it, but any foul Scab, Leprosy or Mange.

After you have let blood, which is always convenient in this Disease, take three Pints of old Urine, and a Pint of Vinegar or Verjuice, and put to it half a Pound of the Stalks of the strongest Tobacco you can get, but let them be first bruised and laid asteeep in the Urine all Night before you boil them: after you have so done, set it over the Fire, and put to it an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, and boil them all together till it come to a Quart; then strain forth the Liquor from the Stalks, and anoint the infected Places with it till they be well.

Another inward and outward Application for the Farcin.

After you have blooded those Buds with your Incision-Knife, which are fresh and green, wash them once or twice a day with your Fistula-water, which will kill them, conditionally you give him this inward Drink with it, viz. Take two Quarts of running Water, and put to it two Handfuls of Herb-grace, chopt indifferent small, with two or three Spoonfuls of bruised Hempseed, and set it over the Fire, and let it boil away till it come to three Pints, then give it him three times in nine Days, and order him as you do sick Horses, and he will do well.

Another to cure it, by putting something into his Ears.

After you have bruised about nine or ten Cloves of Garlick (being first peel'd) with a Handful of Rue, and about half a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, strain the Juice through a Cloth into some convenient thing, and put to it so much of black or white Wool as it will well drink up, and fill each Ear full of it, putting a piece of dry Wool upon it to keep it in the better. Then sew them up as you have Directions before, and do not unstitch them in twenty four Hours. If you open his Head in the usual place under his foretop, and put into it about the length of an Inch of the inner Rind of Elder, and let it remain there about the same time, the Cure will be the sooner expedited.

Another Medicine to put into his Ears, to cure it when it is in his Head.

After you have let him blood bruise so much of Housleek and Hemlock as will contain two Spoonfuls of the Juice of each of them, and add to them two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil, and fill each Ear full of it, leaving so much room as you may put Flox or Wool upon it to keep it in the better. When you have so done, stitch up his Ears as in the former Receipt, and at twenty four Hours end take out the stuff. If you like the former way of soaking up the Juice with the Wool better than this, you may use that.

A Drink to cure the most malignant Farcin that is.

Before you give him this Drink here under-written, let him be kept very sparing of Meat all Night, and the next Morning blooded on both sides the Neck very well. 'Tis this; Take the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree, Herb-grace, Sage, Wormwood, Fennel, Lungwort, of each half a Handful chopped small, Anniseeds, Turbith, Turmerick, and of Aristolochia rotunda, about two Ounces of all of them beaten to powder; boil the Herbs pretty well in two Quarts of small Beer to one Quart, then strain it forth and put in your Powders to it, and when it is cold enough to take, give it him.

How to order him before and after you have given it him.

1. Before you give it him, let him fast four Hours, and after it as much; when you have given it him, air him well by riding him after it.
2. Let him drink but once a Day, and let it be white Water, which is a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran stirred in amongst his Water, made first lukewarm.
3. Let him be kept in the House with very dry Meat during his Cure.
4. Exercise is very good in this Distemper, and the more you use him to it, the better you will find him.
5. 'Tis good also in order to his Cure, once or twice a Day to flounce him backward and forward in some clear River or Pond, up to the Midsides, which will cleanse his Body, and take away the Filth and Venom of the Disease.
6. This often washing him in cold Water will wash off the poisoned Medicines, if he hath been poisoned with any,

any, and also abate very much the Malignancy of the Disease.

7. Let him rest three or four Days after his first Drink, and then give him another, and order him in every thing as you did before.

8. If you find after this second Drink, that he is not perfectly cured, you may give him the third, and this will certainly cure him.

9. When you give him his first Drink, if you please you may blood him with the end of your Cornet in the Furrow on the top of his Mouth.

The Virtues of this malignant Drink for the Farcin are these.

It will cause him to vomit up much Filth, and run at the Nose very nauseous and stinking stuff, and yellowish Water: It is a great Sweetner and Purifier of the Blood, as also a great Drier up of all evil and malignant Humours that are seated and rooted in the Body. If the Heads of the Buds appear red and loose, lay upon them a little burnt Allum, mixed with a little Butter or Hogs-grease, and you shall quickly find them to fall off.

A Receipt for the Cure of the Water-Farcin.

This is the usual and common Way for the Cure of it, viz. To take a long and small iron Rod, and bend it backward at one end about the length of a Fleam; then heat it red hot in the Fire, and strike the swelled places under his Belly and Chaps full of Holes, and let and squeeze out the grey and oily Water, that you find pent up in the Skin, and wash the places, (to keep them from wrankling, and to take out the Fire) with Chamberlye and Salt, and some Powder of Bole Armoniack mixt amongst it as hot as he can well indure it for three or four times, and he is cured.

Things good in general to cure the running or rotten Frush.

To take off the Shoe and pare away all the corrupt Places, and make them raw, then put it on again being widened; then take Soot and Salt, bruise them well together in a Dish, and mix therewith the Whites of three Eggs, and dip Tow therein, and stop all the Foot with it, renewing it seven Days together, or to wash it with Urine three or four times a Day; or take a Quart of Urine, and boil in a quarter of a Pound of Allum, with some green Copperas, and strain it out, and keep it for your use; and after you have washed the

Sore with it, strew on it the Powder of green Nettles fried and Pepper, and it will dry it up. When you dip Tow in any thing, you must splint it in, that it may not fall off, and during the Cure let him come into no wet, and at the seven Days end leave stopping him, and ride him abroad, and bring him very clean into the Stable, for dirty setting up breeds this Infirmity, &c.

Things good in general for the Over-flowing of the Gall, which is a Yellowness of the Skin, and a Costiveness of the Body.

Saffron boiled in Milk is good, or Ale, Saffron and Anni-seeds mixt together, or Celandine-Roots chopped, bruised and boiled in Beer; or for want of Celandine, Rue, and give it him lukewarm, &c.

Things good for Gangrenes inward or outward.

The Leaves, Fruit or Roots of Briony, but it is a great Purger, which must be corrected; the Leaves of Bugle bruised and applied, or the Juice of it to wash the Place; the Meal of Darnel is good to stay them, Cankers, or any other eating and fretting Sores, Water-Cresses, Mallows, Elder-leaves, Brook-lime, mouldy Hay and Bran boiled in the Dregs of strong Beer, and laid to very hot, is good to stay its spreading, if any thing will do it: Nettles bruised and laid to them is good, so is the Decoction of the Leaves or Bark of the Tamarisk-tree, and the place bathed therewith.

What the Spleen is.

It is a long, flat, narrow and spongy Substance, of a pale fleshy Colour, joined with the Liver and Gall; it is the Receptacle of Melancholy, and the Dregs of the Blood, and it is as subject to Infirmity as any inward part whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, Knobs and Swellings: it is through the Spunginess apt to suck in all manner of Filth, and to dilate and spread the same all over the Body. The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribs, where you shall perceive some small Swelling, which Swelling gives great Grief to the Midriff, and taketh away more of his Digestion then his Appetite; and being suffered to continue, it maketh faint the Heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob and stony Substance. Now if I mistake not, this Spleen is no other than the Milt, and I have known four or five Horses die of it out of one Stable, and it hath been look'd upon no other than the Plague; which
if

f they had had things proper for the Distemper, they might have lived.

Things good in general for the Spleen, either inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd.

A Decoction of the Herb Archangel in Wine apply'd to the place grieved, hot, Barley-Meal boiled with Melilot and Camomile-flowers, with some Linseed, Fenugreek, and Rue apply'd warm; the Juice of Camomile given inwardly: of to make him sweat, and then give him a Quart of White-wine, wherein hath been boiled the Leaves of Tamarisk, and a good quantity of Cummin-seeds beaten to powder, and give it warm; or to pour into his left Nostril every day after he hath sweat, the Juice of Myrobalans mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a Pint. Or take Cummin-feed and Honey, of each six Ounces, of Laserpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a Pint; and put all these into three Quarts of Water, and let it stand so all night, and give him a Quart thereof next Morning fasting; or Garlick, Nitrum, Horehound and Wormwood sodden in sharp Wine and given, and to bathe his left Side with warm Water, and to rub it hard.

A particular Receipt for the Spleen.

Take a Handful of Agrimony chopt very small, and work it up with sweet Butter into two or three Balls, with half an Ounce of the Powder of Turmerick, and as much of Cummin-seeds powder'd, and give him them fasting in the Morning for several Mornings together, and it will cure him. 'Tis good also to give him some of the Herb boiled in his Drink; or *Oxicroceum* apply'd plaster-wise to the grieved part, is very good.

Things good in general to cure the Colt-Evil.

The Juice of Rue mixed with Honey, and boiled in Hogs-grease, Bay-leaves, with the Powder of Fenugreek added thereto, and anoint the Sheath with it; the Powder of the Herb Avit, and the Leaves of Betony stamp'd with White-wine to a moist Salve, and anoint the Sore therewith: Wash the Sheath clean with lukewarm Vinegar, and draw out the Yard and wash that also, and ride him twice every day into some deep running Water, tossing him to and fro to allay the Heat of the Members, till the Swelling be vanished; and if you swim him now and then, it will not be

amiss: but the best way to cure a Horse, is to give him a Mare, and to swim him after it; to bathe his Cods with the Juice of Housleek, or with the Water wherein Knee-holm hath been sod. If it stops the Urine, then give him new Ale and a little black Soap in it to drink; or wash his Cods with Butter and Vinegar made warm, or with the Juice of Hemlock, or else take Bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armoniack, and mix them together; lay it plaster-wise to his Sheath and Cods: or make him a Plaster of Wine-Lees, Housleek and Bran mix'd together, and laid to his Sheath and Cods, &c.

Things good to cure the Mattering of the Yard.

Take Roch Allum one Ounce, and Whitewine one Pint; boil them till the Allum be dissolved, then blood-warm inject this Potion with a Syringe, putting it up into his Yard so far as it may be, four or five times a day, till it be well. This is so perfect, that you need not any other.

Things good in general for Shedding of Seed, which is no other than the Running of the Reins in Men.

Amaranthus that bears a white Flower, the Juice of Bistort added to the Juice of Plantain outwardly apply'd, Comfrey, to ride him into some cold Water up to the Belly, then cover him warm, and give him Red Wine and Hogs-dung, or Red Wine and Acacia, Venice-Turpentine, &c.

Two Receipts (which may serve instead of many more) for the Shedding of the Seed, or Running of the Reins, which is an infallible, safe and sure Way of stopping it; and is also good for all manner of Bruises by Falls, or any other Accident, &c.

If you give it for Bruises or Falls, leave out the Bole-Armoniack.

Take a Pound of common Turpentine (if you will not go to the charge of the Venice) and put to it so much of the fine Powders of Bole-Armoniack and English Liquorice, with a little Wheat-flower, as will make it up into a stiff Paste. When you have occasion to use it, roll it out between your hands, and break so much of it off, as contains the bigness of a small Washball, and give him three of them Morning and Evening upon the end of a stick, or in a Horn-full of strong Beer, till you find the Flux of Seed staid, which will be in a Week or Fortnight's time at farthest. 'Tis convenient to
purge

purge and cleanse his Reins very well first before you give him his Balls, which will not only expedite, but perfect the Cure so much the sooner and better.

Another for the same.

Take brown Sugarcandy, Tanners Bark finely powder'd and sifted, with the Powder of the dry'd Leaves of Clary, and incorporate them very well with some common Turpentine, and make them up into Balls with a little Wheat-flower, and give him two or three of them at a time, Morning and Evening, about the bigness of a Pidgeon's Egg, till the Flux of the Seed stayeth, which will be in a very short time.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Falling of the Yard.

To wash his Yard with Sea-water, or Water and Salt; and if that will not prevail, prick all the outmost Skin of his Yard with a sharp Needle very slightly, and wash all the Pricks with strong Vinegar; and this will not only make him draw up his Yard again, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again: or to put Honey and Salt into his Yard, made liquid, or else a quick Fly or a Grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean peeled and bruised, and bathe his Back with Oil, Wine and Nitre made warm and mingled together. But the best Cure is first to wash all his Yard with Whitewine warmed, and anoint it with Oil of Roses and Honey mixed together, and so put it up into his Sheath, and with a little Bolster of Canvas keep it from falling down, and dress him thus in twenty four hours until he be recovered, and let his Back be kept very warm as is possible, both with Cloth and a Charge of Plaster made of Bole-Armoniack, Eggs, Wheat-flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine and Vinegar; or else lay next his Back a wet Sack or wet Hay, and a dry Cloth over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding warm.

What is good for the Cure of the particular Diseases in Mares, Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, Casting Foals, Hardness to foal, and how to make a Mare cast her Foal.

If you have your Mare barren, boil good store of the Herb Agnus in the Water that she drinketh, or stamp a good Handful of Leeks, with four or five Spoonfuls of

Wine; then put 12 Flies call'd Cantharides, and strain them all together with a sufficient quantity of Water to serve the Mare two days together, by pouring the same into her Nature with a Glister-pipe made for that purpose, and at the end of three days offer the Horse to her, and if he covers her, wash her Nature twice together with cold Water. Or take of Nitrum, Sparrows-dung and Turpentine, of each a like quantity, wrought together and made like a Supposito-ry, and put that into her Nature, and it will cause her to desire the Horse, and also to conceive. If you will have her fruitful, boil good store of Motherwort in the Water which she drinketh: If she lose her Belly, which sheweth a Consumption of the Womb, give her a Quart of Brine to drink, Mugwort being boiled therein. If your Mare, thro good keeping, forsake her Food, give her for two or three days together a Ball of Butter and Agnus Castus chopt together. If you will have her cast her Foal, take a handful of Betony, and boil it in a Quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently. If she cannot foal, take the Herb Horse-Mint, either dry it or stamp it, and take the Powder or the Juice, and mix it with strong Ale, and give it her, and it will help her. And if your Mare is subject to cast her Foals, as many are, keep her at grass very warm, and once in a Week give her a good warm Mash of Drink. This secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

Things good in general for the Cure of a Consumption.

Wood-Betony, Horehound, Juniper-berries, Leeks mix'd with Sallet Oil and Sack, with some Frankincense, Agarick, Bay-berries, Brank-ursin, China, Dandelion; but the best is to scour him well, and put him to grass. Or take a Sheep's-head with the Wool on, wash it clean, and boil it in a Gallon of fair Water until the Flesh come from the Bones; then strain it, and put into the Broth half a pound of refined Loaf-Sugar; of Cinnamon, Conserve of Roses, Conserve of Barberries, Conserve of Cherries, of each three Ounces; and give him a Quart every Morning fasting: use this till four or more Sheeps-heads be spent, and let his Drink be either sweet Mashies or white Water. Take no Blood from him in this Disease, but rather labour to cherish the Blood he hath; neither be too busy in administering unto him Purges, but Cordials, as Diapente, Diatessaron, Duke Powder, Cordial Powder, and such like Restoratives, and give him good Meat and good Mashies, and change

change his Meat sometimes, to make him eat his Meat the better.

Things good in general for the Lungs.

Phylick-Nuts are good for rotten Lungs. Lungwort, or Wood-Liverwort beaten to powder and given in Beer, is good for Inflammations and Ulcers of the Lungs; the Powder of stinking Gladwin given him in Beer, with a little Mastick, is good for them. The Decoction of Hyssop made with Figs, Water, Honey and Rue, helpeth the Inflammations of the Lungs, the old Cough or Shortness of Breath; Feverfew, Pennyroyal given with Honey, cleareth the Breast from all gross and thick Humours, and cleanseth the Lungs. Calamint is good for the Wheesing of them; common Horehound cleanseth them, and is good for the Ulceration of them, so is Betony. Scabious scoureth the Chest and Lungs, Mullen or Lungwort is good, Comfrey, Cowslips of *Jerusalem*, Cinquefoil is good for the Liver and Lungs; Chervil boiled is good for the Consumption of the Lungs, Cummin-seeds, Brank-ursin, Rue, Liquorice, Bayberries, Cassia, Water-Agrimony, Alehoof, the Leaves of the Figtree, Lungwort which grows upon Oaks or Beeches, which is a kind of Moss with broad greyish tough Leaves, Maidenhair, wild Marjoram, Hedge Mustardseed, Rosa Solis or Sun-dew; the Juice of Sanicle, Vervain, Wood-bind or Honey-suckles, Cresses, Almonds, Buglois, Garlick boiled in Milk, Tartar, which is the thickest of Whitewine Lees, dry'd and made into powder; Elecampane, Sugar-candy, Diapente; or take a Pint of sweet Sack, Honey, Myrrh, Saffron, Cassia and Cinnamon, of each alike, made into fine Powder, and mix two Spoonfuls of it with your Sack, and give it him warm fifteen days together, and feed him with Mashs and white Water. But if his Lungs be rotten, then take the Juice of Purslain half a Pint, and mix with it Oil of Roses, and put to it Tragantium steeped in Cow's-Milk, and give it him seven Mornings together, and this will ripen the Imposthume, which you may know by his stinking Breath: then give him this Powder; Take of Cassia made into fine Powder, seven Raisins of the Sun stoned, boiled in a Pint of Muscadine, and give it him blood-warm; or the Water of Angelica give him with some of the Root,

Particular Receipts for the Lungs.

Take of Horse-Lungwort *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad, hoary, soft Leaves, which do feel like Velvet;

Velvet; shred it, stamp it, and strain it: then take of Fennigreek a good Spoonful, and of Madder as much, made into fine Powder, and give this to him in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, and give it him every other day, for twelve or fourteen days, and sprinkle his Hay with Water, and let his Oats be washed in good Ale, and let his Drink be white Water, and sometimes sweet Mash.

Another.

Take a Snake, and cut off the Head and Tail, and flay it, and after cut the same into pieces the length of your finger, and roast it as you would an Eel upon a Spit, and let it baste itself, and keep the Oil of it in a Glass for your use. When you use it, anoint the Breast, and his four short Ribs which be against the Lungs; but first clip away the Hair, for that will take too much of the Oil up. And thus do often for some time, and it will recover his Lungs again, and make him perfectly sound.

Things good in general for the Consumption of the Liver.

There is no absolute Cure for it, but to preserve it, give him half a Pint of Sack, with the same quantity of the Blood of a young Pig lukewarm to drink; or give him three days together no other Food than warm Wort and baked Oats, and let him be kept fasting the Night before he receives his Medicine; or put into his Wort which he drinketh two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Agrimony, red Rose-leaves, Saccharum, Rosaceum, Diarcadon Abbatis, Disantelon, Liquorice, and of the Liver of a Wolf; or give him Sulphur and Myrrh beaten into fine Powder, mixed with a new-laid Egg, and given him in half a Pint of Malmsey, and separate him from other Horses, for this Disease is infectious.

Things good in general to preserve the Liver, and to open the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen.

Amara Dulcis, Allheal, Agrimony open and cleanse the Liver; Water-Agrimony openeth the Obstructions of the Liver, and mollifieth Hardness of the Spleen; Alexander or wild Parsley, Angelica, Asarabaca, the Decoction of Avens, the Bark or the Root of the Bay-tree openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and other inward Diseases; the Juice of the white Beet openeth them; Wood-Betony, Butcher's broom or Kneeholly, the Leaves of Calamint, Centaury, Columbines, Dandelion, Liver-wort, the

the Leaves or Bark of the Mapie-Tree, Pimpernel, Ground-pine or Chamepitis, Agaricum, Almonds, Fumitory, Camomile, Wormwood, Liquorice, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupine; all these are very comfortable for the Liver, and are to be seethed in Water that he drinketh. Aloes dissolved, Iris stamped, Savoury, Lungwort, or Oil and Wine mix'd together; but the best of all is a Wolf's Liver dry'd and beaten to powder, and given him in Beer, or strew'd amongst his Provender, or Parsley and Hartshorn, or Fennel and Parsley-Roots scraped or boiled in Water, and given him with Liquorice and Sorrel, or Polypodium of the Oak beaten to powder and strew'd amongst his Provender: or take Hyssop, Cowslip leaves, Silverwort or Lungwort *alias* Mullen, Hartshorn, of each a Handful; then take Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Fenugreek, Enulacampana dry'd, and long Pepper, of each alike; and when they are all powder'd and searced, take a Spoonful of all of them: chop the Herbs, and mingle them with this Powder, and put a Spoonful of live Honey to it, and boil all of them in strong Ale till half of them be consumed, and give it him blood-warm. Groundsel preserveth it greatly.

Of the Infirmities in general of the Hoofs, as false Quarters, loose Hoofs, casting of the Hoofs, Hoof-bound, Hoof-running, Hoof-brittle, Hoof-hurt, Hoof soft, Hoof-hard, and generally to preserve Hoofs.

False Quarters.

To take off the Shoe, and to take away so much of the Hoof on that side the Sorrance is, that when the Shoe is set on again, the Chink may be wholly uncovered; then open the Chink to the quick with your Drawing-Iron, and fill up your Rift with a Roll of Hurds dipt in this Ointment: Take Turpentine, Wax and Sheep's Suet, of each alike, melted together, and dip your Hurds therein, and stop the Rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole; and thus the Rift being closed on the top with this Ointment, draweth the place betwixt the Hoof and the Hair with a hot Iron overthwart that place, which will make it grow and shoot downwards, and ride him with no other Shoe till his Foot be harden'd and become sound.

What

What is good to cure a loose Hoof.

If the Hoof be loose, let it be of what Cause soever, you are first to open it in the Sole of the Foot, so as the Humour may have free Passage downwards, and put a restrictive Charge about it, as you have some in my first Part; then to heal it up with Turpentine and Hog's-Grease melted together: Or take three Spoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a Pound of Rosin, and half a Handful of Tansy, and half a Handful of Rue, and half a Handful of red Mints, and half a Handful of Southernwood brayed all together in a Mortar, and add to it half a Pound of Butter, and a Pennyworth of Virgins-Wax; and melt them on the Fire till it come to be a thick Salve, then spread it upon a Cloth, and lay it to it seven Days together till it be whole. Or to anoint it with *Burgundy Pitch*, and it will fasten it; or take Betony, Rosemary, Rue, Bole-Armoniack and Frankincense boiled together and laid over it; or to take Tar and Brimstone in fine Powder, Wheat-Bran and the Urine of a Man-Child, boiled all to a Poultice, and apply it hot to the Hoof, and it will fasten it; or to stop it with the Brains of a Pig, or to stop it with Flax dipt in the Whites of Eggs; or wash it with Vinegar, and fill it with Tartar and Salt, and then anoint it with Olibanum, Mastick and Pitch of *Greece*, of each alike, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, new Wax and Sheep's-Suet, and melt them together, and anoint it with it, and if the new Hoof come, cut away the old.

Of casting the Hoof.

Take Aquafortis the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape or Drawing-Iron file or draw away the old Hoof somewhat near; then touch the Hoof so prepared with your Aquafortis three or four several Dressings and no more: then anoint the Foot with the Unguent for Horses Feet, *viz.* Take Hog's-grease three Pounds, Patch-grease two Pounds, *Venice* Turpentine one Pound, new Wax half a Pound, Sallet-Oil one Pound; melt and mix all these upon the Fire, and anoint the Coffin of the Hoof up to the top, and this will bring a new Hoof.

Another.

Take Turpentine half a Pound, Tar half a Pint, new Wax half a Pound, Sallet Oil one Pint; melt all these except the Turpentine together, till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put in your Turpentine,

pentine, and stir it till it be cold; but beforehand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick Sole made fit for his Hoof, but wide enough, that it may be tied about his Pastern, and dress his Hoof with this Medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and so put on the said Buskin, and fasten it to the Pastern-Joint, or a little above, but so as the Buskin do not trouble the Foot, renewing the Medicine every day till it be whole, and it is good likewise for a Hoof-bound Horse; and as the Hoof beginneth to come, and if you find it grow harder and thicker in one place than another, or crumbleth or groweth out of fashion, take your Rape and file it into good fashion again, and when you find it so well that you may turn him out, put him into some moist Pasture or Meadow, which will cause the Hoof to become tough.

Of the Hoof-bound.

First, pluck off his Shoes, and shoe him up again with Half-Moon and Lunet-Shoes; then ease with your Drawing-Iron or Rape, the Quarters of the Hoofs on both sides of the Feet, from the Cronet down to the end or bottom of the Hoofs, so deep till you perceive as it were Dew to come forth, and if you make two Rasés it will be the better, and enlarge the Hoof the more: that done, anoint the Hoofs next to the Hair about the Cronet with this Ointment;

Take of Turpentine one Pound, of Wax and of Sheep's or Deer's-Suet of each half a Pound, of Tar and of Sallet-Oil of each half a Pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when you are ready to take it up, put in your Turpentine, and stir it well together till it be cold: anoint his Hoofs once a day till you find amendment, and ride him once a day upon soft Ground for the space of a Month; then take off his Half-Moon Shoes, and pare his Soles, Frushes and Heels, so thin till you may see a Dew come forth, and the Blood ready to start; then tack on his Shoes, and stop his Shoes as well within as without, with this Charge;

Take of Cow or Ox-Dung, and of Wheat-Bran, of each so much as will suffice; of tried Hog's-Grease, and of the Kidney of a Loin of Mutton, of each one Pound; of Turpentine and Tar of each half a Pound: melt all these together, (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in when it is almost ready to take from the Fire, keeping it stirring to mix the Ingredients. Let this Charge be laid
on

on hot, and renew it nine Days together, to the end the Sole may arise : but if this will not do, take out the Sole clean, and after you have stanch'd the Bleeding with the tender Tops of Hyfop stamped in a Mortar, apply then the Oil of Snails to it and red Nettles: the Oil is thus made ; Take forty, fifty, or more Snails, and put them into a Bag with Bay-Salt, and when they are hung some time nigh the Fire, there will drop an Oil from them, and use that with red Nettles once a day for three Days, and heal up the Feet with your green Ointment, which you may find in my first Part, which will bring a new Hoof again, and then shoe him with Lavels again, and turn him forth to Grass.

If you fear that your Horse is subject to be Hoof-bound, anoint his Coffin all over with Neatsfoot-Oil, especially at the setting on of the Hoof ; or with Turpentine, and stop his Feet underneath with Cows-Dung. Or take the Fat of Bacon half a Pound ; of white Soap three Ounces ; Balm a Handful, and five or six Sprigs of the tender Tops of Rue : chop and stamp all these together very well ; then fry them, and lay them to, reasonable hot, and let him come in no Wet till he be well ; and being thus dressed every day once, his Hoof will in a short time be sound and easy to him again.

Things good in general to preserve Hoofs, and to make them grow.

To pare him well when you shoe him, which ought to be when the Moon is three Days in the Increase ; Turpentine, Hogs-Grease and Bees-Wax melted together, and anoint the Coffin with it ; or Myrrh, Allum, the Juice of Garlick, Rue, Asses-Dung or Cows-Dung, Pitch, Rosin, Sallet-Oil, Dogs-Grease, Olibanum, Dithæa, Sheeps-Suet boiled together, and anoint his Hoofs with it ; or Chalk and white Lead mingled together ; or Bark-dust and Honey mingled together ; or Yarrow, Allum and Wormwood boiled in Oil ; or to boil Beans till they burst, temper them with Honey and anoint his Feet with them ; or to wash them with warm Vinegar, and anoint them with Horehound, Wormwood and Grease melted together : standing upon his own wet Litter, is good to keep them moist, and make them grow.

Particular

Particular Receipts to make a Horse's Hoof grow, and to toughen it.

Take the Juice of Garlick seven Ounces, of old Hogs-grease two Pounds, and a Handful of Asses or Cows-dung; boil and mix them well together, and stop his Feet with it, and anoint the Cronets of his Hoofs, the Medicine being pretty hot.

Another for brittle Hoofs.

Take Turpentine, Sheep's-Suet, unwrought Wax, and Hogs grease, of each half a Pound; Sallet-Oil half a Pint, and of Dogs-Grease a Pound: boil them all together, and keep them in a Gallypot for your Use, and when you use it, anoint his Hoofs very well two or three times a day with it especially at the setting on of the Hair, and stop them with Cows-dung and Dogs-grease melted together

Another most excellent.

Take one Pound of Dogs and Hogs-grease, and clarify it with Rosemary; then mix it with half so much Cows-dung, and boil it up and anoint his Feet with it either hot or cold, is very good.

A most excellent Receipt for brittle-hoof'd Horses, to make their Hoofs grow so in a Fortnight's time, that they will carry a Shoe that would not carry it before.

Take a Gallon of fresh Hogs-grease; half a Bushel of Damask-Roses clean pickt, and when you have melted your Hogs-grease, and it is boiling hot, put your Damask-Roses into it, and stir them well about till they be all wet; then take them off the Fire, and put them into an earthen Pot close covered, and put it into the Oven after you have drawn your Bread, and there let it stand till it be cold: then take it out and put it into a new Horse-dunghil that is very hot, and there let it be for three Weeks: then take it out and melt it again, and strain the Roses from the Liquor, and keep it in an earthen Pot close covered for your Use.

How to use it.

When you dress your Horse, take a Spoonful of Tar, and three Balls of Horse-dung warmed in a Pint of that Oil; then take off his Shoes, and bind up his Feet with a Pair of Buskins of Leather with a thick Sole, and pour in the Liquor, and let him stand a Week so; but apply fresh
Shift

Shift to him every day poured into the Buskins, but take away none of the old Medicine; then tack on his Shoes again, and stop his Feet, and anoint them with the former Medicine. After his Bags are off, you may water him twice a day as at other times; and when his Feet be clean pickt and dry, you may use the Medicine as you did before. In my first Part you may have a better Direction to make the Buskin.

Things good to soften a Hoof that is too hard.

Take an Ounce of Soap, two Ounces of unslak'd Lime, with as much strong Lye as will make it soft, and stop his Feet daily with it till they come to a convenient Softness: or hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will soften it.

Things good to harden Hoofs if they be too soft.

To burn an old Shoe-Sole and seethe it in Vinegar, and bathe his Feet with it twice a day, will harden them; or rake of the Powder of Galls, Bran and Salt of each a handful, boiled in a Pottle of strong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Hoofs, and it will harden them. The Powder of Honey and Lime, the Powder of burnt Oyster-shells, the Powder of a burnt Felt or Boot mixed together with Cream, is good.

Things good for the Malt-long.

Things good for the Malt-long of the Hoofs, which will run in waterish Humours about the Cronet, which are certain Knobs there. If it be in the Summer, take black Snails and Burdock-Roots, and beat them well together, and lay them unto the Sore, and renew them once in twenty four Hours: but if it be in the Winter, take the Scrapings of a Pan or Cauldron, and put to it a Handful of the inner Rind of the Elder-Tree, and having beaten them well together in a Mortar, lay them to the Sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it: or take Garlick, Pepper and Honey, of each alike, stamped together, and laid to it.

For any Hurt upon the Hoof, or for all manner of Hurts in general.

To stop the Hoof with Honey and Vinegar mingled together for the space of three or four days at least; and then lay on the Leaves of Tamarisk bruised with them, till it

it be whole: or to stop the Hoof with Sheep's-grease and Horse-dung mixt together, and renew it once a day till it be well: or take Pitch and Rosin of each two Ounces, Brimstone in fine Powder an Ounce; melt them together on the Fire, and add to them an Ounce of Turpentine, and as it cooleth make it up into Rolls, and when you use it, put it into the Wound pretty hot, and all about the Sorrance, and clap Hurds upon it, and over that a Piece of Leather, and so splint it on, and in twice or thrice dressing he will be cured. Two Ounces of Turpentine melted down with some Wax, healeth any Wound or Gall: House-Snails seethed in Butter will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being often renewed. Or take Soap and Salt of each alike, and work them into an Ointment, and after you have washed the Wound with Beer and Salt, or Urine and Salt, and dry'd it again with a Linen-Rag; bind on the Medicine, and let it remain on for twenty four Hours, which will take out the Venom; then take Train-Oil one Spoonful or two, and as much white Lead in fine Powder, and work them to a thick Salve, and apply it to the Sorrance plaster-wise till it be whole, which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or is more kindly or natural for the breeding of a new Hoof than this.

Things good in general to draw out either Stu^h, Thorn or Iron, either out of the Foot, or any other Part of the Body.

Black Soap laid to the Sore all night will make it appear; the Roots of Reeds stamped and mixt with Honey, and laid to it, draweth out any Stub or Nail, so will also black Snails stamped and wrought with Butter; the Root of stinking Gladwin roasted and laid to it; the Root of the Sword-Flag stamped with the Powder of Frankincense and Wine is good; Daffadil stamped with Meal of Darnel and Honey; Clary stamped and laid asleep in warm Water, and the slimy Substance taken and applied plaster-wise doth the like: Dittany bruised and applied; Primrose-Leaves, Galbanum, Agrimony stamped with Hog's-grease. If a Cloth be wetted in the distilled Water of Haw-thorn, and applied, it will draw forth any Thorn and Splint; the Seeds and Leaves of Mullen boiled in Wine; the Juice of Scabious and Southernwood bruised and laid to it; Soap and Chalk mixed together, and when it is out, pour into it scalding hot Turpentine, and when that is cold, pour in the Powder

of Sulphur, or black Snails and Soap bruised together and apply it to the Grief, and bolster up his Foot or the Sore with Hurds, and keep it from all Wet and Filthiness.

What is good for the Cords in general.

To bathe his Legs with the Grounds of Ale, and to rope them up with Hay, wet in the same for a Fortnight or more together; or take Mustard, Aquavitæ and Sallet-Oil, and boil them together, and make a Plaster of it, and apply it to the place grieved. But the best and surest Cure of all is to make a Slit upon the very top of his Nose, and with your Cornet take up his two great Sinews which you shall there find, and cut them in sunder, and so heal it up again with some healing Salve; and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, as that he will seldom or never after trip any more; and this can any ordinary Smith do.

To cure the String-halt.

Take up the middle Vein upon the Thigh, and underneath the same, then under the said Vein there lies a String, which String must be cut away, and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well and go well. You may find it more at large afterwards.

Great Driers in general of old Sores, and of all manner of moist Humours whatsoever.

Allum burnt, unslak'd Lime, the Ashes of an old Shoe burnt, Oyster-shells burnt will dry up any Sore, be it never so moist; the Juice of Elder, the Powder of the Leaves of Brambles or the inner Rind, the Powder of the Root of the Butter-bur, the Powder of Fern-Roots, the Powder of Sow-Fennel, the distilled Water of Throatwort, the whole Plant, Root and all, will dry up the hollow moisture of corroding Ulcers; the Ashes of Southernwood, the Ashes of Nutshells burnt, Chamberlye, green Copperas, Brimstone, Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, Myrrh beaten to powder, and laid upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, then take some Lint, and receive the Smoak of it into it, and lay it upon the Sore, but wash it first with Chamberlye, Soot and Cream tempered together; Aquavitæ and Soap boiled together, Rye-flower, the White of an Egg beaten to an Oil with Honey, Bole-Armoniack and Meal mixt amongst it, and make a Plaster of it, is good to heal up any

new-

new-gall'd Back ; Barley-straw burnt and Soot, the Powder of Honey and unslak'd Lime will heal any Gall, being first washed with Vinegar ; the Soot or Grim of a brass Pot, the Powder of the Bone of a Crab-Fish, the Powder of Galls, the Grease of Snakes roasted with Heads and Tails off is a great Drier ; the Bark of a Willow-tree burnt to ashes, is a great Drier and Binder ; dry Figs beaten to powder with Allum, Mustard and Vinegar, or Oil and soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Allum ; the Powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vinegar, doth dry very much ; or take a Toast of Wheaten Bread, spread all over with Honey, and toasted dry, and beaten in a Mortar to powder, and strewed upon any Gall, and it will dry it up soon ; or take Egg-shells burned black and beaten to powder, with old Shoes burnt to a Coal, and Charcoal, quick Lime and green Copperas burnt in an Earthen Pot until it be red hot ; then take of each of them alike, and knead them well together till they come to a Paste, and bake it well, and beat it into fine Powder, and strew it upon the Sore, and before you dress it, wash it with strong Vinegar or Chamberlye, and it will be well : or bathe the Sore with hot melted Butter, and strew upon it the Powder of Rosin for a day or two, then take of thick Cream and Soot, and work it to a Paste, and apply it to the Place plaster-wise.

A Plaster to dry up superfluous Moisture, and to bind Parts loosened.

Take Bitumen one Pound, of the purest part of Frankincense three Ounces, of Bdellium Arabicum one Ounce, of Deers-Suet one Pound, of Populeum one Ounce, of Galbanum one Ounce, of the Drops of Storax one Ounce, of common Wax one Pound, of Rosin Cabial half a Pound, of *Viscus Italicus* one Ounce and a half, of Apoxima one Ounce, of the Juice of Hyssop one Ounce, of the Drops of Armoniack one Ounce, of Pitch half a Pound ; let them be well molten together and incorporated, and make a Plaster thereof.

Another Plaster to dry up any Swelling, Wind-gall, Splint or Bladder, in or about the Joints.

Take of Virgins-Wax half a Pound, of Rosin one Pound and a quarter, of Galbanum one Ounce and a half, of Bitumen half a Pound, of Myrrh secondary one Pound, of Armoniack three Ounces, of Costus three Ounces ; boil all

these together in an Earthen Pot, saving the Armoniack and Costus, which being first ground like fine Flower, must be added unto the other things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled together again and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one substance, and then apply them as occasion shall be administred.

Things good to dissolve Humours.

To bathe the Sorrhance well with hot melted Butter, and to strew upon it the Powder of Rosin for a Day or two, then take Cream and Soot, and work them to a thick Paste, and apply it to the Sorrhance, and it will dry up the Humour, and skin and heal the Sore. Wormwood, Sage, Rosemary, and the Bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, and Linseed boiled in Oil, and make a Bath thereof, and lay it to the grieved place, and it will dissolve any Humours that are bound and gathered together.

A Pound of Figs stamped with Salt till they come to a Salve, dissolveth all manner of Humours, by opening the Pores, and giving a large Passage. Look for more Receipts, in my first Part, of this nature.

Things good to stop Humours.

The Flower of Wheat mixed with the Juice of Henbane, stayeth the Flux of Humours. The Flowers of the Willow-tree boiled in White-wine and given inwardly, drieth up evil Humours; Wormwood, Sage, Bole-Armoniack, Camphopia, a kind of Gum, Cardimonium is good.

Things good to drive back Humours.

Vinegar, Salt and Bole-Armoniack beaten together, and spread about the Sore, driveth it back; or White-Lead and Sallet-Oil beaten together, or red Lead and Sallet-Oil, or else *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and such like: but to take away the evil Humours of the Legs, take of common Honey, Turpentine, Mastick, Frankincense, Bole-Armoniack made into Powder, Sanguis Draconis, new-laid Eggs, Whitewine-Vinegar, the Flower of Rice mixed all together, and make a Plaster of it, and lap it round about the Legs from the Feet to the upper Houghs; do this for four or five times.

Humours made thin.

Garlick maketh thick and gross Humours thin, and cutteth

teth such as are tough and clammy ; *French Mercury*, a Decoction made of it, and Cumminseeds.

Humours purged.

A Conserve made of Musk ; Roses are great Purgers of waterish Humours ; Sena purgeth cholerick and phlegmatick Humours, also gross and melancholick.

Simples that are good to cleanse the Body from all manner of evil Humours.

Agrimony, Anniseeds, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree boiled in Ale and given him for three or four Mornings together, cleareth the Body from Itching, Mange, Tetter, Ring worms, Yellows and Boils. The Flowers of Broom or Fuz cleanse it of Choler ; the Decoction of the Root of Butchers-Broom or Knee-holly made in Wine and Treacle put thereto, cleanseth the Breast from Phlegm, and the Chest from much clammy Humours gathered therein ; wild Marjoram cleanseth it from Choler ; the Seed of Cow-Parsnips cleanseth it from tough phlegmatick Matter therein ; the Powder of *English Rhubarb* steeped all Night in Ale and given him fasting, cleanseth the Stomach, Liver and Blood, by purging away those evil Humours that offend the Body ; the distilled Water of Dragons given him, is a great Cleanser of the internal Parts, Mallows or Marsh-mallows do the like ; Mercury cleanseth the Breast and Lungs from Phlegm ; the distilled Water of the Star-thistle, or Root beaten to Powder, is very good ; common Wormwood cleanseth the Body from Choler ; Ground pine is good for all Diseases of the Brain, procured from cold and phlegmatick Humours, &c.

Simples that are good to dry up all manner of evil Humours in Sores or Wounds.

The Powder of the Root of Butter-bur doth wonderfully help them ; wild Briar balls dried and beaten to powder, and strewed upon them, doth the like ; the Root of Sow-Fennel beaten to powder and used as before, doth the like ; so doth Fig-wort, Mother-wort and Lung-wort ; Nettles bruised and applied to them is very good ; Polypody, Rupture-wort bruised and applied to the Place grieved drieth up all manner of filthy Ulcers and Humours ; green Copperas boiled in Water, and the place bathed therewith, drieth them up. About two Ounces of burnt Allum, put into a Quart of Spring-water after it comes off the Fire, and the Place

grieved bathed therewith warm, Morning and Evening, and a wet Cloth dipped in the Water, and bound about it three or four times double wet, is excellent good to dry them up; the Powder of the Root of Tormentil is good; the Flower of Wheat mixed with the Juice of Henbane, laid to them, stayeth the Flux of them to the Joints; the Leaves, Bark or Seed of the Willow-tree doth the like; the Flowers also have the same Faculty in drying up of evil Humours; Wood-Sage digesteth Humours, &c.

Things good in general for the Shedding of the Hair from the Main or Tail.

To anoint the Main and Crest with black Soap, and then to make a strong Lye of Ash-Ashes, or else of Urine and Ashes, and wash it all over with it; but if there should grow on the Horse's Tail a Canker, which will consume away both the Flesh and Bone, then lay some Oil of Vitriol upon it, and it will kill it; if you find it eat too much, 'tis but wetting it with cold Water, and it will stop it. Or take of green Copperas, Allum, and white Copperas boiled in running Water till half be consumed, and wash it with it till it be whole; but if the Hair fall away, then take Southernwood and burn it to Ashes, and mix it with common Oil, and anoint it with it, and it will presently bring Hair again. If it be in the Main, let him bleed; but if it be both in the Main and Tail, then take Quicksilver and try'd Hogs-grease, the Quicksilver being first mortify'd with fasting Spittle; incorporate them very well together till the Hogs-grease be of a perfect Ash-colour, and anoint the Sorrance with it every day once, heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel; and three or four days thus dressing him, he will be well.

Things good in general to take away Hair in any part of the Body.

The Gum that grows on the Body of Ivy, the place rubbed therewith; for it is of so hot a quality, that it doth obscurely burn: the Juice of Fumitory, that which groweth amongst Barley, with Gum Arabick, &c.

Particular Receipts to take off Hair in any part of the Body.

Dissolve in Water eight Ounces of Lime, and then boil it till a quarter be consumed; then add to it an Ounce of Orpiment,

piment, and lay a Plaster of it to any part of the Horse, and it will in few Hours bring away the Hair.

Another.

Take Rust and Orpiment boiled in running Water, and wash the place with it very hot, and it will soon bring the Hair away.

To make Hair black.

The Leaves of the Bramble boiled in Lye, and anoint any place with it, maketh it black; or the Leaves and Berries of the watering Tree boiled in Lye, or the Juice of common Elder, or the Decoction of Sage washed therewith.

To make Hair yellow.

To wash the Hair with the Lye of the Ashes of the Barberry-tree.

Things good in general to make Hair grow very soon, very thick, and very long.

The Roots of the Elm boiled very well in Water, and wash the place therewith; the Juice of Thistles put on the place, the Juice of red Beets, the Juice of Onions, Tar, Hogs-grease, Dogs-grease, the Ashes of green Willow, Nutshells, Soap, Bears-grease, Aquavitæ, Oil of Turpentine, an Oil made of the white Lilly-roots with Hogs-grease is very good; the Ashes of Southernwood mingled with old Sallet-Oil, &c.

Particular Receipts to bring Hair, and to cause it to grow long.

Take the Dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the Blood of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine Powder; boil them together, and anoint the place with it every day, and it will make the Hair come again apace.

Another.

To wash the place with the Water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been boiled, and after dry it gently with your hand, increaseth Hair much.

Others.

To wash the place with the Urine of a young Boy, then take Lye made of unslak'd Lime, Cerus and Liturge, and with it wash the Hair off, and it will make it come soon, long, and thick: or to wash the place with Oil mingled with the Ashes of Nutshells burnt, or else Snailshells burnt, or Nettleseeds bruised with Honey, Water and Salt, or the

Root of the white Lilly beaten and sod in Oil, and anoint the place therewith ; or the Juice of Radishes, or Tar, Sallet-Oil and Honey boiled together ; or the Soot of a Caldron mixed with Honey and Oil, &c.

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Soap, and as much Piece-grease, and a quarter of a pint of Aquavitaë ; boil these together, and apply it to the bald places, and in a Fortnight it will bring Hair again.

Another, which is the best of all.

Take green Walnut-shells and burn them to powder, and mix it with Honey, Sallet-Oil and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will increase Hair wonderfully and very soon.

Things good in general to ripen all Imposthumes, Inflammations hot or cold, or for any Swelling in any part of the Body and Legs, and to take away hard Knobs or Kernels, &c.

Wheaten Bran boiled in Vinegar, Leven made of Wheat, Daffodil stamped with Boars-grease and Leven of Rye-bread is good to ripen hard Imposthumes : Bank-creffes, Sow-thistles, Hawkweed, the Juice of Thorn-Apples boiled in Hogs-grease to an Ointment, the Leaves of Arsmart bruised and laid to any Imposthumes in the Joints for the space of an hour or two, taketh away the Pain. The Juice of Housleek is good against the burning Inflammations ; the Juice of Wall pennywort is likewise good for any hot Inflammations or Tumours ; all the sorts of Pimpernel are good to cure Inflammations and Swellings ; the Leaves or Flowers of Feverfew are good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings ; the Leaves of Mullen boiled in Water, and laid to the Eyes, cure and ease the Pains of them ; Water-Caltrops used in the nature of a Poultice is good ; Water-Sengreen or Freshwater-Soldier, Duckmeat, is good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings ; the Fruit of the Pompion boiled in Milk is good for the Inflammations of the inward Parts ; the green Leaves of Elder pounded with Deers-Suet allay all hot Inflammations ; Strawberry-Leaves, Bay-leaves, Apples, are good for all Inflammations and hot Swellings ; Figs stamped and made into the form of a Plaster with white Meal and the Powder of Fenugreek and Linseed, and the Roots of Marshmallows apply'd warm do soften and ripen Imposthumes, and all hot and angry Swellings
and

and Tumours; and if you add thereto the Roots of Lillies, it ripeneth and breaketh venomous Imposthumes.

Observations.

To all cold Swellings or Imposthumes you may apply hot Simples, and to all hot Swellings and Inflammations you must put cold. If the Swelling doth imposthume, you may know it by the Heat; and when you have made it fit to be opened, open it with a red-hot Iron.

Particular Receipts to ripen Imposthumes or Swellings.

Take Mallow-Roots and White-Lilly-Roots, of each alike, bruise them and put to them Hogs-grease and Linseed-Meal, and boil them till they be soft, and plaster-wise apply it to the Grief, and it will ripen it, break it and heal it presently. Or Oil of Populeon is very good, the place anointed twice a day with it.

Another.

Take Southernwood and dry it to powder, and with Barley-Meal and the Yolk of an Egg make it into a Salve, and lay it to the Imposthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

Another.

Take of Sanguis Draconis, Gum Arabick, new Wax, Mastick, Pitch of Greece, Incense and Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melt them together; then strain them, and make a Plaster thereof, and lay it to the Imposthume without removing, and it will both ripen, break and heal it.

Another.

Take Wheat-Bran two Handfuls, and so much Wine, Ale or Beer as one Quart; and to thicken it put to it of Hogs-grease half a pound: boil them together till the Liquor be quite consumed, and apply it hot to the place, renewing it every day once till it break of itself, or be so soft to be opened; then let forth the Corruption with a hot Iron, and tent it with Flax dipt in this Salve: Take of Turpentine and of Hogs-grease, of each alike; and of Rosin and Wax a much greater quantity; melt them together, and dip the Tent in it, and put it into the Wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole. This is to ripen Inflammations, Pustules and Kernels, which do grow under the Caul of a Horse; but if it be an Inflammation in any other part of the Body, then take four Quarts of the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, of Smallage, Pennyroyal, Winter

ter Savoury, Comfrey, Rue, and of the Leaves and Berries of Mistletoe, of each two Handfuls; chop them small, and put them to the Grounds, and put to it a pound of Sheeps-Suet or Deers Suet try'd, and three or four Handfuls of Rye or Wheat-bran, so much as will serve to boil it to a Poul-tice, and when it is boiled apply it to the place; it will break it, or at least soften it that it may be open'd: if it be hard when you put your Poul-tice thereunto, it will send it back.

Things good in general for Imposthumated Ears.

If it be not broke, Water and Salt put into the Ear, or Butter and Salt will break it; or apply to this Swelling Linseed beaten, and put to it Honey and Hogs-grease melted together; and when it breaks, tent it with Flax dipt in Salve made of Turpentine, Metrosatum and Sallet-Oil: But if he hath a Pain in his Ear, dip some black Wool in the Oil of Camomile, and put into it; but if it be broken, dip it in the Oil of Roses, Honey, and *Venice* Turpentine. The Juice of Ivy growing on a Pale or Wall, put into the Ears, stayeth the running of them, tho it be of long continuance, and helpeth old Ulcers and Imposthumes bred there: but if you think it too sharp, you may mix it with the Oil of Roses.

Particular Receipts for Imposthumated Ears.

Take of Pepper beaten and searced, and try'd Hogs-grease one Spoonful, the Juice of Rue one Handful, White-wine Vinegar two Spoonfuls; and if the Swelling, Imposthumation or Inflammation be in the Ears, Face, Head or Throat of the Horse, if you take either black Wool, fine Lint, Flax or Hurds, and dip it into this Medicine, and so stop both his Ears therewith, and then stitch them up that it get not forth, renewing it once in two days till the Swelling be clean gone, he will be certainly cured: But if the Grief be in any other part of the Body, then with this Ointment you shall anoint the grieved or swollen place once or twice a day till it depart; but if the Swelling be near about the Cods or Privy-Parts, then bathe the place well with cold Water, and after it is made dry again with a Cloth, anoint it with the said Ointment every day once or twice, and it is a present Cure. It cureth also the Ulcer and Canker in the Nose, and is a sure Cure for the Vives.

Things

Things good in general for the Strangles.

To anoint and chafe the Swelling well with Bacon-grease or Hog's-grease, and that will ripen and break it: or so soon as you find the Swelling begin to arise between his Chaps, take a Wax Candle and burn it therewith, till the Skin arise from the Flesh; then lay unto it wet Hay or wet Litter, and that will ripen it and make it break; then lay a Plaster unto it only of Shoemakers Wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, you may know it by voiding the Corruption at his Nose: then twice or thrice every day perfume his Head, by burning under his Nostrils Frankincense or Mastick, or else by putting a hot Coal into wet Hay, and let him receive the Smoke thereof up his Nostrils; or else blow the Powder of Euphorbium with a Quill into his Nose; and so note, that whatsoever cureth the Vives cureth the Strangles; or with a small round hot Iron thrust a Hole through the Skin, on both sides the Weasand, and then after it beginneth to matter, mix Butter, Tanners-water and Salt together, and every day anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole; to anoint the Swelling with Oil of Turpentine is good. Bleeding him in the Mouth is very good for this Distemper.

A Particular Receipt for the Strangles.

Take Basilicon, old Boar's-grease and Dialthæa, of each four Ounces, of Oil de bay one Ounce; incorporate all these very well together, then anoint the place well, after you have clipped away the Hair, and bind it up with a piece of Sheep's Skin with the Wool next to the Inflammation, that the Warmth thereof may the better help to ripen the Pustules; which being ripened, let forth the Corruption with a small hot Iron, and tent it for three or four Days together with Basilicon only, and afterwards heal it up with your black Ægyptiacum, taught you in my first Part, and let him eat good sweet Hay and Bran instead of Oats, and let his Drink be White-Water.

An excellent Receipt for the Strangles, Quinsy, Strangling or Cold, that hath run for above half a Year or more at his Nose.

Give him this Drink in the Morning fasting, in a Pint and a half of strong Beer (not boiled, but heated) lukewarm, and blood him in the third Furrow of his Mouth after it;
viz.

viz. The Powder of Turmerick and Anniseeds, of each an Ounce, half a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, with five or six Spoonfuls of Whitewine-Vinegar, or for want of that, Verjuice; then air him after it. When you have brought him home, clothe and litter him up warm, and tye him to the empty Rack for three or four hours or more; but if you see him sweat very much, which this Drink doth usually cause him to do, and you find him desirous to lie down, you may untie him and give him that liberty: let him have no Mash, but only warm Water, and a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran put into it, and the next morning give him the like, and presently after it (to bring him to a Stomach) give him about two Ounces of Honey, in half a Pint of White-Wine, or Whitewine-Vinegar, or for want of either, Verjuice, and air him after it. The third day you may give him the common Cordial for Horses, *viz.* three Pints of stale strong Beer, boiled with a good big Toast of Household Wheaten Bread, crumbed into it; and when you are ready to give it him, put into it, before it be quite cold, Honey and fresh Butter, a quarter of a Pound of each, and give it him lukewarm fasting, and exercise him after it, and set him up warm three or four Hours: after give him, as you did before, warm Water and Bran in it. Thus order him till you find Amendment.

The Virtues of the Cordials of White-Wine and Honey, and of the Toast of Household-bread boiled in strong Beer, and sweetned with Honey, &c.

These do not only help to bring him to a Stomach, and kill the Canker in his Mouth and Throat, (which this Disease doth commonly bring along with it) but also clear his Guts, and cleanse and heal his Lights, if there be any Imperfection in them.

Observations upon this Disease.

1. If you find that he runs at the Nose any foul, filthy and yellowish Matter, and it afterwards turn white, you need not much question the Cure.
2. If he hath any Knots or Kernels under his Jaws, your common Charge of Soap and Brandy, heated and rubbed in well, will either break or sink them.
3. If you find the Hair in the middle of the Swelling, begin to scale off, and that it be soft all over, you may let out the Corruption with your Incision-Knife, and let it heal up of itself.

4. Though your Drink does cause him to be very sick, and make him swell much in his Body, fear him not, for he will do well.

5. Two or three Miles riding every day will do him much good in order to his Cure.

A Receipt for a Sprain'd Shoulder : and if you desire to see more Variety of Receipts, look for Sinew-Strains.

Take Oil de bay, Dialthæa, fresh Butter, Oil of Turpentine, of each two Ounces ; boil them and mix them well together, and when they be well incorporated, anoint the grieved place therewith, so hot as he can well suffer it without Scalding, and anoint him thus twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise, by walking him a Footpace gently up and down, and this is a certain and approved Remedy.

Another for a Sprain in the Shoulder.

Take one Ounce of the Oil of Spike, half an Ounce of the Oil of Linseed, half an Ounce of the Oil of St. John's-wort, with half an Ounce of the Oil of Pompilion ; and put them all together in a Glass-Viol, and shake them very well together to mingle them : then put them forth into some earthen Vessel, to prevent penetrating and Loss of the Medicine. And when you have occasion to use it, chafe and rub it all over the grieved place with your Hand, one holding at the same time at a little distance, a hot Fire-shovel, or Brickbat before it, to make the Oils sink in the better. This is very good for a slight Strain. Then blood him in the Shoulder, and tye his Fore-feet together.

** Another for a very great and violent Shoulder-strain, which is the best Receipt I know for the Cure of it.*

If by any Accident he get a Strain in his Shoulder, take this common and usual way, which our Smiths do now generally use ; viz. To take up his sound Leg before, and double it backwards in the Joint, and tye it so doubled with some Liff or Garter, so fast that it untye not ; then force him to go upon his three Legs, till he sweat at the Roots of his Ears, Flanks, and between his Legs ; then let down his Leg again (by untying it) which will cause the Blood to descend so into the Plate-Vein, that it will be more visible to be seen than when it was tyed up : but in case it does not appear so plain as you would have it, dab a little warm Water upon it with you Hand, and stroke it downwards towards

wards the place you are to let blood, and this will make it appear more visible to be seen then it was before. Then tye up his Leg again, and let him bleed in the common bleeding place, *viz.* between his Chest and lame Leg, about two Quarts or more, according to the Greatness or Smallness of his Strain. Let the Blood that you save for this purpose (to anoint him with) be about a Quart, and let it be the last Blood, for that is the best, and therefore most proper and fit for your use; put a Handful of Salt into the Bowl you receive it into, and keep it stirring all the while it is running, to keep it from clotting. When he hath bled so much as you think fitting, pin up the Mouth of the Vein with a Pin or Needle to prevent bleeding, winding some Hairs of the Mane or Tail about the Pin, to keep the Pin fast and steady, and a Day or two after take it out; but before you pin him up, anoint him all over the Shoulder and bottom of his Breast, between his Legs and down to his Knee, with Oil of Turpentine and strong Beer or Ale, of equal parts alike, shaken and mingled very well together first in a Glass-Viol, clapping and dabbing it well in with your Hand: And after you have anointed him as much as you think good, smear all the said places anointed before, with the Blood and Salt, chafing and dabbing this also very well in with your Hand, as you did the other: Then bring him home softly into the Stable, and give him some Meat, and tie his Fore-legs together with his Surcingle, or any other String that is broad and easy. The next Day you may untie his Legs, and walk him abroad in your Hand at the Halter's end, and if you find that he goes pretty well, you may mount his Back, and ride him a Mile or more gently: Then set him up again, and tye up his Legs as you did before. The third Day after his dressing, make a thin flat Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Sixpence, and drive it between the Shoe and Toe so fast that it stir not, not forgetting still to tye his Legs together. Thus order him for three or four Days together, which is the usual time limited to make him sound again, conditionally it be not a new Strain. When you take him out of the Stable, or ride him at any time, you must untie his Legs, and take forth the Wedge. This Receipt is good also for a Shoulder that is pulled out of its place, about the breadth of a Man's Hand or more, or a wrenched Shoulder, or a splayed Shoulder, &c.

Things good in general to cure the Sit-fast, or hard Knobs growing under the Saddle.

Take a long Nail with the Point turned inwards, and catch hold of the Edge of the dead Skin or Horn, which will rise from the sound Skin, and with a sharp Knife cut away all the dead and hard Skin from the sound Flesh, and heal it up by pouring hot Butter into it Morning and Evening; and when the Flesh is made even, dry and skin it either with the Powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together; or wash the Wound either with Urine or Whitewine, and dry it up with the Powder of Oyster-shells burnt, or of Bole-Armoniack; or take the green Leaves of Cabbage, and stamp them with Hogs-grease, and work them to an Ointment, and lay it to his Back, then put on the Saddle and mount his Back, to the end that the Ointment may the better enter, or sink into his Back; and in few days it will cure him, &c.

Things good in general for a Navel-Gall.

To anoint it with the Oil of Turpentine, will not only cleanse, it but heal it also; but if you find any dead or proud Flesh arise in it, either cut or eat it away, before you use any Medicine, with either burnt Allum or the Powder of Verdgrease: or after you have washed and cleansed the Sore with your Copperas-Water, or with warm Vinegar, strew this Powder on it; Take of Honey a Quartern, and as much unslak'd Lime as will thicken the Honey, and make it into a Paste, and bake it so hard as that you can beat it to powder, and strew it on the Sorrance, &c.

Particular Receipts for the Navel-Gall.

Take Oil de Bay, Oil of Costus, Fox-grease, Oil of Savin, of each an Ounce; then take one hundred of great Garden-worms, and scour them with Salt and Whitewine, and put all the Ingredients together into an Earthen Pot very well stopped, and boil it well: then add thereto of Sallet-Oil one Ounce and a half, and boil it over again till it come to a perfect Ointment; then strain it into a Gally-Pot, and keep it for your use: only warm it, and so dress the Sorrance therewith with Lint or Hurds, and it will soon be whole

Another.

After you have washed the Sore with old Urine and Salt, then

then anoint it with an Ointment made of Betony, Powder of Brimstone, Hellebore, Pitch and old Hogs-grease stamp'd together and melted, or with your green Ointment in the first Part.

Another for the Navel-Gall.

If the place be only swelled, and the Skin not broken, then dab the grieved part all over with your Hand, or with a Rag wet in Brandy, and it will take it down; or the Oil of Turpentine used after the same manner will do the like: but if it be raw and sore, then these Medicines are very proper for it, *viz.* Take a quarter of a Pint of Whale-Oil, by some called Train-Oil, and boil in it as much of the Powder of Verdegrease finely powdered and searced, as will lie upon a small Shilling, and the grieved Part anointed with it will be cured very speedily. Or the same quantity of Verdegrease, Train-Oil, and two or three Spoonfuls of the Ointment of Marshmallows, boiled a little together, is a certain Cure for it.

How you are to order them.

If the Skin hang loose about them, you are to cut it off; but if it be an old Navel-Gall, which feels hard, then cut out the Bruise with your Incision-knife, and sear the Wound up again with a hot Iron, and heal it up with your green Ointment in the first Part.

These Medicines are not only good for a Navel-Gall, but for any manner of Sores and raw Backs whatsoever, and also for a Sit-fast. *Unguentum Rubrum desiccativum* is also good for them, so is Palm-Oil.

What is good for the Cure of the Palsy.

To let him bleed on his Neck-Vein and Temple-Veins, on the contrary side to that way he wrieth his Neck; then anoint his Back all over with Oil of *Petroleum*, and with a wet Hay-rope swaddle his Neck all over, even from his Breast to his Ears. Then for three Mornings together give him a Pint of old Muscadine, with a Spoonful of these Powders in it, *viz.* Opoponax, Storax, Gentian, Manna, Succory, Myrrh and long Pepper beaten all into fine Powder; but put not in so much of the Myrrh and long Pepper as of any of the rest.

Things good in general to cure the Lethargy or sleeping Evil.

To keep him waking with great Noise, and let him bleed
in

in the Neck and Palate of the Mouth, and to give him Water wherein hath been boiled Camomile, Mother-wort, Wheat-Bran, Salt and Vinegar, to perfume his Head, and to anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together, or to put Parsley-seed or Fennelseed into his Water to provoke him to Urine.

Another for the same.

After you have blooded, as you must always do in this Disease, then take some of the green Boughs of the Ash-tree, and set them on fire in some clean place, and quench the Coals made thereof in some Ale; and when you have strained it out, give him a Hornful of it at each Nostril, the Cold being first taken off. 'Tis good also to open his Forehead underneath his Fore-top, and put into it a Slice or two of an old Onion, and let them lie there till they rot.

Things good in general for the Phrenzy and Madnes in a Horse.

To let him blood in all the lower parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his Head; as namely, in his Shackle-Veins, the Spur-Veins, the Plat-Veins and the Thigh-Veins: and let him blood very much, then give him this Drink; Take the Root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a Handful of Rue or Mint, and a Handful of black Hellebore, and boil them in Beer, and give it him lukewarm; or give him Man's Dung in Wine three Mornings together, or make him swallow down Hen's Dung.

Things good in general for the Quitter-bone

To open it, and put some Oil of Vitriol into it, and that will so eat about the Bone, that you may thrust it out; this is a very safe, and as good a Medicine as any you have. If you find it eat too much, you may stop the eating of it with cold Water, or with your Copperas-Water in my first Part, which will not only keep it sweet and clean, but also keep proud Flesh from growing in it, or you may heal it up with a Salve made of Turpentine and Hog's-grease; and always before you dress it wash it with the said Water, or Auripigmentum made into fine Powder, and steeped in Whitewine twenty eight Hours, and apply it to it, and it will eat so about it that you may pull it away with your Fingers, and do so likewise after the Bone or Gristle is taken out: heal it up with your Copperas-Water and
C c your

your green Ointment, and let him not come into the Water during the time of Cure.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Quitter-bone.

Tent it a day or two with Hogs-grease and Verdegrease ground together, then take scalding hot Grease poured into the Hole, and lay a Plaster of Pitch and Tar mix'd over it for twenty four hours; and if the Bone rise not, do the same again, and it will rise: then take it out with your Nippers, and heal it up with some of your Salve which you best like on, which you may find in my First Part.

Another.

Take of common Honey and Verdegrease in fine powder, as much of each as will suffice; boil it till it be red, and tent the Wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the Wound open, lest it heal up above, before it be well healed up at bottom.

Another.

Take of Arsnick the quantity of a small Bean made into fine powder, and put it to the bottom of the Sorrhance, and stop the mouth of it with Hurds, and bind a Clout over it very fast, that he bite it not off; for it will poison him, and after it hath remained on for twenty-four hours, open it and it will look black therein, it is a sign that it hath done his work. Then to allay the Fire and to restore the Flesh, is to tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together, and to cover the Tent with a Plaster made of Rosin, Pitch, Wax and Turpentine melted together; and thus dress him daily, till you have got out the Core or sharp Gristle, for till that be out, the Sorrhance will not heal; or to heal it up with your green Ointment.

Things good in general for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

To wash the place with Vinegar after you have shaved away the Hair, then use green Vitriol, Euphorbium, Cantharides, Verdegrease, Oil de Bay, Venice Turpentine, Oil of Turpentine, the Powder of Tartar and Salt Arsnick, unslak'd Lime, the Powder of Vitriol, Pepper, Ginger.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

Scarify the place about the Ring-bone with a Lancet, then take a great Onion, and pick out the Core; then put into it Verdegrease and unslak'd Lime, then cover the Hole and roast the Onion soft; then bruise it in a Mortar, and so

so very hot lay it to it four days together, and it will cure it.

Another.

Take unslak'd Lime and burn it well, which you may know by its Lightness; make it into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind a Linen Cloth upon it very fast, and so put him into the Water, and let him stand there a pretty while; then take him forth and unbind his Foot, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the Lime doth kill the Ring-bone even unto the Root thereof: *De Grey* declares, that he hath cured with this Receipt about one hundred Horses. But when you are to dress your Horse, you are to bring him close to the Water; and so soon as you have dressed him, you are to put him presently therein.

Another.

After you have washed, shaved, and scarified the place, then take grey Soap and Arsnick pulverized, of each the quantity of a Walnut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the Sorrhance so far as the Ring-bone goeth; and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and bind a clean Linen Cloth upon it, and remove it not in twenty four hours: then take it away, and stir not the Scab, but only anoint it with fresh Butter till it fall away of itself, and so heal it up with some healing Salve, whereof you have plenty in the First Part. And this Medicine will cure either Bone-Spavin, Splint or Curb. Let him come in no Water during his Cure.

The common way that our Smiths do generally use for the Cure of this Infirmary, is to take up the Vein on the inside of the Leg where the Sorrhance is, and then to sear the Ring-bone with a hot Iron, made about the thickness of the back of a Knife, three times downright, and as many times cross it, till it look somewhat of a yellowish colour: then prick three or four holes in it on an equal distance one from another, in the seared Lines quite through the Skin, with a Nail or other Instrument of Iron, which you think most proper and fit for the Work. When you have so done, rub a Handful of common Salt very well in upon it, which will fetch forth the Blood and Water that was occasioned by the searing and pricking of it, then apply this Charge to it, *viz.* Half an Ounce of Mastick and Frankincense, *Burgundy* Pitch and common black Pitch, of each as much as contains the bigness of a Walnut; boil all these very well

together in an Earthen Pipkin till they be thoroughly melted and incorporated, and apply it very hot upon the grieved place, with a Lath or any other flat Stick, and clap Flox or Hurds upon it, pressing it down hard with your Hand, to make it stick on the better.

Observations how to order him.

Let it stick on till it come off of itself; and if Occasion requires, apply another fresh Charge to it.

If you turn him to grass, let him remain the first Night in the Stable, which will make it stick on so much the better. The Cure will be the sooner perfected if you keep him upon dry ground, for if he goes much in the wet, it will quickly come off.

Things good to cure the Red-Water.

Take the Root of the Herb called *Emanuel*, alias *Bonus Henricus*, or Good King *Henry*, or All-good; boil the Roots in Water, and give it him: or Mustard-seed beaten small, a good Handful given him in Whitewine Vinegar two or three times together one after another, keeping his Belly rubbed with a good long Stick by two Men, one taking one end of it, and another the other end.

A particular Receipt very good for it.

Give him these things here under-written, well mixed and brew'd together in a Quart of strong Beer or Ale for three Mornings together, *viz.* Three Spoonfuls of the Powder of the Lean of salt Beef dry'd, two Spoonfuls of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, with about four or five Shells peeled and bruised in a Mortar with the rest of the Powders; dissolve all these in the Beer as aforesaid, and give it him. 'Tis not amiss to give him after his Drink a Pint of Butter-Milk, or for want of that a Pint of Cheese-Runnet. This is a very good and certain Cure for it.

Things good in general to provoke Urine, or to cause a Horse to stale.

Wild Briar-balls beaten to powder are very good, Allheal, Water-Agrimony, Birds-foot, Parsley-Roots or Seed, Mustard-seed, Alexander and Horse-Parsley, or wild Parsley which is sold in Apothecaries Shops for *Macedonian Parsley*; Burdock-seed is a great Provoker of Urine; Asarabacca, the Kernels within the Husk of Ashen-Keys, Brooklime, Pimpernel, Watercresses, Butchers-broom, the Root of the Butter

Butter-bur, the Juice of the Leaves of the Burdocks, Champions, wild Carrots, the Berries and Fruit of the Winter-Cherries, the Juice of Garden-Chervil, the Juice of Cuckowpoint boiled in Ale or Beer, the Seed of Cucumbers, Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Dogs-grass, Elder, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, the Root of Fern, Fennel-seeds, Filipendula, Dropwort, Flax-weed or Toad-flax, the Flower-de-luce, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Seeds of Germander, the Seeds of stinking Gladwin, Golden Rod, Gromwel, Groundsel, Artichoke-weed, Hawkweed, Herb-Robert, Hops, the smoother Root of the rougher Horsetail, St. John's-wort, the Berries or Leaves of Ivy, Garlick, Radish-roots, Horseradish-roots, the Seeds of Rochet, Kidneywort, Knotgrass, Juniper Berries, the Flowers of Lavender steeped in Whitewine, Ladies-smocks or Cuckow-flowers, Lovage, Maidenhair, Wall-Rue, the Roots of Masterwort, Motherwort, Mugwort, Nettle-seeds; dry'd Acorns beaten to powder and given, Parsley-Piert or Parsley-breakstone, the Powder of the Bark of Restharrow, Burnet, Smallage, the Roots of Spignel, the Seeds of the Star-Thistle, Lady-Thistle, great Turnsole boiled in Water with Cummin, the Water that is gathered from the Willow-Tree when it flowereth, the Bark being slit to let it out; Honeyfuckle-leaves, Wormwood, Saffron, the Roots of Valerian with Fennel-seeds, Haws bruised and laid asteep in Beer or Ale, Eggshells dry'd and beaten to powder, and given in Ale or Beer; the Juice of Coleworts, Southernwood, Mallows stamped and given him in Ale, Cherrystone-Kernels, Madder. But for a Horse that can neither stale or dung, take the Root of Male-brake or Fern; the Male is to be known, for if you cut it, you will find the perfect Figure of an Eagle upon it: put a piece thereof upon his Tongue, and it will cause him both to stale and dung. A Flintstone beaten to powder will make him stale, given him in Beer: Ivy-berries dry'd and beaten to powder, and given in Whitewine, is very good.

Particular Receipts to cause a Horse to stale or piss.

Take a Quart of strong Ale, and put it into a Pottle-Pot, then take as many keen Radish-Roots washed, slit and bruised, as will fill up the Pot; then stop it up close, and let it stand twenty four hours: then strain the Ale and Roots very hard, and give it him fasting, and ride him a

little up and down, and set him up warm, and you shall see him stale. Do this two or three Mornings together.

Another.

Take a good Piece of fine Castle-Soap, about the bigness of a good big Walnut, and dissolve it in a Quart of warm Beer with some bruised Parsley-seed, give it him in the morning fasting, and ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm, and it will cause him to stale.

Another.

Take three or four Spoonfuls of bruised Burdock-seeds, and boil it in a Quart of Beer, and give it him to drink lukewarm, putting a good piece of Butter to it whilst it cools.

Another for the same.

Take half an Ounce of Fennel-seeds, half an Ounce of Parsley-seed, half an Ounce of Burdock-seed, half an Ounce of Nettle-seed, and half an Ounce of Ivy-berries when they are thorough ripe; put all these into a Pint of White-Wine, and a quarter of a Pint of Ale, and let them steep some time therein, and give it him fasting in the morning for two or three mornings together, and exercise him after it. This is a most excellent Receipt, not only for this Distemper, but also the Wind-Cholick, Stone and Gravel, for it wonderfully cleanseth the Kidneys from Sand and Filth.

Another very good.

Take Burnet, Dill, Smallage and Anniseeds, of each a like quantity, well dried and beaten to powder, and put a small Spoonful of each of them to a Pint of White-Wine, or for want of that a Quart of Ale, and give it him as you did the other.

Another.

Take about a Spoonful of these Powders here under written, and put them into a Pint of Whitewine, and as much Ale, and give him them fasting in the morning with Exercise after it, viz. Gromwel-seed, Broom-seed, Parsley-seed, and the Powder of the Root of Horse-Radish well dried.

Another Infallible Cure for the Stoppage of Urine.

Kill as many Bees as you think you have occasion to use, and dry them very well, and beat them to powder, and give him about an Ounce of them at a time in a Pint of Whitewine, or for want of that a Pint of Ale; and at twice or thrice; giving them at farthest, they will so open

pen the Passages of the Ureter-Veins, that they will make him piss and stae very freely. This Receipt is also good for the Strangullion.

Things good for the Pain or Ulcers in the Kidneys.

Plantain, Liquorice, the Decoction of the tender Tops of Broom, Broom-rape boiled in Wine, is good for the Kidneys and Bladder, and provoketh Urine, and breaketh the Stone. To bathe his Back with Sallet-Oil, and Nitram warmed together, and to cover him warm; then to drink the Water wherein hath been boiled Dill, Fennel, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley-seed, Mustard-seed, Spikenard, Myrrh, Cassia, or Sallet-Oil and Deers-Suet melted together, and the Root of the Daffodil boiled in Wine.

Things good in general for the Strangury or Strangullion.

To bathe his Loins with warm Water, then take Bread and Bay-berries and temper them with sweet Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof three days together; or take a Quart of new Milk, and a Quarter of Sugar, and after they are well brewed together, give it him to drink fasting in the morning, and to keep him from all sharp Meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran and the like, or to boil in the Water he drinketh good store of the Herb Mayth or Hogs-Fennel, and it will cure him.

A particular Receipt for it.

Take some of the Powder of a Flint-stone calcined, with an Ounce of the Powder of Parsley-seed, and as much of the Powder of Ivy-berries, and boil them a little in a Pint of Claret, and give them him; it is a very good Cure.

Things good for the Stone in general, or for the Stone in the Kidneys.

Alehoof, Alkanet, Birds-foot, the Seeds of the Burdock, Parsley-seeds, the Kernels of the Husks of the Ash-tree, the Bark of the Baytree-Root, Broom, Bucks-horn, Plantain, Carrot-seeds, the Berries or Fruit of the Winter-Cherry, expel the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder; the Juice of Garden-Chervil, Chich Pease or Cicers, the Root of Columbines, Coral-wort, Dogs-grass, Doves-foot or Cranes-bill, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, Fennel, the Powder of the Root of Filapendula or Drop wort, the Flower-de-luce, the Fuz-bush, Garden-Rod, Herb-Robert, the smooth-
Cc 4 er,

er, not the rougher Horse-tail, St. John's-wort, the Berries of Ivy, Maiden-hair, the Juniper-berries, Kidney-wort, Knot-grass, Wall-Rue, the Roots of Master-wort, Medlar-stones made into powder and given in Wine or Beer, wherein some Parsley-seed hath been infused all night, and a little boiled; the Powder of Spearmint, Ground-Moss boiled, Mouse-Ear, Mugwort, Nettle-seeds, Parsley-piert or Parsley Breakstone, the Kernels of the Peach-tree, Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, the Gum of the Plum-tree, the Powder of the Bark of the Root of Rest-Harrow given in White-Wine, Winter-Rochet or Winter-Cresses, wild Briar-balls beaten to powder and given in White-Wine; the Seeds of the great round-leav'd Dock, Cummin, white Saxifrage, Burnet, Saxifrage, the Seeds or Roots of Sorrel, the Milk of the Sowthistle given in Wine, Spleenwort, the Seed of the Star-thistle, Garden-Tansy, the great Turn-sole boiled in Water with Cummin, Vervain, the Tears of the Vine given, but the Salt of the Leaves is better; Vipers-Bugloss, Dodder, Sallet-Oil, the Lard of a Goat, Coriander-seed, Castle-Soap, the Juice of the red Colewort, the Roots of Alexander, Wormwood, Southernwood, Galangal, Mallows, black Soap, Hyfop.

Particular Receipts good for the Stone in the Reins, Kidneys, or Bladder.

Take Saxifrage, Nettle-Roots, Parsley-Roots, Sperage-Roots, and Dodder, of each a Handful; bruise them and boil them gently with Whitewine until a third Part be consumed; then put to it of Salt a Handful, of Sallet-Oil and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three Ounces, of Honey half a Pound; when all this is boiled, strain it and wring it very hard, and give him of this one Pint every Morning fasting bloodwarm, and if it become too thick by boiling, dissolve into it some Whitewine; and after the first boiling, it must be but only warmed, and let him have it so long as it will last: Or a handful of Maiden-hair steeped all night in a Quart of strong Ale, and strained, and given him, is excellent.

Another.

Take of Ale or Beer a Quart, and put it into a Pot, and put to it so many of the reddest Radish-Roots clean washed and sliced into small Pieces as will fit up the Pot; then stop it up so close that the Air get not in, and let it remain twenty four Hours; then strain the Roots from the Ale or Beer

Beer very hard, and give it him in a morning fasting, and ride him gently upon it, and after that set him up warm covered and littered, and in a little while you shall see him piss freely: let him have it several Mornings together, and during the Cure let his Drink be White Water.

Another.

Make a strong Decoction (that is to say, boil the first quantity of Water to an half Pint three times over) of keen Onions clean peeled and Parsley; then take a Quart thereof, and put to it a good Spoonful of *London Treacle*, and as much of the Powder of Egg-shells, and give it him. And thus do divers Mornings if the Infirmary be great, otherwise when you see him offended.

Things good in general for the Cholick or Stone, or for the Gripings or Fretting of the Guts by Wind.

Centaury, Costmary is good for the Gripings of the Belly; Camomile Flowers are good for the Cholick and Stone, and are good given in a Glister for that purpose; the Roots of the Sea-holly boiled in Whitewine, Rue boiled with Dill and Fennel-seeds in Wine is good; Cinnamon, sixteen or eighteen of the Berries of Holly purge the Body of thick and phlegmatick Humours; Hawthorn-berries, Cardamum, Cloves, Pepper, Juniper-berries given him; or to put a jagged Onion into his Fundament, or to give him a Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament: Horehound, Southernwood, or the Powder of a Stag's Pizzle dried and given in Beer, or the Heart of a Lark swallowed down whole; Hyssop, Cowslips, Liverwort, Lungwort, the Urine of a Child given him to drink, Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Enulacampana, or a Glister made of Soap and salt Water, or to give him one Ounce of Myrrh in Wine; Nettle-roots, Sperage-roots, Dodder bruised and boiled in Whitewine with some Salt amongst it, is good to give him fasting; the Powder of the wild Briar Apple-balls.

Or you may give him by way of a Drink, or by Glister, this following Drench, *viz.* For the dry
Two good Handfuls of Mallow-leaves boiled *Gripes.*
in three Pints of new Milk till it comes to a
Quart; strain out the Milk from the Mallows, and give it him either way, sweetned with Loaf-sugar lukewarm. This is a most excellent Receipt for the dry Gripes, for this will make his Body loose, which by this means will free him from those tormenting Pains he is troubled with.

Par.

Particular Receipts for the Cholick or Stone.

Take of Whitewine a Quart, Fenugreek four Ounces, Bay-berries and Pepper, of each four Ounces, Grains and Ginger of each an Ounce, Water-Cresses two Handfuls, Sage one Handful, Sengreen one Pound, Mint a Handful; stamp the Herbs and pound the Spices, and put them to the Wine and boil it, then strain it and put two Spoonfuls of Honey to it, and give it him lukewarm.

Another.

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each one Ounce, all made into fine powder, and well mixed; then put it into a Quart of Sack, and let it boil a while, then take it off, and put to it one Spoonful of Honey, and give it him lukewarm; then clothe him up and litter him, and let him fast three or four Hours after it; then give him Hay, and one Hour after that a sweet Mash or White-Water.

Another for Gripping and fretting in a Horse's Belly.

First, blood him in the Mouth with your Cornet-Horn, and give him a Pint or a Quart of Pork or Beef-Brine cold, when you see occasion: After you have so done, strip up your Shirt as high as your Elbow, anoint your Hand and Arm with Sallet-Oil, Butter, or Hogs-grease, and put it into his Fundament, and draw forth as much of his hard and baked Dung as you can well get; then take a good big angry red Onion and peel it, and jag it cross-ways with your Knife, and roll it very well in Salt and Flower of Brimstone, and cover it all over with fresh Butter, and put it up into his Body as far as you can well thrust it, and tye down his Tuel or Tail close between his Legs, to his Surcingle or Girts, and walk or ride him about a quarter of an Hour or more; then untye his Tail, and you shall find he will purge freely. The Excellency of this Receipt is, that it will cleanse his Maw and Guts, and kill the Worms within him. The next Morning you may give him a comfortable Drink warm, made of an Ounce of Horse-Spice, boiled a little in a Quart of strong Beer sweetned with either Honey or common Treacle. Or you may give him a Cordial of three Pints of strong Beer, with a Toast of Household Wheat-bread crumbed in it, and boiled together with a little Mace; and when you have taken it off the Fire, dissolve into it two or three Spoonfuls of Honey, with a good Lump of sweet Butter, and he will do well.

Things

Things good in general for the Dropsy.

To let blood first, to take away the thin wheyish Blood, the Kernels within the Husks of the Ashen Keys, Broom, Camomile, wild Carrots, Centaury, the Berries of Elder either green or dry, Dwarf-Elder, Hawk-weed, Wormwood, Juniper-berries, Kidney-wort, wild Marjoram, the Juice of Pellitory of the Wall, the Seed of Plantain, Bay-berries Succory, the Bark of the Tamarisk-tree, Lady-thistle, Vervain, Piony-seeds, Coleworts, Smallage, Elm-boughs, Sallow-Leaves, or whatsoever else that will make him urine; Chiches steeped in Water a Day and a Night, Parsley stamped and mixt with Whitewine, or Burdock-seeds taken the same way, Rue, red Sage, Winter-Savory, Time, Horseradish Roots, Rhubarb, Saldanella, Salt of Scurvey-Grass, Garden Scurvey-grass, Rosemary-tops, Asarabaca, Woodbetony, China-roots; the Juice of the white Lilly-roots tempered with Barley-Meal and baked, and given him for to eat is very good.

A Particular Receipt for the Cure of the Dropsy.

Take a Gallon of Ale, and set it upon the Fire, and scum off the Froth as it riseth, then put into it of Wormwood and of Rue, the tender Tops and Leaves without Stalks, very well picked, of each a Handful, and boil it to a Quart, then strain it, and dissolve into it three Ounces of London Treacle, and put into it of long Pepper and Grains made into fine Powder, of each an Ounce; then brew them well together, and give it him bloodwarm, and bathe and anoint his Legs that be swelled with Train-Oil twice a day, till it go away, and give him Mashies or Whitewater, and feed him with such Meat as he will best eat; and if the Weather be seasonable, turn him to grass, and he will do well.

Things good in general for Gravelling.

To take off his Shoe, and with your Drawing-Iron draw the place till you come into the quick; prick forth all the Gravel, and crush forth the Matter and Blood clean, then wash it clean with your Copperas-water taught you in my first Part, then pour upon it Sheeps-Tallow and Bay-Salt molten together scalding hot, and stop up the Hole with Hurds and set on the Shoe again, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole: but till he be thoroughly well do not travel him, neither let his Foot come into any wet, or
after

after the Gravel is gotten out, stop his Foot with Hogs greafe and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the Wound scalding hot, or to stop it with Hogs-grease, Verjuice, Bees-Wax, the Juice of Housleek beaten in a Mortar together, and melt it, and dip Flax therein, and use it as you did the other; or to wash it with Beer and Salt, or Chamberlye and Salt; and to put into it scalding hot Pitch, Virgins-Wax, Deers-Suet, Boars-grease and the Juice of Housleek, and stop it up with Hurds, and tack on the Shoe again; or to lay into it Flax dipped in the White of an Egg, or to heal it with the Powder of Galls and Tartar mixt together.

Things good in general for molten Grease.

First, to take Blood from the Neck-Vein to a good proportion, to let out all the inflamed Blood, and to give him Bran prepared or dried Bran, and if he empties himself, to give him a restraining Glister, which you may find in my first Part. But things in general to be given inwardly are these, Sallet-Oil, Sack, Honey, Cordial, Powder of Aniseeds, Hempseed, Cummin-seed, Fenugreek-seed, Powder of Elecampane-Roots, Brimstone, Liquorice, Colts-Foot. In Maladies of this nature you must forbear to administer such Drugs as be hot, for that is the way rather to kill than recover your Horse, for lenitive and gentle things are the only means to bring it away.

Particular Receipts for Molten Grease.

Take of Titian three Pints, three Ounces of Loaf-sugar finely powdered, of Cordial powder an Ounce, of live Honey four Ounces, and give it him to drink bloodwarm.

Another for Grease fallen into his Legs.

When you have warmed him well by riding him two or three Miles; then take about half a Pint or more of Sack, and three or four Pennyworth of Sallet-Oil, and give it him to drink, then ride him as far again, and he will purge out his molten Grease. This done two or three times will cure him for that Winter.

Another for Molten Grease.

You shall find another most excellent for this Purpose afterwards.

After you have let him blood, take half a Pint of Whitewine, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, of Rhubarb and Aloes two Drams, of Sena half an Ounce, of Agarick three Drams, Bay-berries half an Ounce, Saffron two Drams,
Duck

Duck or Duke-Powder, and of Cordial Powder, of each two Drams; make what is to be powder'd into Powder, and mix them well together, adding thereunto four Ounces of live Honey: give it your Horse after it is well warmed upon the Fire blood-warm, but be sure you let him fast about three hours before you give it him, and three hours after you give it him, and let his Drink be either a sweet Mash or white Water for five or six days after, and let him have, instead of Oats, Bread made for him, or Bran prepared; but if you give him Oats, put in amongst them Fenugreek bruised. But if you desire to approve of another Receipt, look in my First Part for Balls for Colds, Glanders, or molten Grease.

Another very good for it.

To abate the stirring and working of his Body, and to bring and restore him to his perfect Health again, take this course for his Recovery; Take an Ounce of Diascordium, and dissolve it in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that in a Quart of Beer or Ale, and give it him cold in the Morning fasting, and order him as you do sick Horses, with Mashs of Malt, bursten Oats, warm Cloths, warm Water, &c. But if you find that he falls from his Stomach, and dungs hard, to remedy these two Evils, I direct you to the Directions how to order sick Horses, about the beginning of the First Part, after the End of the Table of Simples, where you may find Vinegar and Honey to bring him to a Stomach, and a Cordial of Bread boiled in Beer with Butter and Honey put therein, to loosen his Body, and to bring him to heart again: and when you find him lusty and strong, you may give him as much of the Powder of Mechoacan as will lie upon a Shilling at thrice, in a Quart of warm Beer or Ale; or you may give him a Purge of Aloes.

Another also very good.

Take an Ounce of the best Aloes Succotrina you can get for Money, half an Ounce of the Cream of Tartar beaten to powder, with as much of each of these Powders as are here under-written, as will lie upon a Groat, viz. Liquorice, Flower of Brimstone and Ginger: mix them all together, and work them up in a little fresh Butter at first, then divide them into three equal parts, and cover every part all over with fresh Butter, to keep the bitter taste of the Aloes from offending him. Let your Balls be made about the bigness of a small Washball, thick in the middle,
and

and sharp at both ends; stick them upon a stick not too sharp at the end, and give him them in the Morning fasting, with a small Hornful of warm Beer after every one of them, to make them pass down the better. Let him have moderate Exercise after them, and order him as you do sick Horses, and he will do well.

General Simples good for a Surfeit.

Angelica, the distilled Water of Broom-flowers, the Leaves of Balm with Nitre given in Ale, or the Juice of Ivy-leaves so given, Liver-wort, common Wormwood, the distilled Water of wild Poppy, &c.

A particular Receipt for a Surfeit.

Take three Quarts of strong Beer, one Handful of Wormwood, one Handful of Celandine, one of Herb-grace *alias* Rue, chop them gross, and boil them in it till they come to a Quart; then strain and squeeze the Liquor from the Herbs, and put into it two Spoonfuls of Honey, and two Ounces or more of Treacle of Jeane, with a Lump of sweet Butter, and give it him fasting in the Morning with Exercise after it; and when you bring him home, clothe and litter him up warm, and two or three hours after give him a Mash and white Water.

Another for a Horse whose Coat stands staring, and does not thrive; or that hath swelled Cods or Legs, by reason of molten Grease settled and dry'd in his Body, which commonly brings along with it Gauntness and Costiveness, with several other Distempers, &c.

The only way to remedy and help these Distempers, is first to give him a Purge of Aloes made up according to Art, as you may find the Manner how in Directions for the purging of Horses after the Table of Simples, and order him as you do sick Horses with Mashies, bursten Oats, scalded Bran, warm Clothing and warm Water, &c. About three or four days after he hath done purging and drank cold Water, to bring him to a Stomach, give him Honey and Whitewine, and to comfort him and loosen his Body, and to make him stale freely, give him the Cordial of Household Wheat-Bread boiled in Beer, &c. You may find the Manner how to make this also in the Directions how to order sick Horses, after the Table of Simples. As to the ordering of his swelled Cods or Legs, you may apply to them

them (after his Phyſick hath done working) the common Charge of Soap and Brandy ſcalding hot, and three or four days after ride him into ſome River or clear Pond up to the midſide, and flounce him backwards and forwards, which will be a means to abate and take away the Swelling: You need not lay on your Charge above once. Theſe Directions are in caſe of a dry Surfeit. But if he be troubled with a Cold, which you may ſoon know by his coughing and running at Noſe, then give him this Drink; *viz.* The Powder of Annifeeds and Turmerick, of each an Ounce, put into a Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer; half a Quartern of Brandy, and about five or ſix Spoonfuls of Whitewine Vinegar, (or for want of either, Verjuice :) boil all theſe a little, and give it him lukewarm faſting in the Morning. If you find his Stomach loſt, give him his Cordial. But if you find that your Horſe is fat and ſtrong, and hath his Greafe ſettled within him, then give him the Purge of Aloes firſt; but if you find him both fat and ill together, then give him this Whitewine and Honey, and Cordial, to bring him to a Stomach, and after them give him his Purge.

Obſervation.

Theſe Heats and Colds, which are occaſioned by hard Labour or violent Riding, do commonly bring along with them hard Puſtules and Kernels under his Caul, which you may either ſink or break with your common Charge of Soap and Brandy, boiled together and applied hot. If you find that they break, waſh them with Verjuice and Butter, or Vinegar and Butter melted together, and they will do well.

Things good in general to mollify Hardneſs.

Linſeed, Fenugreek, Roſin, Pitch of Greece, Flower of Roſes boiled together with Turpentine, Honey and Sallet-Oil, till it come to an Ointment; Malvarisco, Oleum Roſatum, Brank-uſſin, Mallows, Coleworts, Lard, Oil of Cypreſs with Meal, Pellitory, Wormwood or Greafe, Muſtard-ſeed and Cummin boiled together, or the Juice of the Roots or Leaves of Elder, Armoniack, Aloes, Opoponax, Nettles, Mercorella, the Roots of Cucumbers, Hogs-greafe and Tar, Turpentine and old Greafe beaten together; Oil of Turpentine is very excellent to take down a Swelling, Patch-greafe and Turpentine melted together, and ſtop his Feet therewith, and anoint his Coffins therewith; or Salt and Water mix'd together, and bathe the Swelling there-
with,

with, and dip a Linen Cloth in the same, and lay that upon it, and it will dissolve it.

What is good for bruised Kidneys.

The Powder of the Herb called Crabs-Claws, Plantain, Liquorice, Broom, &c.

Things good in general for a sore Mouth and Throat.

Woodbine-Leaves, Bole-Armoniack, Plantain-Water, to wash it with a Water made of them, or to wash it with Bay-salt and Verjuice warmed together. If the Palate be sore, then let him bleed there; then take Honey, young Onions, and toasted Cheese boiled together, and anoint the Palate with it: or wash it with the Juice of Alehoof, the Juice of Golden Rod, Mallows or Marshmallows, or Mint, or Mulberries, or Nettles, or Pellitory of the Wall, or Privet, or Queen of the Meadows, or Ragwort, or Sage and Allum, or Self-heal, or Succory, or the Juice of the *English* Vine, the Decoction of Ragweed, Plantain boiled in Whitewine, Mustard-seed apply'd outwardly dissolveth the Swelling of the Throat.

What is good for the Quinsy.

To let blood under the Tongue, and if his Throat is so swelled that you can get nothing hardly to go down it, lay a Poultice under his Caul, and that will open the Passage; then take a Bull's-pizzle or a Whale-bone, and tie a Linen Rag about it, and dip it into Milk wherein Allum and the Powder of a Dog's-turd hath been dissolved, and thrust it up and down his Throat, and put a Hornful of it down after it. If he be so bad that he can eat nothing but what you give him with a Horn, which must be comfortable and cordial things; be sure let the Hornful of Milk, wherein Allum and Dog's-turd hath been dissolved, be the last thing you give him, or else it will do him no good, and tie him up to the Rack half an hour after it: You are to use it two or three times a day, or oftner, as you shall see occasion. Or four Ounces of the Juice of Cinquefoil given down at a time for certain days together cureth it; or the Juice of Cudweed or Cottonweed taken in Wine and Milk is a good Remedy against it, so is Hyssop boiled with Figs.

Another Receipt good for it.

After you have bled him under the Tongue, take as many

many Leaves of common Mallows as you think fit for your use; boil them very well in his own Piss, and apply it as hot (poultice-wise) to his Throat as he can well endure it, and you shall soon find the wonderful Effects of it, for it will open the Passage of his Throat, and take down the Swelling occasioned by the Inflammation of it. Do this two or three times, if you see occasion, and apply your inward Medicine also to it, as the Receipt above will direct you.

Things good in general to kill Lice or Vermin.

The Decoction of the Herb or Seed of Henbane, and wash him with it. To wash his Body all over with Cow's-Piss for three or four days together, is an approved and certain Cure, and is as good as any I can give you. However I shall give you some more Receipts, which are to anoint him with Quicksilver and Hog's-grease mixed together; or take Staves-acre and green Copperas boiled in running Water, and wash him all over therewith, and at twice dressing it will cure him; or Tobacco shred small and boiled in small Beer with some powder'd Allum, and when the Allum is dissolved, to wash him therewith.

Another very good to destroy them.

Take Hogs-Lard, and anoint your Horse all over his Back-bone, and under his Mane, and about his Flanks, or any where else, where you find your Lice do come, and it will destroy them: The reason is, that this Food being so very delicious, and so well liked of by them, makes them feed so much upon it that it causeth them to burst. Or take Train-Oil, which is Whale-Oil, and anoint his Breast and Flanks with it, and then dip a broad List of Woollen into it, and sow it about his Neck, and this will destroy them.

Things good in general to keep the Flies off a Horse's Head.

To anoint his Head with Oil and Bayberries mingled together; or to rub his Head all over with the Water wherein Rue hath been steeped, after it is well bruised; or to anoint his Head or round about his Eyes with Linseed Oil, and it will keep them away; or with the Water wherein Devil's-dung hath been dissolved, is the best of all; or with the Water of Pellitory of Spain, or the Leaves of Ivy bruised with a little Water, and his Head washed therewith.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Leprosy or Mange.

To take blood first from the Neck-Vein good store, and scrape away the Scurf with an old Curry-comb, Oyster-shell, or such like: then these things you are to use as your Discretion serves; Staves-acre, Chickweed, Elecampane, Mercury Sublimate, the Leaves of Bramble boiled in Lye, Cow-Piss, the Powder of the dry'd Root of Briony, the

* *Resalgar is a Composition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unslak'd Lime, and is a most strong Corrosive.*

Powder of the red Dock, or the Powder of Arsnick, * Resalgar, or white Mercury mix'd with Hogs grease till it be kill'd, Urine, Tobacco and Brimstone boiled together is very good; or Salt, Verdegrease, Allum, Verjuice and Train-Oil boiled together, and anoint him therewith; or Broom, Wormwood, Mustard-seed, Elecampane, Chimney-foot and black Soap boiled together; or the Juice of Hemlock, unslak'd Lime, Pepper and Ginger boiled in Beef-broth, and the Place anointed therewith, is very good.

Particular Receipts for the Mange.

Take a Quart of fair running Water, and put into it half a pound of green Copperas, and an Ounce of Allum, and an Ounce of Tobacco chopt small; then boil them together till they come to somewhat more than a Pint, and anoint him all over with it very warm: After you have rubbed off the Scabs, tie him to the Rack three or four hours; twice dressing cures him. Or the Ashes of the Bark of the Ash-tree made into a Lye, and the Body washed therewith; Calamint taken inwardly, the Decoction of the Leaves of the Fig-tree, wild Flower, &c.

Another.

First let blood, then take a Quart of old Urine or Vinegar, and break it into a quarter of a pound of Tobacco, and set it on the Embers to stew all night, and wash the infected Places, whether it be in the Mane or otherwise.

Another for any Mange or Universal Leprosy in a foul surfeited Horse.

After you have let him blood, and scraped off the Scabs or Scurf, take of Verjuice and Vinegar a Pint, Cow-Piss a Pint, Train-Oil a Pint, old Urine a Pint, and put to them a Handful of wild Tansy, and a Handful of Bay-salt, a Quarter of a Pound of Brimstone, as much Allum, two

†

Ounces

Ounces of Verdegrease, and four Ounces of Bole-Armonack; boil all well together; with this very hot wash him well, and if you put to it the quantity of a Pint of the Blood you take away, it is not amiss; do this twice or thrice.

Another.

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the best and strongest, and wash the Sores therewith so hot as he is able to suffer it, and in three or four times dressing it will cure him; this will not only kill the Mange, but all Scratches, Pains, and Rats-tails, &c.

Another.

Take of Soapers Lees, and after you have scraped away the Scurf, wash him with it, and in once or twice dressing he will be well. It cures the Mange not only in Horses, but also Dogs, provided they get not to it with their Mouth.

An inward Drink with an Outward Application, which I think is the best Remedy that can be invented for this Disease.

Take Anniseeds and Turmerick, of each an Ounce, finely beaten; of the blackest Rosin powdered one Ounce; put them into a Quart of strong Beer, heated lukewarm, and give it him in the Morning fasting, with a little of the Flower of Brimstone at the Mouth of every Horn you give him, not exceeding above an Ounce in all, and let him fast four or five Hours after it, and order him afterwards as you do a sick Horse: About two or three days after his Drink, when he hath a little recruited and recovered his strength again apply this outward Application (but first curry off all the Scabs with an old Curry-Comb till the Blood and Water appear) viz. Take Oil of Turpentine and Beer, of equal Parts alike, with some Flower of Brimstone, well shaken and jumbled together in a Glass-Viol, to incorporate them the better, and anoint him all over with it, tying him first with a strong Bridle to the Rack to prevent him from biting at it, for it is a very terrifying, biting and sharp Medicine, and will torment him for about half an Hour or more, and then the Smarting will be over. If you find your Horse full of good and in heart, you may venture to give him two or three of these Drinks and Anointings, if you see the Cure will not be performed without them; but if he be a very poor lean Horse,

Blood him first, and about two or three days after give him this Drink.

then one is enough till he hath recovered more heart and strength.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Scab, Tettar, or Ring-worm.

The Water that is found in the hollow places of a decayed Beech-tree, and anoint him with it; the Juice of the Leaves and Roots of stinking Gladwin: one Part of Plantain Water, and two Parts of the Brine of Beef boiled together and clarified, and anoint him with it; Plumtree-leaves boiled in Vinegar, kill Tettars; the Juice of the Root of Monks-Rhubarb, which is a kind of Dock, some call it Garden-Patience, is very good; the Oil of Wheat pressed between two thick Plates of Copper; the Juice of Mercury mingled with Vinegar, Water-Cresses, the Roots of Docks boiled in Vinegar and the Place bathed therewith; Cardimonium mixt with Vinegar.

To make a strong Lye of old Urine, Ash-Keys and green Copperas. and bathe the Knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them; or to cut the Head and Tail of a Snake, and cut it into small pieces and roast it, and anoint the Sore with the Grease of it, and it will heal it in a short time; and have a care you touch no place but the Sorrhance, for it will venom.

Particular Receipts to cure the Tettar or Ring-worm

Take two Drams of Precipitate, and put it into a small Viol-Glass with fair Water, much more than will cover the Powder, keep it close stopped, and with this Water twice a day wash it, and it will infallibly cure it; and after you have dressed the Sorrhance, shake the Glass, and let it stand till the next Dressing; but if it be in any fleshy Part, you may kill it by bathing the Sorrhance with the Juice of Southernwood; Maudlin and Rue, of each alike, stamped together and strained, and bathe the place with it twice a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take the Roots of Elecampane, and the Roots of red Docks, of each alike, slice them thin, and put them into three Quarts of Urine, with two Handfuls of Bay-Salt; let it boil till one Quart be consumed; then take it off, and with a Clout fastned to a Stick, wash the Sorrhance very hot, four or five Mornings together, and it will kill it.

A

A very good Receipt to cure any manner of Scab, Itch or Scurf, in any Part of a Horse's Body.

Mix Sallet Oil, his own Water, Whitewine-Vinegar, Salt, Butter, and Brimstone together, and anoint the grieved Part with it twice a day, and it will cure it. Let your quantities of all these things be more or less, according to the Cure you undertake.

Things good in general for the Crown-Scab, which is a stinking and filthy Scab, breeding round about the Corners of the Hoof.

Spread upon a Plaster this Ointment; Take Salt, Bacon-Grease, Soot, Wax and Pitch molten together, and lay to it, and if the Flesh grows proud, eat it away with Verdegrease beaten to powder; or with burnt Allum, or Scrapings of Harts-horn or Ox-horn made into powder; or take Soap and Hogs-grease, and half a Pound of Bole-Armoniack, and a quarter of a Pound of Turpentine mixed well together, and make a Plaster and bind it on fast, renewing it every day till it leave running, and then wash it with strong Vinegar made warm, and let him come into no Water during the Cure; or bathe him with old Urine sod with Salt, and that will dry up the Humours and heal it; or wash it with green Copperas, Allum and Honey boiled together in fair Water, and wash the Sore with it three or four times a day, and this will both kill and heal it without any other Medicine.

Things good in general for a surbated Horse.

Take two new-laid Eggs, and after you have well picked his Fore-feet, break them raw into his Soles; then stop them up with Ox or Cow-dung, and he will be well by the next Morning; or Sugarcandy melted with a hot Iron between the Shoe and the Foot, and when it is hardned, take Nettles and Bay-salt, stamped and laid upon it; or after his Foot is pared, to cool it, stop his Feet with Bran and Hogs-grease boiled together very hot, and cover the Coffin round with the same; or stop them every Night with Cows-dung and Vinegar mingled together.

Things good in general for Sinews that are cut, pricked, bruised or shrunk, or for any other Grievs in them.

Allheal is good for the Grief of them; Wood-betony, Comfrey soddereth cut Sinews together; the dried Powder of red Wheat boiled in Vinegar is good; wild Tansy, Oil of Camomile, Mugwort cureth the Contraction and Drawing together of the Sinews; or Tar, Bean-flower and Oil of Roses mixed together, and laid to the Place, hot, and if it do not good presently, then take Worms and Sallet-Oil fryed together; or else the Ointment of Worms, which you may have at the Apothecaries, and apply either of them, for they knit the Sinews again if they be not quite cut asunder; but if there be a Convulsion, you must with your Scissars cut the Sinew asunder; then take Rosin and Turpentine, Pitch and Sanguis Draconis melted together, and clapped somewhat hot to the Sore; then take Flax and clap upon that, for that will cleanse and defend, and is a very excellent Medicine for any swollen Joynt whatsoever: But if the Sinews be not much swelled, but only stiff; then take of black Soap a Pound, and seethe it in a Quart of strong Ale, till it wax thick like Tar, and anoint the Sinews and Joints with it, and it will supple them and stretch them forth be they ever so much shrunk; or take a Quart of Neatsfoot-Oil, a Quart of Ox-galls, a Quart of Aquavitæ or Brandy, a Quart of Rosewater, or a Handful of Rosemary stamped; boil all these together till half be consumed, and strain it, and use it as you see occasion.

A Receipt for a cut Sinew.

Take the Leaves of Nep or Woodbine, and bruise them well in a Mortar with May-Butter, and apply it to them; 'tis very good to knit them together.

A Particular Receipt for the Shrinking of the Sinews.

Take a Handful of Chickweed, of red Roses dried the like quantity; put them into a Pint of Ale, and a Pint of Canary, and let them boil together till a fourth part be consumed; then put to them a Pint of Trotters-Oil, and let that boil also a good while, keeping them stirring, which being strained, anoint the grieved Part therewith, chafing it in very well with your Hand, holding a hot Fire-shovel or Brickbat before it at the same time, to make it sink in the better: When you bind it up, put to it some of the Herbs,

Herbs, and at three or four times dressing it will be well. The Decoction of the Root of Scabious and Garden Tansy boiled in Sallet-Oil; or take the Decoction of the Leaves of Mullen, with Sage, Marjoram and Camomile-Flowers, and the grieved Part bathed therewith, is excellent good for them, &c.

Things good in general to cure the Tongue of a Horse that is hurt.

To boil in Water Woodbine-Leaves, Primrose-Leaves, Blackberry-Leaves, Knot-grass with some Honey, and put to it a little Allum, and two or three times a Day wash it with a Clout tied upon a Stick, being lukewarm; or take *Mel Rosatum* and anoint it therewith, and be sure whensoever you dress his Tongue or Mouth, tie him up to the Rack an Hour after it, that so the Medicine may take the better effect; or take red Honey, the Marrow of powdered Pork, quick Lime and Pepper made into fine Powder, of each alike, boiled together till they come to an Ointment, and anoint it with it twice a day.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Tongue of a Horse, that is hurt.

Take of Arman half an Ounce, and put into the Fire till it become red hot, then take it out and beat it to very fine Powder; then take a Sawcer full of live Honey, and of Whitewine one Pint, mix and steep these with the Powder together, and so let it boil over the Fire, keeping it stirring, then take it off and let it cool, and so wash his Tongue Morning and Evening with it till it be whole.

Another.

Take the Juice of Celandine, and wash the Hurt therewith nine Days together, and it will cure it though it be half cut asunder, for the Juice of the Celandine will conglutinate and solder the Tongue together, being cut or wounded.

Things good for Venomed Things.

Garden-Basil or sweet Basil laid to it, is good for any thing venomel by a Spider, Wasp, Bee or Hornet; Water-bistort or Snake-weed is likewise good; and if he hath drunk Horse-Leeches, Hen's-dung and the like, give him three Spoonfuls of the Herb Sow-thistle dried in a Quart of Ale.

Another for a Venom.

Take a Handful of Rue, and stamp with it the Fat of rusty Bacon, till it come to a perfect Salve, and therewith dress the Sore till it be whole.

Another to be used either inwardly or outwardly.

If he hath eaten any venom'd thing, give him the Juice of Sage, Morning and Evening, in Wine or Ale; but if he be outwardly venom'd, bruise the Sage, and apply it to the griev'd part twice a Day, and it will take out the Venom.

Things good in general for Ulcers.

*See a more
large Account
of things of
this Nature in
the first Part.*

Tar, Hog's-grease, green or white Copperas, Salt-Peter, Bees-wax, Honey, Rosin, Verdegrease Linseed-Oil, all boiled together, and make a Salve of it, and dress it with it: Euphorbium, Mastick, French Soap is good; or to wash the Sore with White wine and green Copperas dissolved together, and to heal it up with Swines-grease, the Leaves of Lillies beaten in a Mortar, and make a Salve of it, and lay it upon the Sore, and cover it with a Plaster, or Loam and Horse dung mixed with Pepper and the White of an Egg; or to strew upon the Sore of the Powder of Galls, or to scald it once a day with Sallet-Oil or Sack, Frankincense, Cloves, green Copperas and Brimstone, and double as much Myrrh as any of them, and put it upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and receive the smoke of it upon Hurds, and keep it close in a Box, and when you use it, wash the Sore with Urine or Vinegar twice a day.

Things good in general for an Ulcer or Canker in the Nose.

Green Copperas and white Copperas, with some Allum boiled in running Water, and squirted into his Nostrils lukewarm three or four times one after another, is good; but if the Canker be hot and very burning with great Pain; then take the Juice of Purslain, Night-shade, Lettice, and mix them together, and wash the Sore with a fine Cloth dipt therein, or else squirt it up his Nostrils, and it will allay the heat of it: Or to take Sage, Rue, Hybp, of each a Handful, and seethe them in Urine and Waer, and strain it out, and put into it a little white Copperas, Honey and Aquavitæ, and wash or squirt it into the Plce; But if the Canker be killed, heal it with this Water; Take of Rib-wort,

Betony

Betony and Daisies, of each a Handful, and seethe them well in Wine and Water, and wash the Sore therewith; or take Chrystal made into fine Powder, and strew upon it; Pauls Betony bruised is very good.

Things good in general to cure the Vives.

To cut a Hole where the Kernels are, and pick them out with a Wire, and fill the Hole with Salt, and at there days end it will run; then wash it with the Juice of Sage, and heal it up with an Ointment made of Honey, Butter and Tar, or with your green Ointment in my first Part; or wash the Sore with Water, wherein hath been boiled green Coperas and Allum, and tent it with Flax dipt in the White of an Egg, beaten to an Oil, or heal it up with Hogs-grease, Turpentine and Wax molten together; or take a Sponge dipped in Whitewine-Vinegar, and bind to the Sore, and renew it twice a day, till the Kernels do rot; then open the nethermost part of the Softness, and let the Corruption out, and fill the Hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day wash away the Filth with warm Water, and the next day after wash the Sore with Honey and Fitch-flower mingled together till it be whole.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Vives.

Take Tar, tried Hogs-grease, Bay-Salt and Frankincense powdered, of each as much as will suffice, melt them together, and with a Clout fastned to a Stick, scald the Place four or five Mornings together, until the inflamed Places do become soft and ripe, then slit the Skin with your Incision-Knife, and let forth the Corruption, and heal up the Sore with tried Hogs-grease and Verdegrease made up into fine Powder, melt them upon the Fire, and let it not boil more than a Waum or two, then put in some ordinary Turpentine, and so stir all together till it be cold, and anoint the Sorrance with it till it be whole.

Another which is the best Cure for it.

Take a Pennyworth of Pepper beaten to fine Powder, Swines-grease a Spoonful, the Juice of a Handful of Rue, Vinegar two Spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and convey it equally into both the Ears of the Horse, and so tie or stich them up, then shake his Ears that the Medicine may sink downwards, which done, let him blood in the Neck-Vein, and Temple Veins, and this is an infallible Cure.

Another

Another very good for the same.

The Vives are cured several manner of ways, as you find by the Receipts above, but the most usual and common way that our Smiths generally use for the Cure of this Infir-
~~my~~ ^{ity}, is, for to let blood on both sides the Neck-Veins, then to sear the Swelling with a small hot Iron, from the Root of the Ear, down to the Bottom of it, till the Skin look yellow; the Manner and Form of the Searing-Iron must be somewhat like the Shape and Fashion of a great Arrow's-Head, as you see by the Figure in the Margin, with three or four small Lines or Strokes on each side, drawn from the Body of it. After you have seared it, take out the Heat of the Fire; and to make it sound again, anoint it with fresh Butter or Hogs-grease, and he will do well.



What is good to cure the Arraistes or Rats-tails, which is a kind of Scratches.

To ride him till he be warm, which will make the Veins to swell, and the better to appear; then let him bleed on the Fetlock-Veins, on both sides, making him to bleed well, and the next day after to wash the Sores with warm Water, and then clip away all the Hair from about the Sores, and anoint the grieved Place with this Ointment, *viz.* Take green Copperas and Verdegrease, of each two Ounces, and of common Honey, four Ounces, beat your Copperas and Verdegrease very small, and so work them with your Honey to an Ointment, and anoint the Sores daily with it till it be whole.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Wind-Cholick.

Allheal, True love or One-berry, the Berries of Holly, Holm or Holver-Bush, Juniper-Berries, the Flowers of Lavender steeped in Wine, wild Parsnips, Jack by the Hedge, Winter and Summer-Savory, but the Summer is the best, Burnet, Saxifrage, the Leaves of the Willow-tree bruised, and the Juice given with some Pepper in Beer, Cardamom, Fenugreek, Haws beaten to powder, Rue, Cloves, Cinnamon, an Onion peeled and jagged, and put it into his Fundament; or give him a Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament, lighted, and the Wind of his Body will draw it out. If you intend to see more of this nature, look for Cholick, Angelica,

angelica, Wood-betony, Mullen, Mustard-seed, Centaury.

A Plaster to lay upon the Wound, to keep in the Tent or Salve.

Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, Turpentine, Hogs-grease, of each so much as will suffice; melt them together, and keep it for your use. When you use it, spread it upon leather, and cover the Wound therewith. This Salve doth infinitely comfort a Wound both green or old, be the same fistula or otherwise.

Things good in general to cure the Wind-Galls.

To open them the length of a Bean, and thrust out the Jelly; then take the White of an Egg and Oil-de-bay, and mix them together, and apply it with Hurds plaster-wise, and in three or four days thus dressing, it will be cured: and after you have opened it, and the Jelly squeezed out, to lay Pitch and Rosin melted together upon it, and to clap some Hurds upon that.

This is a very good Cure.

To lay to it Oil de-bay, Turpentine, Verdegrease, the White of an Egg and Red Lead boiled together till they become a Salve; or the Roots of Cummin beaten with Salt and laid to it; or to anoint them with the Juice of Onions, or Leeks, or Ground-Ivy and Wormwood sodden in White-wine, and laid to them; or after the Jelly is let out, to lay a wet woollen Cloth about it, and with a Taylor's hot Pressing-Iron rub upon the Cloth till all the Moisture is dry'd up, then daub all over it Pitch, Mastick and Rosin boiled together, and lay Hurds upon it. In all these kind of Cures you must first shave away the Hair, and open the Sorrhance, and squeeze forth the Jelly before you lay any Charge to it, and to keep him out of the Water during the Cure.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Wind-gall.

Take Tacamahaca, Mastick, Perozin, of each the quantity of a Hazle-Nut, and of stone Pitch to the quantity of a Walnut, with a little Brimstone powder'd; melt all these together, and when it is molten, put in as much Turpentine as a Walnut will contain, and spread it upon a Plaster, and lay it to the Place warm, and daub it all over with the same Salve, and Flox upon that, and let it remain on till it fall away of itself.

Anno.

Another.

Take of Oil of Vinegar, and dip your Thumb therein and rub the Sorrance with it every day till the Hair do fall off, which will cause the Wind-galls to break out and bleed; then heal and cure them, as you have been already taught.

Another for the Cure of the Wind-Galls.

Take about half a Pint of White wine-Vinegar, one Ounce of Roman Vitriol, one Ounce of Mastick, one Dram of white Copperas, and one Ounce and a Dram of Euphorbium; boil all these together till a fourth part be consumed, then strain it out, and put it into a Glass close stopped, and keep it for your use. The manner of using it is to rub about a Spoonful of it upon each side where they are, for three or four days together, and not clip away the Hair.

A Purgation for a Horse sick of Grease or Costiveness.

Take a Pint of old Whitewine, and set it on the Fire, and dissolve into it a Lump of Castle-Soap as big as a Hen's Egg, and stir them well together, then take it off, and put into it two good Spoonfuls of Hempseed beaten, an Ounce of Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and brew all together; then having warmed the Horse, to stir up his Grease and other foul Humours, give it him to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the Potion work: then set him up warm, and after a little stirring him in his Stall, if he grow sickish, give him liberty to lie down; then after two hours fasting give him a sweet Mash, and feed as at other times; or if you find him sick, give him a Pint of warm Milk down his Throat, and he will be quickly well. For Costiveness, rake out his hard Dung, then boil an Ounce of each of these things in a Quart of Beer, viz. Aniseed, Fenugreek, Linseed, and the Powder of Piony, and give him a Pint of it lukewarm.

To cure a Horse that is swelled after Blood-letting.

Take Linseed-Oil, Hogs-grease, and Red Lead mix'd together, and melt them together over the Fire, keeping them stirring till it becomes cold, or else the Red Lead will sink all to the bottom; then rub it once a day well in with your Finger till the Swelling be down, and this will dissolve the hardest Knot that is. If it be in the Winter, you must heat it in with a hot Fire-shovel; but if it be in the Summer, the Sun will do the same thing.

Ano:

Another for a Horse that hath taken cold after Blood-letting, or that hath been prick'd by some rusty Fleam, so that it wrankles.

Take Soap and Brandy, and dissolve them together cold, and wash the Place with it, is good for them; so is the Ointment or Oil of Populeon, the Place grieved being anointed with it. Or Pitch both white and black, of equal parts alike, melted together, and apply'd hot upon the end of a Lath, and Flox or Hurds stuck upon it till they come off of themselves, is also a very good Cure.

They are both very cooling things.

Things good to cure a Bone-Spavin.

Tho this is a very hard thing to cure, yet I shall give you such Receipts as I find in an eminent Author.

First, Take up the Vein which feeds it, and let him bleed well, and do no more to him that day: the next day shave away the Hair from off it, and rub it hard with a Rolling-Pin, (having first anointed the place with Petroleum, and chafed it well with your Hand) or some other round and smooth Stick, Morning and Evening, for four days together, and at the fourth day's end slit down the Skin with your Incision-Knife the full length of the Spavin; but be very careful you touch not the great Artery or Vein; both which do lie very near; for if you do but hurt that, you maim the Horse past all recovery; having thus done, lay to the Place the Herb called *Flamula*, bruise it and bind it on so fast that it fall not off in two days more: then for three days after, take Cantharides and Euphorbium, and incorporate them well together (being before beaten to powder) with black Soap and Bay-salt, and lay this to the Place, and thus dress it every Morning, and this will lay the Bone and Crust bare: after take Fern-roots, Hounds-tongue, and Boars-grease, incorporate all these together, and lay to the place till you perceive the Crust to be loose, and to be wasted; and now and then try to loosen it with your Cornet, or other Instrument, and if you can conveniently take it off, do so; which done, heal up the Wound with your green Ointment prescribed in my First Part. But if you find a Swelling begin to arise in the Spavin-place, whereby you suspect it, then for the prevention thereof, after you have first shaved away the Hair, anoint the place with natural Balsam for two or three days together; then repress the

the Humour with this Charge; Take three Ounces of the Oil of Roses, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce, Wheat-Flower half an Ounce, and the White of an Egg; make all these into one Body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balsam, lay on the said Charge.

Things good in general for all manner of Burnings or Scaldings, either by Shot, Gunpowder, or Wildfire.

The Leaves or Roots of the yellow Lilly, Daffodil stamped with Honey, the Juice of an Onion, the Juice of the red Lilly, Lettice, the Juice of Thorn-Apples boiled in Hogs-grease to the form of an Ointment, cures all manner of Burnings or Scaldings whatsoever in a very short time; Water-Plantain, the Juice of Housleek, St. John's-wort bruised, the Herb Tutstan or Park-leaves, an Ointment made of the Juice of Cowslips, and Oil of Linseed, cureth all manner of Scaldings or Burnings whatsoever: Ivy that groweth upon Walls or Trees, Brank-Ursin, the Juice of Elder-leaves, the Decoction or the distilled Water of Archangel, the Flowers and Herb of Ladies-Bedstraw made into an Oil by setting it in the Sun, is good. The Leaves of the Burdock bruised with the White of an Egg, is a most excellent thing for all manner of Burnings by Fire; the Juice of Colts-foot, the Decoction of Daisies, Wallwort and Agrimony, cureth inward Burnings being given inwardly; the Decoction of the Leaves of Brank-ursin.

Particular Receipts to allay Burning with Shot, Gunpowder, or Wildfire.

Take Varnish and put it into fair Water, and beat them very well together; then pour away the Water from the Varnish, and anoint the place burned with a Feather dipt into it, and in a few days dressing it will kill the Fire: which done, heal the Sore with your carnifying and healing Salves.

Another.

Take Hogs-grease and set it on the Fire, and take off the Filth that shall arise, and when it is well boiled, take it off the Fire and put it into an earthen Pan to cool, for four or five Nights together in the open Air; then wash it in fair running Water so often till it become white; then melt it down again, and keep it for your Use, and anoint the place grieved, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take fresh Butter and the Whites of Eggs, as much of each as will suffice; beat them well together till you bring them to a formal Ointment, and anoint the Places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the Fire, and cure them soundly.

Another.

Take a Stone of Quick-Lime, which must be well burned, which you may know by its Lightness, dissolve it in fair Water, and when the Water is settled, strain the clearest through a fine Cloth; then put into the Water either the Oil of Hemp-seed or Sallet-Oil, of like quantity with the Water, and so beat them well together, you shall have an excellent Unguent, very precious for all sorts of Burnings. And the Nature of these three Unguents is to leave no Scars; wherefore we apply them for most sovereign Remedies, as well for Man as Beast.

To help a Horse that is Costive in his Body.

Take a Decoction of Mallows one Quart; Sallet-Oil half a Pint, or fresh Butter half a Pound; Benedicte Laxativa one Ounce; give him this bloodwarm glister-wise: then clap his Tail to his Tuel, and hold it close, and make him keep it for half an Hour at the least, and when it hath worked, give him a sweet Mash, and so keep him to Mashies and White-Water for two or three days.

What is good to make a Horse draw up his Yard.

To bathe his Yard and Sheath with Whitewine made warm; then anoint it with Oil of Roses and Live-Honey mingled together, and so put up the Yard into the Sheath, and with a short Bolster of Canvas, keep it from falling down, and dress him once every day till he be well, and let his Back and Fillets be kept warm, and anoint him with Acopium, but if you have it not, apply this Charge unto his Back and Fillets:

Take Bole-Armoniack, the Whites of Eggs, Wheat-Meal, Sanguis Draconis, Venice Turpentine, and strong Whitewine-Vinegar, of each as much as you think fit; mix them well together, and charge his Back with it, as also his Sheath and his Stones.

Another.

Take the Ashes of Ashen-wood, the whitest, finest and best burned, and searce them, one Pound of red Clay dried,

ed, and made into fine Powder, Bole-Armoniack half an Ounce powdered; boil all these in as much Verjuice of the Crab, as will make it liquid like Pap, and with it anoint his Yard, Sheath and Stones, Morning and Evening, and he shall be presently cured.

A Receipt to scour and cleanse a Horse's Yard, that is foul and furred by pissing within his Sheath.

Draw forth his Yard, and rub and prick off the Filth with your Hand, and cleanse it well with Butter and Whitewine-Vinegar melted together, and squirt some of it up into his Yard with a Syringe, and he will do well.

A Receipt to prevent Diseases in a Horse the whole Year.

The first Day of *April* open a Vein in the Neck, and if it be good take the less; if bad, take the more: then from that Day, until the first of *May* give him this which I shall prescribe, and let him have it Morning and Evening during the whole Month of *April*, from the first to the last, which is before his turning out to Grass or Soiling, which shall be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same all the whole Month of *October*, (like as you must do in *April*) after you have taken him from Grass about *Bartholomew-Tide*. That which I prescribe is this.

To prevent Diseases.

Take a Bushel of old Rye, sweet and clean, well purged, or made clean from all Filth, and put it in a clean Iron Pot, dry, and without Water, put it over the Fire, and put in your Rye, and keep it continually stirring to the bottom, until it be so parched that it becometh black, hard, and dry; then take it from the Fire and put it into some clean Vessel, and when it is cold keep it close stopt for your use. When you use it, take two or three Handfuls of it, and beat it into fine powder, and mingle it amongst his Provender at every Watering, Morning and Evening, or at other times when you give him Oats; do this these two entire Months of *April* and *October*, for all Men hold that in these two Months the Blood turneth and altereth, as we alter his Diet from hard and dry Meat to Grass, and so likewise from Grass to dry Meats: for this Rye thus parched and ordered, doth refine the Blood, cool the Liver, and purgeth the Spleen, so as the whole Structure of the Body is thereby better

better cured and freed from all such bad and unnatural Humours, which would otherwise make the Body inclinable to sundry Maladies and Diseases, which this Rye preventeth.

Things good to keep a Horse from Casting forth his Drink.

As it proceeds from Cold in the Stomach, or other Causes, as Cold in the Head, where the Rheum binding about the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, hath as it were strangled and made streight the Passages to the Stomach; therefore to prevent this Mischief, you must give him cordial and warm Drinks; as Malmsey, Cinnamon, Anniseeds and Cloves, well brewed and mingled together, and to anoint his Breast and under his Shoulders, with either the Oil of Cypress, Oil of Spike, or the Oil of Pepper, and to purge him with Fumes or Pills, for such Fumigation joining with these hot Oils, will soon dissolve the Humours.

A particular Receipt for the Cure of it.

This Infirmary comes also by Glut of Provender, or by eating of raw or green Food, as new Pease or Beans, &c. You may also take this course for the Recovery of him, viz. To give him comfortable things; as Diapente boiled in Beer or Ale, and the like: Or to keep him fasting, and let him have no Meat, but what he is willing to take out of your Hand, viz, Bread, Hay, Oats, &c. Let his Drink be new Milk till his Stomach returns to him again. 'Tis also very good to bring him to his Stomach again, to put a Piece of four brown Bread, steeped in Vinegar, into a Bag, and hang it at his Nose for him to smell of it.

Things good in general for the hungry-Evil.

To comfort his Stomach by giving him great Slices of white Bread, toasted and steeped in Sack, or to let him drink Wheat-flower and Wine mingled together; or to make him Bread of Pine-Nuts, and Wine mingled together; but there is nothing better than moderate feeding of the Horse many times in the day, with wholesom Bean-Bread well baked, or Oats well dried and sifted.

Particular Receipts for a Horse that hath swallowed down Hens-dung, or any other venomous thing.

Take a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and two Spoonfuls of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and as much of the Powder of
E e Dia-

Diapente, and brewing them well together, give it him to drink, and for want of Diapente, so much of the shaving of Ivory, or of an old Stag's-Horn especially, the Tips thereof burnt; or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Sowthistle given him in a Pint of Ale or Beer.

Another.

Take of the Urine of a Man, as it cometh warm from him, one Pint, of Bay-Salt a Handful; stir them well together, and give it him, and after walk him up and down for half an Hour. If you desire to see more Receipts, you must look for things that are good to expel Poison.

Things good for Pain in the Teeth, loose Teeth, Wolfs Teeth and Jaw-Teeth.

For loose Teeth the Cure is to prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well; then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, or with the Leaves of Elecampāne, and it will fasten them.

The Pains of his Teeth come by means of Distillation of Humours, which is cured by rubbing all the outside of his Gums with fine Chalk and strong Vinegar mixt together; or after they are so washed, to strew upon them the Powder of Pomegranate-Pills; or to cover the Temples of the Head, with a Plaster of Rosin and Mastick molten together. Now for the Cure of the Wolfs Teeth or Jaw-Teeth, tie up his Head to some Post or Rafter, and after you have opened his Mouth with a Cord, so wide as you can see any Part thereof, take an Instrument of Iron made like unto a Carpenter's Gouge, and with your left Hand, set the Edge of the Tool to the foot of the Wolfs Teeth on the outside of the Jaw, turning the Hollow of the said Tool downwards, knock it out as steadily as you can with your Mallet, and put some Salt finely brayed into the Holes. Now if the upper Jaw-Teeth do hang over the nether Jaw-Teeth, and so cut the inside of the Mouth; then take your Gouge and Mallet, and pare the Teeth shorter by little and little, turning the hollow Side of your Tool downwards towards the Teeth, by which means you shall not hurt the inside of his Cheeks; then with your File, file them without any Ruggedness, and then wash his Mouth with Vinegar and Salt.

Things good in general for the Crick in the Neck.

The Cure is to thrust a sharp hot Iron through the Flesh of the

the Neck in five several Places, three Inches distant from one another, and to have a care you touch not any Sinew, and rowl all of them with Horse hair, Flax or Hemp, for the space of fifteen Days, and anoint the Rowels with Hogs-grease, and the Neck will soon be restored; or to bathe the Horse's Neck with the Oil of Peter, or the Oil of Spike very hot, and then roll it up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping him very warm, without using any Burning, Wounding, or other Violence, he will do well: the Leaves or Roots of Down or Cotton-thistle given inwardly, or the Leaves or Roots of the Fullers-thistle, Eringo or Sea-holly, or Vinegar and Patch-grease melted together, and chafed in very hot against the Hair, and afterwards bathed in with Soap and Vinegar mixt together, is very good.

A certain Way to raise up the Crest that is fallen,

Is first to raise it up with your Hand, and to place it where it ought to stand; then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one Hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottom of it, so as it may stand upright; then on that side to which it falleth, with a hot Iron (somewhat broad on the Edge) drawing his Neck first at the bottom of the Crest, then in the midst of it, and lastly at the setting on of the Hair, and to draw it through the Skin and no deeper; then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the Skin with your Hand, and with two Plaisters of Shoemakers-Wax, laid one against the other at the Edge of the Wound, and with smooth Splints to stay the Skin, that it may shrink neither upward nor downward; then with a Pair of sharp Scissars clip away all the spare Skin which you had gathered with your Hand; then with a Needle and some red Silk, stitch the Skin together in divers places, and to keep the Skin from breaking, stitch the Edges of the Plaster also; then anoint the Sore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax melted together, and the Places which you drew with a hot Iron, with Piece-grease made warm, and thus do twice a day till it be whole; and have great care that your Splints shrink not. But the best Cure for this Infirmary, is to let him blood, and to keep him very well, for Strength and Fatness will ever raise the Crest.

Things good for a Horse that is Wrung, or hurt in the Withers.

If you find that by taking off the Saddle his Withers are swoln, clap on the Saddle again, and lay upon the Place some wet Litter ; then take up a thin Turf of Grass and Earth together, and put into the Fire, and let it there remain till it become red Hot ; then take it out, and moisten the grassy side very well with Whitewine-Vinegar ; then take off the wet Litter, and lay the Turf very Hot with the grassy side next to the Place, and so put on the Saddle again, and let it so remain all Night : and this presently helpeth any Swelling in the Withers, or any other part of the Back, as also any Swellings by Spur-Galls. But if the Skin be broken or ulcerated, then take sweet Butter, Bay-salt and the Powder of Frankincense, of each as much as will suffice ; boil all these together, and with a Clout fastened upon a Stick, dip it into it scalding hot, and scald it two or three times ; But if it be full of Corruption, then make incision on both sides beneath, that the matterative Stuff may the more easily void away downwards, and heal it up with your Powder of Lime and Honey ; or to anoint it well with the Oil of Turpentine, and it will either assuage or break the Swelling ; and if it be broke, squeeze forth the Corruption, and drop some of the said Oil into it Morning and Evening, and it will both cleanse and heal it. But if the Skin be only galled off, take Cream and Soot, well mixt together, and lay upon the Sore, and it will heal it presently, if the Wound be not very deep.

Things good in general for swelled Cods.

If it come of Rankness of Seed, or of Blood, then let him have a Mare, and let him cover her two or three days together ; and half an Hour after ride him into the Water above the Cods or Stones against the Stream, and he will do well. But if it come of other causes, take the Lees of Claret-Wine, or for want of that, the Dregs of strong Beer and Cummin-seed made into fine Powder, and a little Wheat and Bean-Flower ; boil them all together to an Ointment, and anoint his Cods warm therewith ; then draw forth his Yard, and wash that and his Sheath also with Whitewine-Vinegar, and three or four Hours after ride him into the Water above the Cods, and let him stand in the Water some short time, and to ride him against the Stream ; do this every day till the Swelling be assuaged. Or take the Roots of wild Cucumbers and white Salt, boil them in fair Water

to an Ointment, and anoint his Cods with it warm, and then apply this Ointment: Take Goats-grease, or Deers-Suet, the White of an Egg and Sallet-Oil; boil them gently, and anoint his Cods therewith: but this must be after he hath been ridden into the Water, and dry again.

A charge for Swelled Cods.

Take Bole-Armoniack beaten into fine Powder, Vinegar and the Whites of Eggs well beaten together, and anoint him therewith daily, till it be abated; and if it imposthume, where you find it to be soft, open it with a hot Iron, or with your Incision-Knife, if it break not of it self; and heal it up with your green Ointment, taught you as afore-said.

Another for any Bite or Bruise on his Cods, which cause them to Swell very much.

To remedy this Accident, wash and bathe *They are both very cooling Things.* them very well with warm Whey, Morning and Evening, for three or four days together, and anoint them after it with the Oil or Ointment of Populeon, till you find the Swelling abated, keeping his Cods warm with a Linen-Bay, made in the nature of a Purse, and drawn easily over them. If you find that the Swelling is abated, you may then apply the common Charge of Soap and Brandy to it very hot, which will knit the Strings of his Cods together again; but if you find that they are so torn, that you question his Cure, then the best way in my opinion is to geld him.

A most excellent Bath, which is not only good for swelled or bruised Cods, but for all manner of Bruises in any Part of the Body, from Head to Foot.

Take two Quarts of the strongest Ale you can get; then set it over the Fire in a large Skillet or Pipkin, and put to it two good Handfuls of the Rind of the Blackberry-bush, and let it Simper away till it come to a Quart; then strain it forth and keep it for your use.

How you are to use it.

Bathe the grieved Part, Night and Morning, with it very hot, and heat it very well in by the Fire; then dip a Linen Cloth in the same, and bind it up hot. When you have done,

peel off the Bark towards the Root, (when you gather it) for that is the best.

This is a very great Strengthenr of any weak Member, by either Bruise, Strain or Pain.

Things good in genera! for Bursting or Ruptures in Horses.

Though I hold it incurable, yet I shall give you those things that work much good, though no absolute Cure. These things are great Knitters, and are to be taken inwardly: Valerian, Rupture-wort, Cross-wort, Cranes bill, the Powder of the Roots of Chammack, the Leaves and Nuts of the Cypress, Elm-Leaves or the Bark thereof, Corn-Flag; any of these things given inwardly, with the outward means used, maketh the Cure the more effectual. The outward means is this; bring the Horse into a Place where there is a Beam overthwart, and strew it thick with Straw; then put on four strong Pasterns, with four Rings on his Feet, and fasten one end of a long Rope to one of those Rings, with the loose End of the Rope, and so draw all his Fore-feet together, and he will fall; then cast the Rope over the Beam, and hoist him up so, that he may lie flat on his Back with his Legs upwards without strugling; then bathe his Stones well with warm Water and Butter molten together, and the Stones being somewhat warm and well mollified, raise them up from the Body with both your Hands, being closed by the Fingers close together, and holding the Stones in your Hands in such manner, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horse, by stroaking it downwards continually with your two Thumbs, until you perceive that side of the Stone to be as small as the other; and so having returned the Gut to the right place, take a Lift of two Fingers broad, thoroughly anointed with fresh Butter, and tie his Stones both together with the same, so nigh the Body as may be, yet not overhard, but so as you may put your Finger between. That done, take the Horse quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, and keep him warm, and let him not be stirred for the space of three Weeks; but forget not the next day after you have placed his Gut in his true place, to unloosen the Lift, and to take it away, and as well at that time as every day once or twice after, to cast a Dish or two of cold Water up upon his Cods, and that will make him to shrink up his Stones, and thereby to restrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three Weeks end, to make the Cure so much the surer, take away the Stone on that side he is bursten,

so he shall hardly be bursten on that side again. And during the Cure let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his Drink be always warm.

A particular Receipt for the Rupture.

Take common Pitch, Sanguis Draconis, Powder of Bole-Armoniack, Mastick and Frankincense, of each an Ounce, and make a Plaster thereof, and lay it upon his Loins, and upon the Rupture, and let it remain there till it fall off of it self, and it will cure him; conditionally you give him some strengthening things inwardly, which you may find variety of, if you look for general Things good for Ruptures.

Particular Receipts for the Botch in the Groin of a Horse, which is a hard Swelling there, which will cause his Legs to swell, especially from the Cambrels or Hoofs upwards.

The cure is to ripen it with this Plaster: Take of Wheat-Flower, of Turpentine and of Honey, of each a like quantity, stirring it together to make a stiff Plaster, and with a Cloth lay it on the Sore, renewing it once every day till it break or wax soft; and then lance it, so as the matter may run downwards; then tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

Another for the Botch in the Groin, or any Imposthumation.

As soon as you can perceive the Swelling to appear, lay upon it a Plaster of Shoemakers-Wax spread upon Allum-Leather, and let it lie until the Sore grow soft; then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it self: when the Filth is come out, wash the Sore very well with strong Allum-Water; then tent it with the Ointment, called Ægyptiacum, till it be whole.

A Receipt to cure the Mellet, which is a dry Scab, that groweth upon the Heel of the Fore-feet.

Take of ordinary Honey half a Pint, black Soap a quarter of a Pound; mix them together, then put thereto four or five Spoonfuls of Vinegar and as much Allum, finely beaten and imburned, as a Hen's-Egg, and of Rye-Flower two Spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and having clipped away the Hair, apply it to it plaster-wise, so far as the Sorraine goeth, and let it so remain for five days; then take it away, and wash all the Leg, Foot and Sorraine, with

powdered Beef-Broth, and after rope up his Legs with Thumb-Bands of soft Hay wet in the same Liquor, and he will be sound. You are to remember that whensoever you are to dress the Sorrhance, you take off the dry Scab, or whatever crusty thing shall be upon the Place, and to wash it very clean.

A Receipt for the Hough-bonny.

To ripen it either with rotten Litter, or Hay boiled in old Urine, or else with a Plaster of Wine-Lees, and Wheat-Flower boiled together, to ripen the Swelling, and bring it to Putrefaction, or else to drive the Swelling away; but if it come to a Head, to lance it in the lowest part of the Softness, with a thin hot Iron to let out the Matter; then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers-Suet and Wax, of each alike molten together, laying a Plaster of the same Salve over it, to hold in the Tent, until it be perfectly well.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Fig in a Horse's-Foot.

Cut away the Hoof so as there may be a convenient space betwixt the Sole and the Hoof, to the end the Fig may the more easily be cured; then put to the Sorrhance a piece of a Sponge, which you are to bind close upon it, which will eat it off to the very Root, and heal it up with your green Ointment, in my first Part. Or to cut it away close with your Incision-Knife; or else to burn it off with a hot Iron, (which is the better way,) then for two days after lay tried Hogs-grease to it, to take away the Fire; take then the Tops of the most angriest Nettles you can find, pound them very small, and so lay them upon a Linen-Cloth, just the bigness of the Fig; then take the Powder of Verdegrease, and strew it upon the chopped Nettles, (which must be done before you lay it to the Sorrhance,) and so bind it upon the Sorrhance, renewing it every day once, till the Hoof have recovered the Sore.

To cure Blisters.

Fret them in the Sun till they bleed; then take the Roots of Ivy, and stamping them in a Mortar, mix them with as much Tar, Brimstone and Allum, till they come to a Salve, and dress it therewith, and it will heal it.

Things good in general for Knots in the Joints, Hardness, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

The Powder of Diapente beaten with Linseed-Oil, or Sallet-Oil, to an Ointment, and applied once a day to the Grief

Grief is good for the Cramp or Inflammation ; or Wine, Oil and Tar mingled together as it is boiled, is good ; or Mustard, Hog's-grease and Bay-Salt mixed together with Vinegar, and applied, is good ; or take a Plaster of Figs and the Roots of Fern and Rochet mingled with Hogs-grease and Wine-Vinegar ; or take dry Pitch, Pitch of Greece, of each one part, of Galbanum and Lime, of each four parts, of Bitumen two parts, of Wax three parts, melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the Grief.

A particular Receipt to cure a Knot that is moving in the Place where it grows.

If you find in any part of your Horse's Body a Knot or Kernel that feels soft, and slips up and down in the Skin when you handle it ; take your Incision-Knife, and slit the Skin right over against it, so wide, that you may pinch the Knot out to cut it off : When you have so done, to stanch the bleeding of it, sear the Inside of it with a hot Iron, and stop the Wound, either with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack or Hare's-Wool. The next day unstop it, and wash the Wound clean with a Linen-Rag tied upon a Stick, dipped in Verjuice or Whitewine-Vinegar ; then dry up the Moisture that you shall find therein with a Linen-Rag also, and heal it up with your green Ointment in the first Part, or what other healing Salve you think best fit for the purpose.

Observation.

In all Wounds that you have in Cure, be sure you cleanse and wash them very well, before you apply any healing Medicine to them.

Another to take away the Knots under the Caul, occasioned by Heats and Colds.

Brandy and Soap dissolved together over the Fire, and chafed in very well hot with your Hand, and heated in afterwards by holding a hot Fireshovel before it, will either sink or break them. Or Butter or Hogs-grease used after the same manner is very good.

Observations upon dressing of them.

Before you anoint them sear away the Hair with a Candle, and in a Fortnight's time, or little more, they will remove, conditionally you give him some inward Medicine for a Cold.

How

How to cure Wounds made with the Shot of Gun-powder.

Search first if the Bullet be in the Wound, if it be, take it out with an Instrument made for that purpose, but if you cannot get it out, you must have patience, for Nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any Impediment; for Lead is of that nature that it will not canker: then to kill the Fire, drop in some Varnish into it with a Feather to the Bottom, and stop up the Mouth of the Wound with some soft Flax dipt likewise in the same; then charge all the swollen place with this Charge: Take of Bole-Armoniack a Quartern, of Linseed beaten into powder half a Pound, of Bean-Flower as much, and three or four Eggs, shells and all, and of Turpentine a Quartern, and of Vinegar a Quart; mingle them well together upon the Fire, and being somewhat warm, charge all the sore Place with part thereof, and clap a Cloth upon it to keep the Wound warm, continuing so doing every day for four or five days together; then at the fifth day's end leave anointing it, and tent it to the Bottom with a Tent dipt in Hogs-grease and Turpentine melted together, renewing, once or twice every day till the Fire is killed, which you shall perceive by the Mattering of the Wound, and by falling of the Swelling; for so long as the Fire hath the upper Hand, no thick Matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish Water, neither will the Swelling assuage; and then of Turpentine, washed in nine several Waters, half a Pound, and three Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this Ointment, renewing it every day once till the Wound be whole. But if the Shot be got quite through the Wound, then take a few Weavers Linen Thrums made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them through the Wound, running them up and down in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the Wound on either side upon the swollen places with the Charge aforesaid, until you perceive that the Fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaster upon one of the Holes, and tent the other with a Tent in the Salve made of wash'd Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is before said. Some Farriers use to kill the Fire with the Oil of Cream, and to heal up the Wound with Turpentine, Wax and Hogs-grease melted together; or to kill it with Snow-water, and charge the swelled place with Cream and Barm beaten together, and to heal up the Wound by dipping a Tent in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, and Saffron, well beaten together.

Bones being broken and out of Joint to cure.

If your Horse hath any broken Bone, then take a double strong Canvas, which ought to be as broad as the Horse's Fore-Shoulders to his Flanks; then you shall have another double Canvas, which shall come from between his Fore-booths up to the top of the Wither, whereat meeting with the rest of the Canvas, and having very strong Loops and Ropes fastned to them, sling him up upon some Beam, no higher then that his Feet may touch the Ground; and if it be a Fore-leg that is broken, raise him up then higher before than behind; and if a hinder, then a little higher behind than before, so that he may rest most upon the Members that are soundest. When he is thus slung, put the Bone into the right Place, and wrap it close up with unwashed Wool, newly pulled from the Sheeps-Back, bound fast to the Leg with a smooth Linen-Roller, soaked before in Oil and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roller lie as smooth and as plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wool dipt in Oil and Vinegar, and then splint it with three broad, smooth and strong Splints, binding them fast at both ends with a Thong, and be sure to keep out his Leg strait for the space of forty days, and loosen not the Bones above thrice in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so require to be new drest and bound again; and fail not to pour on every day through the Splints, Sallet-Oil and Vinegar mingled together: And if at the forty days end you find that the broken Places be soddered together with some hard Knob or Gristle, then loose the bands, and ease the Canvas, so as the Horse may tread more firmly upon his Fore-Foot, which if he doth, loose him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, using from henceforth to anoint the Place with soft Grease; or to take of Liquid Pitch one Pound, of Wax two Ounces, of the purest and finest Part of Frankincense one Ounce, of Amoniacum four Ounces, of dry Rozin and Galbanum, of each one Ounce, of Vinegar two Pints; boil first the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum dissolved first in Vinegar, and after that the aforesaid Drugs, and being united in one, strain it, and make it into a Plaster, and use it according to your occasion; or to take a Quart of old Sallet-Oil, and put to it of Hogs-grease and of Spickma,
Nitro

If the Bone do fall in its true Place again, it will give on a sudden a great Crack.

See my first Part for conglutinating things good in general, or Strengtheners of Parts out of Joint.

Nitre, of each one Pound, boiled together till they begin to bubble above; then take it from the Fire, and when you use it, let it be chafed in very hot, and then the former Plaster folded about it, which is very comfortable for a broken Bone.

A Bath very good for broken Bones.

To a Gallon of standing Lye put these things here under-written, *viz.* Knot-grass two Handfuls, Plantain two Handfuls, Comfrey a Handful, Wormwood a Handful; boil these very well in the Lye, and while it is warm, bathe the afflicted Member therewith: and give him also at the same time inwardly, the Buds of Elder (gathered in *March*) boiled in running Water for several Mornings together, in half a Hornful of Sallet-Oil and Vinegar, and it will much avail to the knitting of the Bones.

A Receipt to cure a Stifled Horse.

After you have tied down his Head to the Manger, then take a Cord and fasten it to the Pastern of the stifled Leg, and draw his Leg forwards, and so the Bone will come right, by helping it up with your Hand; which being in, your care must be to keep it in with your Hand, and then tie the other end of the Cord to the Rack, so as he may not put back his Leg, to dislocate the Bone for an Hour or two after, till it be settled and dressed; wherefore let his Keeper stand by him all the while, lest he should lie down, or be unruly. Take Pitch, which you must have molten in a Pot in a readiness, and with a Clout upon a Stick anoint his Stifling three or four Inches broad at least, and ten Inches long and presently before the Pitch can cool, have a strong Piece of new Canvas cut fit for that Purpose, which being made very warm by a Fire, clap it upon the Place so neatly that the Bone cannot go forth again. This Plaster must not lie towards the Flank and Foot long-ways, but cross-ways upon the Joint, as it were about the Thigh, otherwise it cannot hold in the Bone. Having thus done, anoint the Plaster on the out-side all over with the said molten Pitch, and whilst it is warm, clap Flox of the Horses Colour all over the out-side of the Canvas, and let the Plaster remain on till it fall away of it self; and after that you may apply such good Unguents as you may think most expedient for the Malady: But if the Bone be not out, then put in a *French Rowel*, a little beneath the stifling Place, and let it remain in fifteen days, turning it once every day, and at fifteen days end take it forth,
and

and heal up the Orifice with your green Ointment in my first Part.

Another which is very good.

The only way for the Cure of this Imperfection, is the common way that Farriers generally use, *viz.* To swim him in some deep River or Pond, till he sweat about the Ears, which will put the Bone in its right place again: When you think that he hath swam enough, take him out of the Water, and throw an old Blanket over him to prevent catching of Cold, and lead him Home gently; when you have him in the Stable, put a Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Sixpence between his Toe and his Shoe on the contrary Foot behind, and when you find him thoroughly dry, anoint him upon the grieved Part with Piece-grease, or Oil of Turpentine and strong Beer, of equal Parts alike, well shaken and mix'd together in a Glass-Viol; chafe it in very well with your Hand, one holding at the same time before it a hot Bar of Iron, or Fire-shovel, to make it sink in the better. Or for want of them, you may apply unto it Brandy, and common Soap, and strong Beer, mix'd together, and used as you did the Turpentine. These are very sharp Medicines, (especially the Turpentine) which will cause the Place to swell and heave up; but fear them not, for they will work a speedy Cure.

To cure the String-halt.

Take up the Vein in the Thigh, and then anoint all the Leg and the Thigh from the Body down to the very Foot, a long time together, holding a red hot Fire-shovel to the Place, and let him be anointed with this Ointment.

Take of the Oil Petroleum, of the Oil of Worms, of the Oil of Nerval, of Patch or Piece-grease, of the Oil of Spike, of each one Ounce, of London-Treacle two Ounces, and of Hogs-grease one Pound; melt all these upon the Fire: then take it off, and keep it stirring till it be thoroughly cold, and with this anoint the visited Member every day once, and then wisp him with a soft Thumb-band of Hay from the Pastern to the top of the Hoof; and thus do for ten days together, rubbing and chafing in the Ointment very well a long time together, holding a hot Fire-shovel near it, the better to cause it to sink into the Sinews, Nerves and Joints. But after you have done anointing him, keep him warm and well littered, and let the Thumb-bands be daily made lesser and lesser, and shorter

Patch or Piece-grease is the Tallow that is gotten from Shoemakers shreds.

shorter and shorter, till you perceive him to use both Legs alike, and your Horse to be recovered; but you must not ride him that he may sweat much, in a Month after: and so soon as warm Weather cometh, turn him to grass in some dry Pasture, where is Water, and take him up again about *Bartholomew-Tide*, or before the Cold cometh; and whilst he doth remain in the Stable keep him warm, and so he will be free of his String-halt, and be a sound Horse again. To anoint him also with *Acopium* is very good. With this Receipt *De Grey* says he hath cured sundry Horses of this Malady.

How to make your Unguentum Theriacum, which is good for any Ach in the Joints, Grievs in the Hip, Stifling-Place, Legs, Shoulders, Pastern, or any other part of the Legs, a Back Sinew-sprain only excepted.

- Take Nerval, of Oil of Pamphylion, and of black Soap, of each two Ounces, and of tried Hogs-grease half a Pound; melt them all upon a gentle Fire: and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two Penniworth; then take it from the Fire, and keep it stirring till it be cold, then will it be of a dun Colour; keep it in a Gally-Pot for your use, and when you use it, anoint the Place griev'd with the same, rubbing and chafing it in very well, and heating it well in with a hot Fire-shovel.

Hot Simples in General.

Agarick, Aloes, Allum, Anniseeds, Aristolochia, Affasce-tida, Afonteo, Asarabacca, Arsmart, Archangle, Angelica, Alexander, Alehoof, Balm, Garden-Bazil, Bayberries, wild running Betony smelling like Marjoram; Burrage is hot and cold, so is Brankursin, Briony, Broom, Butter-bur, Burdock, Brimstone, Celandine, Chervil, Garden-Clary, Clowns Wound-wort, Calamus, Coloquintida, Garden-cummin, Chamock, Cinnamon, Cloves, China, Darnel, Elecampane, Fennel, Gentian, Garlick, Germander, stinking Gladwin, Golden-Rod, Gromel, *English* Galangale, Ginger; Glasswort is so hot that it hath a costive burning Quality, Galls, Grains of Paradise, Galbanum, Hempseed, Garden-Hysop, Honey, St. John's-wort, Juniper-berries, Ivy, Iack-by-the-Hedge, Iris, Knee-holm, Lavender, Lavender-cotten, Ladies-smocks, Garden-Lilly, Lovage, Leeks, Mallows and Marsh-mallows, wild Marjoram, sweet Marjoram, Marigolds, Master wort, Melilote, *French* and Dogs-Mercury, Spear-

Spearmint, Mistletoe, Mother-wort, Mouse-ear, Mug-wort, Mustard-seed, Neefing-roots, Nutmeg, One-blade, Pepper, Rag-wort, Rest-harrow, the wild Rochet, Rosemary, Garden-Rue, Saffron, Sage, Sanicle, Saracens Confound, Savin, common Saxifrage, Burnet-Saxifrage, Scabious, *English* Scurvey-Grass, Self-heal Smallage, Soap-wort, Southernwood, Sea-Starwort, Staves-acre, Garden-Tansy, Thyme, Tutstan, Turmerick, Valerian, Vervain, Wold, Weld or Dyers-weed, Fenugreek, Cochineal, *London-Treacle*.

Cooling Simples in General.

Clove-Gillyflowers, Groundsel is an universal Medicine for any thing coming of Heat whatsoever, Hawk-weed, Housleek, Knot-grass, Kidney-wort, Lettice, Water-Lilly, Liquorice, common Liver-wort, Medlars, Money-wort, Tree-Moss, Ground-Moss, the unripe Fruit of Mulberries, Mace, common Night-shade may be used either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous as the others are, Navel-wort, Orpin used outwardly, Water-Plantain, Land-Plantain, Pomegranate, Queen of the Meadows, Shepherds-Purse, Common Sorrel, Wood-Sorrel, Sow-thistles, Straw-berry-leaves, Suncory, Stone-crop, Star-wort, Spinage, wild Tansy, all the parts of the Black-Thorn or Sloe-bush, Meadow-trefoil, Honeysuckles, both the Vervains, Vine-leaves, Violets, Vipers-Bugloss, Vinegar, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed, and Bark of the Willow-Tree, Yarrow, Antimonium, Alkanet, Garden-Arach, Barberry-bush, Barley, Bilberries, Blew-bottle, Bucks-horn, Plantain, Bole-Armoniack, Comfrey, Cranesbill, Dandelion, all the kinds of Docks are generally cold, Ducks Meat applied outwardly is a great cooler of hot Inflammations, Fumitory.

Things good in general for a Prick or Stub in the Sole of a Horse's Foot.

To pull off his Shoe, and pare his Foot so deep that you discover the Hole, making the Mouth of it about the breadth of a Twopence; then wash it well with Chamberlye and Salt, or green Copperas and Allum boiled together in Water, then tack on his Shoe again, and stop the Hole with Turpentine, Hogs-grease and Verdegrease melted together, and lay Flax or Tow upon it, and put over that Cows-dung, and cover it with Leather, and splint it with

The Nail or Stub must be first drawn out, and the Corruption let forth and made very clean, before you dress it.

two cross Splints, and renew it once in two or three days, and keep him out of wet during the Cure. Or tent it with Tallow and Turpentine melted together, and anoint his Coffin all over with Bole-Armoniack and Vinegar mingled together, and take red Nettles stamped with Vinegar, and black or common Soap, and stop the Wound therewith; or to wash the Wound with Vinegar and Salt. Or if it be in the Summer, take the tender Buds or Leaves of Elder stamped; if in the Winter, the inner Rind of it, and melt some hot Tallow with it into the Wound. Or take Turpentine, brown Sugarcandy powdered, and white Ginger powdered, and melt them all in an Iron Spoon, and pour it hot into the Wound; and put Hurds or Flax upon it, or Roch-Allum burned and made into powder, and fill the Hole therewith, and lay Hurds thereupon. Or Oil of Turpentine poured into it is excellent good; for it will not only search it to the bottom, but take out the Venom and heal it up. Or after you have cleansed it with Salt and Vinegar, take Salt made into fine Powder, and four times so much Turpentine, and boil them well together, and pour it into the Wound scalding hot, and put into it the Powder of Brimstone dissolved in Whitewine, and lay Hurds upon it. Or take Oil-de-bay four Ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two Ounces, made all into fine Powder, and set them on the Fire, keeping them stirring till they become an Ointment, and with it dress him as before is taught. But if the Foot be bruised, sear a live Spider upon it with a hot Iron.

A Particular Receipt for a Stub in the Foot, or for any Over-reach of the Toe of the Hinder-foot upon the Heel of the Fore-foot, or for any accidental Cut with a Stone.

After you have well searched and made clean the Wound with Water and Salt, or Verjnice, Beer and Butter; Take these things here under-written, well beaten and bruised together till they come to a Salve, and spread them upon a Linen-Rag, or brown Paper, with a Rag bound and tied fast over it to prevent the coming of it off; let it lie on twenty four Hours before you take it off: Continue so dressing and washing it every twenty four Hours till you find amendment; but if you find it amend very fast, you need not dress it in two or three days. The things you are to apply to it are these, viz. common Soap about the bigness of a good big Wash-ball, a large Onion peeled and a Spoonful
† of

of long Pepper beaten to Powder, and mashed and bruised together with the rest.

Of Clifts and Cracks in the Heels cross and overthwart which are a kind of Scratches, and are cured with the same Medicines as they are.

Falling-evil cured, which is no other than the Falling-Sickness in Man.

Take a pretty quantity of Blood from the Neck, and four or five days after let him Blood in the Temple-Veins, and on his Eye-Veins, then anoint his Body all over with a comfortable Friction; then bathe his Head and Ears with Oil de bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the same, put some of it into his Ears; then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvas, quilted with Wool, to keep his Head warm; then give him a Purgation or Scouring. But if the Disease continue still; then pierce the Skin of his Forehead with a hot Iron in divers Places, and after anoint it with sweet Butter, for thereby you shall draw out the gross Humours which do oppress the Brain; and keep him warm in the Stable, during the time of his Physicking.

General things to be given inwardly for it.

The Seed of the Bolbonack, or the Satten Flower, the Leaves and Flowers of Flea-wort, stinking Ground-pine taken with Oxymel or honeyed Water is good, given Evening and Morning for some time together, Betony, the Flower of Violets, the Roots of Piony, Master-wort, Gerard, Anniseeds, the Leaves and Bark of the Mastick tree; the Gum of it hath the same Vertue given in Ale; the distilled Water of red Cherries.

A Particular Receipt.

A Spoonful of the Powder of dried Mistletoe that grows upon the Apple-tree, (which is shaped much like Ivy-Leaves,) given him in half a Pint of Canary, and kept warm, is very good.

A Hip-shot Horse.

There is so uncertain a Cure to be made of it, that I durst say nothing of the Cure.

The Cure for the Harle-bone out of Joint.

Take Oil of Turpentine and strong Beer, of equal part
F f alike

alike, and shake them very well in a Glass-Viol, and anoint the grieved Part therewith, as also the brawn and inside of his Thigh down to his Gambrels, and heat it in very well by holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, while you are doing it. This will make him sound in a few days conditionally you continue using it, working the Bone gently in with your Hand, to bring it to its right Place again. This is a very sharp and biting Medicine, which will make his Skin puff and heave up, but you need not fear it, for there is no danger in it. When you have anointed him tie him up to the Rack-staves for about half an Hour, to prevent his biting of it with his Teeth, which may prejudice him; while he stands in the Stable, put a Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Sixpence between his Toe and his Shoe; but when you ride him you are to take it out, and when you come home to put it in again. Or after you have anointed him once with Oil of Turpentine and Beer, and put in his Bone into its right place again; you may clap a Charge upon it made of *Oxycroceum* and *Paracelsus*, (which you may buy at the Apothecaries) which will strengthen it so very much, that it will keep it from slipping out of its place again. But the best, most speedy and certain Cure is, (though it doth a little disfigure your Horse) to pin him, which every Smith either does or ought to know.

Quick-Scab to cure.

To let him blood, then clip away the Hair where the Sorrhance is, and take off the Scurf and Scabs with an old Curry-Comb, or other such like thing; then with fair cold Water wash it well, and lay a Linen-Cloth well wet in it to the Place, and do nothing to it in ten days after; and if you find it doth not heal, dress it as before: and so a third time and a fourth till it be thoroughly healed. Or to take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each alike, and boil them in fair Water as much as will suffice, till they be soft; and with the Herb and Decoction bathe and wash the Sorrhance two or three days together warm: Then take of common Honey a Pint, Copperas, Allum, of Glass and Verdegrease, all made into fine Powder, of each four Ounces, Turpentine and Quick Silver mortify'd, of each two Ounces; boil all these together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and with it dress him every day till it be whole.

Rot in a Horse cured.

Let him first bleed under the Tail, then take of Mares Milk two Quarts, or the Milk of a red Cow; then take a Lump of Acrement, then take a young Horse about the Age of four Years, and of colour black if it may be, if not of some other colour, run and chafe him about till he sweat much; then with a Spoon or some other Instrument rake off the Sweat from off his Head, Neck, Breast, Back, Sides, Ribs, Buttocks, Legs, and in each Part or Member where you can get off any, and so put your Acrement and your Sweat into the Milk, mixing them well together, and by equal Portions give it him three Mornings together, till he hath taken it all; and let him drink no Drink after it in six or seven Hours; and immediately after his Drink, lead him forth into some Pasture where other Horses be, to sneeze, stale or dung, to empty himself, which is very wholesome for him so to do before he either eats or drinks; then set him up warm and well littered, and if the Season do serve, give him of the green Blades of Rye; if not, give him Barley steeped in Milk three days, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these Drinks, if you feel him cold in the Pastern Joints, or that he trippeth or stumbleth as you lead him in your Hand, do no more to him, for he is past Cure. Otherwise, for nine days together after, Morning and Evening, give him white Water only, unless now and then a sweet Mash; and some times give him Milk with his white Water: if he be not above nine Years old, this will prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. Mr. Grey declares, that this Receipt a Knight taught him, who recovered sundry Horses with it.

Swaying in the Back.

Take of the Fat of the Fruit of the Pine-tree two Ounces, of Olibanum three Ounces, of Rosin four Ounces, of Pitch four Ounces, of Bole-Armoniack an Ounce, and of Sanguis-Draconis half an Ounce; incorporate all these well together, and lay it plaster wise all over the Reins of his Back, and let it remain till it fall off of it self.

Another most excellent Receipt for swaying Weaakness in the Back.

These Infirmities are seldom or never perfectly cured; but the best help for them, that I know of, is, to give him in-

wardly some strengthning things, as common Turpentine made up into Balls, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and Powder of the dried Leaves of Clary, and to apply outwardly at the same time all over the Reins of his Back these strengthning Charges, *viz.* *Oxycroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together; or Cole-worts boiled in Sallet-Oil, made thick like a Poultrice, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack and Bean-Flower. If you desire to see more variety of Charges, (though these are very good) look into the first Part, and there you may find plenty, where you may pick and chuse, what you best fancy.

Foundering in the Body to cure.

To cure this Distemper, is first to rake his Fundament, and to give him a Glister, which you have variety of in my first Part; then take Sack or Ale a Quart, Cinnamon half an Ounce, Liquorice and Anniseeds, of each two Spoonfuls beaten into fine Powder, with five or six Spoonfuls of Honey, put them all into the Ale together, and warm them till the Honey is molten, and give it him lukewarm to drink, and ride him gently after for the space of an Hour, and let him fast two Hours more, and keep him warm clothed and littered, and let his Hay be sprinkled with Water, and his Oats very clean sifted from dust; and give it him by little and little, and let his drink be warm Mashies of Malt and Water, and when he hath recovered strength let him blood in the Neck-Vein, and once a day perfume his Head with Frankincense. There is no Drink nor Diet that is comfortable, but is good for this Disease.





*The Way of Gathering, Drying,
and Preserving of Simples, and
their Juices, viz. Roots, Barks,
Leaves, Herbs, Flowers, Seeds,
&c.*



C H A P. I. *Of Roots.*

1.  **H**USE those that are sound, and not rotten nor worm eaten, and let them be such as have their proper taste, smell and colour.

2. Those that are dry, hard and sound, are the best and fittest for your Use.

3. If they prove soft, dry them in the Sun, or else string them and hang them up by the Fire; but the dry and hard ones you may lay any where.

4. The small Roots will keep a Year or two very well, but the larger sort of them will keep four or five, but they are best in their prime the first Year.

5. The best time to gather them is in the Summer, before they run out to Seed, for then they grow hard and sticky, and loose their Vertues.

6. Those Roots that you may have all the Year, as Plan.

tain, Fennel or Parsley, &c. trouble not your self to dry them.

Chap. II. Of Barks.

1. Barks of such Trees as are frequently with you, as the Oak, Elm or Ash, &c. gather them but when you have present use for them: As for the Out-landish, you may have ready dried at the Druggist.

2. The Bark of Roots, as Fennel, Parsley, &c. is only that which remains when the Pith is out, which is called a Bark, though very improperly.

Chap. III. Of Leaves of Herbs, or Trees.

1. Of Leaves, gather such as are fresh and green, and full of Juice, and in the picking of them be careful to throw away the dead and decayed Leaves, which are not fit for any physical use.

2. Those that grow in the Place they most delight in, are best for use, as Betony delights to grow in the Shadow, and therefore 'tis better than that which grows in the Sun, because it is its proper Place.

3. Those Herbs that run up to Seed, and in Flowers, their Leaves are not so good then as before they were spindled (some few only excepted) and therefore I advise you, if through Ignorance you know them not, or through Negligence forget them, rather chuse to take the Tops than the Leaves.

4. The Sun is better to dry them in, than the Shadow.

5. The best way to keep them after they be dried, is near the Fire, in a Bag made of brown or white Paper.

6. 'Tis not certainly known how long Herbs will keep, but 'tis concluded by most they will keep a Year very well.

7. You may know when they are decayed by the loss of Smell, Colour, or both.

8. Those that grow upon dry Grounds, do usually keep longer than those that grow upon moist; and those that are very full of Juice, will not continue their Virtue so long as those that are drier, because more subject to Putrefaction and Corruption.

9. Those that you do thoroughly dry will keep better than those that are ill dried.

Chap. IV. Of Flowers.

1. The Flower, which is the Glory and Beauty of the Plant,

Plant, is of excellent use in Physick, if it be gathered when it is in its prime.

2. When you intend to gather them let them be thoroughly dry, and the Sun shining; for if you gather them when they be wet they will not keep.

3. When you have gathered them, dry them thoroughly upon a Table, or in the Window where the Sun comes, before you put them up in Papers, to hang near the Fire.

4. If you find their Smell and Colour continue, you may be assured their Virtues are not lost.

Chap. V. Of Seeds.

1. The Seed contains the vital faculty and spirit of the whole Plant, and therefore hath in it equal Virtues with it.

2. Gather them not till they be full ripe, and from the places where they delight most to grow in, and let them be thoroughly dried in the Sun before you lay them up.

3. These having the spirit of the whole Plant in them, are not so subject to corrupt as the others are, and therefore you need not keep them so near the Fire as you do the Herbs.

4. They will continue good and sound four or five Years; but they are best in their prime the first and second.

Chap. VI. Of Juices.

1. The Juices that you are to press out of Herbs, Plants, Tops and Flowers must be done when they are young and tender.

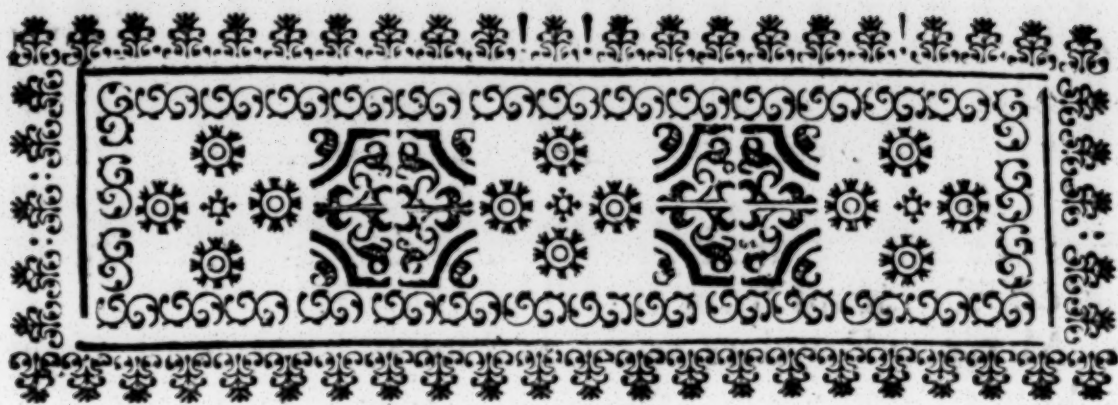
2. If you intend to preserve them some time, you must gather them when they be thoroughly dry.

3. When you use them they must be bruised in a Stone-Mortar with a wooden Pestle, and put afterwards into a Canvas-bag, and the Juice pressed out in a Press, and when you have so done set it over the Fire in an Earthen-Pipkin or Skillet, and clarify it by taking off the scum that shall arise. You may know when it is well clarified, for then the Scum will not appear on the top.

This being clarified according to your mind, you may preserve it for your use (in the Winter when you can get no Herbs) these two ways, first, by putting it into a Glass when it is cold, and pouring so much Sallet-Oil over it as will cover it, let the Oil lie about the thickness of two Fingers above the Juice: This Oil being of a light Body will always get uppermost, and keep out the Air from entering, and so preserve it the better from Putrefaction. When you

have occasion to use it, pour it out into a Porringer or any other convenient Vessel, so much as you think you shall use and take off the Oil that comes out with it, with a little Cotton or with a Spoon, and put the remainder back again in the Glass (if you leave any) and it will quickly sink under the Oil again, &c. The second way of preserving it is after you have clarified it, to boil it over again, (being first cold) to the thickness of Honey, and this way it is used for the Diseases of the Mouth.





The Way of Making and Keeping
all Necessary Compounds, viz. Electuaries,
Pills, Waters, Ointments, Plasters, Charges,
Poultices, Oils, Syrups by Infusion and by
Decoction, or by Juice.



CHAP. I. *Of Electuaries.*

I.  IF you desire to preserve your Horse's Health abroad as well as at home, then make up some Electuary with some Herbs, Roots and Flowers, suitable to the Diseases you think he may be most afflicted with, whether they be Coughs, Colds, or any other Illness, and put it into a Gally-Pot.

2. If you intend any Physick for present use, let the Herbs, Roots, Seeds and Flowers be always in a readiness, ready dried in your House, that so you may not want them when you come to use them.

3. They will keep best whole, for being beaten and made into Powder, they will be soon penetrated by the Air, which will cause them to lose much of their Strength and Virtue.

4. If you find them not dry enough to beat, make them fit for the Pestle by drying them by the Fire.

5. When

5. When you use them, beat them as small as you can, and then sift them through an indifferent fine Sieve.

6. To one Ounce of this Powder you may add three Ounces of clarified Honey, and make up what quantity of Electuary you please, according to the occasion and use you have for it.

7. Your Honey must be clarified by the Fire, by scumming off the Scum from it that shall arise.

8. Mix the Powders and this Honey very well together in a Mortar, before you put them up for use.

9. The usual Dose of cordial Electuary is from one Ounce to two Ounces, dissolved in a Pint or Quart of strong warm Ale or Beer, and given him in the Morning or Evening fasting, and to fast two or three Hours after it.

Chap. II. Of Pills or Balls.

1. The invention of these Pills or Balls at first were for the Purging of the Head, as I have told you in some of my physical Observations. And as such Infirmities as lie nearest the Passages were best removed by Decoctions, because they pass to the grieved Part soonest, so in the Infirmities of the Head or other parts of the Body more remote from the Stomach and Bowels, they are best removed by Pills or Balls, which are longest in Digestion, and therefore the better able to call the offended Humour to them.

2. The way of making them is very familiar, for with the help of a Pestle and Mortar, and a little of your care, you may make any Powder into Balls; you have Directions at large for the making of them after the best Receipt for the Glanders.

3. The manner of giving them is two-fold, viz. either upon the end of a Stick, with his Tongue first drawn forth on one side of his Mouth, or in a Horn-full of strong Beer.

Chap. III. Of Distilled Waters.

1. Waters are distilled out of Roots, Herbs, Flowers and Fruits, and are best when they are distilled in their greatest strength and vigour.

2. Distilled Waters are the weakest of all artificial Medicines, and made more weak by distilling them in a Pewter Still, being good for very little unless mix'd with other Medicines. But the strongest way of distilling them is in Sand.

3. When they are distilled put them up into a Glass, and bind

bind on the Top of it a Paper prick'd full of Holes, that so the fiery Vapours may exhale, for else they will cause them to mother, which will corrupt the Waters. Then cover them close, and keep them for your use.

4. Stopping them with Cork is the common Way though not the best, because that Way will make them grow Musty, and not much better is Paper, if it be suffered to touch the Water. But the best and most approved Way to keep them is to stop them with a Bladder, being first wet in Water, and bound over the Glasse.

5. Those Waters that are distilled in a Pewter Still will not keep above a Year good, when those that are distilled in Sand will keep twice as long.

Chap. IV. Of Ointments.

There be many Ways of making Ointments, but the most familiar and easy is the common way, *viz.* to bruise those Roots, Herbs or Flowers you intend to make it of, and to two Handfuls of the bruised Herbs, add a Pound of tried Hogs-Seam, mash and beat them very well together in a Mortar, then put them into an Earthen-Pot (covering it with Paper to keep it from filth) and set them in the Sun, or in some other warm place for four or five days that it may melt, then take it forth and boil it gently over the Fire for some little time, then strain it out while it is hot, pressing the Herbs very hard to get what Grease you can out of them; then add to it as many more fresh Herbs bruised and set in the Sun, and ordered in every thing as before; but if you think them not yet strong enough, you may repeat the Herbs over again the third or fourth time, for the fuller of Juice the Ointment is, the stronger will it be. The last time you boil it, boil the Herbs and all with it, and when they be crisp and the Juice consumed, (which you may know by the leaving of its bubbling while it is on the Fire) 'tis enough, then strain it out very hard in a Press, and to every Pound of Ointment add two Ounces of the best common Turpentine you can get, and as much Bees-Wax, which will take away the offensiveness of the Grease, which is very prejudicial to Wounds, as well as Oil.

Chap. V. Of Plasters.

1. The Emplasters of the *Greeks* consisted of very many Ingredients, *viz.* Gums, Rosin, Wax, Herbs, Seeds, Roots, Juices, Liquorice, Minerals, Metals, Stones and Excrements of Creatures,

Creatures, &c. which said Metals they reduced to powder, and mixed them with their fatty substances, which the rest of the Plaster consisted of, while it was hot, keeping it continually stirring up and down to prevent the sinking of them, that they may the better stiffen and incorporate together; which after it was somewhat cold and hard, they made them up into Rolls, and when they needed it they melted them again by the Fire.

2. The *Arabians* made up their Medicines with Meal, Oil and Fat, which needed not so much boiling as the other did. But seeing these are so difficult to make, and when made, so rarely used in Farring, I shall advise you to let them alone, and buy them rather of the Druggist, when you have occasion to use them, than put your self to the needless trouble of making them.

Chap. VI. Of Charges.

1. The use of these are for Strains, Sprains, or any other Weakness in the Legs, Shoulders, or Back, and are made of several things, *viz.* Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, *Oxycroceum*, *Paracelsus*, and Hernium, Galbanum, Frankincense, Turpentine, Meal, Bole-Armoniack, &c. The manner of using them is to melt what things you have occasion for in an Earthen-Pipkin, and lay it on with a Lath all over the grieved Part; then clap upon it some Flax, Hurds, Tow, Wool, Deers Hair, or such like things, then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flax, Tow or Wool the second time, scalding hot; then daub it over again the third time as you did before, pressing it all the time close with your Hands to the grieved Part to make it bind on the faster, and let it remain there till it fall off of it self. Clip away the Hair before you apply it.

2. If his Charge be on his Legs, be careful that he comes not into the Water, for that will soon fetch it off: but to prevent this, chuse rather to keep him in the Stable, and water him there till he be somewhat amended.

Chap. VII. Of Poultices.

1. Poultices are vulgarly called Cataplasmes, which is as much as to say a thick Poultrice made of Meal and Herbs, which is a very excellent Medicine to ripen and break Sores, ease Pains, cool hot Inflammations, dissolve Hardness, ease the Spleen, disperse Swellings, and digest Humours.

2. When you are to make them, you are to take those
Roots

Roots and Herbs as are most proper and suitable to the Disease and Member afflicted; chopping them first small, then put them into clear running Water, and boil them to a Jelly, then add to them a little Meal of Lupins, (or for want of that Barley-Meal) with a little Sallet-Oil, or rough Sweet-Suet, which I account better: Then spread it upon a Linen Cloth, and apply it to the grieved Part, bound fast with a Tape or Pack-thread that it fall not off.

Chap. VIII. Of Oils.

1. Sallet-Oil is made from the Expression of Olives, which is so temperate, that it exceeds in no one quality.

2. Of Oils, some are Simple, and some are Compound.

3. Simple Oils are such as are made by Expression of Fruits or Seeds; as Linseed-Oil, Rape-seed Oil, and Oil of sweet or bitter Almonds.

4. Compound Oils are made of the Oil of Olives, and other Simples; as Leaves, Flowers, Roots, &c.

5. The manner of making up those Herbs or Flowers you intend to make your Oil of, is, they must be first bruised, and then put into an earthen Pot; and to two or three handfuls of them so bruised, put a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and then cover up your Pot close with a Paper (to keep it from Filth) then set it in the Sun for about a Fortnight; then warm it on the Fire, and press out the Oil from the Herbs very hard, and add so many more Herbs to the Oil, and use them in every thing as before. The oftner you repeat your Herbs, the stronger will your Oil be. When you think it is strong enough for your use, boil the last Herbs (you put in it) and Oil together, till the Juice be consumed, (which you may know by the leaving off its bubling) and the Herbs grown crisper. Strain it while it is hot, and put it into some convenient Earthen or Glass-Vessel, and set it up till you have occasion to use it.

Chap. IX. Of Syrups by Infusion, by Decoction, and by Juices.

1. A Syrup is a Medicine of a liquid Form, composed of Infusion, Decoction and Juice.

2. Those Syrups that are usually made by Infusion, are made of such Flowers as lose their Colour and Strength in boiling; as Violets, Roses, Peach-Flowers: They are thus made, *viz.* To every Pound of Flowers well pickt, add three Pints of Spring-Water made boiling hot on the Fire;

Fire ; put them in an earthen Vessel, and put the Water to them, then cover it close, and let it stand by the Fire to infuse about twelve or thirteen Hours, then strain it out, (in such Syrups as purge, as Peach-Flowers, Damask-Roses, &c. the usual and best way is to repeat to their Infusion fresh Flowers divers times, then strain it out into some convenient Vessel) and add to every Pint of it two Pounds of Loaf-Sugar, then melt it over a gentle Fire again, taking off the Scum that shall arise, and your Syrup is made.

2. Those Syrups that are made by Decoction, are made of Compounds, yet any simple Herb may be made also into a Syrup: Take the Root, Herb or Flower you intend to make into a Syrup, and bruise it a little in a Mortar; then take it forth, and put to every handful of Roots, Herbs or Flowers, a Pint of running Water, and boil it till half the Water be consumed; after you have so done, strain it through a Woollen Cloth, letting it run out at leisure without pressing: And to every Pint of this Decoction add one Pound of Sugar; then boil it again over the Fire till it come to a Syrup, which you may know when it is well done, if you take a little of it now and then in a Spoon, and let it cool. Be sure you take off the Filth that doth arise while it is boiling; and when you think it is enough, strain it hot through a Woollen Cloth, and press it out and keep it for your use.

3. Syrups that are made by Juices, usually are made of such Herbs as are most full of Juice, and are best made this way, *viz.* Take the Herbs and beat them in a Mortar with a wooden Pestle, then press forth the Juice, and clarify it as you were taught in Juices, then set it over the Fire again, and let it boil till a quarter of it be consumed, and to a Pint of it add a Pound of Sugar, and boil it up to a Syrup, keeping it scumming all the while; when you think it is well boiled, strain it through a Woollen Cloth, as you did the other, and keep it for your use.

4. If you make Syrups of Roots that are hard, as Grass-Roots, Parsley, Fennel, &c. bruise them very well first, then lay them asteeep in that Water you intend to boil them in, which will cause the Virtue of them to come forth so much the better.

5. Your Syrups that are well made will keep somewhat above a Year, but such as are made by Infusion will not keep so long.

6. The best way to keep them when made, is in Glasse or Stone-Pots, and to bind a Paper about the Mouth of them.

Chap. X. *Of Decoctions.*

1. Decoctions are made either of Fruits, Barks, Roots, Leaves, Flowers or Seeds, and are made after the same manner as is shewed you in your Syrups.

2. Those Decoctions that are made of Wine are more durable than those made of Water.

3. If you make a Decoction for to cleanse the Passages of Urine, and to open Obstructions, chuse rather to make it of Whitewine, because it is of a more penetrating and subtile Nature than Water.

4. Decoctions are of the best use for the Cure of such Diseases as lie lurking in the Passages of the Body, Stomach, Bowels, Kidneys, Passages of Urine and the Bladder, &c. which are more powerful in Operation, in passing quicker to the aforesaid Diseases than any other sort of Medicines.

5. All the difference that is between Decoctions and Syrups made by Decoction, is only this; Syrups are made to keep, Decoctions only for present spending.

6. You may sweeten them with Sugar or Syrup, or such things as you imagine most fit for the Disease you give it for.

7. If you make a Decoction of Roots, Herbs, Flowers and Seeds together; boil the Roots a good while first, because they retain their Vertues longer; so then the next in order according to the same Rule, are: First, Barks: Secondly, Herbs: Thirdly, Seeds: Fourthly, Flowers: And, Fifthly, Spices; which are put in last, because their Vertues do soonest come forth.

8. All Decoctions are to be kept in a Glass close stopped, and the cooler you set them the longer they will keep; their usual time of lasting is not above a Week at most.

9. The usual Dose you are to give him at a time, is a Quart or more, according to the Age, Strength and Constitution of your Horse, Season of the Year, Strength of the Medicine, and Quality of the Disease.

Roots that are hot in the first Degree.

Liquorice, Dogs-Grass, Marshmallows, Burrage, China, Valerian, Basil, Parsley, Bugloss, Pilewort, Lillies, Piony Male and Female, wild Parsnips, Burdocks, Spatling-Poppy, Knee-Holly, &c.

Herbs hot in the second Degree.

Lovage, Water-Flag, Fennel, Butter-Bur, Hogs-Fennel, Swal.

Swallows-Wort, Carline-Thistle, Devils-Bit, Spignel, Mercury, Sarsaparilla, &c.

Hot in the third Degree.

Ginger, Angelica, Asarabaca, White-Dittany, Doronicum, Elecampane, Hellebore white and black, Stinking-Gladwin, Filapendula, Aron, Sow-bread, Birth-wort, Galangal, Cellandine, Snake-root, Briony white and black, Masterwort, Rest-harrow, &c.

Hot in the fourth Degree.

Leeks, Onions, Garlick, Pellitory of the Wall, &c.

Roots that are very Temperate.

Cinquefoil, Tormentil, Mallows, Bears-breech, Mechoacan, Jallap, Eringo, Asparagus, our Ladies-Thistle, &c.

Roots cold in the first Degree.

Plantain, Comfrey the greater, Sorrel, Madder, Beets white and red, Rose-root, &c.

Cold in the second Degree.

Hounds-Tongue, Alkanet, Succory, Endive, Daisies, &c.

Cold in the Third.

Mandrakes, Bistort, &c.

Cold in the Fourth.

Henbane.

Roots dry in the first Degree.

Calamus Aromaticus, Bears-breech, Madder, Bur-dock, Pile-wort, Red-Beets, Eringo, Self-heal, Knee-holly, Endive, &c.

Dry in the Second.

Hounds-Tongue, Zedoary, Plantain, Mercury, Reeds, Devils-bit, Parsley, Butter-bur, Fennel, Spignel, Lovage, Alkanet, Marshmallows, Valerian, Spratling-poppey, Basil, Water-flag, our Ladies-Thistle, Cypress long and round, Sorrel, Smallage, Aspodel male, Swallow-wort, &c.

Dry in the Third.

Cellandine, Angelica, Hogs-Fennel, Tormentil, Ginger, Birth-wort long and round, Aron, Sow-bread, Carline-Thistle, Bistort, Briony white and black, Sarsaparilla, Asarabaca, Virginian Snake-root, China, Doronicum, Dittany,

tany, Galangal of both kinds; Hellebore white and black; Elecampane, Rest-harrow, Piony Male and Female; Filapendula, Orice *English* and *Florence*, Stinking-Gladwin, &c.

Dry in the Fourth.

Costus, Pellitory of *Spain*; Garlick, Onions and Leeks, &c.

Roots Moist are.

Daises, Burrage, Valerian and Spatling-Poppey, Bugloss, White-Beets, Liquorice, Dogs-Grass, Parsnips, Skirrets, &c.

Of Hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

1. Heating the Head.

Doronicum, Fennel, Piony, Spikenard, *Winter's Cinnamon*, Betony, Costmary, Carduus-benedictus, Cowslips, Eye-bright, Feverfew, Goats-Rue, Herb-Mastick, Lavender, Laurel, Lovage, Maudlin, Mellilot, Thyme, Penny-Royal, Rosemary, Cellandine, Scurvy-Grass, Sneese-wort, Sena, Piony Male and Female, Camomile, Sage, Nutmegs, Jallap.

2. Heating the Throat.

Devils-bit, Pile-wort, Arch-angel white and red; Ale-wort.

3. Heating the Breast and Lungs.

Birth-wort long and round, Calamus Aromaticus, Cinquefoil, Elecampane, Liquorice, Orice-squills, Cassia-Lig-nea, Cinnamon, Betony, Bays, Bawm, Calamintis, Camomile, Distaff, Thistle, Fennel, Germander, Hyssop, Horehound, Indian-leaf, Maiden-hair, Nettle, Oak of *Jerusalem*, Organy, Periwinkle, Rue, Scabious Thyme, Figs, Raisons, Orice *English* and *Florentine*.

4. Heating the Heart.

Angelica, Butter-bur, Basil, Cinnamon, Citrons, Carline-Thistle, Tormentil, Valerian of both sorts; Pimpernel, Bay-berries, Bawm, Broom, Carduus-Benedictus, Rue, Goats-Rue, Rosemary, Southernwood, Sene, Saffron, Spikenard, Juniper-berries, Mace, Nutmegs, Walnuts, Mustard-seed, Doronicum, Bugloss.

5. Heating the Stomach.

Avens, Fennel, Galangale, Ginger, Radish, Spikenard, Enula, Cassia Lignea, Cinnamon, Citrons, Lemons, Sassafras

Saffras, Bayes, Bawm, Broom, Hyfop, Indian Leaf, Mints, Thyme, Parsley, Sage, Smallage, Wormwood, Rosemary, Cloves, Almonds, Ben, Nutmegs, Pine-Nuts, Annis, Caraway, Cardamoms, Cummin, Elecampane, Fern.

6. Heating the Liver.

Carline-Thistle, China, Dogs-grease, Fennel, Gentian, Parsley, Rhubarb, Smallage, Turmeric, Asparagus, Agrimony, Ale-cost, Ash, Bays, Asarabacca, Centaury the less; Chamepitis, Germander, Fox-Gloves, Hops, Horehound, Hyfop, Ladies-Thistle, Thyme, Maudlin, Pimpernel, Celandine, Samphire, Sage, Elder, Scordium, Water-creffes, Camomile, Betony, Annis, Caraway, Cummin, Cinquefoil, Parsley, Kneeholly, Rhapontick.

7. Heating the Spleen.

Ash, round Birth-wort, Thistle-Fern of both sorts, Fennel, Gentian, Parsley, Asparagus, Bayes, Agrimony, Centaury the less, Chamepitis, Dodder, Germander, Hops, Horehound, Harts-Tongue, Maiden-Hair, Thyme, Smallage, Samphire, Sage, Scordium, Sena, Tamarisk, Water-creffes, Wormwood, Betony, Wall-Flowers, Annis, Caraway, Fennel.

8. Heating the Bowels.

Ginger, Valerian great and small, Zedoary, Alehoof, Alexanders, Camomile, Ginger.

9. Heating the Reins and Bladder.

Basil, Burdock, Carline-Thistle, China, Cypress long and round, Drop-wort, Kneeholly, Marshmallows, Parsley, Smallage, Asparagus, Spikenard, White-Saxifrage, Valerian, Saffras, Agrimony, Betony, Brooklime, Bayes, Broom, Chervil, Costmary, Camomile, Clary, Germander, Hops, Melilot, Thyme, Nettle-seed, Organy, Pimpernel, Penny-Royal, Rochet, Samphire, Scordium, Toad-Flax, Vervain, Gromwel, Restharrow, Liquorice, Pellitory of the Wall, Elder, Turpentine, Spatling-Poppey, Filapendula, Dogs-Grass.

10. Heating the Womb.

Piony, Valerian, Angelica, Pimpernel, Briony, Aristolochia Rotunda, Mug-wort, Rue, Mercury, Feverfew, Savin, Betony, Elder, Spikenard, Red-Fitches, Rosemary, Indian-Nut, Juniper-berries, Oranges, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cassia Lignea, Saffron, Cardamoms, Ash, Pepper, Castoreum,

reum, Birth-wort long and round, Galangal greater and lesser, Hogs-Fennel.

II. Heating the Joints.

Branca-Urfina, Costus, Ginger, Hermodactils, Jallap, Mechoacan, Agrimony, Arsmart, Camomile, Costmary, Garden-creffes, Cowslips, Melilot, Rosemary, Rue, Scia-tica-creffes, Water-creffes, Sage, Bays.

Of cold Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

1. Cooling the Head.

Lettice, Purslain, Mandrake, Plantain, Night-shade, Henbane, Water-Lillies, Roses, Poppy, Violets, Gourd, Cucumber, Melons, Opium, House-leek, Wood-sorrel, Strawberry-leaves, Violet-leaves, Fumitory, Willow-leaves.

2. Cooling the Throat.

Bramble-leaves, Orpine, Privet, Strawberry-leaves, Poppy, Oranges, Lemons.

3. Cooling the Breast and Lungs.

Endive, Lambs-Tongue, Plantain, Polipody, Purslain, Water-Lillies, Bramble-leaves, Coleworts, Violet-leaves, Mallows, Bugloss. Cichory, Poppies, Quinces, Strawberry-leaves, Barley, Mulberry-leaves, Prunes, Saunders, Fenugreek, Gum-Dracant, Arabick.

4. Cooling the Heart.

Dandelion, Sorrel, Wood-Sorrel, Water-Lillies, Violet-leaves, Cucumbers, Gourds, Barberries, Red-Currants, Citrons, Pomegranates, Saunders, Camphire, Vipers-Bugloss, Lettice, Burnet, Strawberry-leaves, Water Lillies.

5. Cooling the Stomach.

Cichory, Sorrel, Asparagus, Water-Lillies, Endive, Purslain, Myrtle, Roses, Violets, Cucumbers, Barley, Quinces, Citrons, Oranges, Pomegranates.

6. Cooling the Liver.

Asparagus, Gramen, Water-Lillies, Sorrel, Strawberries, Cichory, Sow-Thistle, Endive, Purslain, Lettice, Roses, Bugloss, Burrage, Poppy, Barley, Lemons.

7. *Cooling the Spleen.*

Willow, Hemlock, Fumitory, Oil of Vitriol, Spirit of Salt, Oil of Sulphur, of which three last you must not exceed above 90 or 100 Drops, put into a Quart of Ale or Beer.

8. *Cooling the Reins and Bladder.*

Grass, Strawberries, Water-Lillies, Purslain, Willow, Lettice, Cassia, Fistula, Violets, Roses, Poppy, Citrons, Lemons, Barley.

9. *Cooling the Womb.*

Bistort, Comfrey, Bursa-pastoris, Plantain, Stinking-Arach, Balaustins, Water-Lillies, Willow, Henbane, Poppy, Pomegranates, Medlars, Myrtles, Red-Coral.

10. *Cooling the Bowels.*

Cassia, Fistula, Sow-Thistle, Bucks-horn, Orpine, Plantain, Fumitory, Mallows, Althæa.

11. *Cooling the Joints.*

Henbane, Housleek, Lettice, Night-shade, Willow, Poppy, Opium.

*The Properties of Purging Medicaments.*1. *Purging Choler.*

1. Mild; as, Cassia-Fistularis, Tamarinds, Manna, Calabrina, Aloes-succotrina, Rhubarb, Damask-Roses, Violets.
2. Strong; as, Asarum, Scammony.

2. *Purging Phlegm.*

1. Mild; as, Myrobalans, Chemulan and Emblican, Carthamus-Seeds, Mechoacan.
2. Strong; as, Agarick, Jallap, Turpethum, Coliquintida, Hermodactils, Euphorbium, Sagapenum, Briony, Spurge, Sow-bread, Elaterium, Squills, Turbech, Ground-pine.

3. *Purging watry Humours.*

1. Mild; as, Soldanella, German Orice.
2. Strong; as, Elaterium, Cambogia, Hedge-Hysop, Ensula.

4. *Purging by Vomit.*

1. Mild; warm Water, fat Broth, Oil with Water, Butter, Roots of Garden-Cucumber, Orach, Mellon, Asarum.
2. Strong; as, white Hellebore, Tobacco, Sulphur of Antimony,

mony, Mercurius-vitæ, Crocus-Metallorum, Turpethum Minerale, Gutta-gamba.

5. Purging by Urine.

1. Mild; as, Roots of Parsley, Smallage, Eringo, Ruscus, Asparagus, Pimpernel, Leaves of Pellitory, Asarum, Chervil, Scordium, Saxifrage, Seeds of Gromwel, Winter-Cherries. 2. Strong; as, Sal Tartari, Succini, Absinthii, Oleum Tartari, Baccarum, Juniperi, Vitrioli, Sulphuris, Ceræ, Wood and Bark of Guaiacum, Sassafras.

6. Purging by the Throat.

Mercurius-dulcis, Sublimatus & Precipitatus, Turpethum Minerale, Unguentaue-Mercuriata.

7. Purging by Sweat.

1. Mild; as, Angelica, Pimpernel, Tormentil, Gentian, Carduus, Scabious, Zedoary. 2. Strong; as, Lignum-Guaiacum, Sassafras, Bezoar-stone, Aurum-Diaphoreticum, Antimonium-Diaphoreticum, Bezoar-joviale & Minerale, Sal Tartari, Sulphur-Auratum.

8. Purging by the Nose.

Roots of Orice, Bind-weed, Leaves of Beet, Marjoram, Sage, Betony, Ivy, Ginger, Roots of Pellitory of Spain, white Hellebore, Leaves of Sneese-wort, Tobacco, Pepper, Mustard, Euphorbium.

The Properties of altering Medicaments.

Softning Things.

The Roots of Lillies, Althæa, Wild-Cucumber, Briony, Leaves of Mallows, Pellitory, Violets, Elder, Dwarf Elder, Flowers of Camomile, Seeds of Fenugreek, Lime, Fat, Figs, Fresh-Butter, Hogs-grease, Bears-grease, Old-Oil.

Loosening Things.

Lillies, Linseed, Fenugreek, Fat, Butter, Althæa. See more in my first part,

Abolishing Things.

Herb-Mercury, Camomile, Melilot, Elder, Fenugreek and Linseed, Old-Oil, Butter, Orice, Thyme, Penny-royal, Hyssop, Mug-wort, Seed of Annis, Fennel.

Opening Roots.

Smallage, Fennel, Asparagus, Parsley, Holm, Cichory, Eringo, Gentian, Fern, Madder, Tamarisk, Ash-leaves, Fumitory, Wormwood, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Liver-wort, Chamepitis, Dodder, Hore-hound, Calamint, Penny-royal, Scurvy-Grass, Brook-lime, Water-creffes, Hops, Seeds of Annis, Ameos, Lupins, Almonds, Cinnamon, Vinegar, Endive, Garlick, Onions, Pellitory, Turmerick, &c.

Binding Things.

Roots of Tormentil, Plantain, Comfrey, white Lillies, Piony, Bistort, Rhubarb roasted, Leaves of Amomum, Agnus-Castus, Cypress, Cinquefoil, Bawm, Flea-wort, Horsetail, Ivy, Knot-grass, *Solomon's-Seal*, Bay, Myrtles, Oak, Purslain, Shepherds-Purse, Medlars, Rice, Lentiles, Galls, Myrtle-berries, Barberries, Acorns, Mastick, Dragons-blood, Allum, Coral, Bole-Armoniack, Iron, Sumach, Pomegrate-Rind. See more of this Nature before spoken of.

Drawing Things.

Birth-wort-Roots, Roots of Anemony, Bindweed, Targon, Gentian, Pellitory, Crowfoot, Daffodil, Aron, Garlick, Onions, Leaves of Sciatica-creffes, Calamint, Dittany, Pimpernel, Ivy, Seeds of Nettles, Euphorbium, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Sagaponum, Pitch, Rosin, Cantharides, Pigeons and Hens-dung, Soap: See more in the part before spoken of.

Striking back Things.

Roots of Plantain, Leaves of Housleek, Purslain, Duckweed, Endive, Lettice, Night-shade, Sumach, Hen-bane, Red-Roses.

Dissolving Things.

Roots of Asphodil, Birth-wort, Briony, Leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomile, Chick-weed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Althæa, Mints, Pellitory, Bawm, Clivers, Mallows, Scordium.

Cleansing Things.

Roots of Aron, Asphodil, Birth-wort, Celandine, Orrice, Gentian, *Solomon's-Seal*, Tamarisk, Leaves of Smallage, Tansy, Wood, Hyfop, Water-creffes, Hore-hound, Agrimony, Pimpernel, Pellitory, Arach, Beets, Aloes, Sugar, Honey, Fenugreek-seeds, Turpentine, Vitriol, Whey.

Pain.

Pain-removing Things.

Roots of Eringo, Orice, Rest-harrow, Water-flag, Marshmallows, Leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomile, Chick weed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Fennel, Marjoram, Thyme, Parsley, Rosemary, Rue, Saffron, Fenugreek-seed, Hogs and Hens-grease.

Things good to clear the Wind.

Costus, Galangal, Garlick, Fennel, Parsley, Smallage, Spikenard, Zedoary, Camomile, Dill, Juniper, Marjoram, Organy, Savory, Wormwood, Schenanth, Bay, Nutmeg, Pepper, Ginger, Annis, Caraway, Cummin.

Humour-dissolving Things.

Roots of Tormentil, Zedoary, Virginian Snake-weed, Ginger, Leaves of Carduus-Benedictus, Scordium, Butter-bur, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, Flowers of Saffron, Bezoar-stone, Cochineal, Treacle.

Things good to drive away Poison.

Angelica, Birth-wort, Bistort, Bugloss, Costus, Cypress, Carline, Doronicum, Enula, Garlick, Gentian, Smallage, Tormentil, Vipers-bugloss, Zedoary, Betony, Carduus, Calamint, Agrimony, Avens, Juniper, Organy, Penny-royal, Rue, Scordium, Wormwood, Centaury, Bay-berries, Pepper, Citrons, Anniseeds, Anemomy, Cardamoms, Caraway, Fennel, Bezoar, Saffron, Cochineal, Dragons, Plantain. See more in this part.

Astonishing Things.

Mandrake-roots, Leaves of Mandrake, Hemlock, Henbane, Poppy, Opium, Spirit of Darnel and Darnel-meal.

To stop the running of the Glanders for present Sale.

Take some Frankincense and strew it upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and let him receive the Smoak through a Tunnel, into the Nostril that runneth, and it will stop it for some time.

The best Receipt for the Cure of the Glanders that is ; which if your Horse be Youthful, and his Strength and Lungs not too much wasted, you need not fear the Cure : For if any thing in the World will cure this Disease, this Receipt will.

Take a small Faggot made of the green Boughs of the
G g 4 Ash-

Ash-tree, and set it on Fire in some Chimney-corner, clean swept for your use; then having a Gallon of the best Ale you can get in a readiness, quench so many of the Coals that are made thereof therein as will make it pretty thick; then strain it through a Linen Cloth, into some convenient Vessel fit for your use; then double it over again to make it the stronger, by quenching fresh Coals therein; then strain the Liquor from the Coals as you did before, and when it is cold, put it into a Bottle close stopped for your use; for if you do not put it in cold, it will quickly sour, which will spoil it. If you make it strong enough, you shall find that the Coals will drink up a Quart or more of your Ale: when you use it, shake the Bottle to make it all alike; then pour out of it so much as you think fit for your use, and warm it lukewarm, and put a small drenching Horn full of it into each Nostril of your Horse, if he runs at both, if not, but one will serve: do this Morning and Evening during his Cure, and ride him gently after it for about an Hour; then let him feed a while upon Hay, and after that you may give him some Drink. Three or four Quarts of this Liquor will perfect the Cure at farthest; if you find, that the Kernels under the Caul do waste, which this Liquor will take away in four or five Days at the furthest; you need not much question the Cure: you are to keep him in the House during his Cure. After you have given him his Drink for about a Week together, you may rest him, by forbearing to give him any more for a Day or two; then give it him again, and so use it till you have cured him.

'Tis convenient if the Horse be Strong and Lusty, before you give him this Drink, to cleanse his Body with this Scouring, which is both safe and sure.

Take an Ounce of the best *Barbadoes* Aloes you can get for Money, and beat it very fine, then mix it very well with fresh Butter, and after you have so done, divide it into three Parts, and cover every part all over with Butter, as big as a good Wash-ball; then give them the Horse in a Morning fasting upon the point of a Stick, and stir him a little after it; then bring him into the Stable, and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three Hours, then give him a Mash of Malt, and after that some Hay.

The best of all Receipts for the ordering and making up of Pills or Balls of Aloes, for the scouring or purging of a Horse that is sick, either of Cold, Surfeit, molten Grease, Worms, or any other inward Illness, &c.

Take an Ounce of the best *Barbadoes Aloes*, or of *Aloes Hepatica* with half an Ounce of the Filing of Steel Needles, and put them both together in a Mortar, and beat and rub them round about with your Pestle, till the Aloes be finely powdred; then drop into it sixteen or twenty drops of Brandy, (or for want thereof, Water) and rub them round with your Pestle, and they will incorporate and become one Body, which you may work and make up with your Hand like unto Paste, into what form or shape you please; divide them into two or three Balls, and give him them fasting in the Morning one after another in a Hornful of cold strong or small Beer, and exercise him after it; then bring him home, and set him up warm clothed and littered, and no question but he will purge very well.

Or with the help of a Fire and your warm Hand, you may work up by it self into Balls the brittlest sort of Aloes that is.

Some Observations upon it.

If you chance to put too much Brandy into it, it will be so thin that you cannot work it into a Paste. If this Misfortune happen to you, put a little of the Powder of *English Liquorice* to it, and that will so quallify the thinness of it, that you may work it up into a Body very well; Or you may make up your Aloes after the same manner only with the Powder of *Liquorice*, or with any other Powder, which you think most proper for your Use.

How to know the Goodness of the Filings of Steel Needles.

If it look bright and be clean from dirt 'tis good; but if you find it of a rusty Colour 'tis naught. You may buy it at the Needle-makers in *Crooked Lane*, near the *Monument*, for 6 d. the Pound.

Another Receipt very good for the said Distempers.

Take an Ounce of *Barbadoes Aloes*, or *Aloes Hepatica*, with a Dram of each of these Roots here under-written, finely beaten and searc'd viz. *Gentian*, *Aristolochia rotunda* and *Elecampane*; put them into a Mortar together, and make them up as in your former Receipt: or you may make

make up your Aloes with the Powder of crude Antimony.

Another excellent Purge or Scouring, which is good to free a Horse from the same Distempers as the others did, and is the best way I know of for the dissolving of Aloes.

Or you may dissolve your Aloes in cold Brandy, being first beaten into fine Powder, and put therein.

Take an Ounce of the best Barbadoes Aloes, or Aloes Hepatica, and beat it in a Mortar to a fine Powder, then put it into a Bladder, and wet the Powder very well with Brandy-wine; then tie it up hard that it receive no Vent, and put it into a Skillet of Water, and set it over the Fire, and you shall find that in a little more than a quarter of an Hour's boiling, your Aloes will be quite dissolved: Then take it off the Fire, (having first in a readiness a Quart of strong Beer indifferent hot) and untie or clip your Bladder with a Pair of Scissars, and let out your Aloes into the Beer, and put also into it an Ounce of fresh Butter, with the Yolks and Whites of two new-laid Eggs: brew and beat all these very well together, till you think they are cool enough to give him, and order him as in the former Receipt. If your Horse be strong and lusty, and that you think this is not a sufficient Dose strong enough for him, you may either add more Aloes, or else you may put into it as much of the Powder of the Root of Jallap and Liquorice, as will lie upon a Sixpence, which will strengthen his Purge very much, and make it work very freely, kindly and safely.

Some more Physical Observations in giving of Purges or Scourings.

1. When you give your Horse a Purge or Scouring, either for Surfeit, Cold, or any other Illness, let him fast about three Hours before he takes it, and about three or four Hours after.

2. Let the first thing he eats after he hath fasted his limited time, be a Mash of Malt or boiled Oats, and let him not have it till his Physick hath wrought twice or thrice with him, which will set it working so much the more freely.

3. If you give him Hay first, before you give him his Mash, 'twill so bind his Physick upon his Stomach, that 'twill spoil the Operation and working Quality thereof, to the no little prejudice of his Health.

4. The best time in my opinion is to give it him about Four or Five in the Afternoon, for then 'tis possible you may see

see the working of it the next Morning, which if you give it him in the Morning. (which is the usual time of giving a Horse Physick) it may work in the Night, and so prevent you of seeing the Operation thereof.

5. According to the strength of your Horse's Body, and the quantity or quality of the Physick you give him, will be the Operation of it; for in some Horses it will work in twelve Hours, in others not in twenty four, and again in others not in forty eight.

6. Let him have no Water, till after his Physick hath done working, and then let it be a little aired before you give it him, with a Handful or two of Wheat-bran put amongst it.

7. If you fear your Horse is troubled with Bots or Worms, and that you find him to begin to dung loose after his Purging, then put a Tobacco-pipe at the same time ready lighted into his Fundament (breaking off some part of it before you put it in, lest it prove too long) and the Wind from within his Body will draw it out, as orderly as if it were taken at your Mouth, so that the Smoke being thus received into his Body will so suffocate and choak them, that it will make them to let go their hold, which being loose will be the more easily thrown out by the Purge in his Excrements.

A Particular Receipt for Splaiting of the Shoulder, which is a Torn Shoulder.

Put a Pair of strait Pasterns on his Feet, keeping him in the Stable without disquieting of him; then take of Di-althæa one Pound, of Sallet-Oil one Pint, of Oil-de-bay half a Pound, of fresh Butter half a Pound; melt all these together in an Earthen-Pot, and anoint the grieved Place therewith, and also round about the inside of the Shoulder, and within two or three days after, both that Place and all the Shoulder will swell; and either prick it with a Lancet or Fleam in all the swelling places, or else with a sharp hot Iron, and then anoint it still with the Ointment before said; but if you see that it will not go away, but swell still, and gather to a Head, then lance it where the Swelling doth gather most, and is softest under your Finger, and then tent it with your green Ointment, which you may find in the first Part.

*Things good in general to cure a Shoulder-Pight, which is
a Shoulder out of Joint.*

To make him swim in a deep Water up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the Joint to go into its right place again; then make two Pins of Ashen-wood the bigness of your Finger, being sharp at the Points and five Inches long; then slit the Skin an Inch above the Point, and an Inch beneath the Point of the Shoulder, and thrust in one of the Pins from above downwards, so as both the ends may equally stick with the Skin; and if the Pin of Wood will not easily pass through, you may make its way first with an Iron Pin; then make two other Holes cross to the first Holes, so as the other Pin may cross the first Pin right in the midst with a right Cross; and the first Pin shall be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent, that the other being round may press the better without stop, and close juster together; then take a piece of a little Line, somewhat bigger then a Whip-cord, and at one end make a Loop, which being put over one of the Pins ends, so that it may lie betwixt the Pin's ends and the Skin, and fasten the last end with your Pack-thread unto the rest of the Cord, so as it may not slip; and to do well, both the Pins and the Cord should be first anointed with a little Hogs-grease, then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine or ten days, and let him lie down as little as may be, and put a Pastern-Shoe on the fore Leg, and at nine or ten days end you may anoint the Place with a little Dithæa or Hogs-grease, and so turn him out to grass, and let him run there till the Pins be rotted off: If you work him in a Cart after a Month's time, it will settle his Shoulder the better, and make him the more fit to ride.

The Cure for the Canker in the Mouth.

Take Allum half a Pound, Honey a quarter of a Pint, Columbine-Leaves and Sage-Leaves, of each a Handful; boil them together in three Pints of running Water, until a Pint be consumed, and wash the sore Places therewith, (with a Rag tied upon a Stick) till they bleed, Morning and Night till they be cured.

The Curing of the Gigges, Bladders or Flappes.

Pull out his Tongue, and slit them with an Incision-Knife, and thrust out the Kernels or Corruption, and wash the place with Vinegar and Salt, and Alum-water, and they will do well again, But to prevent their coming at all, is to wash it often with Wine, Beer and Ale, and so shall no Blister breed thereon, nor any other Disease.



*To make useful unto you those several
Weights and Measures, which are set down by
some Authors, in some Physical and obscure
Characters, (wherein are contained many Ex-
cellent Receipts); Take them as followeth,*

℥ The Character of the half- pound	℥ A Scruple
℔ A Pound	℥ss A Scruple and a half
℔ss A Pound and a half	gr. A Grain, which is the least of all Weights. <i>M.</i>
℥ An Ounce	a Handful. <i>P.</i> a Pugil. <i>P.</i>
℥ss One Ounce and a half	a Part. <i>Ana</i> Of each
℥ A Dram	alike.
℥ss A Dram and a half	

Note that { Twenty Grains
Three Scruples
Eight Drams
Twelve Ounces } *Make* { A Scruple.
A Dram.
An Ounce.
A Pound.



An



An Alphabetical Description of the Diseases of a Horse.



A.

Cloyed or *Cloyed*, is no other than Prick'd with a Nail in the Shoeing, *vid* Prick'd. *Arristes*; *vid*. *Rat-tails*.

St. *Anthones-Fire*, is a vehement burning Disease in the Flesh, and is of the Nature of *Noli-me-tangere* or *Wild-Fire*, and is named of some, *The Singles of an Horse*, which is very hard and difficult to cure.

Anticor or *Heart-sickness*, is caused many times by too much Feeding without Exercise, and sometimes by hard and immoderate Riding, and careless looking after him afterwards, which makes the Blood of this useful Creature (a Horse) so corrupted and inflamed, that unless it find some way to vent it self forth, it soon puts a period and end to his Life. This Disease hath its Seat and Residence near the Heart, and is known by a Swelling in the middle of his Breast against the Heart, from whence it derives its Name.

Attaint Upper is a Swelling of the Master, or Back-Sinew of the Fore-legs, near the Pastern-Joint, and cometh ordinarily by an *Over-reach*.

Attaint Nether is the same with the other, and cometh sometimes by a Wrench, and sometimes by a Strain; all the difference of them is, whereas the other is upon the Foot-lock Joints, this is under it, and is usually upon the Heel or Frush, and is not always visible to the Eye; but it may

†

be

be felt by the Heat and Burning of it, and by its Softness, which will arise by a Swelling like a Bladder or Blister, wherein will be corrupt and vitious Matter like to Jelly, which will make him complain very much.

Anbury is a kind of *Wen* or *Spungy Wart*, growing upon any part of a Horse's Body.

Apoplexy, vide *Palsy*.

Ach or *Numbness* in the Joints cometh by Cold, taken by hard and violent Exercise or Labour.

Avives, *Vives* or *Fives*; see *Vives*.

B.

Bloody-Flux, vide *Flux-bloody*.

Back-swayed, vide *Swaying in the Back*.

Barbes are a common Disease, and few Horses are without them, they are known by two Paps under his Tongue, which seldom prove hurtful to him, till they be inflamed with corrupt Blood, proceeding from vitious Humours, which will make them raw, and grow beyond their usual length, and cause them to become very painful to him, which will hinder his feeding. You must clip them away with the Scissars.

Blood-spaven, is a soft Swelling which groweth through the Hough, and is commonly full of Blood, and is biggest upon the inside, and being fed by the Master-Vein, makes it greater than the Swelling on the out-side: It runneth down the inside of the Hough down the Leg to the Pastern: This Disease is occasioned from the Corruption of the Blood, taken by hard Riding when the Horse is young and tender, which by overmuch heating, makes it so thin and flexible, that the Humour falling downwards resideth in the Hough; which makes the Joints stiff, and causeth him to go with great Pain and Difficulty. This Disease growing hard makes it more easy to cure than the *Bone-spavin*.

Bone-spaven is a great Crust as hard as a Bone, if it be let run too long, it sticketh, or rather groweth on the inside of the Hough, under the Joint, near to the great Vein, which maketh him to halt very much; it cometh at first like a tender Gristle, which by degrees cometh to this hardness: It is bred several ways, either by immoderate Riding or hard Labour, which dissolves the Blood into thin Humours, so that it falleth down and maketh its Residence in the Hough, which causeth the place to swell, and so become a hard Bone, which occasions this name of

of *Bone-spaven* : it cometh also hereditary from the Sire or Dam, which are troubled with the same Disease.

Blood-running Itch, cometh by the Inflammation of the Blood, being over-heated by hard Riding, or other fore Labour : It getteth between the Skin and the Flesh, and maketh a Horse to rub, scrub and bite himself ; which if let alone too long, will come to a grievous Mange, and is very infectious to any Horse that shall be nigh him : What cureth the Mange, cureth this Disease.

Bots and Worms in general are of three sorts, viz. *Bots*, *Trunchions* and *Maw-Worms* : *Bots* are usually found in the great Gut near the Fundament, *Trunchions* are found in the Maw, and if they continue there too long, they will eat their Passage through, which will certainly bring Death, if not killed. The third sort are called *Plain-Worms*, which remain in a Horse's Body, which are of an effect also. *Bots* are a small Worm, with great Heads and small Tails, breeding in the great Gut adjoining to the Fundament, which may be taken away by your Hands, by picking them away from the Gut where they stick. *Trunchions* are short and thick, and have black and hard Heads, and must be removed by Medicine. *Maw-Worms* are of a reddish Colour, somewhat long and slender, much like unto *Earth-Worms*, about the length of a Man's Finger, which also must be taken away by Medicine. They proceed all from one Cause, which is raw, gross and phlegmatick Matter engendred from foul feeding, which causeth all these three sorts of evil creatures to breed. The Signs to know, when he is troubled with them is, he will stamp with his Feet, kick at his Belly, turn his Head towards his Tail, forsake his Meat ; he will groan, tumble, wallow, and also frisk his Tail to and fro.

Bunches, Knots, Warts and Wens, come sometimes by eating of foul Meat, by Bruises, by hard Riding and fore Labour, whereby the Blood becomes so putrefied and foul, that it turns into evil Humours, which occasions these kind of Sorranes.

Blood-shotten Eyes, or all Diseases of the *Eyes* come of two Causes, viz. either inward or outward ; the inward Causes proceed from evil Humours that resort and flow to the Eyes, the outward from some Stroke or Blow that is given him thereon.

Bleeding at Nose cometh commonly among young Horses, proceeding from great store of Blood, or by means that the

the Vein ending in that place, is either opened, broken or fretted: It is opened many times by reason that the Blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too subtile, and so pierceth through the Veins; or it may be broken by some violent Strain, Cut or Blow; or it may be fretted or gnawn asunder, by sharpness of the Blood, or by some other evil Humours contained therein.

Botch in the Groin, cometh by reason that a Horse being full of Humours, and suddenly laboured, causeth them to resort to the weakest Parts, and there gather together and breed a *Botch*, and especially in the hinder parts of the Thighs, not far from the Cods; the Signs be these, His hinder Legs will be all swoln, especially from the Gambrels or Hoofs upwards; and if you feel with your Hand, you may find a great Knob or Swelling, and if it be round and hard it will gather to a Head.

Blisters, are certain hollow risings between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding either from some Burn, Scald or Chafing, and are very full of thin Water.

Burstness, vide *Rupture*.

C.

A Canker, is a very filthy and loathsome Sorrhance, which if it continue long uncured, it will fester and putrify the place so where it is, that it will eat to the very Bone, and if it happens to come upon the Tongue it will eat it asunder; if it light upon the Nose, it will eat the Gristle through, and if it come upon any part of the Flesh, it fretteth and gnaweth it in a great breadth. You may easily know this Sorrhance, for where it is, the places will be raw, and bleed often, and many times a white Scurf will grow upon that place infected with it. It proceedeth many ways, either by Melancholy and filthy Blood ingendred in the Body, by unwholesome Meat, or by some salt and sharp Humours coming by Cold, not long before taken, which will make his Breath to stink very much.

Clifts and Cracks in the Heel, come several ways, either by over-hard Riding or Labour, which occasions Surfeits; or by giving him unwholesome Meat, or by washing him when he is hot, which corrupts his Blood, and causes the peccant Humours to fall down and settle where the Sorrhances are, which makes his Heels very raw, and run ve-

ry offensively with stinking Water and Matter, which prove very troublesome to the poor Creature.

Cods and *Stones* swelled, come several ways; either by some Wound, or by the sting of some venomous Creature, or by fighting of one Horse with another; or by means of some evil Humours, which corrupt the Mass of Blood, which fall down to the Cods sometimes after Sicknes, or Surfeiting with Cold, and then it is a sign of Amendment; and sometimes from having too much plenty of Seed.

Cord, is a strait Sinew in the Fore-Legs, which cometh from the Shackle-Vein to the Gristle in the Nose, between the Lip, the length of a Bean. Or there be two Strings like Threads that lie above the Knee and the Body, and run like a small Cord through the Body to the Nostrils, which causes a Horse to stumble, and sometimes to fall; and is a Defect which is very common among young Horses. You may know this Infirmary by his stiff going, and stumbling without any visible Sorrow.

Cholick, is commonly occasion'd by *Wind*, which makes it bear the Name of *Wind-Cholick*: It causeth very violent Pain, by Gripping of the Belly of a Horse, which will make him strike at it, and sometimes to lie down and tumble, and stamp with his Feet, and be so painful as to make him forsake his Meat.

Colt-Evil, is a Disease that is subject both to a Horse and Gelding. It cometh to a Horse with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard and Cods, proceeding of Wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinew, or Pipe of the Yard, or else through the abundance of Seed: and to a Gelding for lack of natural Heat to expel their Seed any further.

Cold or Peze in a Horse's Head, is gotten by means and way unknown, according to the Temper and Constitution of a Horse's Body; and the best Keeper cannot warrant his Horse from this Infirmary. You must know, that if the Horse be subject to bad Humours, you must endeavour to expel them, by purging of his Head. Now, according as the Cold which a Horse hath taken, is new or old, great or small, according as the Humours do abound in his Head, and as those Humours be thick or thin, is the Disease more or less dangerous: If he hath but new taken Cold, he will have small Kernels like Wax Kernels under his Caul, about the Root of his Tongue.

but if he hath great ones, then you may imagin his Cold of a longer date. His Cold may be new also, if you find him rattle in his Head, or void thin Matter out of his Nose and Eyes, or if he hold down his Head in the Manger, or when he drinketh, his Water cometh up again out of his Nostrils, or if he cheweth between his Teeth matterative Stuff: but if he casteth foul stinking Matter out of his Nose, and coughs grievously; then it is a sign he may have the *Glanders* or *Consumption of the Lungs*.

Consumptions are of two sorts: one is call'd a *dry Malady*, the other, *A Consumption of the Flesh*. The first cometh by violent Heats and Colds, with fretting and gnawing Humours, descending out of the Head, which fall upon the Lungs, which causeth at first thin Matter to run from the Nose; but after some certain time it groweth thick, tough and viscous, which causeth a Maceration and Leanness of the whole Body, whereby he droopeth and pineth away; and tho he doth eat and drink, yet he doth not digest it kindly, to do him good. The Signs to know this Malady are; this Flesh will soon consume away, his Belly is gaunt, and the Skin thereof so hard stretched, or rather shrunk up, that if you strike it with your Hand, it will sound like a Tabor; neither will his Hair shed in due season, as other Horses do; he will cough, and that but huskily, as if he had swallowed some small Bones: and 'tis a Disease hard to be cured. The other *Consumption* is that of *the Flesh*, which also is occasion'd by a Cold; which for want of a Cure in time, causeth this Maceration and Leanness throughout the whole Body; and cometh several ways, either by violent Heats, or immoderate Labour; or riding him into the Water before he be thoroughly cold, and setting him up negligently afterwards.

Cramp or *Convulsions*, are all of one Malady; they are forcible Contractions of the Sinews, Veins and Muscles, in any Member or part of the Body, which proceeds several ways; either from some Wound, or Sinew cut asunder, or for want of Blood, or by over-heats and sudden cooling afterwards; or lastly, by over-much purging him. The Signs to know this Malady are, that the infected will be so stiff, that the whole Strength of a Man is not able to bow it; he will be lame and well as it were in a moment. There is also another kind of them, which seizeth upon a Horse's Neck, and Reins of his Back, and so al-

most universally over his whole Body, which proceedeth several ways; either by some great Cold, which may be caught several ways, or by loss of Blood, whereby a great windiness entereth into the Veins, and so benumbeth the Sinews. This is also known by his Neck and Head standing awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his Mouth dry and clung, and his Back will rise like a Camel; which must be cured by giving him something to make him sweat, and by loading him with warm Woollen Cloths.

Costiveness, is when a Horse is so bound in his Belly, that he cannot dung but with great Pain and Trouble: It is a Disease very dangerous and perillous to him, and is the Origin of several Maladies; you may know it by several Symptoms; sometimes it proceedeth from Glut of Provender, or over-much Feeding, sometimes by eating too dry and hard Meats, which suck and dry up the moisture of a Horse's Body, viz. Beans, Pease, Wheat or Tares, &c. Not but that they are very wholesome Food, and the heartiest Meat a Horse can eat; but feeding too much upon them over-heats his Body more than any other Grain whatsoever; which shuts up a Horse's Office of Nature, so that it makes him he cannot dung: And besides, they are very windy Food, which causeth many bad Humours and Obstructions in the Body. Sometimes Costiveness cometh also by much Fasting, in the Dieting of them for Races or Hunting, which doth suck up (like a Sponge) the phlegmatick Moisture of the Body.

Crown-scab, is a filthy, stinking and cankerous Disease, breeding round about the Feet, upon the Coronets or top of the Hoof, next the Hair, which causeth much Pain unto him: It cometh to him, by reason he hath been bred in some cold wet Soil, striking corrupt Humours up to his Feet; and he is more troubled with these in the Summer than the Winter. The Signs to know it are these; The Hair about the Coronets will be thin and staring like Bristles, and run with matterative Water.

Canery or *Frounce*, are small Warts or Pimples in the moist part of a Horse's Palate, which are very soft and sore, and are bred also sometimes in his Lips and Tongue; it is occasion'd many ways; sometimes by eating of wet Hay whereon Rats or other Vermin have piss'd; sometimes by drawing frozen Dust amongst the Grass into his Mouth, and sometimes by licking up of Venom.

The

The Signs shew themselves, which are the Pimples or Whelks, and Soreness of them, with the unfavoriness of his Food that he hath eaten before, and his falling from his Meat.

Curb, is a long Swelling beneath the Elbow of the Hough, in the great Sinew behind, above the top of the Horn, which maketh him halt and go lame when he hath been heated: it cometh to him several ways, either hereditarily, or by some Bruise or Strain, or by heavy loading him when he was too young.

Casting out of his Mouth and Nostrils his Drink, proceedeth from a cold Stomach, or by some Cold taken in his Head, where the Rheum bindeth upon the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, which hath as it were strangled and made strait the Passages of the Stomach.

Canker in the Eyes, cometh of a rank and corrupt Blood, descending from the Head into them, where it breedeth a little Worm like the Head of a Pismire, which groweth in the corner next his Nose, which will eat in time, if let alone, through the Gristle of his Nose, and so pass into his Head, and kill him. You may know it by the great and small Pimples within and without the Eyelids, and the Eye it self will be full of corrupt Matter. What cures it in the Mouth, cures this.

Chops, Clefts or Rifts, in the Palate of a Horse's Mouth, proceed either from coarse and rough Hay full of Thistles, and other pricking stuff, or by foul Provender full of sharp Seeds; which by frequent pricking the Bars of his Mouth, doth cause them to wrangle and breed corrupt Blood, which may turn to the Canker. What cures the Canker in the Mouth, if it comes to this Disease, cures this; but to prevent the Canker, wash his Mouth with Vinegar and Salt, and anoint it with Honey.

Canker in the Mouth, is a Rawness of the Mouth and Tongue which is full of Blisters, so that he cannot eat his Meat; it proceeds from crude and undigested Meat, rankness of Blood, or unnatural Heat coming from the Stomach.

Crick in the Neck, is a kind of Convulsion, which I shall speak but briefly of, because I have handled it fully before in all the Kinds thereof. It is when the Horse cannot turn his Neck any manner of ways, but holds it right forth; insomuch that he cannot take his Meat from the Ground, but with great Trouble and Pain.

Crest-fallen is, when that part which a Horse's Mane groweth on, which is the upper part thereof, and called the Crest, leaneth either to one side or other, not standing upright as it ought to do. It cometh for the most part from Poverty, occasioned by ill keeping; and especially when a fat Horse falleth away suddenly upon any inward Sicknes.

D.

Dropsy, is a Disease which causeth a universal Swelling of the Body, through the great quantity of Water that lieth between the Skin and the Flesh, occasioned by melancholy Blood, Water and Wind, which will make his Belly and Legs to swell; but his Back, Buttocks and Flanks will be dried and shrunk up to the very Bones; and if you thrust your Finger hard upon the place swoln, you shall leave the print thereof behind; for the Flesh wanting natural heat, will not return again to its place. Other Signs there be to know this Disease, *viz.* He will be evil coloured, heavy, dull, and of no Face, Strength nor Spirit; and therefore it proceedeth principally for want of good Nourishment and Digestion, which passeth into Melancholy: it proceedeth also, either from the Spleen or the Liver, or both; the Blood being putrefied and turned into a thin Water; and sometimes for want of good Exercise, or over-much Rest. He will be also short-breath'd, lose his Stomach, and be very dry; and though you bring him to the Water, he will drink little, but only pudder long with his Nose in it. In a word, he will be as if he had a general *Consumption* over his whole Body, and his Hair will peel off with the least rubbing.

Dimness of Sight or *Blindness*, is occasioned several ways; either by some Strain, violent Riding, hard Labour, and over-charging him with a Burden beyond his Strength, whereby the Strings of his Eyes are stretched beyond their due Compass; it may also be hereditary: lastly, by some Blow or Wound. The Sign is, want of Sight, or the ill affected colour of the Eye.

E.

A Bony Excrecence is occasioned most an end by Causticks, or burning Corrosives, which are put to Wounds that lie close to the Bone; as when the Wound is in the Leg, or about the Pasterns; for the Flesh being very much burned by

by them, cause the Excrecence to grow upon the Bone; so that by the little Experience of the Farrier the Wound is healed, but this Excrecence doth remain: and sometimes it cometh by a Shackle, or the Galling of a Lock or Fetters, that have been long continued upon the Foot. What cures the Bone-spaven, cures this.

Enterfering cometh several ways; either hereditary from the Parents, or by some stiffness in his Pace; or by evil and too broad Shooing, which maketh him to go so narrow behind with his hinder Feet, that he fretteth one Foot against another, so that there groweth hard mattery Scabs, which are so sore that they make him go lame. The Signs are his ill going, and the visible sign of the Scabs.

Eyes Blood-shotten. See *Blood-shotten Eyes*.

Eyes Lunatick. See *Lunatick Eyes*.

F.

Feltick, is no other than a galled Back.

Fraying, is Stiffness taken in his Legs and Feet.

Farcin or *Fashions* is a creeping Ulcer, and is the most loathsome, stinking and filthy Disease that can come to a Horse. It proceedeth first of corrupt Blood engendred in the Body by over-Heats and Colds; which beginneth first with hard Knots and Pustles, which at last by spreading and dilating it self, will over-run the whole Body of a Horse; but it commonly beginneth in a Vein, or near to some Master-Vein, which feedeth and nourisheth the Disease: It cometh sometimes also by *Spur-Galling*, with rusty Spurs, Snaffle, Bit, or the like: as also by the biting of some other Horse infected with the said Disease; or if it be in the Leg, it may come with enterfering one Leg with another, and by many other ways.

Water-Farcin cometh to a Horse by his feeding upon low watry Grounds, and in Pits or Holes where the Grass grows above Water; so that in picking out the Grass he licks up the Water with it, which will cause Horses sometimes to swell under the Belly and Chaps; which when you come to prick it with a hot Iron (bent back again about the length of a Fleam) there will issue from it abundance of yellow, grey and oily Water.

Flanks, is a Wrench, Crick, Stroke, or other Grief gotten in his Back; which word we are beholden to the *French* for. Now there is another sort of *Flanks*, which is quite different from the other, which is a kind of Pleurisy;

which is when he is over-run with too much Blood, which endangereth a *Mange*, or else he falleth dangerously sick thereby; who by reason that he hath been often blooded before, his Body now requires it; whereof he missing, falleth into a loathsome and dangerous Malady.

Falling of the Fundament cometh several ways; either by Weakness, being poorly fed, or by some Cold, which occasions a Scouring and Flux of Blood.

A *Fever*, according to the Learned Physicians, is an unnatural and immoderate Heat, which proceedeth first from the Heart, and so spreadeth it self through all the Arteries and Veins of the Body, stopping all the natural Motions thereof: and there be several sorts of them, viz. *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, *Quartan* and *Pestilent*, and are all of one Nature, tho some be more malignant than others are: only a *Hectick Fever* is of a Nature far different from the former; and so likewise a *Pestilent Fever*. *Vegetius* speaketh of Summer, Autumn and Winter-Fevers, without making any great difference between them, more than that one is worse than another, by reason of the time and season of the Year he hath it in. I shall shew you first the Causes from whence they proceed, and then give you the Signs how you may know them. It cometh by hard Labour or Exercise; as of too much Travelling, and especially in hot Weather, and sometimes by extream Heat of the Sun, and also by extream Cold of the Air; and sometimes it is bred of crude or raw Digestion, which happeneth by too greedy eating of such Corn as was not thoroughly dried or cleansed. Now the Signs to know a *Fever* are these: The Horse doth continually hold down his Head, and is not able to lift it up; his Eyes are so swelled, that he cannot easily open them for matterative Stuff, and he will fall away and consume in his Flesh; his Lips and all his Body is lush and feeble, his Stones hang down, he will covet much to lie down, and often to rise again: If his Ague come with a cold Fit, he will shake and quiver, and when the cold Fit is over, he will burn, and his Breath will be hot and will fail, and his Flanks beat; he will reel as he goeth, he will covet much to drink, and evermore keep his Mouth in the Water, although he will drink but little. These are the certain Signs of a *Fever*, as I know of.

Fistula, is a deep, hollow, crooked Ulcer, for the most part springing from malignant Humours engendred in some Wound, Sore or Canker not well cured; sometimes

it cometh by a Bruise which hath festered inwardly, which either bursted forth of it self, or was opened by a Farrier; sometimes it cometh by a co-wrench or pinch of a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung with the Tree of a Saddle. The Sign to know it, is the hollownes of it descending downwards from the Orifice, which is much straiter at the Mouth than the Bottom, and sendeth forth thin Matter from the same.

Foundering in the Feet, cometh evermore by hard Riding, or sore Labour, by great Heats and Colds, which disorder the Body, and stir up peccant and malignant Humours, that inflame the Blood, melt the Grease, and cause it to descend downwards into his Feet, and there settle; which causeth such a numbness and pricking in his Hoofs, that he hath no sense nor feeling of them, for he is hardly able to stand, which if he do, it is but after a feeble manner, for you may soon push him down with your Hand; besides he will stand shaking and quaking, as if he had a fit of an Ague. This Disease cometh several ways, sometimes by watering him when he is very fat, and his Grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled, by setting him upon cold Planks without Litter, or taking his Saddle off too soon, or else by letting him stand when he is hot in some shallow Water up to the Feet-locks; by which means, through the extraordinary Coldness of it, the molten-Grease descendeth into his Feet, and there cakes and congeals, which is the true reason of this Malady. A Horse also may be foundered by wearing strait Shoes in the Heat of Summer, and travelling upon hard Ground. To know when a Horse is foundered upon his Fore-feet, and not on his Hinder-feet. you may know it by this; he will tread only upon his Hinder-Feet, and as little as he can on his Fore-feet, and go crouching and crimpling with his Bottocks. Sometimes he will be foundered on his Hinder-Feet, and not on his Fore-feet, (but this is very seldom) which you may know by his seeming very weak behind, and will rest himself as much upon his Fore-feet as he can, being very fearful to set his Hinder-feet to the Ground.

Foundring in the Body, cometh by eating too much Provender suddenly when he is too hot, and panting, whereby his Meat not being well digested, breedeth evil Humours, which by little and little do spread through all the Members, and at length doth so oppress all his Body, that it
taketh

taketh away his strength, and makes him in such evil condition that he can neither go nor bow his Joints, and being once laid, is not able to rise again, neither can he stale or dung but with great pain. It cometh also if he drink too much upon travelling when he is hot, and not riding him after it. The Signs to know it; He will be chill and quake for Cold after drinking, and some of it will come out of his Nose, and some few days after his Legs will swell, and after a while begin to peel, and have a dry Cough, which will make his Eyes to water, his Nose to run with a white phlegmatick Stuff, and cause him to forsake his Meat, and make him hang down his Head, for extream Pain, in the Manger. *Foundring* is a French Word, and signifieth no more than a Surfeit given in the Body of a Horse.

Chest-Foundred is discovered by this Infirmary; he will often covet to lie down, and stand stradling with his Fore-legs.

False Quarter, is a Rift, Crack or Chink on the outside, but most commonly on the inside of the Hoof, which is an unsound Quarter, seeming like a Piece put therein, and not all of one entire Piece: It cometh several ways; sometimes by ill shooing and paring, sometimes by travelling, or a prick with a Nail or Stub, which will make him halt; and waterish Blood will issue out of the Chink or Rift.

Flux cometh several ways, *vid. Lask* or *Looseness*.

Bloody Flux or *Flix* are of several kinds, sometimes the Fat of the slimy filth that is avoided, is sprinkled with a little Blood, sometimes the Excrements are like waterish Blood, and sometimes like pure Blood; and all these do spring from one and the same cause, which is the Ulceration of the Guts. Now you may know by their several mixtures, whether the Ulceration be in the inner small Gut, or in the outward great Gut; if it be in the inner Guts, then the Matter and Blood will be mixt together, but if it be in the outward Gut, then they be not mingled together, but come out severally, the Blood most commonly following the Matter. It cometh commonly of some sharp Humour, breeding by filthy raw Food, or sore Travel, or Labour; which being violently driven through many crooked and narrow Passages, do cleave to his Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them, causing Ulceration and grievous Pains. It cometh also by some great Cold, Heat or Moistness, or by means of receiving some violent

violent Purgation, as Scammony, Stibium, or such like violent Simples applied in too great a quantity, or it may be by Weakness of the Liver.

The Fig: This Disease bears its name from a hard Piece of Flesh growing upon the Frush or Heel, which resembleth the shape and fashion of a Fig, it cometh by reason of some hurt received in his Foot (being not thoroughly cured) or by Stub or Nail, Bone, Thorn or Stone, and sometimes by an over-reach upon the Heel or Frush.

Falling-evil is a Disease that is seldom seen, which is no other than the Falling-Sickness, proceeding from ill Blood, and cold and thick Phlegm gathered together in the Fore-part of the Head, between the Panicle and the Brain, which being dispers'd over the whole Brain, doth suddenly cause the Beast to fall, and bereave him of all sense for a time. It is more incident to *Italian, Spanish and French* Horses than to *English*: some are of opinion, that at a certain Course of the Moon, Horses and other Beasts many times do fall and die for a time, as well as Men. This Disease is known by these Signs, When they are fallen, their Bodies will quiver and quake, and their Mouths will foam; and when you think they are dying, they will rise up immediately and fall to their Meat. You may know whether they will fall often or not, by putting your Fingers to the Gristle of their Nostrils, and if it feel cold, he will fall often, but if it be warm, he will seldom fall.

Frenzy. vid. Madness.

G.

Gigges, Bladders or Flappes in the Mouth of a Horse, are small Swellings or Pustules, with black Heads on the inside of his Lips, under his great Jaw-teeth, which will sometimes be as great as a Walnut, and so painful withal, that they will make him let fall his Meat out of his Mouth, or at least keep it in his Mouth unchewed: they do proceed from foul feeding, either of Grass or Proven-der; you may feel them with your Finger.

Gangrene, is a running and creeping Sore, that as far as it runs, mortifies the Flesh, causing it to rot, so that of necessity, that Member, wherein a Gangrene is radicated must be cut off.

Grease Molten, is when his Fat is melted by over-hard riding or labour: you may know it by his panting at the Breast
and

and girting Place, and heaving at the Flank, which will be visible to be seen the Night you bring him in, and the next Morning, and besides, his Body will be very hot and burning.

Glanders is such a loathsome and filthy Disease, and withal so infectious, that it will infect those that stand nigh him. It cometh first of Heats and Colds, which beginneth with a thin Rheum, and ascendeth up to the Head, and settleth near to the Brain, and so venteth it self at the Nose, which in time groweth thicker and thicker, till it comes of a yellowish Colour, like unto Butter, which is then very hard to cure: but if it comes to a viscous, and a tough and slimy substance, and the Colour be green, and stink much, having run some Months with some reddish Specks in it; then the most experienc'd Farrier may fail in the Cure thereof, and the Horse die under his hands; for then it is most certain, if he hath those last Symptoms, that his Lungs are ulcerated, and his Cure not to be performed without great difficulty. Besides these inward Signs to know this Disease, I shall give you one outward one, which is, he will have some Kernels and Knots that may be felt under his Caul; and as they grow bigger and more inflamed, so doth the Glanders more increase within the Body of a Horse. I would advise you before you begin his Cure, to prepare his Body four or five days together with scalded Bran, and give it him instead of his Provender, for this will dry up the moisture and bad Humours in his Body; then let him blood in the Neck, and the next day rake him, and give him the Glistre prescribed in the First Part.

Gravelling cometh to a Horse in travelling, by means of little Gravel-stones getting betwixt the Hoof and the Shoe, which settle at the quick, and there fester and fret.

H.

Hoof-Brittle, or *Brittle-hoof*, cometh either by Nature or Accident. It cometh naturally by the Sire or Dam; accidentally by a Surfeit that fell down into his Feet, or else in that he had been formerly foundred.

Hair falling or shedding from his Mane or Tail, cometh by Heat taken, which hath engendred a dry Mange therein, which occasions their shedding; sometimes it comes by a Surfeit, causing evil Humours to resort to those Parts, &c.

Head.

Head-ach is a pain that cometh either of some inward Cause, as of some cholerick Humour, bred in the Panicles of the Brain, or of some outward Cause, as of extream Heat or Cold, or of some sudden Blow or noisom Savour. The Signs to know it are, The Horse will hang down his Head and Ears, his Sight will be dim, his Eyes swollen and waterish, and he will forsake his Meat. See the First Part.

Hoof-cast or casting of the Hoof, is when the Coffin falleth clean away from the Foot, which cometh by means of some Foundring, Prick or Stab, which breaketh on the top round about the Cronets, which in time causeth it to fall off.

Hoof-bound is a shrinking in of the Hoof, on the top thereof, and at the Heel, which maketh the Skin to stare above the Hoof, and to grow over the same; it cometh to a Horse several ways, either by keeping them too dry in the Stable, by strait Shooing, or by some unnatural Heat after Foundring. The Signs to know it are, He will halt much, and his Hoofs will be hot, and if you knock them with a Hammer, they will sound hollow, like an empty Pottle; and if they are not both Hoof-bound, you may know which is the grieved Foot, by the smallness of it. Some call this Sorrance a dry Foundring.

Hide-bound, is when the Skin sticketh so fast to the Horse's Back and Ribs, that you cannot pull it from his Flesh with your Hand. It cometh to a Horse several ways, sometimes by Poverty, sometimes for want of good ordering, sometimes by over-heating him by hard riding, and carelessly letting him stand in the Wet and Rain; and sometimes of corrupt and filthy Blood siccating the Flesh, which wanting its natural Course, causeth this shrinking of the Skin together, which maketh him illy disposed, and to have a gaunt, shrivelled and shrunk up Belly to his Flanks, making his Hair to stare, and his Legs to swell, with many more Signs; but let these serve instead of more.

Hip-shot is when the Hip-bone is removed out of its right place; it cometh to him many ways, sometimes by a wrench or stroke of a Horse, sometimes by slip, strain, sliding or falling. The Signs to know it are, He will halt and go sidling in his going, and the sore Hip will fall lower than the other, and the Flesh, in process of time, will consume away, and if you suffer him to run too long, it will never be restored to its pristine state.

The

The Hurle-bone is about the midst of the Buttock, and is very apt to go out of the Socket with a Slip or Strain.

Hoof-swelled, cometh sometimes to young Horses, when you over-ride, or labour them hard in their youth; which makes them to swell in that place, by reason the Blood falling down there, settleth, which if it be not speedily removed, will beget a wet Spaven.

Haw in the Eye, is a Gristle growing between the nether Eye-lid and the Eye, and will put it quite out, if it be not taken in time away. It cometh to him by gross, tough and phlegmatick Humours, which fall from the Head, and knit together, which in the end grow to this Infirmary. The Signs of it are, the watering of the Eye, and unwilling opening of the nether Lid.

Hough-bony, is a round bony swelling like a *Paris Ball*, growing upon the very top or elbow of the Hough, and cometh ever of some stripe or bruise, or by bruising himself in his Stall, by offering to strike at the Horse that standeth next him, and striking against the Bar that divides them.

Hoof-loosened, is a dissolution or dividing of the Horn or Coffin of the Hoof from the Flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if the parting be round about the Cronet, it cometh by means of Foundering; if it be in part, then it cometh by some prick of Channel-Nail, Quitter-bone, Retreat, Gravelling or Cloying, or such like thing. The Signs to know it are these, When loosened by Foundering, it will break first in the Fore-part of the Cronet right against the Toes, because the Humour doth always covet to descend towards the Toe; but if it proceeds from pricking, gravelling and such like cankered thing, then the Hoof will loosen round about, equally even at the first; but if it proceeds from a Quitter-bone, or hurt upon the Cronet, then the Hoof will break right above the place that is grieved, and very rarely be seen to go any further.

Hungry-evil is a great desire to eat, it cometh from some great emptiness or lack of Meat, when the Horse is even at the pinch, and almost Chap-fallen; it comes many times by Cold outwardly taken, sometimes by travelling in Frost and Snow, and in barren places, which outward Cold maketh the Stomach cold, whereby all the inward Powers are become weakned. The Signs to know it, are a Change and Alteration in his feeding, having lost all temperance,

perance, and snatching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger.

I.

Imposthumes are swellings which come several ways, either by gathering of filthy corrupt Humours in any Part or Member of the Body, making that to swell, which grows at last to an Inflammation, and breaks out into foul, matter and running Sores, which proceed from corrupt Food or bad Blood, and at the first very hard and sore: there are two sorts of them, hot and cold; you must first ripen them before they can be healed; sometimes they are occasioned by some Blow upon the Ears, or Bruise by a hempen Halter, or of Cold taken in the Head, which remaining in the Body, make their Passage through the Ears: It is known by much burning, and his unwillingness to be handled about that place.

K.

Kibed-heels is a Scab breeding behind, somewhat above the nether Joint, growing overthwart the Fet-lock. It cometh many ways, sometimes being bred in cold Grounds, sometimes for lack of good dressing after he hath been ridden or laboured in foul ways; the dirt sticking to his Legs, fretteth his Skin and maketh scabby Rifts, which are very painful to the Horse, causing his Legs to swell, especially in Winter and Spring-time, and then he goeth very stiffly. What cures the Scratches cures this Disease.

Kernels under the Caul of a Horse, come by Heats and Colds, which bring the Glanders; I refer you therefore to the Cure of the Glanders.

L.

Lask, Looseness or *open Flux* of a Horse's Body, bringing him to extream weakness and faintness; it cometh sometimes from Cold, sometimes by Nature's being offended with too many cholerick Humours, descending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts, sometimes by drinking too much cold Water presently after he hath had his Provender, for by that means the Water getting to the Provender, causeth it to swell and breed Crudities, and ill Humours in the Stomach, which convey themselves down into the Guts; sometimes by sudden travelling or hastily running upon a full Stomach, before his Meat be well digested, sometimes by

by drinking cold Water when he is too hot, and not presently warmed in his Belly, sometimes by licking up a Feather, or Hen's-dung, with many other ways which will occasion it: stop it not too suddenly, for Nature it self is the best Physician; but if you find he hath had it so long, that Nature is become weak and feeble, then you are to seek out for some Remedy for the Cure of it.

Lampas is a swelling that proceeds from abundance of Blood, resorting to the first Furrow of the Mouth, joining to the Fore-teeth, which will cause the said Furrow to swell as high as his Gathers, which will hinder his Feeding, and make him let fall his Meat half chewed, out of his Mouth again. This is a natural Infirmary which every Horse hath first or last, and every common Smith can cure.

Ligs are little *Pustles* or *Bladders* within a Horse's Lips. There are many other Diseases that belong to the Mouth, *viz.* *Bloody Rists*, *Gigs*, *Camery*, *Inflammation*, *Tongue-hurt*, *Barbs*; and are all cured by this one Receipt here under-written, except the *Lampas*, which every Country Smith can cure, *viz.* Take Wormwood and Shirwit, and bruise them in a Mortar, with a little Honey, and anoint the Sores with it, and they will do well.

Leprosy is a cankered Manginess spreading over all the Body, which is very infectious, cometh of abundance of Melancholy, corrupt and filthy Blood, infected by Surfeits taken by over hard Riding or Labour. The Signs to know this Disease are; the Horse will be all mangy and scurfy, full of Scabs and raw places about his Neck, and not very pleasant to look on, and be always rubbing and scrubbing.

Lice cometh of Poverty, and will breed most about the Ears, Neck and Tail, and over all the Body; they may be caught also by running abroad in the Winter in Woods, or places full of Trees; for the dropping of the Trees falling upon his lean and thin Body breed them, sometimes he may catch them from another Horse: you may know when he hath them by this; he will rub and scrub himself against Walls and Posts, and he will be always poor when he hath them.

Low-worm is a Disease hardly known from St. *Anthony's* Fire, or the *Shingles*, having the very self-same Symptoms. 'Tis a Worm that is bred in the Back of a Horse, between the Skin and the Bone, and runneth along the Neck to the Brain; and when it cometh to touch the Panicle thereof, it maketh him stark mad: 'tis known by these Signs, *viz.* After

After a long and wearisome Journey, he will be Sick, and fall from his Meat, and stretch himself out at length with his Feet, bending his Back, and straining to Piss, but cannot; but if he doth stale, it is but little, and that in his Sheath, which in time will make him so mad, that he will gnaw the Manger, Rack-staves, or any thing within his reach. Some Farriers take this Disease for the *Staggers*, and so kill many a good Horse. The Cure hereof being not put down in the Diseases, I have here inserted it. Take six Heads of Garlick clean peeled, of Acrement a quarter of a Pound, Rue, and that Tormentil that beareth the yellow Flower, of each one Pound, bruise them in a Mortar together, and put so much Whitewine to them, that after they be strained, there may be of the Juice and Wine two Quarts; then after you have blooded him in the Tail pretty well, divide this Pottle of Liquor into six Parts, giving him one Part every Morning, till he hath taken all of them, and this will perfectly cure him, *vid. St. Anthony's-Fire.*

Lungs, the Diseases of them come from Heats and Colds, and by hard Riding, which let run too long without Cure, causeth them to putrefy, corrupt and rot. You may know this Infirmary by the beating of his Flanks, and working of his Ribs, but most chiefly when he cougheth, and then the more slowly they do beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the Disease; he will draw his Wind short, and but little at once, and groan often, especially when he lieth down and riseth up again; out of his Nose will issue forth Corruption, and he will seem to shew something between his Teeth.

Lethargy or *Sleeping-Evil*, is most incident to dun and white Horses; it proceedeth from Phlegm, cold and moist Humours which getting into the Brain, does so stupify and benumb it, which bringeth this Sleepiness upon him, and is the true Sign of this Disease.

Lunatick-Eyes look sometimes as if they were covered with White, and sometimes they will look clear, and alter their Colour according to the Moon, from which they take their Name, *vid. Moon-Eyes.*

M.

Mattering of the Yard, *vid. Yard Mattered.*

Melancholy is called the *Staggers*, but the true Name thereof is the *Stavers*, *vid. Stavers.*

†

Ii

Mon-

Mon-foundred cometh from the *French*, which signifieth Molten-Grease, or Foundering in the Body.

Moon-Eyes bear that Name, by reason that at certain times of the Moon they will seem very well, and at other times they seem covered over with a white Phlegm, which is the worst sort of Blindness that is, and is not to be cured; for the more you tamper with it, the worse it is, therefore my advice is, that you let them alone, for they will go in and out till they go quite out. It may be called a *Lunatick-Eye*, which cometh several ways, sometimes from the Sire or Dam, sometimes from evil Humours residing in the Head, which descend down to the Eyes, and they come also by hard riding, or labouring, which the poor Beast was put to perform more than he was able.

Mallender is a kind of dry and hard Scab, which hath Chinks and Chops in it, and hard, stubborn and long standing Hairs, like to Hogs-Bristles, growing about it, upon the inward part of the Fore-legs, just against the Bending of the Knee. It is an evil Sorrance which cankereth and corrupteth the Flesh, and makes him go lame at first going out: It cometh to him several ways, sometime by corrupt Blood, by hard Labour, or Riding, sometimes for lack of clean keeping and rubbing; and usually those Horses that have most Hair upon their Legs, as the *Flanders* and *Friestland* Horses have, are most subject to this Disease.

Mange is a most infectious and filthy Disease, which will make him rub and scrub against every thing he can lean against, and if you remove not his fellow Creatures that are in company with him, at home or abroad, they are subject to catch it from him. The Signs to know it are, his Hair will stare, and in many places peel away from his Skin, and a Scurf will arise thereon. It cometh sometimes by Over-heats and Colds, by hard Riding or Labour, whereby the Blood is corrupted; or by feeding upon unwholesome Meat.

Mourning of the Chine, in plain *English* is no other than the Glanders, which hath its first Source and Origin from Heats and Colds, by hard Riding or Labour, which being let run too long, cometh to this filthy Disease, the Glanders; which in time doth waste the Liver, and putrefy the Lungs, which will in conclusion kill the poor Creature, if not taken in time.

Those that have opened a Horse that hath died of this Disease, have found the Pith and Chine sound and good, and

and therefore this Malady in reason cannot be called the Mourning of the Chine, but the Glanders.

Madness or *Frenzy* is divided into four Passions. The first is, when some bad Humours or Blood getteth into the Panicle of the Brain, but in one part only, which quickly makes him dull in Spirit and Sight; which you will know by this Sign, he will turn round like one that is giddy; the reason is, because the outward part of the Head is grieved only. The second is, when the Venom of such bad Blood doth infect the middle of the Brain, then he becometh frantick, leaping against Walls or any thing else that standeth in his way. The third is, when corrupt and bad Blood filleth the Veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as much the Heart as Brain, then he is said to be mad. The fourth and last is, when the Blood infecteth not only the Brain and Heart, but even the Panicles also, and then he is said to be stark mad, which you may know by biting at every Man that comes near him, and by gnawing the Manger and Walls about him, and at last he will be so very mad that he will tear his own Skin in pieces.

Malt-long or *Malt-worm* is a cankerous Sorrhance about the Hoof, just upon the Cronet, which will break out into Knobs and Branches, which will run with waterish sharp Lye, or Humour, which will venom the whole Feet; which are Signs enough to know them.

Molten-Grease see *Grease-Molten*.

Mules, vid. *Scratches*, for what cures them cures these.

Mellet is a dry Scab that grows upon the Heel of the Forefeet.

N.

Navel-gall is a Bruise on the Back, or Pinch of a Saddle behind, which if let alone too long, is difficult to cure. 'Tis called a Navel-gall, because the Hurt is right against the Navel.

Night-Mare is a melancholy Blood that doth oppress the Heart, making him sweat more in the night than in the day, which doth take from him his rest; the way to know it is, by taking notice of him in the Morning, whether he sweats in the Flanks, Neck and short Ribs, which if he do, you may be sure that he hath it.

O.

Over-reach is a painful Swelling of the master-Sinew, which

is by reason that he doth over-reach and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder Foot, which maketh him to halt and go lame. *vid.* Attaint upper and nether.

P.

Pissing of Blood cometh several ways, sometimes by riding him too hard, by labouring him beyond his Strength, or by carrying too heavy a Burden upon his Back; sometimes it cometh by reason of some Vein broken in his Body, and then clean Blood will issue forth many times; sometimes it cometh by some Stone fretting upon the Kidneys, by hard Riding or Labour. And lastly, it cometh by journeying him in Winter, being newly taken up from Grass, and travelling him before he is thoroughly cleansed from his Grass, which cannot be well under a Week or two. Your Eyes are the Witnesses of this Disease, for he will piss Water like to Blood.

Poll-evil, is a Fistula growing betwixt the Ears and the Poll, or Nape of the Neck, which proceedeth from evil Humours that approach unto that place, or else of some Blow or Bruise, for that is the tenderest part of all the Head, and therefore soonest offended; which rude Carters do little consider of, whilst in their Fury they beat them upon the Head with their Whip-stocks, and therefore no Horses more subject to this Disease than they: This Disease cometh most in the Winter. The Sign to know it, is the Swelling of the place, which in process of time will break of it self, rotting more inward than outward; therefore 'tis more dangerous, if not cured in time.

Pursiness or Shortness of Breath cometh two ways, Natural and Accidental; Natural is, when he is Cock-throttled, for that his Throttle or Wind-pipe being so long, that he is not able to draw it in and out, with so much ease and pleasure as other Horses do that are loose throttled, for that the Wind-pipe being too strait that should convey his Breath to his Lungs, and vent it forth again at his Nose, makes him pant and fetch his breath thus short: likewise, when his Pipe is too much filled with Fat or other phlegmatick Stuff, which suffocates him, and makes his Lungs labour the more: It cometh, secondly, by *Accident*, when he is hard ridden after a full Stomach, or presently after Drinking, which causeth phlegmatick Humours to distil out of the Head into the Wind-pipe, and so fall upon the Lungs, where they rest and congeal, &c. It cometh also

also by Heats, Colds, Glanders, and the like; and brings with it a great many Inconveniencies, *viz.* Dulness and Heaviness in Travel, being subject to sweat much, and ready to fall down upon every little Strain.

Prick'd, is called *Accloyed*, *Cloyed* or *Retrait*, &c. Most of which Names are borrowed of the *French*, and signify no more then a *Prick*, by the negligence or unskilfulness of the *Farrier*, in driving of the Nails, by their weakness, ill pointing or breaking of them; which if not presently taken out, will in time break out into a foul Sore. You may know it by his going lame; but if you desire to know it more certainly, pinch him round his Hoof with a pair of Pincers, and when you come to the grieved place, he will shrink in his Foot: Or, you may try where he is prick'd by throwing Water upon his Hoof, for that place where he is prick'd will be sooner dry than any of the rest; and many other Signs there are which your Ingenuity may find out.

Planet-struck or *Shrow-running*, is a deprivation of Feeling or Motion, not stirring any of his Members, but remaining in the same Form as when he was first stricken. It cometh to a Horse several ways, sometimes by Choler and Phlegm super-abundantly mixt together; sometimes from melancholy Blood, being a cold and dry Humour, which oppresseth and maketh sick the hinder part of the Brain; sometimes of extraordinary Heat or Cold, or raw Digestion, striking into the Veins suddenly; or lastly, from extreme Hunger, occasioned by long Fasting; the Signs whereof you have had already, *viz.* Numbness and want of Motion. If this Disease cometh of Heat, you may know it by the hotness of his Breath, and the free fetching of his Wind; If it proceed from Cold, then you may know it by his Stuffing and Poze in his Head.

Palsy or *Apoplexy* is a Disease of depriving the whole Body of Sense, and which is called a general Palsy, and hath no Cure. But when he is deprived but in some Part and Member of his Body, (and most commonly it is in his Neck) then 'tis called a particular Palsy: The Signs to know it are; He will go grovelling and side-ways like a Crab, carrying his Neck as if it were broken, and going crookedly with his Legs, beating his Head against the Walls, and yet forsaking not his Meat nor Drink, and his Provender seemeth moist and wet. It proceeds from foul Feeding in fenny Grounds, which breed gross and tough

Humours, which joining with Crudities and raw Digestion, oppresses the Brain, or it cometh by means of some Wound or Blow given him upon the Temples.

Pearl, Pin or Web, or any unnatural Spot or thick Film over the Eye, cometh by some Stroke or Blow given him, or from descent of the Sire or Dam. The Pearl is known by a little round, thick white Spot like a Pearl (from which it hath its Name) growing on the Sight of the Eye.

The Pains is a kind of ulcerous Scab full of fretting matterish Water, and breedeth in the Pasterns betwixt the Fetlock and the Heel, which cometh for want of clean keeping and good rubbing, after the Horse hath been journied, by means whereof the Sand and Dirt remaining in the Hair, fretteth the Skin and Flesh, which cometh to a Scab, and therefore those Horses that have long Hair, and are rough about the Feet, as the *Friesland* and *Flanders* Horses are, are soonest infected with this Disease, if they be not the cleaner kept. The Signs be these; His Legs will swell with the vehemency and heat that is caused from the Venom and filthy Water that issueth from the Scabs; for it is so sharp and scalding, that it will scald off the Hair, and breed Scabs so far as it goeth. What cures the Scratches cures these.

Pestilence, Plague, Murrain or Garget, is all one Disease, which is very infectious and contagious: It cometh to a Horse many ways; sometimes by over-hard Riding or Labour, whereby a Horse is surfeited; sometimes by the Contagiousness of the Air, and evil Vapours and Exhalations that spring out of the Earth, after great and sudden Floods; or coming into fenny or marshy Ground, that hath always been bred in pure and wholesome Air. The Signs to know this Disease are these: 'Twill come suddenly upon him, but after three or four days drooping, he will swell under the Roots of his Ears, like the swelling of the Vives, and under the Caul, and 'twill come up to his Cheeks through the Malignancy thereof, and become very hard; he will forsake his Meat, and be very sleepy, hanging down his Head in the Manger; his Eyes will be yellowish, he will brethe short, which will be very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will break forth in a Carbuncle or Boyl in his Groin, as big as a Goose-Egg, and his Stones will hang limp and flaging, but not always. If you cannot recover him, but that he dieth, bury him very deep, that no Scent, if possible, may remain on him to infect the rest.

Q.

Quinsey is no other than a fore Throat, which if not carefully taken in time, will soon put a period to his Days. It cometh sometimes by cold and phlegmatick Humours settling there; or for want of Bleeding, when he is over-run therewith.

Quarters false, vide false Quarters.

Quick-scab doth putrefy and corrupt the Blood and Flesh, and at last breaketh forth into a loathsome and infectious Disease, much like unto the Mange or Leprosy. It cometh by a Surfeit taken by over Riding or hard Labour: It is called a Quick-scab, because it runneth from one Member to another; for sometimes it will be in the Neck, and at other times in the Breast, sometimes in the Mane, and then another time in the Tail.

Quitter-bone is a hard round Swelling upon the Cronet, between the Heel and the Quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the Foot. It cometh to a Horse many ways; sometimes by Gravel underneath the Shoe, sometimes by some Bruise, Stub, prick of a Nail, or the like; which being neglected, will impostumate and break out about the Hoof; it cometh sometimes also by evil Humours which descend down to that place, whereof that *Quitter-bone* springeth.

R.

Red-Water is that which issueth from any Wound, or sore Ulcer, which so long as that remains in them, it doth so poison them, that till it get out, they are not to be cured.

Ring-bone cometh two ways; naturally or accidentally; naturally from the Stallion or Mare; accidentally by some blow of a Horse, or any other accident, the Pain whereof breedeth a viscous slimy Humour, like a Gristle upon the top of the Cronet, which sometimes goeth round about it, and resorting to the Bones which are of their own Nature, cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some Bone, which, in process of time cometh to a Bone. The Signs to know it are, There will be a hard Swelling round about the Cronet of the Hoof, which will be higher than any place of it; besides, his Hair will stare and be brittle, and 'twill make him halt.

Rottenness is to have his inward Part, *viz.* his Liver, Lights and Lungs so wasted and consumed, that he is not to be recovered by Art.

Rhumatick or *waterish Eyes*, cometh by the Flux of Humours, distilling from the Brain, and sometimes by some Stripe received; the Signs to discover it are, The continual watering of the Eye, and his close shutting of his Lids together, accompanied sometimes with a little Swelling.

Rupture, Incording or Burstness is, when the Rim or thin Film or Caul, which holdeth up his Entrails, be broken or over-strained, or stretched, that the Guts fall down either into his Cod or Flank, which cometh several ways; either by some Stripe or Blow, or by some Strain in leaping over a Hedge, Ditch or Pale, or by teaching him to bound when he is too young, or by forcing him when he is full to run beyond his Strength; or by your sudden stopping him upon uneven Ground, whereby he straddling and slipping his hinder Feet, teareth the Rim of his Belly: The Signs to know it are these; He will forsake his Meat, and stand shoring and leaning on that side that he is hurt; and if you search on that side with your Hand, betwixt his Stone and his Thigh upwards to the Body, and somewhat above the Stone, you shall find the Gut it self big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other side you shall find no such thing.

Rat-Tails is a most venomous Disease, and not much unlike to the Scratches of a Horse. It cometh to him several ways, sometimes by too much rest, and the Keeper's Negligence in not rubbing and dressing him well; and by reason of too much Rest and good keeping without Exercise, the Blood corrupting in his Body falls down into his Legs, which causeth this Disease.

Retrait is no other than a Prick in the Foot by a Nail, *vid.* Prick'd.

Rheum cometh by Cold, which maketh his Teeth loose, and seem long by the shrinking up of his Gums, which will spoil his Feeding, that all the Meat will lie in Lumps in his Jaws, *vid.* Colds.

Rot is a Disease so like unto a *Dropsey*, that it is hard to distinguish it from the same: Mistake not this Disease for *Rottenness*; for if he be rotten, his Liver and Lights are so putrefied, that they are not to be recovered: But this *Rot* is of the Nature of a Sheep's Rot, that is said to be rotten; when his Liver is become foul and tainted, yet we do

do eat his Flesh, and affirm it to be good Meat, so that the Sheep is not rotten, but hath a Disease call'd the *Rot*: It cometh several ways, sometimes to young Horses feeding in wet or fenny Grounds, and sometimes when they are over-heated in their breaking, whereby their Blood is inflamed, putrefied and corrupted, causing Obstructions in the Liver, which cause Putrefaction, and so Knots and Pustles do engender therein, which breedeth this Disease. The Signs are these; He will lose his Stomach, pant much, beat and heave in his Flanks, swell under his Belly, his Hair will stare, his Legs swell, burn and dent when you press it with your Finger, and his Coat will not shed at those usual times as other Horses do, and will be so faint and feeble that he will lose his Courage and Mettle.

Running of the Reins, vide Mattering of the Yard.

S.

Shedding of the Seed cometh sometimes from abundance and rankness of the Seed, sometimes by Strains, or putting too heavy a Load upon his Back; and sometimes by weakness of the Stones and Seed-Vessels, not being able to retain the Seed until it be digested and thickned.

Strain or Sprain, is when the Sinews are stretched beyond their Strength, by reason of some Slip or Wrench.

Shackle-gall is on the Pasterns, *vide Gall.*

Surbatine is a beating of the Hoof against the Ground; it cometh sometimes by means of evil Shooing, lying too flat to his Feet; sometimes by travelling a Horse too young before his Feet are hardned, which many times doth occasion a Foundering; sometimes by hardness of the Ground, and high lifting up of the Horse's Feet; and those Horses that are flat footed, their Coffins are so tender and weak, that they be most subject to this Sorrance. The Signs to know it are; He will halt on both his fore Legs, and go stiffly and creeping as though he were half foundred.

Screw is the Nature of a Splint, only the Splint is on the inside of the Knee, and the Screw is on the outside.

Swellings and Tumours come by Heats and Colds, taken by hard Riding, or sore Labour, whereby the Horse being over-much heated, the Grease falleth down and setteth in his Legs and other parts, which grow dry and hard, and breedeth

breedeth Splints, Spavens, Curbs, Ring-bones and the like Sorrhances, which in time are no other things than proper Tumours. Besides, it doth occasion other Knots and Swellings. See the first part for the Cure of them.

Scratches are of several sorts and kinds, and they are called by several Names, *viz.* Crepances, Rats-tails, Mules, Kibes, Pains, &c. being no other than the very Scratches which are certain dry Scabs, Chaps or Riffs, that breed between the Heel and the Pastern-joint, and so goeth many times above the Pastern, even up to the very Hoof of the hinder Legs; but sometimes they are upon all four Legs, though not very common: They proceed several ways, sometimes by dry melancholy Humours which fall down upon his Legs; sometimes by the fuming of his own Dung lying under his Heels, or near him; sometimes by the negligence of the Groom, in not rubbing his Heels well, especially after a Journey or hard Labour, when he brings in his Horse from Water, and doth not rub his Legs and Heels dry from the Sand and Dirt which doth burn and fret them, and so cause Swellings, and those Swellings cause Scratches: Sometimes it cometh by Corruption of the Blood after great Heats and Surfeits, taken sometimes by being bred in fenny, marshy or watry Grounds; and sometimes they come to a Horse after a very great Sicknes taken by Surfeit: Or lastly, by over-hard Riding or Labour, whereby his Grease is molten, which falleth down and settleth in his Pasterns and Feetlocks; which doth occasion this Sorrhance. The Signs to know it are these; The staring, dividing and curling of the Hair; it beginneth first with a dry Scab upon his Pastern-joints, like unto the Chaps or Chinks, and are in several shapes and forms, sometimes long, sometimes down-right, sometimes overthwart, which will cause the Legs to swell, and be very gourdy, and run with fretting, waterish, matterative, and offensive Stuff, which will make him go so lame at the first setting out, that he will be hardly able to go. 'Tis good to clip away his long shaggy Hair from his Pasterns (if he have any) which will in some measure prevent them, or at least curb them.

Sit-fast, or *Stick-fast*, is a hard Knob, which is as hard as a Horn, that grows in a Horse's Skin, under the Saddle, fast to his Flesh, which cometh by a Saddle-Gall or Bruise, which not imposthumating, the Skin falleth dead, and looketh like a hard piece of Leather.

A Surfeit is occasioned by Heats and Colds; The Signs to know it are, He will not thrive, but be gaunt-bellied, and dried up in his Body, and cannot cough but gruntingly; his Coat will stand staring, and will not lie smooth; sometimes his Cods will swell: And when it falleth out of his Body into his Legs, they will swell also and stink, by reason of the thin, moist, white, yellow, thick and stinking Water or Matter that flows from them, which will make them so stiff, that he will not be able to go over the Threshold.

Not Staling or Dunging cometh several ways, sometimes by being too high kept, and but little Exercise given him; therefore Exercise is as wholesome for a Horse's Health, as good Food is nourishing to his Body; sometimes it cometh when you suddenly travel him, when he hath been newly taken from Grass, before his Body is emptied of it, and dry Meat put into the room thereof. The Sign to know this Grief is, He will lie down and tumble with extreme Pain, as if he had the Bots.

Staling of Blood, vid. Pissing of Blood.

Sellander is a kind of Scab, and is the same with the Mallender, only the difference is, that the Mallender breedeth upon the bending of the Knee, on the inside of the Fore-legs, and the Sellander is bred on the bending of the Hough in the Legs behind, proceeding both of like Causes, and requiring like Cure.

Stinking Breath is occasioned by means of corrupted and infected Lungs; and you may know it by the Smell. *vid. Lungs infected.*

A Splint in the beginning is a very Gristle, and will, if let run too long, come to be as hard as a Bone, and will be greater or smaller according to the cause of its coming, sometimes as big as a Walnut, sometimes as big as a Hazelnut; it is found for the most part upon the inside of the Shank between the Knee and the Foot-lock Joint, and is very hard and difficult to cure; it is so painful to him, that it will not only cause him to halt, trip, stumple, but also fall in his Travel: It cometh to him by means of too hard Travel, or sore Labour, whilst he is very young, or by oppressing him with too heavy a Burden, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs are offended; it cometh also Hereditary, from the Sire or Dam being troubled therewith; and is known by the sight and feeling, for if you pinch it with your Thumb and Finger, he will shrink up his Leg.

Stumbling

Stumbling cometh two ways; First, Naturally, Secondly, Accidentally: Naturally, by reason that the Sinews of the Fore-legs are somewhat strait, so that he is not able to use his Legs with that freedom and nimbleness he should; and to cure him of this Disease, is to cut him of the Cords, viz. a Slit made upon the top of his Nose, and with your Cornet raise up the great Sinews, and cut them asunder, and heal it up again with some good Salve, and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, that he will seldom or never trip more. Secondly, Accidentally, by either Splint or Wind-galls, or by being foundred, prick'd, stubbed, gravelled, Sinew-strained, hurt in the Shoulder or Withers, or by carelessly setting him up when he is too hot, which maketh him go very stiff, which Stiffness causes Stumbling.

Stavers or Stagers, is a Giddiness in the Head, which when it seizeth the Brain, cometh to Madness; it is caused several ways; sometimes by corrupt Blood, or gross and rough Humours oppressing the Brain, and is very common to most Horses, and very dangerous if not taken in time: sometimes it cometh by turning him out too soon to Grass before he be cold, which by hanging down his Head to feed, stirreth and maketh thin Humours that fall down to the Head, and so by degrees seizeth the Brain, which bringeth this mortal Sicknes; it cometh also by sore Riding and hard Labour; which inflames and putrefies the Blood, and disorders the whole Body; The Signs of this Disease are these, Dimness of sight, Reeling and Staggering of the Horse, who for very Pain will beat his Head against the Walls, and thrust it into his Litter, forsake his Meat, and have waterish Eyes.

Swelled Legs cometh to a Horse several ways, sometimes by hard Riding or sore Labour when he is too fat, and carelessly putting him to grass, or setting him up in the Stable too hot, whereby he taketh cold which causeth the Blood, Grease and Humours to fall down into his Legs; and so cause them to swell, sometimes it cometh by long standing in the Stable, when the Planks where his Fore-feet stand higher than his Hinder-feet doth, which uneasy Posture causeth the Blood to settle in the Hinder-Legs, which causeth them to swell.

Stiffed, this Malady cometh to a Horse Accidentally, viz. either by some Strain in Leaping, or by a Slip in the Stable

ble, or in his Travel, or by some Stroke or Blow with a Horse, which either puts out the Bone, or much hurts or strains the Joint: The Sign to know it is, by the dislocated Bone bearing it self out, which will make him grow lame, and unwilling to touch the Ground, but only with his Toe, till it be put in again.

Stone cometh many ways, sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, occasioned by gross and bad Humours, stopping the Water-Conduit, or principally by violent Labour, or immoderate Riding; sometimes it cometh by foul Matter descending from the Liver and Spleen, which falling down into the Kidneys and Bladder, settleth there; whereby there groweth in the Mouth of the Conduit, certain hard inflamed Knobs, which stop his Urine, and cause him to stale with great pain and trouble, by reason the Sinews and Pozes about the Neck of the Bladder are benumbed, which taketh away the sense and feeling of the Bladder, sometimes it cometh by keeping a Horse in his Travel too long from staling, for his Water being over-heated by Exercise doth conglutinate and become so viscous and thick; that Nature cannot discharge it self so freely as it should do, and being pent up too long in his Kidneys, engendereth Gravel, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling down into the Conduits, by mixture of Phlegm and gross Humours, is there brought by Conglutination, to become a hard Stone, which stoppeth the Passage of the Urine, so as he will not be able to piss or stale. The Sign to know this Distemper needs no more than this, That he would fain piss, but cannot, and that many times drop by drop.

String-halt is a sudden Twitching or Snatching up of his Hinder Leg much higher than the other, and cometh most an end to the best mettled Horses. It cometh by taking Cold suddenly after hard Riding or sore Labour, especially if you wash him when he is too hot, which will chill his Blood, and so stupify and benumb his Sinews, that it takes away the Sense and Feeling of that Member.

Strangury, or *Strangullion*, is when a Horse is provoked to stale often, and voids nothing but a few Drops: It cometh several ways, sometimes by hard Riding or sore Labour, which heats and makes sharp the Urine; sometimes by hot Meats and Drinks; sometimes by Ulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Imposthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which being broken, the Matter falleth down into

into the Bladder, and with the sharpness thereof, causeth a continual provocation of Pissing, which will be with such pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat about his Tail as he pisseth.

The Strangle is not, as some suppose, a Quinsey, but an Inflammation of the Throat, proceeding from some cholerick or bloody Fluxion, which cometh out of the Branches of the Throat-veins into those parts, and there breedeth some hot Inflammation, stirred up by a hard cold Winter, or by Cold taken after hard Riding or Labour. 'Tis a great and hard Swelling between the Horse's nether Chaps, upon the Roots of his Tongue, and about his Throat, which Swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop his Wind-pipe, and so strangle or choak him: The Signs to know this Disease are, His Temples of his Head will be hollow, his Tongue will hang out of his Mouth, his Head and Eyes will swell, and the Passage of his Throat be so stopped that he can neither eat nor drink, and his Breath will be very hot.

Swaying in the Back cometh several ways; Sometimes by some great Strain, Slip or heavy Burden; sometimes by turning him too hastily round: His Grief commonly lieth upon these kind of Strains and Wrenches, and the lower part of the Back below his short Ribs, and directly between his Fillets. You may perceive it by the reeling and rolling of his hinder parts in his going, and being ready to fall to the Ground by his frequent swaying backward and side-long; and when he is down, 'tis a great deal of trouble for him to rise again.

Shoulder-pinch'd cometh either by labouring or straining him too young, or by putting too great a Burden upon his Back. You may know it by the Narrowness of the Breast, and by the Consumption of the Flesh of the Shoulders, in so much as the fore-part of the Shoulder-bone will stick out, and be higher than the Flesh. And if it be of a long standing, he will be very hollow upon the Brisket, towards the Arm-holes, and will go wider beneath at the Feet, than above at the Knees. The Cure I set down here, because it is not in the place of Cures: 'Tis this, Give him a slit with a sharp Knife an Inch long, upon both sides, an Inch under the Shoulder-bone; then with a large Quill put into the slit, blow up first one Shoulder, and then the other, as big as you can possibly, even up to the Withers, and with your Hand strike the Wind equally into every place

place of the Shoulders, and when they be both fall, beat all the windy places, with a good Hazel-wand over all the Shoulder; then with a flat Slice of Iron loosen the Skin within from the Flesh: then rowel the two Slits or Cuts with two round Rowels made of the upper Leather of an old Shoe, with a hole in the midst, that the Corruption may issue forth; and let the Rowels be three Inches broad, and put in flat and plain within the Cut; then make a Charge and lay upon the same. Look in the Table for a Charge, and there you may take your Choice.

Shoulder-wrench or *Strain* cometh several ways, sometimes by turning or stopping too suddenly upon some uneven Ground, sometimes by running hastily out at some Door, sometimes by slipping or sliding in the Stable or abroad, sometimes by the stroak of another Horse, and sometimes by fall on the Planks or slippery Ground. You shall perceive it by his trailing his Leg upon the Ground close after him.

Shoulder-splaining or *Shoulder-torn*, cometh by some dangerous sliding, either abroad or at home, whereby the Shoulder parteth from the Breast, and so leaves an open Rist, not in the Skin, but in the Flesh and Film next under the Skin; which maketh him so lame that he is not able to go. You may know it by the trailing of his Leg after him in his going.

Shoulder-pight is, when the Shoulder-point or Pitch of the Shoulder is displaced by some great Fall, Rack or Strain. You may know it by this; His Shoulder-point will stick out further than his Fellow; and besides, he will halt downright.

Spaven-blood or *Bone*, vid. *Blood* or *Bone-Spaven*.

Shrow-running, vid. *Planet-Struck*.

T.

Tongue-hurt cometh by accident, or with a Bit, Halter or the like.

Tetter, *Flying-worm* or *Ring-worm*, is a very evil Sorrhance, which runneth up and down the Skin of a Horse's Body, from whence it bears its Name: It cometh to him several ways; sometimes by Heat in the Blood, which engendreth a sharp and hot Humour; sometimes by bad and foul feeding: It is most commonly found in his Rump, which runneth down his Joints till it comes into his Tail, and if it continue there long it will turn to a Canker; But yet sometimes it will settle upon some fleshy part of his Body,
Walls

which will so trouble him with itching and rubbing against Walls and Posts, that he will bring away the Hair, yea, and the Skin and Flesh with his Teeth, if he can come at it, so violent is his Itching. You may know it by the falling away of the Hair, by its continual rubbing, but if it get into the Joint between the top of the Rump and the Tail then it is known by a Scab, which you may feel with your Finger, and if you scrape or pick it away, there will come out of it by little and little a thin Water, which being let run too long, will in time run into his Tail, and become a Canker, as I said before.

Trunchions are Worms in shape, short and thick, and of a pretty bigness, which have black and hard Heads. *vid.* more for *Bots*: and there you may find all the kinds of them that do engender in a Horse's Body.

V.

Vives, Avives or Fives, are all one Disease: They are certain flat Kernels, much like unto Bunches of Grapes, which grow in a Cluster close knotted together in the grieved place. They center from the Ears, and creep downwards between the Chap and the Neck of the Horse toward the Throat; and when they come to inflame, they will swell, and not only be painful to the Horse, but prove mortal by stopping his Wind, unless you take a speedy course for the Cure of him: 'Tis commonly Rankness of Blood that is the Cause of this Infirmary. When you go about the Cure of them, have a care you touch them not with your Fingers, for that will venom them.

W.

Wind-broken, or Broken-wind, cometh to a Horse, when you let him stand long in the Stable without Exercise, and with foul Food, whereby gross and thick Humours are drawn into his Body so abundantly, that sticking to the hollow places of the Lungs they stop up his Wind-pipe, that the Wind cannot get backward nor forward: sometimes it cometh to a Horse when you run him off his Wind, when he is very fat and foul: You may know it by his heaving and drawing together of his Flanks, and by blowing wide his Nostrils.

Wart or spungy Excrescence growing near to the Eye, doth come from condensed Phlegm residing there, which in time causeth the Eye, either to consume or to grow little, if it be not remedied.

A. Wen

A Wen is a hard rising out of the Flesh, like a Tumor and Swelling, and is of several sizes, sometimes great, sometimes small; some are painful, and some are not painful: They proceed from gross and vitious Humours, binding together in some sick part of the Body, but most commonly by some Stroke, Bruise, Blow, or a Stone thrown at that place. It is outwardly Flesh, but towards the Root it is matterative.

Wind-galls are Bladders full of corrupt Jelly, which being let forth is thick, and of the Colour of the Yolk of an Egg; they are sometimes great, and sometimes small, and grow upon each side of the Fet-lock Joints upon all four Legs, and are so painful to him, especially in the Summer-season, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that they make him not only halt downright, but sometimes fall: They come for the most part from extream Labour and Heat, whereby the Humours being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the nether Joints, and there settle; which is the Occasion of this evil Malady.

Wolfes-teeth are two small Teeth growing in the upper Jaws, next unto the great grinding Teeth, which are so painful to him, that he cannot endure to chew his Meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his Mouth or to keep it still half-chewed.

Worms, vid. *Bots*. And there you may find all sorts of them that breed in a Horse's Body, and how you may distinguish them one from another.

Wind-cholick, vid. *Cholick*.

Wrench in a Horse's Back, vid. *Flanks*.

The Womb of a Mare is subject to many Diseases, viz. Ascent, Descent, Falling out, Convulsion, Barrenness, Abortion, &c. She may be barren through the Untemperateness of the Womb or Matrix, as for that it is too hot and fiery, or else too cold and moist, or else too dry, or else too short, or too narrow, or having the Neck thereof turned awry, or by means of some Obstruction or Stopping in the Matrix, and that the Mare is too fat, or too lean, or sometimes for want of being well horsed. The Cure is, Take a good Handful of Leeks well stamped in a Mortar, with half a Glass full of Whitewine, then put to it twelve Flies called *Cantharides*, then strain all together with a sufficient quantity of Water, that may serve her therewith two days together, by pouring the same into her Nature with a

Horn or Glister-pipe made of purpose, and at the end of three days next following, offer the Horse unto her that he should cover her, and immediately after she is covered, wash her Nature twice together with cold Water. Or take Nitrum, Sparrows-dung and Turpentine, of each a like quantity wrought together, and made like a Suppository, and put in'o her Nature, which causeth her to desire the Horse, and also to conceive.

Y.

Yellows in a Horse is the same that the Physicians do call the Jaundice in a Man, and there are two kinds of them, the yellow and the black; the yellow being moist, and the black dry. The yellow proceeds from the overflowing of the Gall, occasioned by Choler; and the black cometh from the overflowing of the Spleen, proceeding from Melancholy; which are both dangerous Infirmities, but the black is most deadly and mortal. The yellow is discovered by the changing his natural Colour from white to yellow, viz. The Balls of his Eyes, the Tongue, the inside of his Lips and inward parts of his Nostrils are coloured yellow. The black Jaundice is discovered by the quite contrary Symptoms; for having this Disease, the Whites of his Eyes, Tongue, Mouth and Lips will be of a duskyish Colour, and not so clear and sanguine as before: And though this Distinction of the yellow and black Jaundice be strange to some Farriers, yer it is most certain, that when a Horse dieth of the Yellows, he dieth of the black Yellows; for when it cometh unto the case of Mortality, then are all the inward parts converted to Blackness, and the yellow Substance is clean mastered. The Origin of this Malady cometh principally from unnatural Heats given him by hard Riding or Labour, which inflames the Liver, Gall, Blood and Spleen; which causeth Choler to have the Sovereignty and Dominion over the Humours, which occasions this Disease, which endeth in a sudden Death, if not timely prevented.

Yard mattering or mattering of the Yard, cometh most commonly in covering time, by his over-freeness in spending upon Mares, when the Horse and Mare are both too hot, doth burn them, giving him the Running of the Reins, as we truly term it. The Signs to know it are, The Falling down of yellow Matter from the Yard, and a Swelling at the

the end thereof, and when he stalet, he will do it with a great deal of pain, and cannot well draw up his Yard again. *Yard fallen down, or Falling down of the Yard,* cometh to him for want of strength, to draw it up within the Sheath; so that he lets it hang down between his Legs: It is occasioned either through the weakness of that Member, or by means of some Resolution in the Muscles and Sinews serving the same, caused by some violent Slip, Strain or Stroke in the Back, or else by some great Weariness and Tying.

FINIS.





An Alphabetical
T · A · B · L · E
Of the
Principal Matters
Contained in this
B · O · O · K.

	A. Accidents, <i>Certain Observations and Advantages</i> <i>for every Feeder to observe in many of them.</i>	Page 51
	Accloyed, <i>vid. Prick'd.</i>	
	Accopium, <i>a Drink, with the Virtues and Na-</i> <i>ture of it.</i>	139
	Aches, <i>general Simples good for them.</i>	249
	Adders-Tongue-Ointment <i>to make.</i>	304
	Advancing.	31
	Ægyptiacum <i>to make.</i>	141
	Age of a Horse, <i>the way to know it.</i>	71
	Aloes, <i>an Advertisement about the several sorts of them.</i>	242
	Ambling,	

An Alphabetical TABLE, &c.

Ambling, Observations on it.	54
By the ploughed Field.	55
By the Gallop.	ib.
By Weights.	ib.
In Hand.	56
By the help of Shoes.	ib.
By the help of fine Lifts.	ib.
By the Hand only.	57
By the Tramel.	ib.
The best way for it.	58
Anbury cured.	300
St. Anthony's Fire, general things good for the Cure of it.	250
A particular Receipt for it.	ib.
Anticor, or Heart-sickness, general things good for the Cure of it.	251
Particular Receipts for it.	ib.
Antimony, crude or raw.	248
Apoplexy, vid. Palsy.	
Arman, a Confection, with the Virtues of it.	140
Arraistes.	410
Attaint, Upper or Nether, general things good for the Cure of it.	251
Particular Receipts for it.	ib.

B.

Back, how to be look'd to.	17
Galled to cure.	305
Wrench'd, general things good for the Cure of it.	324
Swayed to cure.	435
Backing.	28
Balls Cordial.	136
Bangle Ears how to help.	136
Barbes cured.	325
Barley boyled very good.	21
A Bath for swelled Cods.	421
For Bones broken and out of joint.	428
Baths of all sorts.	153
Bewitched, general Simples good for it.	170
Binding Simples in general.	332
Biting of a mad Dog, general things good for it.	337
Particular Receipts for it.	ib.
Bitting.	32

An Alphabetical T A B L E

Bleeding, <i>general Simples good to stanch it.</i>	330
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	331
Blisters <i>cured.</i>	424
Blooding, <i>when the best time for it.</i>	22, 81
<i>Observations upon it.</i>	98
<i>Swelling after it to cure.</i>	412
Blood-Spaven, <i>things good for the Cure of it.</i>	280
Bloody-Flux, <i>things good for it.</i>	334
Bones, <i>how many a Horse hath, and where situated.</i>	80
<i>Broken and out of Joint cured.</i>	427
Bone-Spaven <i>cured.</i>	281, 413
Botch <i>in the Groin to cure.</i>	423
Bots or Worms, <i>general things good to destroy them.</i>	327
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	328
Bread, <i>to keep a Horse in heart.</i>	130
<i>Another sort.</i>	ib.
Breath short, <i>general Simples good to help it.</i>	263, 271
Breed.	64
Breeding, <i>the best manner of it.</i>	4
Broken-wind <i>to help.</i>	263, 269
Bruises or Swellings, <i>general Simples good for the Cure of them.</i>	307
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	308
Bruises and Strains, <i>Observations upon the Cure of them.</i>	316
Burning of a Mare.	6
Burning.	99
<i>Actual and Potential.</i>	101
Burning or Scalding, <i>general things good for the Cure of it.</i>	414
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Bursting, <i>things good for it.</i>	422
Buying a Horse, <i>Observations and Advertisements about it.</i>	63
<i>The End for which.</i>	ib.

C.

Camery.	325
Canker <i>cured.</i>	264, 326, 343
Casting and Overthrowing a Horse.	174
Casting forth of his Drink <i>to cure.</i>	417
Caustick.	130, 164
Cauterizing.	99
Cautery <i>Potential.</i>	129
Charges of several sorts.	148
	Choice

of the Principal Matters.

Choice of a Horse for the Wars.	14
For a Prince's Seat.	ib.
For Travel.	ib.
For Hunting.	ib.
For Running.	15
For the Coach.	ib.
For the Pack.	ib.
For the Cart and Plough.	ib.
Cholick or Stone, general Simples good for the Cure of it.	393
Particular Receipts for it.	394
Cleansers.	373
Cleansing a Horse.	76
Clifts and Cracks in the Heels.	433
Cods swelled to cure.	420
Coiling the Stud.	11
Colds and Coughs, general Simples good for the Cure of them.	258
Particular Receipts for them.	259
Colours of a Horse in Verse.	2
A Proverb amongst Husbandmen on them.	3
What are best.	14
Colt-Evil, general things good for the Cure of it.	357
Colts, Taming of them.	10
The time to break them.	ib.
To Saddle and Bridle them.	27
Complexion of a Horse.	83
Compounds, the way of making and keeping all necessary ones.	441
Comprehensive Terms explained.	246
Conglutinating Simples.	166
Consumption, general Simples good for the Cure of it.	258,
	268, 360
Cooling Simples.	180, 431
Copperas-Water.	157
Cordial Powders to make.	141
Cordials and Strengtheners of Nature.	171
Cords, which is Stumbling, general things good for the Cure of it.	370
Corrections from the Voice, from the Rod, &c.	29
Corrosives.	99, 164
Costiveness to help.	415
Covering, Observations upon it.	5
After the Change of the Moon.	ib.
In the Wane.	ib.
	Cramps,

An Alphabetical T A B L E

Cramps, or Convulsions, general things good to help them.	257
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	ib.
Crepances.	286
Crest fallen rais'd up again.	419
Crick in the Neck, general Things good for it.	418
Crown-scab, general Things good for it.	405
Curb to cure.	285

D.

Decoction, what it is.	165
Diahexaple, a Drink, with the Virtues of it.	88
Diapente, a Drink.	88
Diateffaron made.	89
Diseases, An Alphabetical Table of them.	462
Drawers forth of any Stub, Thorn or Nail.	369
Drenches in general.	142
Drenching, Directions for it.	240
Dressing a Horse.	19
<i>Upon Travel and Rest.</i>	22
Driers up of all manner of moist Humours.	370
Drink very comfortable.	148
<i>Operative.</i>	ib.
Drinks given when you neither have Diateffaron, Diahexaple nor Diapente.	90
Dropfy, general things good for it.	395
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Drugs, the Nature of the principal Sorts of them.	105

E.

Ears impostumated, general things good for them.	378
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	ib.
Eating and Drinking not good for a Horse when hot.	17
Election of Horses for War, for Swiftnes, for Travel, and for Draught.	12, 13
<i>How divided.</i>	64
Elements, their Nature.	81
Exercise very good.	19
Eyes, general things good for all the Diseases of them.	310
<i>Particular Receipts good for them.</i>	313

F.

Falling-Evil, general things good for it.	256, 433
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Falling of the Fundament, things good for it.	336
Falling of the Yard to cure.	359
	False.

of the Principal Matters.

False-Quarters cured.	363
Farcin, <i>general things inwardly given for the Cure of it.</i>	349
<i>General things apply'd outwardly for the Cure of it.</i>	350
<i>Particular Receipts for the Cure of it.</i>	ib.
Fattening a lean Horse in 12 or 15 Days.	138
Fattening things in general.	162
Feeding betimes.	17
Feet, <i>not to stop them with Cow-dung till they be cold.</i>	ib.
<i>To be picked after Travel.</i>	21
Feltick, <i>vid.</i> Galled Back.	
Fevers, <i>how to know every Sort one from another.</i>	145
<i>General Simples good for them.</i>	347
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	348
Fig to cure.	424
Fistula to cure.	344
Flanks, <i>vid.</i> Wrench.	
Flaps cured.	460
Flies to keep from coming to a Horse.	401
Foaling in the Winter-Season.	9
Foals, <i>how long to run with their Dams.</i>	8
<i>To know the true Shape, Spirit and Height of them.</i>	10
<i>Weaning of them.</i>	ib.
<i>Dead to expel.</i>	167
Foundering, <i>general things good for it.</i>	292
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Frounce to cure.	325
Frush, <i>running or rotten, to cure.</i>	355.
G.	
Gall overflowed, <i>things good for it.</i>	356
Galled Back to cure.	305
Gallopping.	65
Gangrene cured.	356
Garded or swelled Legs cured.	323
Gelding of Horse-Colts.	6
<i>Of Horses, how, and in what Season best.</i>	134
Gigges to cure.	460
Girts.	17
Glanders, <i>general things good for them.</i>	273
<i>Particular Receipts for them.</i>	ib.
<i>Stopt for present Sale.</i>	455
Glister Laxative.	103
<i>Restraining.</i>	104
<i>For a fat Horse that cannot be kept clean.</i>	ib.
<i>In case of a desperate Sickness.</i>	ib.
	For

An Alphabetical T A B L E

<i>For the Pestilence and all Fevers.</i>	ib.
<i>For the Cholick.</i>	105
Glisters, their Uses.	101
<i>For Coughiness.</i>	103
<i>Advice upon giving of them, and what is to be put into them.</i>	105
<i>What they are.</i>	165
Grass good once a Year, &c.	19
Graveling, general things good for it.	395
Grease-Molten, general things good for it.	396
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
<i>Fallen into the Legs to cure.</i>	ib.
Green Ointments.	156
Gripping of the Guts, general things good for it.	393
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	394
Groom, Care in the Choice of one.	25, 26
Grounds, the Change of them.	4
H.	
Hair made smooth, sleek and soft.	173
<i>Made to grow.</i>	375
<i>Shedding of it to prevent.</i>	374
<i>To take away.</i>	ib.
<i>Made black.</i>	375
<i>Made yellow.</i>	ib.
Halting where to find.	115
<i>To cure.</i>	317
Hardness mollified.	399
Head perfumed.	155
<i>Purged.</i>	ib.
Health, twelve Causes of it.	85
Heam to expel.	170
Heats, four Considerations in giving them.	43
Helps, from the Voice, from the Rod, &c.	29
Hens-dung swallowed to cure.	417
Hide-bound, general things good for it.	277
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	278
Hip-shot.	433
Hoofs, the several kinds of them.	118
<i>Of paring them.</i>	119
<i>All the Imperfections of them cured.</i>	363
Horse-bread very good Food.	18
Horseman's Rule in Verse.	21
Horse-spice how made.	115
	Horse-

of the Principal Matters.

Horse-Treacle, how made.	39
Hough-bony cured.	424
Humours four.	82
Drove back; Dissolved.	372
Dried up.	370, 373
Stopped.	372
Made thin.	ib.
Purged.	373
Hungry-Evil.	417
Hurle-bone out of joint cured.	433

I.

Imposthumations, general Simples good for them.	376
Particular Receipts for them.	377
Impostumated Ears, general things good for them.	378
Particular Receipts for them.	ib.
Inflammations, things good for them.	376
Interfering to cure.	306
Joints, general things good for any Ach or Numbness, Weakness or Swelling in them.	249
Particular Receipts for the same.	ib.
Comforted after Travel, Cold or Pain.	279

K.

Kib'd Heels.	286
Kidneys that have Ulcers in them cured.	391
Bruised, what is good for them.	400
Knitting Simples.	166
Knots in the Joints, general and particular Receipts good for them.	424

L.

Labour moderate, when the Weather is extreme hot or cold.	18
Lameness, Observations for it.	51
Lampas.	325
Lask or Looseness stopt.	332
Legs bathed with cold Water, good to prevent Scabs and Swellings.	21
Swelled, general and particular things good for them.	309, 323
Leprosy or Mange, general things good to kill it.	402
Particular Receipts for it.	ib.
Lessons, for a Horse.	29
Lethargy, general things good for it.	384
	Lice

An Alphabetical TABLE

Lice killed.	401
Lighting at every steep Hill very good.	20
Litter, Wheat-straw and Oat-straw best for it.	18
Liver preserved.	362
Loosening things in general.	162
Lungs, general things good for them.	361
Particular Receipts good for them.	ib.
Lust to provoke.	167
M.	
Mallender, general things good for it.	296
Particular Receipts for it.	297
Mange.	402
Mare, what time best for her to take Horse.	6
How long she goes with Foal.	ib.
How to order her before she be cover'd.	ib.
The manner how to cover her, and to know whether she stands to her Covering.	7
How to order her after she is cover'd.	ib.
How to help her if she cannot Foal.	ib.
How to order her after Foaling.	8
To know whether she be with Foal or not.	13
To make her conceive a Male-Foal.	ib.
Mares, Choice of them.	5, 12
Age of them.	5
How many for one Horse.	7
When fit to take Horse.	9
Barren ones.	11
General Observations concerning them.	ib.
Infirmities of them to cure.	359
Mares-Milk to drink.	20
Mash how made.	109
Mattering of the Yard.	358
Meat and Drink.	51
How a fat Horse is to have it.	20
Medicaments hot.	449
Cold.	451
Purging.	452
Altering.	453
Mellet cured.	423
Members, the principal in a Horse.	77
Milk to cause.	168
Mithridate, how made.	89
Mouthing.	27
	Mouth-

of the Principal Matters.

Mouth-fore, things good for it.	400
Mud-wall, naught to be nigh a Horse.	19
Muzzle, the Use of it.	44

N.

Nature of a Horse in general.	13
Navel-gall, general things good for it.	383
Particular Receipts for it.	ib.
Neighing to prevent, either in Company or when ridden.	136
Night-Mare.	256

O.

Oil of Oats.	147
Of Camomile.	245
Of Spike.	246
Of Mastick.	ib.
Ointments, Salves, Powders and Waters.	149
Green to make.	156
General Simples good to put into them.	301
Old Horses made seemingly young.	135
Ordering a Horse for the Wars.	16
For a Prince or great Lady's Seat.	ib.
Of Travelling Horses at home and abroad.	ib.
Of Hunting Horses.	22
Of Running Horses.	ib. & 38
Of Coach-Horses.	23
Of the Pack and Cart-Horse.	ib.

P.

Pace.	64
Pains, vid. Scratches.	286, 343
Palfy.	256, 384
Perfumes.	155
Phrenzy, things good for it.	385
Physical Observations.	458
Physicking of Horses.	96
Pills of all sorts.	111
Purging.	152
What they are for.	165
Pissing of Blood, general Simples good for it.	340
Particular Receipts for it.	341
Plague, general things good for it.	339
Particular Receipts for it.	340
Planets, their Names.	81
	Planet-

An Alphabetical TABLE

Planet-struck, general Simples good for it.	256
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Plaster to dissolve and take away evil Humours, which shall at any time fall down into the Legs of a Horse.	153
To dry up any superfluous Moisture, and to bind parts loosened.	371
To lay upon the Wound to keep in the Tent or Salve.	411
To dry up any Swelling, &c.	371
Poison of all sorts expelled.	338
Poll-Evil, general things good for it.	342
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	ib.
Potion, what it is.	165
Powder made of Honey and Lime, that will dry up any Wound or Ulcer.	148
Powders Cordial how to make.	141
Prick'd.	431
Proud Flesh to eat away.	298
Provender, what things good to strew amongst it.	309
<i>More Observations concerning it.</i>	19
Purgation for a Horse that is sick of Grease or Costiveness.	412
Purgations and their several Uses.	108
Purgers of the Head.	155
Purging or scouring Simples in general.	159
Purgings of all sorts.	165
Purpiness, general Simples good for it.	271
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	272
Putrefactives.	130, 164
Puncture, or green Wound.	299

Q.

Quarters-false to amend.	363
Quick-scab.	434
Quinsey, general things good for it.	400
Quitter-bone, general things good for it.	385
<i>Particular Receipts for it.</i>	386

R.

Racking.	65
Raking of a Horse.	97
Red-Water, general and particular Receipts for it.	388
Rest, too much of it naught.	21
Retiring.	31
Rhubarb, its Nature.	106
Rider, how he ought to be qualified.	25
Riding	

of the Principal Matters.

Riding <i>softly very good.</i>	21
<i>Who first invented it.</i>	136
Ring bone, <i>general and particular Receipts good for it.</i>	386
Ring-worm, <i>Receipts for it.</i>	404
River-Water <i>not so good as standing Water.</i>	18
Roots.	437
Rot <i>cured.</i>	435
Rowelling of <i>Horses.</i>	131
Rubbing <i>very good for a Horse.</i>	21
Run-away <i>Fade how to cure.</i>	34
Running and rotten <i>Frush to cure.</i>	355
Running of the <i>Reins.</i>	358
Ruptures.	422
S.	
Saddle, <i>to be well look'd to.</i>	21
<i>Not to be presently taken off, when hot.</i>	18
Salves.	149
Scab, <i>general and particular Receipts good for it.</i>	404
Scaldings by <i>Shot, Gun-powder or Wild-Fire.</i>	414
Scouring <i>things in general.</i>	159
Scourings, <i>what they are.</i>	110
<i>By Grass, by Sorrage, by Sallow and Elm, by</i>	ib.
<i>Thistles and Malt.</i>	ib.
<i>Of a little stronger Nature.</i>	ib.
<i>Of all sorts for Running Horses, &c.</i>	160
Scratches, <i>general and particular Receipts good for them.</i>	286
Sellander, <i>general and particular Receipts good for it.</i>	296
Shackle-gall <i>to help.</i>	306, 310
Shapes of a <i>Horse.</i>	2, 3
Shedding of the <i>Seed, general things good for it.</i>	358
Shoeing <i>all manner of Hoofs.</i>	118
<i>The perfect Hoofs and fore Feet.</i>	120
<i>The rough and brittle Hoof.</i>	122
<i>The long Hoof.</i>	ib.
<i>The crooked Hoof.</i>	123
<i>The flat Hoof.</i>	ib.
<i>The over-hollow Hoof.</i>	124
<i>The Hoof that hath the broad Frush.</i>	ib.
<i>The Hoof that hath the narrow Heel.</i>	ib.
<i>The hinder Feet.</i>	ib.
<i>The Hoof that hath a false Quarter.</i>	125
<i>The Hoof that is Hoof-bound.</i>	ib.
<i>For Interfering.</i>	ib.
	Shoes

An Alphabetical TABLE

Shoes, to be look'd to.	17
<i>With Calkins, Rings, Welts and turning Vices.</i>	126
Shortness of Breath.	263, 271
Shoulder-pight to cure.	460
Shoulder-Splaiting.	459
Shoulder-strain or Sprain.	381
Sick Horses how ordered.	243
Sickness dangerous, how it cometh.	85
<i>Accidental.</i>	87
<i>Cured when it cometh, and prevented before it comes.</i>	ib.
Signs of Diseases in a Horse.	86, 90
Signs of the Zodiack, and Government of them.	81
Simples, general Notes concerning some of them.	76
<i>How mixed.</i>	97
<i>Certain Principles concerning them.</i>	175
<i>Purging.</i>	179
<i>Binding.</i>	ib.
<i>Hot.</i>	179, 430
<i>Cooling.</i>	180, 431
<i>An Alphabetical Table of them, shewing their Nature,</i>	
<i>Temperature and Virtue.</i>	181
<i>The way of gathering, drying and preserving them and</i>	
<i>their Juices.</i>	437
Sinews of a Horse, their Number.	78
<i>Cut, prick'd, bruised or shrunk, general things good for</i>	
<i>them.</i>	406
Sit-fast, general things good for it.	383
Sores of all sorts to wash.	168
Sorrances.	99
Spaven-blood to cure.	280
Spaven-bone to cure.	281
Spaying of Mare-Colts.	6
Spleen.	356
Splint taken away.	283
Stable, Swine and Pullen naught to be nigh it.	18
<i>The Light of it best to be made towards the South and</i>	
<i>North.</i>	ib.
<i>What it ought to be built with.</i>	23
<i>Paving of it better than Planking of it.</i>	24
Staling of Blood, general and particular Receipts good for it.	340
Staling to cause when stop't.	388
	Stal-

of the Principal Matters.

Stallions, Choice of them.	5
Stars white and black, how to make.	135
Stature.	66
Stavers, general and particular Receipts good for them.	252
Stifled Horse to cure.	428
Stinging and Biting of venomous Beasts.	171
Stomach, to get a Horse one.	17
Stomach hot to help.	279
Cold to help.	280
Stone, general and particular Receipts good for it.	391
Stone-Cholick, general and particular Receipts for it.	393
Stopping.	31
Strains of all sorts to cure.	318
Strangury or Strangullion.	391
Strangles, general and particular Receipts good for them.	379
String-halt.	370, 429
Stubborn Horse to be made to go.	174
Stumbling, vid. Cords.	
Suppositories, the several sorts of them.	106
Suppository, what it is.	106, 165
One for inward Sickness.	144
Surbated, things good for it.	405
Surfeits, general and particular Receipts good for them.	398
Swayed Back.	435
Sweat to cause.	162
Swelled Cods, general and particular Receipts for them.	420
Swelled Legs of all sorts to cure.	309, 323
Swellings of all sorts to cure.	168
Dissolved without breaking.	305
By Blood-letting.	412
T.	
Teeth, all the Infirmities of them cured.	418
Terms of Art to commend a Horse.	4
Tetter-scab, general and particular Receipts good for it.	404
Tired Horses to help.	278
Tongue hurt to cure.	407
Tramel, Errors in it.	57
The Form of it.	59
The true Use of it.	60
When to alter it.	61
Travelling moderate.	17
Not to be used too late.	18
A Horse hath good store of Blood after it.	20
L I	Trim.

An Alphabetical TABLE

Trimming an unruly Horse.	174
Trotters Oil very good to help stiff Limbs.	21
Trotting.	64
Turnings streight.	32

U.

Veins, their Number that you are to take Blood from.	79
Opened for what use.	79
Taken up.	101
For what Cause they are taken up.	131
Venomed things.	407
Viewing a Horse, how to stand for it.	66
Vital Blood.	78
Vives, general and particular Receipts for it.	409
Ulcers, general and particular Receipts good for them.	172,
	408
In the Kidneys to cure.	391
Unguentum Theriacum.	430
Vomits.	151
Urine caused to a Horse that cannot stale.	388

W.

Washing at the Stable-door very good if necessity requires.	21
Water-Farcin a Receipt for it.	355
Watering in the Morning.	17
Wen taken away.	300
Wind to expel.	170
Wind preserved.	271
Wind-broken.	263, 269
Wind-Cholick, things good for it.	410
Wind-galls, general and particular Receipts good for them.	411
Withers wrung cured.	420
Worms of all sorts killed.	327
Wounds cleansed before you dress them.	159
How to order and dress in the Cure of them.	303
By Shot cured.	426
Wrench, things good for it.	324

Y.

of the Principal Matters.

Y.

Yard cleansed.	416
<i>Fallen, things good for it.</i>	359
<i>Mattering to cure.</i>	358
Yellows, general and particular Receipts good for them.	254
<i>Black, general and particular Receipts good for them.</i>	256





An Alphabetical

T A B L E

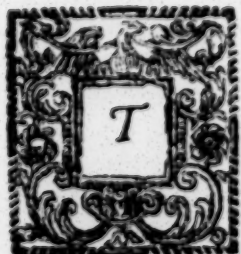
O F

M E D I C I N E S

Proper for the D I S T E M P E R S
incident to Horses.

[N. B. Such as are not inserted here, may
be found in the *Table of Simples.*]

A N I M A L S.



T H E Bone that is found in a Stag's Heart, being
well dried and beaten to powder, and gi-
ven in Ale, is very good against Poison and
Pestilence.

Cantharides are Spanish Flies, that will raise
Blisters in any sound part of the Body, if they be bruised and
applied.

Grashoppers

An Alphabetical TABLE, &c.

Grashoppers bruised and given in Ale or Beer, are very good to ease the griping Pains of the Guts and Bladder. Every Meadow affords plenty of them.

Hartshorn-Shavings resist Poison and the Plague, provoke Urine, and strengthen Nature very much.

Honey is a most excellent cleansing thing, and very profitable in all inward Ulcers and Wounds, in what part of the Body soever they be: It also opens the Veins, and strengthens the Reins and Bladder.

Isinglass is made of the Skin of Fishes, it is a very great Strengthner of a weak Back, given inwardly, boiled in Milk with some fine Bole-Armoniack; if you find it very clear and sweet when you break it, you may conclude that it is very good.

Ivory burnt strewed upon a galled Back, or any raw place, drieth and healeth it up.

Ivory raspt strengthens the Heart and Stomach, and helps the Yellows.

Oysters newly opened and applied to a Pestilential Swelling, draw the Venom out of it.

A Stag's Pizzel dried, and the Powder given in Ale, cures the Biting of venomous Beasts, stirs up Lust, and provokes Urine.

Wax softens, heals, and fills up Sores with Flesh, put into Ointments and used as a Salve.

BARKS.

Cassia Ligna is somewhat more oily then Cinnamon, and is much of the virtue of that, only this is loosening, whereas the other is binding.

Cinnamon is hot and dry and binding; it strengthens the Stomach, and helps Digestion, Coughs and Defluention of Humours upon the Lungs, Dropsy and Pain in pissing. There is hardly a better Remedy to be given to a Mare or Cow that is foaling or calving, to expedite it, and to comfort them after it, than two Drams of the Powder given in White-Wine or Ale.

Pomegranate-Rinds or Peell, cools and binds, and is therefore very good to stay Fluxes or Scourings. It helps also Digestion, and strengthens the Stomach.

Tamarisk Bark is good to strengthen weak and feeble Joints, infused in Ale and given, and the burnt Ashes of it made into an Ointment, and applied to the Place grieved.

An Alphabetical TABLE

COMPOUNDS or ELECTUARIES.

Diascordium stops Fluxes, and mightily strengthens the Heart ; it is not so hot, but it may be given to a sick Horse to provoke Sleep : one Ounce of it is enough to give him at a time, dissolved in a Quart of warm Beer.

Diateffaron, See the Virtues of it in the first Part.

London-Treacle is a very good Cordial ; it resists Poison, and is an excellent Antidote against Pestilential Diseases ; it strengthens also a cold Stomach, and helps Digestion : You may give him with safety two Ounces of it by it self, or more (according to the Strength and Courage of the Horse) dissolved in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that a Quart of strong Ale or Beer sweetned with Honey. But if you put it into Drenches where there are other Compounds mixed with it, then half the quantity will serve.

Mithridate is good against Poison, provokes Sweat, is good for Consumptions and Colds, helps the Cholick, by expelling the Wind, as also Ulcers in the Bladder : Two or three Drams is enough to give him at a time dissolved in a Quart of Ale or Beer.

FLOWERS.

Belausi is a red Flower, and is very binding, and is often given with very good Success to stop Scourings and Bloody-Fluxes.

Clove-Gilliflowers strengthens the Heart, Liver and Stomach, provokes Lust, and resists Pestilence. The Gardens do afford them you.

Melilote is good for the Reins.

Stæchas or Stœchados is hot and binding, and opens Stoppings in the Bowels, and is a very great Strengthner of the whole Body. They are not much unlike in Shape and Scent unto Lavender.

FRUITS.

of MEDICINES.

FRUITS.

Cubebs, is a kind of Pepper that comes out of the Indies,  hot and dry in the third Degree; they expel Wind, and cleanse the Stomach from tough and vitious Humours, and provoke Lust.

Mace is a great Comforter of the Heart and Spirits.

Myrtle-berries are dry in the third Degree; they loosen evil Humours.

Nutmegs strengthen the Brain, Stomach, Liver and Body; they ease Pain in the Head, and stop Lasks or Looseness.

Raisins of the Sun help the Inflammations of the Breast and Liver; they help Coughs and Consumptions, and cleanse and loosen the Belly.

Tamarinds are cold and dry in the second Degree; they cool the Blood, Liver and Stomach, and purge Choler, and are also good for the Yellows.

GUMS, Congealed JUICES, and ROZINS.

A Cacia is a small Thorn growing in Egypt, out of the Leaves and Fruit whereof is drawn a Juice or Liquor, which being dried is called by this Name; it is cold and very astringent and binding, and therefore is very good to stop Lasks, Looseness or Scouring: the Apothecaries have seldom the right, but instead thereof use the Juice of Sloes, which they call by this Name.

Barbadoes Aloes hath the same Virtues as Aloes Succotrina, but is a great deal stronger, and therefore the better Purge for a Horse of the two; for an Ounce and a quarter of it is a Purge strong enough for the strongest bodied Horse almost that is.

Benjamin is a very good Perfume for a Horse's Head that is stuffed with a Cold, the Smoke being received up his Nostrils through a Tunnel, it being strowed upon a Chaffing-dish of Coals.

Borax inwardly taken in small quantities, stops Fluxes and the Runing of the Reins, and being beaten to fine Powder, and put into green Wounds, cureth them speedily; the best is that that comes out of the Silver and Gold Mines.

Burgundy-Pitch is good applied as a Plaster, for all Pains coming of Bruises or Dislocations.

An Alphabetical T A B L E

Camphire is cold and dry in the third Degree; if beaten to Powder and mixed with Oil of Olives, and the Temples anointed with it, it easeth the Pain in the Head coming of Heat; it takes away also any hot Inflammation in the Eyes, and cools any place that 'tis applied to.

English Liquorice-Juice strengthens the Lungs, and helpeth Colds and Coughs, and is better for use than the Powder of Liquorice.

Euphorbium is a Gum that comforteth Wounds: You may see more of the Virtues of it in the Table of Simples.

Frankincense, applied to the Temples, stops the Rheum that flows to the Eyes, and also is very good to stop the Bleeding of Wounds, though the Arteries be cut, if it be applied to them, made up into a Salve or Ointment.

Galbanum is a Gum that is hot and dry, and discussing; applied to the Shape, it expels the Heam. See more of the Virtues of it in the Table of Simples.

Gum Arabick thickneth, cooleth and correcteth sharp Humours, helpeth Burnings, and keepeth the Place from blistering.

Gum Armoniack, or **Ammoniack**, softens, draws and heals; dissolved in Vinegar, and applied plaster-wise, it taketh away Hardness in the Flesh; and made into an Ointment with Sallet-Oil, is good to anoint the stiff and wearied Limbs of a Horse: an Ounce of it made up into a Pill according to Art, looseneth the Belly, and is good for a Horse that stales Blood.

Gum Coppal and **Gum Animæ** are in Nature much alike; it is good for Pains and Megrims in the Head, and to stop Defluctions that flow from thence, if it be used as Benjamin: It is also a great Strengthner of the Sinews.

Gum Coreanna outwardly applied is very good for Aches and Swellings in the Nerves and Joints, and also good to draw back Humours from the Eyes, spread upon a Leather and laid behind his Ears.

Gum Dragon is good for Coughs and Distillations upon the Lungs, and is also good put into Poultices to sodder Wounds together, especially Nerves and Sinews that be hurt.

Gum Elemi is very good for Fractures in the Skull, and also for Wounds, and is commonly put into Plasters for that purpose.

Labdanum is a Gum that is of a very heating Nature, yet mollifying; it is used in Plasters to open the Mouth of Veins, and is also good to keep Hair from falling off, and for Pains in the Ears.

of MEDICINES.

Manna is a very safe and gentle Purger, you may give him a quarter of a Pound of it, or more, dissolved in a Pint of Canary, or for want of that a Quart of warm Ale or Beer: It is temperately hot, and cleanseth the Throat and Breast.

Myrrh is a Gum that heats and dries, yet opens and softens the Womb, given inwardly, and expels the Heam in Beasts, (which is the same as the After-birth in Women.) It is also very good for Colds and Coughs, and outwardly applied fills up hollow Ulcers with Flesh. The Quantity that you may give him inwardly with safety, is about two or three Drams, with other Compounds: You may see more of the Virtue of it if you look in the Table of Simples.

Olibanum is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first; you may give an Ounce of it safely at a time: It helps Looseness and the Shedding of Seed: It is also good for Colds and Coughs, and to make Plasters of.

Opium is good to cause Sleep, but be very cautious how you use it; two or three Grains are enough to give him at a time.

Opoponax is of a healing, mollifying, digesting Quality.

Pitch common mollifieth hard Swellings, and bringeth them to Suppuration; it cleanseth Ulcers, and filleth them with Flesh.

The Table of Simples will shew you more of the Use of it.

Rosins, all the sorts of them are good to fill up hollow Ulcers and Wounds with Flesh, and to comfort the Body oppressed with cold Grievs.

Rosin of Jallop is a very good Purge for a Horse; but if you think it too dear, you may use the Powder of the Root.

Sanguis Draconis in the Lump or in Drops, cools and binds exceedingly, and is very good given inwardly or applied outwardly, for the stopping of Fluxes of Blood.

Spanish Liquorice-Juice is of far better Use than the English, and hath the same Virtues as the English, but is more effectual.

Stone-Pitch is very good to strengthen weak and swayed Backs, or Sinew-strains, applied in the nature of a Charge, with other strengthening Gums.

Storax Calamitis is a sweet Gum, which helps Coughs and Distillations upon the Lungs. It is also a very good Perfume for Sickness in the Head, to draw away evil Humours from thence.

Storax Liquid is much like Tar: It is good put into Plasters, to mollify hard Wounds and Swellings.

Tar is very good for a Cold, given a Horse, mingled with the Flower of Brimstone, the Fat of Rusty Bacon and Honey, made up into Balls with some Powder of Liquorice. and given

An Alphabetical TABLE

ven him for two or three Mornings together : It is also good to put into Salves for the Cure of Wounds.

Tartar French is the Excrements of Wine which stick to the Vessel ; it is hot and dry and cleanseth.

Turpentine common ; if you intend to cleanse the Horse's Reins, being foul, which you may know by the Mattering of his Tard, then make it up into Balls, according to Art, with some Flower and Bole-Armoniack, and give him a Ball of it every Morning till you find him cured.

MINERALS, METALS, and STONES.

Bole-Armoniack is a certain red Earth which is cold and dry, and driveth back evil Humours : It is also very good to stop Bleeding, either inwardly given, or outwardly applied, by strewing the Powder of it upon Wounds. The greasiest is accounted the best.

Flower of Brimstone is better than the common Powder, for any inward Use you apply it to, therefore I advise you wherever you meet with any of the common Powder in your Medicaments, take this in the room of the other ; the Virtues are the same with the common Brimstone, but more effectual in Operation : 'Tis good for Colds, Coughs and rotten Lungs, as also for the Worms, Yellowws and Mange.

Irish Slate beaten to a very fine Powder, and about an Ounce of it given in a Quart of warm Ale is very good for a Horse that hath been bruised by Falls.

Lapis Hæmatites or Blood stone, is good to stanch Bleeding inwardly and outwardly, being ground very fine, and given him. It hath also many other medicinal Virtues.

Lithargy of Gold and Silver binds and dries much, it fills up Ulcers with Flesh, and heals them ; the gold is accounted the best.

Quicksilver is good given a Horse that hath his Guts twisted by Wind, and is also good for the Farcin ; you may give him with safety a quarter of a Pound of it at a time with Sallet-Oil.

Red Coral prepared according to Art, that is made into a very fine Powder, and about as much of it as will lie upon a broad Shilling given him in Claret or Beer, stops any Issue of Blood, Scouring or Running of the Reins, if it be often repeated : You may see more of the Virtues of it in the Table of Simples.

Red Lead mixed with Sallet-Oil, being beaten to a very fine Powder, and the grieved place where the Poll-evil is, anointed with

of MEDICINES.

with it every day, and heated well in with a hot Fireshovel, will sink it.

Sal Armoniack is hot and dry in the fourth Degree.

Salt Peter refined in the Lump evaporateth, it comforteth the Sinews, and taketh away Tiring and Weariness.

Steel-Filings cleanse not only the Reins and Bladder from Gravel, but are also a great Purifier and Sweetner of the Blood.

Tutia is a certain Mineral that is cold in the first, and dry in the second Degree, and is very good for the Defects in the Eyes.

Vitriol, which we call Copperas is of two Kinds, viz. Vitriol Romanum, which we call green Copperas, and Vitriol Album, which we call white Copperas: They are both hot and dry, but the white is accounted the stronger. They take away Scurfs and kill Scabs, boiled in Spring-water, and the grieved place bathed therewith.

White Lead is of a cold, dry and earthy Quality, it helps Inflammations, and dries up evil Humours.

OILS.

NERVE Oil is good to strengthen the Nerves and Sinews.

Oil of sweet Almonds helps Colds and Coughs wet and dry, sweetned with brown Sugar-Candy; it is good also for Ulcers in the Bladder and Reins, and is a great Increaser of Seed: If you give it inwardly, use new, for it will sour in three or four Days.

Oil of Bays is good for the Cholick, and is a sovereign Remedy for any Disease in any part of the Body, coming of Wind or Cold, you may safely give him four or five Drops of it at a time, in any Compound Medicine appropriated to that Use.

Oil of Euphorbium helps Sinews and strengthens them, mollifying their Hardness.

Oil of Exeter is very good for Strains, hard Swellings, Splints, Spavins and Bruises, the Places grieved being anointed with it.

Oil of Peter is good for the same Distempers, as the Oil of Exeter.

Oil of Origanum is very good for all manner of Swellings occasioned by Bruises or Strains in the Nerves and Sinews.

Oil

An Alphabetical TABLE

Oil of Spike is also good for all manner of Strains, whether in the Shoulder or Joints, and also for all manner of Swellings in any part of the Body.

Oil of St. John's-wort is also very good for all Sinew-Strains and Swellings in any part of the Body.

Oil of Swallows is very good to anoint the Sinews of a Horse that stumbles, when they are shrunk, to stretch and make them give way again; and is also good for all manner of Bruises, Sprains, and Strains.

Oil of Turpentine is good for Swellings, Bruises, Strains and old Sores and Fistula's.

OINTMENTS.

Dialthæa is very good to moisten hard Wounds, and to soften hard Swellings, or any bony Excrecence in the Flesh: It is sometimes given inwardly to a Horse or Cow, (with very good Success) that is in great danger of his Life, by licking up any venomous or poisonous thing, either at hay or grass, or when they have over-gorged themselves by eating too much delicious Food, as Clover-grass, Turnip-tops, or the like, which will cause them to swell so full, that they will be ready to burst. If you find him in this desperate condition, give him according to his Strength and Constitution, more or less of this Ointment, mixed with the like quantity of Castle-Soap, dissolved in some warm Beer, and ride or stir him afterwards, which will not only make him piss freely, but also cause him to scour, which is the best means I know of to be used for the Preservation of his Life. If you desire to know for your farther Satisfaction, what things this Ointment is made up with, take this Account of them: They are these, viz. Sallet-Oil, Marshmallows, Linseeds, Fenu-greek-seeds, Bees-Wax, Rosin and Turpentine. If he be a strong, lusty and healthy Horse, you may venture to give him two Ounces of each: but this I leave to the skilful Farrier's Discretion.

Patch or Piece-Grease, is made from the Shreds of Shoemakers Leather boiled in Spring-Water, on the top of which arises a certain oily unctuous Matter, which they skum off, and boil up with other Ingredients to a Salve. 'Twas many Years ago frequently used to liquor Boots and Shoos with, and only made for that purpose: But the more skilful in the Art of Farring have found out a far better use for it, viz. The Curing of many outward Distempers.

'Tis

of MEDICINES.

'Tis a most excellent Ointment of it self both for Man or Beast, for all Pains and Aches in the Limbs new or old: as also for all manner of Strains and Swellings, in what part of the Body soever they be: But more powerful and effectual it is in its Operation, for these several Distempers, if it be used according to Markham's Direction, viz. To melt ten Ounces of it on the Fire, and after you have taken it off, put into it the several Oils here under-written, viz.

Oil of Spike four Ounces.

Oil of Origanum one Ounce.

Oil of Exeter an Ounce and a half.

Oil of St. John's-wort three Ounces.

Stir all these very well together, and put it up into a Gally-Pot close covered with a Bladder, and Leather over that, and keep it for your Use.

If you cannot get Piece-Grease, use Goose-Grease, but this is not half so powerful in Operation as the other. But this I must needs say of it, it is of such thin and subtile Parts, that it will quickly search to the bottom of the grieved Part.

Melt your Ointment over the Fire, and anoint the grieved place, and rub and chafe it in very well with your Hand, holding at the same instant before it a hot Brick-bat or Fire-shovel to make it sink in the better.

Anoint it once in two Days, but rub and chafe it twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise.

Unguentum Nervinum, or Nerve Ointment, is a most excellent Ointment for all Grievs or Pains in the Nerves and Arteries coming of Cold, as also for old Bruises, dead Palsies, Chilness, Coldness or Numbness of any particular Member, by hard Travel or otherwise; 'tis indeed a most precious Jewel both for Man or Beast, for any Disease in any part of the Body coming of Cold: It is also very good for the Wind-Cholick, if the Body be anointed with it, and it be chafed and heated in very well.

POW.

An Alphabetical TABLE

POWDER.

Carolina is a kind of Sea-Moss, that grows upon the Rocks; it is cold, binding and drying, and is good for hot Inflammations, and to kill Worms, you may safely give him as much of the Powder of it as will lie upon a Shilling in Ale or Beer.

ROOTS.

Angelica strengthens the Heart, and is good against Pestilence and Poison.

Aristolochia Longa, or long Birth-wort, brings away the Heam in Beasts (which is the same as the After-birth is in Women.)

Aristolochia Rotunda, or round Birth-wort, powdered and given in Malaga Wine, is good for Ruptures. Both of them resist Pestilence and Poison.

Bistort is good against Pestilence and Poison, Bruises, Fluxes and Staling of Blood.

Costus Amarus and Costus Dulcis are both hot and dry, and are good to bring away Wind, given him: And boiled in Sallet-Oil, and applied outwardly to any Pain or Grief in the Legs, it easeth it.

Dittany is hot and dry in the third Degree; it bringeth away the Heam in Beasts.

Doronicum Romanum is hot and dry in the third Degree; it is a great Strengthenner of the Heart, and is a very sovereign Cordial: It preserves wonderfully against Pestilence and Poison, and is also good for the Biting of any venomous Beast.

Hellebore, black and white: See for Bears-foot in the Table of Simples, and you shall there find the Uses of them.

Hermodactils purge Phlegm from the Joints, and therefore they are good for the Diseases of them. Their Vices you may correct with long Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, Mastick, &c.

Jallop powdered, is very good to mix amongst other Powders, to purge a Horse (correct it with Liquorice Powder to prevent Gripping.)

Mechoacan, is to be corrected with Cinnamon; it is temperate, yet drying; it purgeth Phlegm from the Head and Joints:

of MEDICINES.

Joints : it is also very good for Coughs and Pains in the Reins ; and is also good against the most pockey and inveterate Farcin that is. You may safely give as much of the Powder of it as will lie upon a Sixpence.

Meum is very good given in pestilential Diseases, and is much of the Vertue of Angelica Root, and is used in the room of it, when it cannot be got.

Orice of Florence is hot and dry in the third Degree ; it resists Poison, and helps Shortness of Breath.

Polypody of the Oak, is a great Drier up of superfluous Humors from the Legs, being corrected with Fennel-seeds, Anniseeds or Ginger, &c.

Tormentil is a kind of Cinquefoil, and is dry in the third Degree, but moderately hot ; it is very good given in pestilential Diseases, and for Poison. See more of the Usefulness of it in the Table of Simples.

SEEDS.

Burdock-seeds, bruised and given in White-wine or Ale, causeth a Horse to stale freely, that could not stale before.

Cardamom-seeds, heat and kill Worms, cleanse the Reins, and cause a Horse to stale.

Common Nettle-seeds provoke Lust, and is a great Fattener of a Horse, given him amongst his Provender.

Cummin-seeds heat and dry, they stop Blood, expel Wind, ease Pain, and help the Biting of any venomous Beasts ; and being outwardly applied in Plasters, are of a discussing Nature.

Fennel-seeds are good for the same purpose as Burdock-seeds ; they cause also Milk in Mares.

Fenugreek-seeds are also of a discussing Nature, they ease Inflammations both internal and external ; they are also very good for Colds, given him amongst his Provender, or boiled amongst his Oats, keeping his Body solvable.

Linseed hath the same Vertue as Fenugreek.

Lupines are a kind of small flat Beans, they ease the Pain of the Spleen, kill Worms, given inwardly, and being outwardly applied, cleanse filthy Ulcers and Gangrenes, help Scabs, Itch and Inflammations.

Piony-Seeds help the Wild-Mare, Convulsions and Falling-Sickness.

Plantain-seeds are good for the Plague and Pestilence.

Poppy-seeds, white and black, provoke Sleep.

An Alphabetical TABLE, &c.

SPIRITS.

Spirit of Lavender is a most excellent Cordial, and may serve in the room of many more; you may give half an Ounce of it in a Quart of warm Ale or Beer sweetned with Honey or common Treacle.

WOODS.

Lignum vitæ is a great Drier up of evil Humours, causeth Sweat, resists Putrefaction, and is good for the pockiest Farcin that is; as also for all manner of Scabs, Ulcers and Leprosy, given inwardly in the nature of a Diet-drink, not exceeding a Quart of it at a time.

Saunders, white, yellow and red, are all cold and dry in the second and third Degree; they stop Defluctions from any part of the Body, help Inflammations, and cool the Heat of Fevers; the yellow is accounted the best, but the red is good enough to use for Horses. See more of the Virtues of them in the Table of Simples.

Sassafras is a very large and fair Tree growing in Florida, and smells very much like unto Fennel; it is hot and dry in the second Degree, and is also a great Drier up of evil Humours. The Decoction of it, or some of the Chips with Lignum vitæ boiled in a Horse's Drink that is given for the Farcin, is a great Furtherer of the Cure. It is very good also to open Obstructions and Stoppings in the Stomach, and is a great Strengthner of the Breast, if it be weakened through Cold.

The End of the TABLE.



